

understanding and using English Grammar

FIFTH EDITION

www.ieltstep.com



Betty S. Azar Stacy A. Hagen



understanding and using English Grammar

FIFTH EDITION

Betty S. Azar Stacy A. Hagen



To my beautiful grandsons, Jude and Asa B.S.A.

For Andy and Julianna S.H.

Contents

9
<u>.TS</u>
E P

Preface to t	he Fifth Edition
Acknowledg	ments xiii
Chapter 1	PRESENT AND PAST; SIMPLE AND PROGRESSIVE
	 1-1 Simple Present and Present Progressive
	1-4Simple Past Tense.121-5Simple Past vs. Past Progressive .161-6Unfulfilled Intentions: Was / Were Going To .21
Chapter 2	PERFECT AND PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSES
	2-1Regular and Irregular Verbs262-2Irregular Verb List262-3Present Perfect: Since and For292-4Present Perfect: Unspecified Time and Repeated Events312-5Have and Has in Spoken English352-6Present Perfect vs. Simple Past362-7Present Perfect Progressive402-8Past Perfect442-9Had in Spoken English462-10Past Perfect Progressive47
Chapter 3	FUTURE TIME.533-1Simple Future: Forms of Will and Be Going To543-2Will vs. Be Going To563-3Expressing the Future in Time Clauses603-4Using the Present Progressive and the Simple Present to Express Future Time.623-5Future Progressive.633-6Future Perfect and Future Perfect Progressive.65
Chapter 4	REVIEW OF VERB TENSES
Chapter 5	SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT785-1Final -s/-es: Use and Spelling795-2Basic Subject-Verb Agreement80

		ALCONS
	5-3 5-4 5-5 5-6	Collective Nouns Subject-Verb Agreement: Using Expressions of Quantity
Chapter 6	NOU 6-1 6-2 6-3 6-4 6-5 6-6 6-7 6-8 6-9 6-10 6-11	NS94Regular and Irregular Plural Nouns95Nouns as Adjectives98Possessive Nouns101More About Expressing Possession103Count and Noncount Nouns105Noncount Nouns107Some Common Noncount Nouns107Expressions of Quantity Used with Count and Noncount Nouns110Using A Few and Few; A Little and Little113Singular Expressions of Quantity:One, Each, Every115Using Of in Expressions of Quantity117
Chapter 7	ARTI 7-1 7-2 7-3 7-4 7-5	CLES.122Articles (A, An, The) with Indefinite and Definite Nouns123Articles: Generic Nouns125Descriptive Information with Definite and Indefinite Nouns128General Guidelines for Article Usage130Using The or Ø with Titles and Geographic Names134
Chapter 8	PROI 8-1 8-2 8-3 8-4 8-5 8-6 8-7	NOUNS139Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives140Agreement with Generic Nouns and Indefinite Pronouns145Personal Pronouns: Agreement with Collective Nouns146Reflexive Pronouns147Using You, One, and They as Impersonal Pronouns151Forms of Other153Common Expressions with Other157
Chapter 9	MOE 9-1 9-2 9-3 9-4 9-5 9-6 9-7 9-8 9-9 9-10	DALS, PART 1161Basic Modal Introduction.162Expressing Necessity: Must, Have To, Have Got To163Lack of Necessity (Not Have To) and Prohibition (Must Not)165Advisability/Suggestions: Should, Ought To, Had Better, Could167Expectation: Be Supposed To/Should171Ability: Can, Know How To, and Be Able To173Possibility: Can, May, Might.175Requests and Responses with Modals.176Polite Requests with Would You Mind177Making Suggestions: Let's, Why Don't, Shall I / We180
Chapter 10	MOD 10-1 10-2	ALS, PART 2

	d von and the success	S
	 10-3 Expressing Past Ability. 10-4 Degrees of Certainty: Present Time 10-5 Degrees of Certainty: Present Time Negative. 10-6 Degrees of Certainty: Past Time 10-7 Degrees of Certainty: Future Time 10-8 Progressive Forms of Modals 10-9 Combining Modals with Phrasal Modals 10-10 Expressing Preference: Would Rather 10-11 Summary Chart of Modals and Similar Expressions. 	192 194 196 199 201 205 207
Chapter 11	THE PASSIVE	215
	11-1Active vs. Passive11-2Tense Forms of the Passive.11-3Using the Passive end11-4The Passive Form of Modals and Phrasal Modals11-5Stative (Non-Progressive) Passive.11-6Common Stative (Non-Progressive) Passive Verbs + Prepositions11-7The Passive with Get11-8-ed/-ing Adjectives	217 219 225 231 234 238
Chapter 12	NOUN CLAUSES	247
	 12-1 Introduction . 12-2 Noun Clauses with Question Words . 12-3 Noun Clauses with Whether or If . 12-4 Question Words Followed by Infinitives . 12-5 Noun Clauses with That. 12-6 Quoted Speech . 12-7 Reported Speech . 12-8 Reported Speech: Modal Verbs in Noun Clauses . 12-9 The Subjunctive in Noun Clauses . 	249 253 256 257 260 262 264
Chapter 13	ADJECTIVE CLAUSES	272
	 13-1 Adjective Clause Pronouns Used as the Subject	276 278 280 282 284 287 288 292 293
Chapter 14	GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 1	302
	 14-1 Gerunds and Infinitives: Introduction	304 306

	sum to success
	14-5Common Verbs Followed by Either Infinitives or Gerunds14-6Using Gerunds as the Objects of Prepositions14-7Go + Gerund14-8Special Expressions Followed by -ing14-8Special Expressions Followed by -ing14-9It + Infinitive; Gerunds and Infinitives as Subjects14-10Reference List of Verbs Followed by Infinitives14-11Reference List of Verbs Followed by Gerunds14-12Reference List of Preposition Combinations Followed by Gerunds
Chapter 15	GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 2
	15-1Infinitive of Purpose: In Order To33515-2Adjectives Followed by Infinitives33715-3Using Infinitives with Too and Enough.33915-4Passive Infinitives and Gerunds: Present34015-5Past Forms of Infinitives and Gerunds: Active and Passive34315-6Using Gerunds or Passive Infinitives Following Need34515-7Using Verbs of Perception.34715-8Using the Simple Form After Let and Help34815-9Using Causative Verbs: Make, Have, Get34915-10Using a Possessive to Modify a Gerund352
Chapter 16	COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS
	16-1Parallel Structure35816-2Parallel Structure: Using Commas.35916-3Punctuation for Independent Clauses; Connecting Them with And and But.36216-4Paired Conjunctions: Both And; Not Only But Also; Either Or; Neither Nor364
Chapter 17	ADVERB CLAUSES
	17-1Introduction37117-2Using Adverb Clauses to Show Time Relationships37317-3Using Adverb Clauses to Show Cause and Effect37817-4Expressing Contrast (Unexpected Result): Using Even Though37917-5Showing Direct Contrast: While38117-6Expressing Conditions in Adverb Clauses: If-Clauses38217-7Shortened If-Clauses38317-8Adverb Clauses of Condition: Using Whether Or Not and Even If38417-9Adverb Clauses of Condition: Using In Case38617-10Adverb Clauses of Condition: Using Unless38717-11Adverb Clauses of Condition: Using Only If388
Chapter 18	REDUCTION OF ADVERB CLAUSES TO MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES
	 18-1 Introduction

		streeser to Success
Chapter 19	ONNECTIVES THAT EXPRESS CAUSE AND EFFECT,	IELTS
	 9-1 Introduction. 9-2 Using Because Of and Due To 9-3 Cause and Effect: Using Therefore, Consequently, and So 9-4 Summary of Patterns and Punctuation 9-5 Other Ways of Expressing Cause and Effect: Such That and So That 9-6 Expressing Purpose: Using So That 9-7 Showing Contrast (Unexpected Result) 9-8 Showing Direct Contrast 9-9 Expressing Conditions: Using Otherwise and Or (Else) 	406 408 408 410 412 412 414 414 416 418
Chapter 20	ONDITIONAL SENTENCES AND WISHES	426
	0-1Overview of Basic Verb Forms Used in Conditional Sentences0-2Expressing Real Conditions in the Present or Future0-3Unreal (Contrary to Fact) in the Present or Future0-4Unreal (Contrary to Fact) in the Past0-5Using Progressive Verb Forms in Conditional Sentences0-6Using "Mixed Time" in Conditional Sentences0-7Omitting If0-8Implied Conditions0-9Wishes About the Present and Past0-10Wishes About the Future; Use of Wish + Would	
Appendix	UPPLEMENTARY GRAMMAR CHARTS	452
Unit A:	 asic Grammar Terminology 1 Subjects, Verbs, and Objects 2 Adjectives -3 Adverbs -4 Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases -5 Preposition Combinations with Adjectives and Verbs 	452 452 453 453
Unit B:	uestions -1 Forms of Yes/No and Information Questions. -2 Question Words -3 Shortened Yes/No Questions. -4 Negative Questions. -5 Tag Questions	455 456 458 458
Unit C:	ontractions	460
Unit D:	egatives-1Using Not and Other Negative Words-2Avoiding Double Negatives-3Beginning a Sentence with a Negative Word	461 461
	Perbs 1 The Verb Be 2 Spelling of -ing and -ed Verb Forms 3 Overview of Verb Tenses	462 462

E-7	Summary of Verb Tenses. Regular Verbs: Pronunciation of -ed Endings	Second Second
Listening Script		
Index		
Credits		

X CONTENTS

Preface to the Fifth Edition

Understanding and Using English Grammar is a developmental skills text for intermediate to advanced English language learners. It functions principally as a classroom teaching text but also serves as a comprehensive reference text for students and teachers.

Understanding and Using English Grammar takes a time-tested approach that blends direct grammar instruction with carefully sequenced practice to develop all language skills. Grammar is viewed as an organizing system to help students make sense of the language they see and hear, rather than as a mere collection of rules. This perspective provides a natural, logical framework for students to make English their own.

This edition has been extensively revised to keep pace with advances in theory and practice. Every aspect of the previous edition was reviewed, including the charts, exercises, and sequencing of grammar points. We are excited to introduce significant new features and updates:

- New as well as updated grammar charts based on corpus research reflect current usage and highlight the differences between written and spoken English in informal and formal contexts.
- **Pretests at the start of chapters** let learners check what they already know and orient themselves to the chapter content.
- A wide range of thematic exercises provides opportunities for contextualized language use.
- A variety of new readings covers current topics, strategies for student success, study skills, and other academic and practical content.
- More meaning-based and step-by-step practice helps learners better grasp concepts underlying the target grammar.
- Article use (a, the, an) is now the focus of an entire chapter.
- New guided writing activities are supported by writing tips and editing tasks.
- Self-study practice for gerunds and infinitives has been added, beginning with Chapter 1, so that students can learn at their own pace.
- A fresh design includes a generous use of photos to add interest and serve as the basis for fluency practice.
- A large increase in the number of exercises supports teachers who would prefer not to supplement.
- Three topics, absent in the Fourth Edition, are back in the Fifth Edition: The Subjunctive in Noun Clauses, Past Forms of Infinitives and Gerunds, and Using a Possessive to Modify a Gerund.

Now more than ever, teachers will find that they can select from an extensive repertoire of presentations, activities, and tasks depending on the specific needs of their classes. To accommodate all of the new material, some Fourth Edition content has been moved to MyEnglishLab.

Components of Understanding and Using English Grammar, Fifth Edition:

- Student Book with Essential Online Resources includes the access code for audio, video, expanded practice of gerunds and infinitives, self-assessments, and teacher resources with the Student Book answer key.
- Student Book with MyEnglishLab includes the access code to MyEnglishLab, an easy-to-use online learning management system that delivers rich online practice to engage and motivate students.
- A comprehensive Workbook consists of self-study exercises for independent work.
- A **Teacher's Guide** features step-by-step teaching suggestions for each chart and notes on key grammar structures, vocabulary lists, and expansion activities.
- A revised Test Bank with quizzes, chapter tests, and mid-term and final exams.
- A Chartbook, a reference book that consists of only the grammar charts.
- *AzarGrammar.com*, a website that provides a variety of supplementary classroom materials as well as a place where teachers can support each other by sharing their knowledge and experience.

MyEnglishLab

MyEnglishLab provides a range of interactive activities that help motivate and engage students. MyEnglishLab for *Understanding and Using English Grammar*, Fifth Edition has been thoroughly revised and includes:

- Rich online practice for all skill areas: grammar, reading, writing, speaking, and listening.
- Instant feedback on incorrect answers.
- Remediation activities.
- Grammar Coach videos.
- Bonus material not included in the Student Book, including expanded practice of gerunds and infinitives.
- Robust assessments that include diagnostic tests, chapter review tests, mid- and end-of-term review tests, and final exams.
- Gradebook and diagnostic tools that allow teachers to monitor student progress and analyze data to determine steps for remediation and support.
- Student Book answer key in the Teacher Resource folder.

The Azar-Hagen Grammar Series consists of

- Understanding and Using English Grammar (blue cover), for upper-level students.
- Fundamentals of English Grammar (black), for mid-level students.
- Basic English Grammar (red), for lower or beginning levels.

Acknowledgments

We are indebted to the reviewers and other outstanding teachers who contributed to this edition by giving us extensive feedback on the Fourth edition and helping us shape the new Fifth edition.

In particular, we would like to thank Maureen S. Andrade, Utah Valley University; Dorothy Avondstondt, Miami Dade College; Judith Campbell, University of Montreal; Holly Cin, Houston Community College; Eileen M. Cotter, Montgomery College, MD; Andrew Donlan, International Language Institute, Washington, D.C.; Gillian L. Durham, Tidewater Community College; Jill M. Fox, University of Nebraska; William Hennessey IV, Florida International University; Clay Hindman, Sierra Community College; Sharla Jones, San Antonio College; Balynda Kelly Foster, Spring International Language Center, CO; June Ohrnberger, Suffolk County Community College, NY; Deniz Ozgorgulu, Bogazici University, Turkey; Jan Peterson, Edmonds Community College; Miriam Pollack, Grossmont College; Carol Siegel, Community College of Baltimore County; Elizabeth Marie Van Amerongen, Community College of Baltimore County; Daniela C. Wagner-Loera, University of Maryland, College Park; Kirsten Windahl, Cuyahoga Community College.

From the start, we have benefited from a first-rate management and editorial team that helped us every step of the way. Gosia Jaros-White, our publisher at Pearson, handled each stage of the process with focus, efficiency, and kindness. We were lucky to once again have Robert Ruvo, our project manager at Pearson, to keep track of a myriad of detail with schedule, production, and delivery. Barbara Lyons, our development editor, brought unparalleled skill and insight to the charts and exercises. Our longtime production editor whiz, Janice Baillie, has an encyclopedic knowledge of the series, and every page benefited from her expertise. We are grateful as always to Sue Van Etten, our steady and savvy business and website manager, for keeping the business side of things running smoothly.

We'd also like to thank the talented writers we are so fortunate to have: Geneva Tesh, Houston Community College, for the new Workbook and MyEnglishLab material; Kelly Roberts Weibel, Edmonds Community College, for the updated Test Bank, and Martha Hall, the New England School of English, for the revised Teacher's Guide.

We are grateful to the Pearson design team of Tracey Cataldo, Warren Fischbach, and Stephanie Bullard for their creativity and patience.

Our gratitude also goes to Pietro Alongi, Director of Content, and Amy McCormick, Category Manager at Pearson. They have been involved with the series for many years now, and we appreciate the dedication they bring to each new edition and their vision for the series.

Our thanks also to our illustrators Don Martinetti and Chris Pavely for their engaging artwork. Finally, we would like to thank our families for always supporting us and cheering us on.

> Betty S. Azar Stacy A. Hagen

Present and Past; Simple and Progressive

PRETEST: What do I already know?

CHAPTER

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct verb form and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

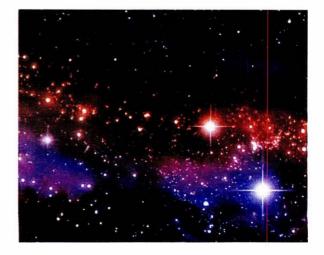
- 1. ____ Air is consisting of oxygen, nitrogen, and other gases. (1-1)
- 2. ____ I am working overtime this week. (1-1)
- 3. ____ Does the copy machine working right now? (1-2)
- 4. ____We aren't knowing Sami's wife. (1-3)
- 5. ____ My cell phone network is always dropping calls. (1-4)
- 6. ____ Gloria canceled her doctor's appointment because she felt better. (1-5)
- 7. ____ I turned on the stove, am boiling the water, and forget to put in the rice. (1-5)
- 8. ____ A few children drawed some pictures this morning while the teacher was talking. (1-6)
- 9. ____ When I turned the key, the car wasn't starting. (1-6)
- 10. ____ I was going to call you, but my phone died. (1-7)

Incorrect sentences: 1, 3, 4, 7, 8, 9

EXERCISE 1 > Warm-up. (Chart 1-1)

Match the description with the sentence. Which sentences do you agree with?

- a. action happening right now
- b. general truth
- c. habit
- 1. ____ I look at the stars every night.
- 2. ____ I'm looking at an astronomy textbook.
- 3. ____ The earth revolves around the sun.



Present and Past; Simple and Progressive 1

1-1 Simple Present and Present Progressive

This basic diagram will be used in all tense descriptions.

	past 🗲	► future
SIMPLE PRESENT	 (a) Water <i>c</i> onsists of hydrogen and oxygen. (b) The average person breathes* 21,600 times a day. (c) The world <i>is</i> round. 	The simple present says that something was true in the past, is true in the present, and will be true in the future. It expresses general statements of fact and general truths.
	 (d) I get up at seven every morning. (e) I always eat a salad for lunch. 	The simple present is used to express habitual or everyday activities.
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE	 (f) The students <i>are sitting</i> at their desks right now. (g) I need an umbrella because it <i>is raining</i>. (h) I <i>am taking</i> five courses this semester. 	The present progressive expresses an activity that is <i>in progress at the moment of speaking</i> . The present progressive is a temporary activity that began in the past, is continuing at present, and will probably end at some point in the future.

now

*See Appendix Chart E-2 for spelling rules for -ing verbs and Appendix Chart E-6 for final -s pronunciation.

EXERCISE 2 > Let's talk. (Chart 1-1)

Work in small groups. Each member of the group should contribute one sentence for each topic. Share some of your sentences with the class.

- 1. Tell your group one daily habit you have.
- 2. Look around the room. Make a sentence about one activity that is happening right now.
- 3. In one sentence, state a general truth about the world.

EXERCISE 3 Looking at grammar. (Chart 1-1)

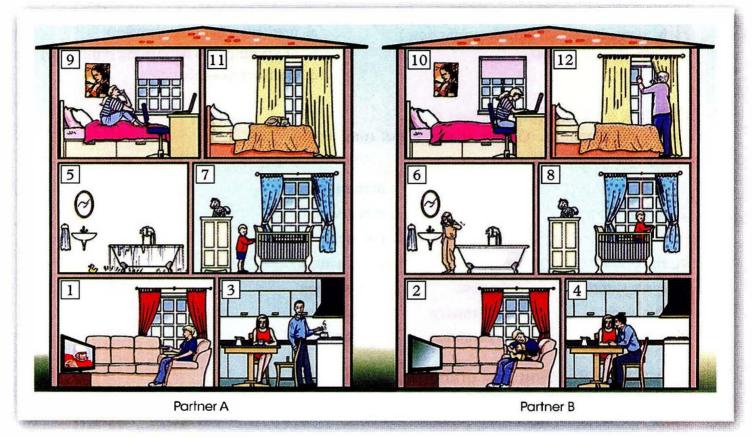
Complete the sentences. Use the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. a. Kristin is in the shower. She (wash) <u>is washing</u> her hair.
 - b. Kristin (*wash*) ______ her hair every other day or so.
- 2. a. Tony usually (sit) ______ in the front row during class.
 - b. Today he (sit) _____ in the last row.
- 3. a. Lars (work) ______ the night shift on weekends.
 - b. He's not home now. He (work) ______ a double shift.
- 4. a. After six days of rain, I'm glad that the sun (shine) _____.
 - b. Every morning, the sun (*shine*) ______ in my bedroom window and (*wake*) ______ me up.

- 5. a. Babies (grow) ______ very quickly. Newborn babies are very different from three-month olds.
 - b. Your baby (grow) _______ so fast. She isn't a newborn anymore!
- 6. a. Please be quiet. I (try) ______ to concentrate on my math homework.
 - b. Each day, our math teacher (*try*) ______ to explain the material clearly, but I am very confused.

EXERCISE 4 > Let's talk. (Chart 1-1)

With a partner, take turns making a few sentences about each picture. Use the present progressive. You can be imaginative!



Examples:

PARTNER A: In picture 1, the boy is watching sports on TV. He is holding a remote. He is changing channels. He is looking for a baseball game. Etc.
PARTNER B: In picture 2, the boy is not watching TV. He is playing the guitar. Maybe he is practicing a popular song. Etc.

EXERCISE 5 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 1-1)

Choose the correct completion(s). Discuss your answers with the class.

- In early summer, the sun _____ around 9:00 р.м. in my hometown.
 - a. sets (It's a general statement of fact.)
 - b. is setting (It's happening right now.)
 - c. Both are possible.

- It's a beautiful evening. I'm sitting outside. The sun _____ behind the mountains.
 - a. sets (It's a general truth.)
 - b. is setting (It's happening right now.)
 - c. Both are possible.

Present and Past; Simple and Progressive 3

- 3. Rice _____ in about 15 minutes.
 - a. cooks (It's a general truth.)
 - b. is cooking (It's happening right now.)
 - c. Both are possible.
- 4. Hurry! The rice _____ over onto the stove.
 - a. boils (It's a general statement of fact.)
 - b. is boiling (It's happening right now.)
 - c. Both are possible.
- 5. Dr. Costa _____ his hospital patients before office hours.
 - a. visits (It's a habitual activity.)
 - b. is visiting (It's happening right now.)
 - c. Both are possible.

- 6. Leo _____ his bike through downtown_____ traffic every day to work.
 - a. rides (It's a habitual activity.)
 - b. is riding (It's happening right now.)
 - c. Both are possible.
- 7. Jenna _____ for her grandparents at their hotel.a. works (It's a habitual activity.)
 - b. is working (It's happening right now.)
 - c. Both are possible.
- 8. Francine and Marco _____ each other several times a day.
 - a. text (It's a habitual activity.)
 - b. are texting (It's happening right now.)
 - c. Both are possible.

SEXERCISE 6 ► Listening. (Chart 1-1)

Listen to the sentences. Choose all the correct completions.

Outdoors

1. right now.	every day.	in the summer.
2. today.	in the winter.	every April.
3. every year.	right now.	this week.
4. right now.	today.	every winter.
5. every summer.	right now.	in the spring.
6. this week.	every January.	every winter.
7. right now.	every summer.	this month.

EXERCISE 7 > Reading and grammar. (Chart 1-1)

Read the passage. Add the endings -s/-es where necessary. You may need to change -y to -ies. Write Ø for no ending.

Our Amazing Heart

The heart is an amazing organ. It beat $__1$ 100,000 times a day and pump $__2$ 2,000 gallons of blood through 60,000 miles of blood vessels in our bodies. Blood carry $__3$ fresh oxygen from our lungs to all the parts of the body. It also remove $__4$ waste from our tissues. Here is an interesting fact: when we laugh $__5$, up to 20% more blood go $__6$ through our body, so laughter is good for our hearts.

- Do you know these words?
- amazing
- organ
- pump
- oxygen
- -waste
- tissues



EXERCISE 8 • Warm-up. (Chart 1-2)

Choose the correct completions.

- 1. Cold air isn't / doesn't rise.
- 2. What is / does water consist of?
- 3. Is / Does the earth spinning rapidly or slowly?

1-2 Simple Present and Present Progressive: Affirmative, Negative, Question Forms

	Simple Prese	ent	YAY!	Present Pr	rogressive	きかれ
AFFIRMATIVE	ا You, We, They He, She, It	help. help. helps.		You, We, Th He, She,		helping. helping. helping.
NEGATIVE	l You, We, They He, She, It	do not do not does not	help. help. help.	You, We, The He, She,		helping. helping. helping.
QUESTION	Do Do Does When do	l you, we, they he, she, it I	help? help? help? help?	Am Are Is When am	l you, we, they he, she, it I	helping? helping? helping? helping?

EXERCISE 9 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 1-2)

Complete the sentences with Do, Does, Is, or Are.

On an Airplane

- 1. <u>Are</u> you ready for takeoff?
- 2. _____ the plane taking off soon?
- 3. _____ you nervous?
- 4. _____ you have your seat belt on?
- 5. _____ the seats comfortable?
- 6. _____ your seat comfortable?
- 7. _____ the seat go back more?

- 8. _____ they serve food on this flight?
- 9. _____ the movie beginning?
- 10. _____ you like to fly?
- 11. _____ the co-pilot flying the plane?
- 12. _____ the pilot sleep during the flight?
- 13. _____ the pilots sleep during the flight?
- 14. _____ the plane on autopilot?

EXERCISE 10 ► Trivia game. (Chart 1-2)

Work in teams. Make true sentences. The team with the most correct answers (factually and grammatically) wins. Use the simple present or present progressive.

- 1. Ice (*melt*) <u>doesn't mel t</u> at 32°F (0°C).
- 2. Cold weather (*cause*) ______ fingernails to grow faster.
- 3. The average person (fall) _______ asleep in seven minutes.
- 4. Salt water (*freeze*) _______ at the same temperature as freshwater.

THE STATE

- 5. Our noses (grow) _____ longer as we age.
- 6. Our feet (*become*) ______ smaller as we age.
- 7. Red blood cells in our body (*divide*) ______ right now.
- 8. On average, a person (blink) _____ more than 20,000 times a day.
- 9. Honey (spoil) _____.
- 10. A cat (use) _______ its whiskers for hunting.
- 11. The earth (revolve) ______ around the moon right now.
- 12. The earth (get) ______ warmer according to scientists.

EXERCISE 11 • Reading and grammar. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2) Choose the correct completions.

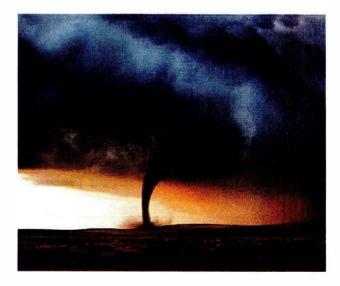
Tornadoes

Tornadoes occur / are occurring in most areas of the world. However, the plains of the United States have / are having the most. (Plains are large areas of flat land with few trees.) Tornado Alley, a frequent area for tornadoes, stretches / is stretching from ³ Texas to North Dakota. Because tornadoes form / are forming over flat areas of land, ⁴ they are not / do not so common in the mountains. Cold air meets / is meeting warm ⁵ air, usually in a thunderstorm. The winds make / are making a spiral or funnel cloud that sometimes reaches 320 miles per hour. They pick up / are picking up cars, trees, and houses. Sometimes this debris flies / is flying for miles. Strong tornadoes cause / are causing a lot ¹⁰ of damage. Surprisingly, the funnel cloud doesn't last / isn't lasting long, usually less than ¹¹

Right now a tornado forms / is forming 12over the plains. People seek / are seeking 13shelter in underground areas such as basements. Several storm chasers get / are getting ready 14to follow the tornado and collect data. They

listen / are listening to weather radios for 15 storm updates.

Are you / Do you familiar with tornadoes? Are you / Do you have tornadoes in your area? 17



EXERCISE 12 > Warm-up. (Chart 1-3)

Choose the correct completions.

- The chef is in his kitchen right now. He _____.
 a. cooks
 b. is cooking
- 2. He <u>some soup.</u>a. tastesb. is tasting
- 3. It <u>too salty.</u>a. tastesb. is tasting
- 4. He _____ it. a. doesn't like b. isn't liking

ELESS ELESS

1-3 Verbs Not Usually Used in the Progressive (Stative Verbs)

(a) I know your cousin.

(b) INCORRECT: I am knowing your cousin.

Some verbs, like *know*, are *stative* or *non-progressive*. They describe states, not actions, and are rarely used in progressive tenses. ("States" are conditions or situations that exist.)

Common Verbs That Are Usually Non-Progressive (like know)

know believe doubt	like appreciate care about	dislike fear hate	belong possess own	consist of contain	hear sound	agree disagree mean
recognize	please	mind		exist	seem	promise
remember	prefer		desire	matter	look like	amaze
suppose			need		resemble	surprise
understand			want			
			wish			
. ,	t your cousin is ve g about my trip to			me verbs, like <i>thi</i> I <i>progressive</i> me		on-progressive meanings
(u) (g about my mp to		In (c): think means	"believe."	
				d): <i>am thinking</i> r nd right now."	neans "thoughts	are going around in my

Common Verbs with Both Non-Progressive and Progressive Meanings (like think)

	NON-PROGRESSIVE	PROGRESSIVE
look	It looks cold outside.	Olga is looking out the window.
appear	Jack appears to be tired today.	She's appearing on a TV show today.
think	I think that Mr. Liu is a good teacher.	I'm thinking about my family right now.
feel	I feel that Mr. Liu is a good teacher.	I'm feeling a little tired today.
have	I have a bike.	I'm having a good time.
see	Do you see that bird?	The doctor is seeing a patient right now.
taste	The soup tastes salty.	The chef is tasting the soup.
smell	Something smells bad. What is it?	Ann is smelling the perfume to see if she wants to buy it.
love	Ken loves his baby daughter.	Ken is enjoying parenthood. In fact, he's loving it!
be	Mary is old and wise.	Al is ill but won't see a doctor. He is being foolish.*

**Am/is/are being* + *an adjective* describes temporary behavior. In the example, Al is usually not foolish, but right now he is acting that way.

Present and Past; Simple and Progressive 7

EXERCISE 13 Reading, grammar, and speaking. (Charts $1-1 \rightarrow 1-3$)

Part I. Read the paragraph. <u>Underline</u> the verbs that are generally non-progressive. Then write the correct verb endings in the list of benefits: *-s*, *-es*, or *-ies*. Write Ø for no ending.

A Summer Internship

Lilly wants to get a job as a restaurant chef. Her culinary arts instructor believes a summer internship at a major restaurant is a good idea. Interns work for free or for a low wage, but they understand that they are receiving valuable experience in return. Some schools offer credit for an internship, and some companies hire their interns when the internship is over. Following are other benefits:



- 1. An internship apply____ classroom knowledge to real-world work experience.
- 2. It provide____ on-the-job training.
- 3. It teach <u>important workplace habits (e.g., being on time) and workplace etiquette (how to behave at a company)</u>.
- 4. Interns learn _____ about various jobs and opportunities within a company.
- 5. It give _____ students the chance to network with employees.
- 6. The job experience look _____ good on a résumé.

Part II. Find information about a volunteer organization that interests you. It could be a club at your school, a group in your community, a world organization, etc. Make a list of the ways it is helpful. Write 5–7 sentences and present them to the class. Title your list:

Benefits of _

EXERCISE 14 Let's talk. (Chart 1-3)

Discuss the differences in meaning of the *italicized* verbs in each group of sentences. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

At the Park

- a. These flowers *smell* good.
 b. Jane *is smelling* the flowers.
- 2. a. I *think* this park is beautiful.b. I need to relax. I *am thinking* about all the homework I have.
- 3. a. You look cold. I'll lend you my coat.b. I'm looking at the sky. A storm is coming.
- 4. a. I see a colorful kite. It's over there.b. Alex is coming later. He *is seeing* a doctor about his headaches.c. Jack and Ann come here every weekend. They *are seeing* each other.
- 5. a. I remember my first time here. Do you remember yours?b. I'm remembering a family picnic here with my cousins. It's a happy memory.
- 6. a. The children want a snack. They're hungry.b. The children are being awfully quiet. What are they doing?



- 7. a. Every weekend there is an outdoor play here. Some of my friends are appearing in it. E. b. There is a man coming toward us. He's smiling. He appears to know us.
- 8. a. Gabriel *is being* rude. He's just sitting there, not talking to anyone.b. No, he *isn't* rude. He's just shy.
- 9. a. The baby is feeling the grass.
 - b. The grass *feels* soft.
 - c. I need to sit down. I'm not feeling well right now.
 - d. I feel that it is important to take care of our parks.

EXERCISE 15 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 1-3)

Choose the correct completions.

- This isn't my book. It _____ to Mai.
 (a) belongs
 b. is belonging
- 2. Ask Ahmed for your book. He _____ it.a. hasb. is having
- Your book is over there. Ahmed _____ it.
 a. holds
 b. is holding
- 4. Olga is smiling. She _____ a good time.a. hasb. is having
- 5. Relax. Everything is OK. I _____ you. a. believe b. am believing
- 6. My computer says my file no longer _____.a. existsb. is existing

EXERCISE 16 \blacktriangleright Let's talk. (Charts 1-1 \rightarrow 1-3)

With a partner, choose one of the pictures and complete the related conversation. Then practice your conversation and perform it for the class. You can look at your book before you speak. When you speak, look at your partner.



- 1. A: Mmmm. That looks ____.
 - B: Thanks. It's fresh out of the oven.
 - A: Is it ____?
 - B: Yes. And it's my own recipe. Would you like to ____?
 - A: Wow! It tastes _____.
 - B: ____.



- 2. A: You look _____.
 - B: I am.
 - A: What's ____?
 - B: I ____.
 - A: You need to _____.
 - B: I know, but I have too much/many _____.

EXERCISE 17 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 1-1 \rightarrow 1-3)

Choose the correct completions.



- 1. A: What are you looking / do you look at?
 - B: You! You look / are looking like your father.
 - A: Are you thinking / Do you think so? Many people tell me I am resembling / resemble my mother.
 - B: I see / am seeing your father's face when I look at you.
- 2. A: Why are mosquitos existing / do mosquitos exist?
 - B: I know / am knowing one reason: they are a food source for other animals.
- 3. Right now I sit / am sitting in the cafeteria. Yoko texts / is texting. Ming is opening / opens his lunch. Jae is taking / takes a bite of his sandwich. Ali is staring / stares off into space. He seems / is seeming to be daydreaming, but perhaps he thinks / is thinking about the test next hour. What do you think / are you thinking Ali is doing / does?

EXERCISE 18 ▶ Grammar and listening. (Charts 1-1 → 1-3)

Complete the sentences with the given verbs. Then listen to the forecast and check your answers.

Weather Report

Hello, this is Gayle Givens, your WWKK weather reporter. Well, it certainly (be)

a beautiful day today. I (stand)	here at
City Park and boy,* the sun sure (<i>shine</i>)	2
the warmer temperatures to	oday. There (<i>be</i>) not 5
a cloud in the sky. We (look)6	
like some clouds (form)	over the ocean and colder
air (move) in. We (forecast)	-
temperatures for tomorrow. I (<i>think</i>)	
however. Stay tuned for the three-day forecast right af	iter this message.

EXERCISE 19 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 1-1 \rightarrow 1-3)

Complete the sentences. Use the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Look! It (begin) _____ i s bginning _____ to rain. Unfortunately, I (have, not**)

_____ an umbrella with me. I (own, not) _____

an umbrella. Spiro is lucky. He (wear) ______ a raincoat. I

(wear) ______ a waterproof hat on rainy days.

^{*}Boy is an exclamation to express a strong feeling; similar to wow.

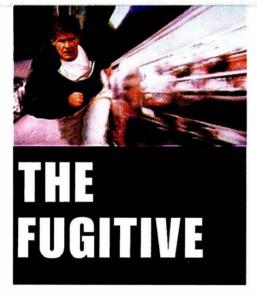
^{**}A form of do is usually used in the negative when the main verb is have, especially in American English (AmE) but also commonly in British English (BrE): I don't have a car. Using have without a form of do is also possible but less common: I haven't a car.

•		IFLTS
2.	Martha is in science class. The chemistry experiment she (do)	WWW.IELTSTEP.COM
	is dangerous, so right now she (be) very careful. She	P
	(want, not) to spill any of the chemical. She (be, always)	confiden
	careful when she does a chemistry experiment.	
3.	Right now I (look) at Nicole. She (look)	angry.
	I wonder what's the matter. She (have) a frown on her face.	She certainly
	(have, not) any fun right now.	
4.	A: How (you, like) the soup? (it, need) more	e garlic?
	B: No, it (taste) delicious. It (remind) me of my	mom's soup.

EXERCISE 20 \blacktriangleright Reading and writing. (Charts 1-1 \rightarrow 1-3)

Part I. Read the review of the movie. <u>Underline</u> the verbs. What verb tense is used to describe the action?





The Fugitive

The Fugitive is an action-packed, edge-of-your-seat movie. The police unjustly accuse Dr. Richard Kimball, the main character, of his wife's murder. A court finds him guilty and sentences him to death.

On the way to jail, the prison bus crashes and Kimball escapes. A U.S. marshall, Samuel Gerard, vows to catch Kimball. Several times he almost succeeds, but Kimball stays one step ahead of Gerard. In one incredible scene, Kimball jumps from the top of a dam into a river to escape.

Kimball doesn't want Gerard to catch him, but he also wants to solve the murder of his wife. His search for answers takes him to Chicago. He finds upsetting information about a friend and the friend's work with a pharmaceutical company. After many suspenseful scenes, Kimball finds the real killers and leads Gerard to them.

Part II. Action in stories (books, movies, TV shows, etc.) is often told in the simple present tense. Find a movie you like. In simple English, tell what happens, give details about the movie, and tell how it ends. Here are some possible ways to begin:

- _____ is an inspiring/exciting/funny/etc., movie. (The main character) ...
- A dramatic/suspenseful/exciting movie is _____. In this movie, ...
- (The name of the movie) is about _____. In this movie, ...

Part III. Edit your paragraph. Underline the verbs. Did you use present tense? Check for the correct use of the third person *-s/-es/-ies* endings.

EXERCISE 21 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 1-4)

Ask another classmate these questions. Share your answers with the class. Find out the most common answers.

1. In what century did your great-grandparents live? They lived in the ______ century.

2. Where did they grow up? They grew up in (city/country) _

 (a) It snowed* yesterday. (b) Tom watched TV last night. 	At one particular time in the past, this happened. It began and ended in the past. Most simple past verbs add -ed , as in (a) and (b).
 (c) Jack <i>went</i> to work early. (d) <i>came</i> to work late. (e) We <i>saw</i> a great movie last night. 	Some verbs have irregular past tense forms, as in (c), (d), and (e). NOTE: See Appendix Chart E-9 for a list of irregular verb forms.
(f) Emily was at the office this morning.(g) You were tired yesterday.	The simple past forms of be are was and were , as in (f) and (g).
(h) Andrew caught the ball, ran down the field, and scored a point.	Note that in a series of actions, the verbs are the same tense, as in (h). INCORRECT: Andrew caught the ball, is running down the field, and score a point.

Regular Verb Forms

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	QUESTION
I You He, She, It We They	I You He, She, It We They	DidIDidyouDidhe, she, itDidweDidthey

Irregular Verb Forms

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE		QUESTION	
l You He, She, It We They	l You He, She, It We They	did not eat.	Did Did Did Did Did	l you he, she, it we they	eat?
Be Verb Forms	2040	and the market of	the second s	196545	
AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE		QUESTION	

	WasI, he, she, ithere?Wereyou, we, theyhere?
--	--

*See Appendix Chart E-5 for information about final -ed pronunciation.

12 CHAPTER 1

EXERCISE 22 Looking at grammar. (Chart 1-4)

Complete the sentences with the correct simple past form of the verb.

An Online Order

- 1. Anders (order) _____ printer ink online last Monday.
- 2. The next morning he (*realize*) _____ he (*need*) _____ colored ink too.
- 3. He (try) ______ to call the company to add more, but no one (answer)

_____, and there (*be*) ______ no voicemail.

- 4. Anders (worry) ______ that the website (be) ______ fake.
- 5. He (email) ______ the company and (explain) ______ his situation.
- 6. The manager (*respond*) ______ a few hours later and (*fix*) ______ the order quickly.
- 7. Anders (*relax*) ______ when he (*receive*) ______ a confirmation email from the company.

EXERCISE 23 > Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 1-4)

Take turns asking and answering questions. You can answer yes or no.

SITUATION: You just came back from a vacation in Greece. Your friend is asking you questions.

- **Examples:** fly back last night?
- PARTNER A: Did you fly back last night?
- PARTNER B: Yes, I flew back last night.

happy to see your cousins?

- PARTNER A: Were you happy to see your cousins?
- PARTNER B: Yes, I was happy to see my cousins.



PARTNER A: (book open) PARTNER B: (book closed)	PARTNER A: (book closed) PARTNER B: (book open)
1. have a great trip?	8. speak a little Greek?
2. come back feeling rested?	9. eat in typical Greek restaurants?
3. meet all your cousins?	10. lie on the beach?
4. hang out with* local people?	11. buy some Greek sandals?
5. do a lot of tourist activities?	12. bring me a souvenir?
6. excited to be there?	13. take a lot of photos?
7. spend time in museums?	14. sad to leave Greece?

*hang out with = spend time with

Present and Past; Simple and Progressive 13

EXERCISE 24 Looking at grammar. (Chart 1-4)

Complete the sentences with the correct forms of verbs that make sense. More than one verb may be appropriate. Some answers are negative.

SITUATION 1: Maria visited a friend at the hospital. A woman in the elevator had a cold and sneezed several times. The next day, ...

ache feel leave schedule take have make speak to wake up eat 1. Maria ______ in the morning with a fever and headache. 2. She ____ _____ well. 3. Her entire* body _____ 4. She ______ her temperature with a thermometer. 5. She ______ a high fever. 6. She ______ the house all day. 7. She _______a few spoonfuls of chicken soup. 8. She ______ the nurse at the doctor's office. 9. She _______ an appointment for the following day. SITUATION 2: Professor Moore is our new math teacher. He is very hard to follow. Yesterday, he ... fill confuse introduce leave speak 10. _____ too fast. 11. _____ the material to us quickly. 12. _____ the board with examples. _____ time for questions, 13. ____ unfortunately. P - America P - Stating P R. Star and - take my 14. _____ everyone in the class. **EXERCISE 25** Listening. (Chart 1-4) Listen to the beginning of each sentence. Circle the correct completion(s). More than one completion may be possible. 1 honny and about my desision on some ice

2. two classes. about his wife. at night.	
3. the car with gas? sick? OK?	
4. with colored pencils. several faces. for several h	ours.
5. in the woods. some money. the rain.	

*entire = whole

- 6. a picture.
- 7. my hand.
- 8. the washing machine?
- 9. at the sad ending.
- 10. over the fence.

from math class.

some rice. these jeans?

the actors.

very quickly.

some money from the bank. was cooking. my shirt? when the play finished. in a sunny spot.



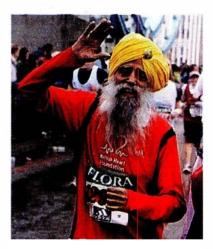
Part I. Read the passage. <u>Underline</u> the past tense verbs.

AN INCREDIBLE FEAT

In 2011, at the age of 100, Fauja Singh did something incredible: he ran a 26-mile (42 km.) marathon! He was the first 100-year-old to ever run a marathon. Singh decided he wanted to compete in races when he saw a marathon race on TV. He was 89! He didn't know much about training and showed up for his first session in a suit and tie.

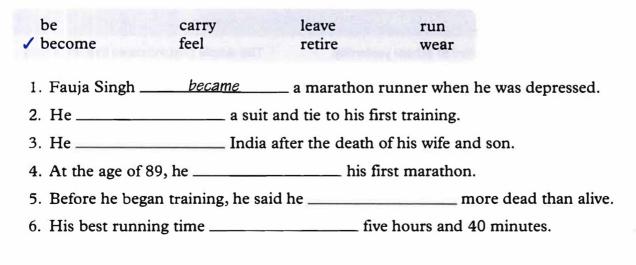
Originally from India, Singh moved to England in the 1990s after his wife and son died. At the time, he said he felt more dead than alive. He was very depressed and later believed that long-distance running saved him.

He competed in his first marathon in London at the age of 89. He prepared for it in only ten weeks. His best time was at the 2003 Toronto Waterfront Marathon. He ran it in five hours and 40 minutes. Singh became world-famous and even carried the Olympic torch in 2012. In 2013, he decided to retire from longdistance running and completed his last marathon in Hong Kong. Do you know these words? - feat - show up - marathon - session - compete - retire - training



Running in the London Marathon, 2004

Part II. Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box. Cover the reading.



- 7. He ______ the Olympic torch in 2012.
- 8. He ______ from marathon running in 2013.



EXERCISE 27 > Warm-up. (Chart 1-5)

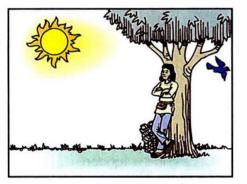
Write the sentence (a. or b.) that correctly describes each scene.

- a. Rita was standing under a tree when it began to rain.
- b. Rita stood under a tree when it began to rain.



1st: It began to rain.

1. _____



1st: Rita stood under a tree.



2nd: Rita stood under a tree.



2nd: It began to rain.

2. _____

1-5 Simple Past vs.	Past Progressive	
	 (a) I <i>walked</i> to school yesterday. (b) John <i>lived</i> in Paris for ten years, but now he lives in Rome. (c) I <i>bought</i> a new car three days ago. 	The simple past indicates that an activity or situation began and ended at a particular time in the past.
	 (d) Rita stood under a tree when it began to rain. (e) When Mrs. Chu heard a strange noise, she got up to investigate. (f) When I dropped my cup, the coffee spilled on my lap. 	If a sentence contains when and has the simple past in both clauses, the action in the when-clause happens first. In (d): 1st: The rain began. 2nd: Rita stood under a tree.

(g) I was walking down the street when it began to rain.	In (g): 1st: I was walking down the street. 2nd: It began to rain.
 (h) While I was walking down the street, it began to rain. (i) Rita was standing under a tree when it began to rain. (j) At eight o'clock last night, I was studying. 	Both actions occurred at the same time, but one action began earlier and was in progress when the other action occurred. In (j): My studying began before 8:00, was in progress at that time, and probably continued.
(k) While I was studying in one room of our apartment, my roommate was having a party in the other room.	Sometimes the past progressive is used in both parts of a sentence when two actions are in progress simultaneously.

EXERCISE 28 Looking at grammar. (Chart 1-5)

Write "1" before the action that started first. Write "2" before the action that started second.

A Stormy Walk Home

- 1. Hi Mom. I was leaving you a voicemail when you picked up.*
 - a. <u>1</u> I was leaving you a voicemail.
 - b. <u>2</u>You picked up.
- 2. I had a terrible walk home. When the storm started, I was coming home from work.
 - a. ____ The storm started.
 - b. ____ I was coming home.
- 3. A painter next door was climbing a ladder when lightning hit the house.
 - a. _____ A painter was climbing a ladder.
 - b. ____ Lightning hit the house.
- 4. I heard him yell while I was running for cover.
 - a. ____ I heard him yell.
 - b. ____ I was running for cover.
- 5. He fell off the ladder when he saw the flash. Fortunately he's OK.
 - a. _____ He fell off the ladder.
 - b. ____ He saw the flash.



*pick up (the phone) = answer the phone

EXERCISE 29 Looking at grammar. (Chart 1-5)

Complete the sentences. Use the simple past or the past progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

Last Night

1. Between 5:00 and 7:00 P.M, I (sit) was sitting in class. I had a lot of things on my mind. I (think) ______ about some family issues. I (listen, not) ______ to the teacher.

- 2. It was a beautiful evening when I walked home. The moon (shine) _____ over the water, and a warm breeze (blow) _____.
- 3. I (stop) _____ by a friend's apartment, but he (be, not) _____ home.
- He (sit) ______ in heavy traffic. He (get, not) ______ home until 10:00.
- 4. My neighbors (argue) ______ about something when I (walk)

 by them	outside my	apartment	building.
<u> </u>	outside my	apartment	ounung.

- 5. A package (*wait*) ______ for me at home. I (*open*) _____
- it and (find) ______ an early birthday present.
- 6. While I (read) ______ to my nephew, he (fall) ______ asleep, so I (cover) ______ him up and (sneak) ______ out of the room.

EXERCISE 30 > Let's talk. (Chart 1-5)

Choose the question or statement you would expect the speaker to say. Discuss your answers. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. When I went to bed late last night, I noticed that the light was on in your bedroom.
 - b. Did vou read? a. Were you reading?
- 2. Jane's cousin was at the party last night. a. Were you meeting him? b. Did you meet him?
- 3. A small airplane flew over our house several times last night.
 - a. We were sitting out on the patio, and it made us nervous.
 - b. We sat out on the patio, and it made us nervous.
- 4. I'm not sure if I met Carol Jones at the party last night. Describe her for me. b. What did she wear? a. What was she wearing?

EXERCISE 31 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 1-5)

With a partner, take turns asking and answering the questions. Choose all the expected answers.

1. What were you doing at 5:00 А.М.?	 a. I was sleeping. b. I dreamed. c. I was lying in bed.
2. What did you do when you got home last night?	2. a. I was cooking dinner.b. I made dinner.c. I fixed dinner.

,	IFITS
3. What were you thinking about?	 3. a. I was thinking about all the things I need to do today. b. I was thinking about my family. c. I was remembering my wedding day.
4. What did your mom like best about her vacation?	4. a. She was liking the beach.b. She enjoyed the warm weather.c. She was enjoying the swimming pool.
5. Who were you texting just now?	5. a. I text my mom.b. I am telling my manager I'm sick.c. I was texting a friend.
6. What did your friend make for breakfast?	6. a. He had eggs and coffee.b. He was having rice.c. He was making toast and tea.
7. Where did you live when you were younger?	7. a. We lived in this town for a while.b. We moved around a lot.c. We were moving from town to town.
8. Where were you going when I called you?	8. a. I was walking to the bus.b. I went to the bus stop.c. I was heading* downtown.

*heading = going

EXERCISE 32 • Grammar and speaking. (Chart 1-5)

Work with a partner. Complete the sentences with the given verbs and the words in parentheses. Use the simple past or the past progressive. Practice one of the conversations and perform it for the class or a small group. You can look at your book before you speak. When you speak, look at your partner.

1.	bre	ak / cross / slip		
	A:	How (you)	your arm	
	B:	I	on the ice while I	the street in front
		of the dorm.		
2.	fin	d look park		TY JOESFUNEERES
	A:	You're a half-hour late. Wh	ere were you?	
	B:	Ι	for a place to park.	
	A:	(you)	one?	
	B:	Well, yes and no. I	my	
		car illegally.		
3.	ask	e decide look see work		
	A:	How did it go? (you)		the manager for a raise when you
		l	ner yesterday?	
	B:	No, she	on a big pres	entation for next week. She
		I	oretty busy. I	to wait until later.
			Pres	ent and Past; Simple and Progressive 19
			www.ieltstep.com	

4. want / miss / be / give	AND THE OFFICE AND TH
A: (you) in the meeting?	
B: No, I the bus and (not)	to walk into
the room while Dr. Romero his speech.	
5. drive / get / happen / keep / pay / see	
A: I had a bad day yesterday.	
B: Oh? What?	
A: I a traffic ticket.	
B: Really? That's too bad. What was it for?	
A: For running a red light. I home and (not)	
attention to the road. I (not)	the red light
and just driving.	
 Part I. Anna had a scary experience last night. Listen to her story with your le Then open your book and listen to the statements. Circle "T" for true and "F" 1. T F 2. T F 3. T F 4. T F 5. T F 	' for false.
Part II. Listen again. Complete the sentences with the verbs you hear.	
A Scary Night I a terrible experience last night. You won't believe what happened! A man into my apartment while I was asleep. There I was, just sleeping peacefully when someone the glass in the sliding door! The sound me up. I the sliding door open, so I reached for the phone by the bed and called the	
police. My voice as I told the operator there was an intruder	r in my home
•	
I in my bedroom closet when the burglar8	
room. Soon I sirens as the police to	
From the crack in the closet door. I the burglar as he	
From the crack in the closet door, I the burglar as he	12
outside with my laptop.	12
outside with my laptop. The police jumped out of their cars and followed him, but he managed to get	away in a car
outside with my laptop.	away in a car I drove after him.

EXERCISE 34 ► Warm-up. (Chart 1-6)

Circle yes if the speaker is expressing an intention or plan; circle no if not.

- t. yes yes no
- I am going to call you at 9:00 tomorrow.
 I was going to call you, but I couldn't find your phone number.
 I was going to class when I ran into a friend from my childhood.
 I was planning to go to college right after high school but
 I was planning to go to college right after high school but
 I was planning to go to college right after high school but

1-6 Unfulfilled Intentions: Was / Were Going To		
(a) Jack was going to go to the movie last night, but he changed his mind.	Was / were going to talk about past intentions. Usually, these are unfulfilled intentions, i.e., activities someone intended to do but did not do. The meaning in (a): Jack was planning to go to the movie, but he didn't go.	
 (b) I was planning to go, but I didn't. I was hoping to go, but I couldn't. I was intending to go, but I didn't. I was thinking about going, but I didn't. 	Other ways of expressing unfulfilled intentions are to use <i>plan, hope, intend,</i> and <i>think about</i> in the past progressive, as in (b).	

EXERCISE 35 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 1-6)

Choose <u>all</u> the sentences that are true about the given sentence.

- 1. I was going to pay you back for the taxi.
 - a. I paid you back.
 - b. I was planning to pay you back.
 - c. I didn't pay you back.
- 2. I was going to stay home on my day off, but I had too much work at the office. a. I was intending to stay home.
 - b. I worked at the office.
 - c. I had a lot of work, but I stayed home.
- 3. Jared was going to the hospital to see his mother when he began to feel ill.
 - a. Jared was on his way to the hospital.
 - b. Jared had plans to see his mother but needed to change them.
 - c. Jared didn't go to the hospital.
- 4. My dad was going to surprise my mom with jewelry for her birthday.
 - a. He wanted to give her jewelry.
 - b. He gave her some jewelry.
 - c. He didn't surprise her with jewelry.
- 5. I was going to the train station when I remembered your phone call.
 - a. I was planning to go to the train station, but I didn't.
 - b. I was on my way to the train station.
 - c. I didn't go to the train station.

EXERCISE 36 Writing or speaking. (Chart 1-6)

Take turns completing the sentences. Work in pairs or small groups. Share some of your answers, with the class.

1.	I was going to get up early this morning, but
2.	I was planning to visit you this weekend, but
3.	I was going to call you on your birthday, but
4.	We were hoping to see that movie in a theater, but
5.	I was going to text you, but
6.	We were going to invite Thomas to go out to dinner with us, but
7.	I was going to replace my computer with a tablet, but

EXERCISE 37 > Check your knowledge. (Chapter 1 Review)

Correct the errors.

- 1. Breakfast is an important meal. I'm always eat a big breakfast.
- 2. While I was working in my office yesterday, my cousin stops by to visit me.
- 3. Yuki staied home because she catched a bad cold.
- 4. My brother is looks like our father, but I am resembling my mother.
- 5. Jun, are you listen to me? I am talk to you!
- 6. While I was surfing the Internet yesterday, I was finding a really interesting website.
- 7. Did you spoke English before you were come here?
- 8. I am not agree with your opinion.
- 9. My roommate usually watch television, listen to music, or going out in the evening.
- 10. Right now Sally in the kitchen eating breakfast.
- 11. While I'm driving home last night, I heared a strange noise in the engine.
- 12. Why you talking about me? I'm not appreciate that.
- Yesterday, while I was sitting at my computer, Shelley was suddenly coming into the room. I wasn't knowing she was there. I was concentrate hard on my work. When she suddenly speak, I am jump. She startle me.

EXERCISE 38 Reading and writing. (Chapter 1)

Part I. Read the journal entry. <u>Underline</u> the 23 past tense verbs.

A Hopeful Beginning

Today was my first day at the university, and I was late for class. I didn't remember the name of the building and went to the wrong one. After about ten minutes of confusion, I Do you know these words

- somewhat

- embarrassed
- syllabus - interrupt

finally found the right class and walked in somewhat embarrassed. A girl with a friendly smile moved her books off the chair next to her. I sat down. The professor was going over the syllabus. I didn't have a copy, but I didn't want to interrupt him. The girl next to me shared hers. The course looked interesting but difficult. I wondered if all my classes had this much work. Then the teacher announced study groups. My new friend and I were in the same group. She introduced herself during the break, and I felt very comfortable when I spoke with her. Maybe the class is going to be OK after all.

Part II. Write a journal entry about your experience in a class on your first day of school.

- 1. Begin with It was my first day at the university / in high school / in English class / etc.
- 2. What was the teacher doing when you walked in? What were other students doing?
- 3. Did you notice anyone or anything special?
- 4. How did you feel?
- 5. What were your first impressions about the class and what were your thoughts later?

WRITING TIP

It is important to consider your first piece of writing a draft, not your finished copy. When you begin to write, jot down ideas first and then sentences. As you write your paragraph, you can always change, reorder, or delete ideas. After you finish the paragraph, edit it carefully. Correct any errors in your next draft. Then read it again and make additional changes or rewrite if necessary. You might need to do this a few more times. It may sound like a long process, but your writing will be much better.

Part III. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box indented paragraph
- 2. \Box use of the simple past for an activity that began and ended at a particular time in the past
- 3. \Box use of the past progressive for an activity in progress in the past
- 4. □ correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Fluency Practice. Work with a partner. Take three minutes to tell your partner about your experience on the first day of school. Then describe your experience to another student in two minutes. Finally, take one minute to describe your experience to a third student. Did the final time you spoke feel more comfortable and easier than the first time?

SELF-STUDY: Gerunds and Infinitives 1



In Chapters 14 and 15, you will study gerunds and infinitives in depth. However, there are a great many to learn in English. At the end of Chapters 1–12, short self-study lessons are available so that you can begin to practice them. Chapter 1 appears below; Chapters 2–12 are online in Essential Online Resources. You will see this reminder at the end of these chapters:

Go to the Essential Online Resources for Self-Study: Gerunds and Infinitives

(a) I want to go.(b) They need to eat.	As you know, when one verb follows another, the second verb may take the infinitive form: to + simple form of the verb
(c) Please keep going.(d) They quit asking.	Sometimes the verb is followed by a gerund: simple form of the verb + - <i>ing</i>
(e) It began to rain. (f) It began raining.	Some verbs can take either an infinitive or a gerund.

Examples. Study these conversations and then look at the summary chart that follows.

- 1. A: Would you mind helping me with the dishes?
 - B: Sure. I enjoy washing dishes.
 - A: Seriously?
 - B: Not really. But I like talking/to talk to you.
- 2. A: Jan and Adam decided to put off their wedding until next summer.
 - B: I hope everything's OK.
 - A: Jan wants to wait. She just started a new job.
- 3. A: Do you like those shoes?
 - B: Yes, but I can't afford to buy them. Anyway, I buy usually clothes on sale. I don't like paying/to pay full price.
 - A: I know. I can't stand paying/to pay a lot for clothes.

Infinitive: to + verb	Gerund: verb + -ing	Infinitive or Gerund
can't afford decide want	enjoy mind miss	can't stand like

Test Yourself. Cover the above chart. Finish with to go/going or both.

- 1. She likes ______ *to go / going* ______ 5. I decided _______.
- 2. I can't afford ______.
- 3. Do they mind _____? 7. We enjoy _____.
- 4. They can't stand _____.
- 6. He wants ______.7. We enjoy
- 8. They don't like _____.

Perfect and Perfect Progressive Tenses

PRETEST: What do I already know?

CHAPTER

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct verb form and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. ____ How long have you know my sister? (2-1 and 2-2)
- 2. ____ We have been in this meeting since 7:00 A.M. (2-3)
- 3. ____ Did you ever seen a ghost? (2-4)
- 4. ____ How you been? I haven't seen you for a while. (2-5)
- 5. ____ Jonas owned his home since last year, but his parents helped him buy it. (2-6)
- 6. ____ How long you have been waiting for me? (2-7)
- 7. ____ I am watching TV since I got home. (2-7)
- 8. ____ I had felt sick after dinner, so I went to bed. (2-8)
- 9. ____ We'd wanted to go out to breakfast, but we overslept. (2-9)
- 10. ____Toni's eyes were itchy and red because she had been working in a dusty room. (2-10)

Incorrect sentences: 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EXERCISE 1 > Warm-up. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)

Read the conversations. The verbs in blue are in the past participle form. Complete the chart.

- A: How long have you lived in London?
 B: I've lived in London all my life.
- 2. A: How long have you spoken English?B: I've spoken English for more than a year.
- 3. A: How long have you done extreme sports?B: I've done extreme sports since I was a teenager.



SIMPLE FORM	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
1. live	lived	
2. speak	spoke	
3. do	did	

Perfect and Perfect Progressive Tenses 25

2-1 Regular	and Irregu	lar Verbs		
Regular Verbs:	The simple p	ast and past partic	tiple end in -ed.	English verbs have four
SIMPLE FORM	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	principal parts: (1) simple form
hope stop listen study start	hoped stopped listened studied started	hoped stopped listened studied started	hoping stopping listening stud y ing starting	 (2) simple past (3) past participle (4) present participle
Irregular Verbs	The simple p	past and past partic	ciple do not end in -ed.	Some verbs have
SIMPLE FORM	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	irregular past forms. Most of the irregular
hit find swim break wear	hit found swam broke wore	hit found swum broken worn	hitting finding swimming breaking wearing	verbs in English are given in the alphabetical list in Appendix Chart E-9.

2-2 Irregular Verb List

Group 1: All three forms are the same.

SIMPLE FORM	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	SIMPLE FORM	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	
bet	bet	bet	let	let	let	
burst	burst	burst	put	put	put	
cost	cost	cost	quit*	quit	quit	
cut	cut	cut	shut	shut	shut	
fit	fit/fitted	fit/fitted	spread	spread	spread	
hit	hit	hit	split	split	split	
hurt	hurt	hurt	upset	upset	upset	
			*Also possible in BrE: quit-quitted-quitted.			
Group 2: Pa	ast participle er	nds in <i>-en</i> .		San San		
bite	bit	bitten	hide	hid	hidden	
break	broke	broken	mistake	mistook	mistaken	
choose	chose	chosen	ride	rode	ridden	
drive	drove	driven	rise	rose	risen	
eat	ate	eaten	shake	shook	shaken	
fall	fell	fallen	speak	spoke	spoken	
forget	forgot	forgotten	steal	stole	stolen	
forgive	forgave	forgiven	swell	swelled	swollen/swelled	
freeze	froze	frozen	take	took	taken	
get	got	gotten/got*	wake	woke	woken	
give	gave	given	write	wrote	written	
*In BrE: get-got	-got. In AmE: get-go	ot-gotten/got.				
Group 3: Vo	wel changes fr	om a in the simple	e past to <i>u</i> in t	he <u>past partici</u> r	ole.	
begin	began	begun	sing	sang	sung	
drink	drank	drunk	sink	sank	sunk	
rina	rang	rung	stink	stank/stunk	etunk	

begin	began	Degun	Sing	sang	sung
drink	drank	drunk	sink	sank	sunk
ring	rang	rung	stink	stank/stunk	stunk
run	ran	run	swim	swam	swum
shrink	shrank	shrunk			

26 CHAPTER 2

Group 4: Past tense and past participle forms are the same.

	and the set of the set					Esteen
bend	bent	bent	mean	meant	meant confidence.55	2
bleed	bled	bled	meet	met	met	
bring	brought	brought	pay	paid	paid	
build	built	built	read	read	read	
buy	bought	bought	say	said	said	
catch	caught	caught	sell	sold	sold	
dig	dug	dug	send	sent	sent	
feed	fed	fed	shoot	shot	shot	
feel	felt	felt	sit	sat	sat	
fight	fought	fought	sleep	slept	slept	
find	found	found	slide	slid	slid	
grind	ground	ground	sneak	snuck/sneaked	snuck/sneaked	
hang*	hung	hung	speed	sped	sped	
have	had	had	spend	spent	spent	
hear	heard	heard	spin	spun	spun	
hold	held	held	stand	stood	stood	
keep	kept	kept	stick	stuck	stuck	
lay	laid	laid	sting	stung	stung	
lead	led	led	strike	struck	struck	
leave	left	left	sweep	swept	swept	
lend	lent	lent	swing	swung	swung	
light	lit/lighted	lit/lighted	teach	taught	taught	
lose	lost	lost	tell	told	told	
make	made	made	think	thought	thought	
*Hang is a regul	ar verb when it mea	ne "to kill comecno	understand	understood	understood	
			weep	wept	wept	
with a rope around his/her neck." COMPARE: I hung my clothes in the closet. They hanged the murderer by the neck			win	won	won	

clothes in the closet. They hanged the murderer by the neck until he was dead.

Group 5: Past participle adds final -n to the simple past, with or without a spelling change.

						and the second sec
b	blow	blew	blown	see	saw	seen
d	lo	did	done	swear	swore	sworn
d	Iraw	drew	drawn	tear	tore	torn
f	У	flew	flown	throw	threw	thrown
g	row	grew	grown	wear	wore	worn
k	now	knew	known	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
li	е	lay	lain			

Group 6: The first and third forms are the same.

and the second se		
become	became	become
come	came	come
run	ran	run

Group 7: One of the three forms is very different.

	been gone d irregular forms ar regular form is mor			is more common in
Both regular an	d irregular forms a			is more common in
				is more common in
	egular torni is mor	e commo	on in BrE.)	
wakened/awoke urned/burnt reamed/dreamt neeled/knelt	awakened/awoken burned/burnt dreamed/dreamt kneeled/knelt	prove shine smell spill	proved/proven shined/shone smelled/smelt spilled/spilt	proved/proven shined/shone smelled/smelt spilled/spilt spoiled/spoilt
n	irned/burnt eamed/dreamt	eamed/dreamt burned/burnt eamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt eeled/knelt kneeled/knelt aned/leant leaned/leant	eeled/knelt leaned/leant spoil	urned/burntburned/burntshineshined/shoneeamed/dreamtdreamed/dreamtsmellsmelled/smelteeled/kneltkneeled/kneltspillspilled/spiltaned/leantleaned/leantspoilspoiled/spoilt

EXERCISE 2 Looking at grammar. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)

Work with a partner. Give the past tense and past participle forms of the verbs, orally or in writing. Each partner has the answers in italics.

PARTNER A: (book open; say the verb) PARTNER B: (book closed; give the two forms)	PARTNER B: (book open; say the verb) PARTNER A: (book closed; give the two forms)
1. go (went, gone)	13. begin (began, begun)
2. see (saw, seen)	14. speak (spoke, spoken)
3. sting (stung, stung)	15. cut (<i>cut</i> , <i>cut</i>)
4. think (thought, thought)	16. break (broke, broken)
5. lead (<i>led</i> , <i>led</i>)	17. catch (caught, caught)
6. blow (blew, blown)	18. take (took, taken)
7. bet (<i>bet</i> , <i>bet</i>)	19. make (made, made)
8. choose (chose, chosen)	20. swim (swam, swum)
9. put (<i>put, put</i>)	21. grow (grew, grown)
10. write (wrote, written)	22. let (let, let)
11. drive (drove, driven)	23. sing (sang, sung)
12. feel (felt, felt)	24. win (won, won)

EXERCISE 3 > Let's talk. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)

Complete the questions with the past participle form of the verb. Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering questions with *How long have you*.

- 1. wear glasses \rightarrow How long have you worn glasses?
 - \rightarrow I've worn glasses for three years. OR I don't wear glasses.
- 2. speak English
- 3. know our teacher
- 4. study English
- 5. have a passport/visa
- 6. own (a cell phone, a computer, a tablet, an iPod[®], etc.)
- 7. be awake
- 8. live in this town
- 9. participate in sports
- 10. play (the piano, the guitar, the violin, etc.)



EXERCISE 4 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 2-3)

Complete the sentences about yourself. What do you notice about the tenses of the verbs in blue? In which sentences do the situations continue from the past until now?

- 1. I got up at ______ o'clock today.
- 2. I have been up since ______ o'clock.
- 3. I have been up for _____ hours.

28 CHAPTER 2

2-3 Present Perfect:	Since and For		IELTS WWAILUTER
Up to now	(a) Mrs. Oh has teacher sinc		The PRESENT PERFECT is often used with since and for to talk about situations that began in the past and continue up to now. PRESENT PERFECT FORM = has/have + past participle In (a): SITUATION = being a teacher TIME FRAME = from 2002 up to now
 b) I <i>have been</i> in this city <i>since</i> last May. c) We <i>have been</i> here <i>since</i> nine o'clock. d) Rita knows Rob. They met two months ago. She <i>has</i> 			
 <i>known</i> him <i>for</i> two months. I met him three years ago. <i>have known</i> him <i>for</i> three years. <i>have known</i> Rob <i>since I was in high school</i>. We <i>have lived</i> in an apartment <i>since we moved</i> to this city. 		A time cla as in (e) a	ause (i.e., a subject and verb) may follow <i>since</i> , and (f).* NOTE: The verb before <i>since</i> is present The verb in the time clause is simple past.

*See Chart 17-2, p. 373, for more information about time clauses.

EXERCISE 5 Looking at grammar. (Chart 2-3)

Complete the sentences with appropriate time expressions.

1.	Today is <u>the 14th of June</u> . I bought this book <u>two weeks ago</u> .
	I have had this book since <u>the fi</u> r <u>s o flun e</u> .
	I have had this book for <u>two weeks</u> .
2.	I started learning English in (year).
	I've been an English student for
	I've been an English student since
3.	I met my best friend in
	I've known her/him for
	I've known her/him since
4.	I first used (name of social media) in
	I have had a/an account since
	I have had a/an account for
5.	I have a/an ago that I bought ago.
	I have had it since
	I have had it for

EXERCISE 6 > Let's talk. (Chart 2-3)

Work in small groups. Complete each sentence using *since*. (You may use the Internet.) Then restate your sentence using *for*. Compare your answers with other groups. Answers may vary; discuss the most interesting differences.

Trivia: How Long?

- 1. Dinosaurs have been extinct since _____ / for _____ years.
- 2. Humans have used fire since _____ / for _____ years.
- 3. People have driven cars since _____ / for _____ years.
- 4. Cars have had airbags since _____ / for _____ years.
- 5. Doctors have treated infections with penicillin since _____ / for _____ years.
- 6. People have communicated by email since _____/ for _____ years.
- 7. Jet airplanes have carried airline passengers since _____/ for _____ years.
- 8. Satellites have gone into space since _____/ for _____ years.

EXERCISE 7 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 2-3)

Work with a partner. Take turns completing the sentences with the words in the box.

a long time two days the beginning of March	most of the month December last week	New Year's Day days over a week	yesterday you got here ages
Snow has been on the ground	since	It has been cold for	

EXERCISE 8 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 2-3)

Choose the correct verbs.

A House in the Woods

- 1. Richard and Sylvia lived / have lived in a log cabin since they moved / have moved to Canada.
- 2. Since Sylvia was / has been a child, she loved / has loved the outdoors.
- 3. Richard wanted / has wanted to live in the woods since he first went / has gone camping with his parents.
- 4. They saw / have seen a lot of wildlife since they bought / have bought their property.
- 5. Since they left / have left the city, they felt / have felt a lot more relaxed.

30 CHAPTER 2



EXERCISE 9 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 2-4)

Check (\checkmark) the statements that are true for you. Then <u>underline</u> the time words in each sentence. Is the time exact or unspecified?

- 1. _____ I have already had lunch.
- 2. ____ I haven't finished my homework for this class yet.
- 3. _____ I have never been late to class.
- 4. ____ I have felt tired lately.

2-4 Present Perfect:	Unspecified Time and	d Repeated Events
time?	 (a) - Have you ever seen snow? No, I haven't. I've never seen snow. But Anna has seen snow. (b) Have you finished your homework yet? I still haven't finished mine. Jack has already finished his. 	The present perfect can talk about <i>events that</i> <i>have</i> (or <i>haven't</i>) <i>happened before now.</i> The exact time of the event is unspecified. The adverbs <i>ever</i> , <i>never</i> , <i>yet</i> , <i>still</i> , <i>already</i> , and <i>lately</i> are often used with the present perfect. In (a): EVENT = seeing snow TIME FRAME = from the beginning of their lives up to now In (b): EVENT = doing homework TIME FRAME = from the time the people started up to now
just X	 (c) Sara has recently finished her work. (d) Sara has just finished her work. (e) Sara has finished her work. 	Use of the present perfect with <i>just</i> or <i>recently</i> <i>emphasizes that an action was recently</i> <i>completed.</i> In (c) and (d): EVENT = doing work TIME FRAME = a recent time in the past Sometimes <i>just</i> or <i>recently</i> is implied by use of the present perfect. For example, in (e), Sara has <i>recently</i> or <i>just</i> finished her work.
test 1 x beginning of term test 2 x of test 3 x of now	 (f) We have had three tests so far this term. (g) I've met many people since I came here. 	The present perfect can also express an event that has occurred repeatedly from a point in the past up to the present time. The event may happen again. In (f): REPEATED EVENT = taking tests TIME FRAME = from the beginning of the term up to now In (g): REPEATED EVENT = meeting people TIME FRAME = from the time I came here up to now
CONTRACTIONS: (h) <i>I've</i> been there. <i>You've</i> been th <i>They've</i> been there. <i>He's</i> been there. <i>She's</i> been th		 Have and has are usually contracted with personal pronouns in informal writing, as in (h). NOTE: He's there. He's = He is He's been there. He's = He has

TS

IEI

EXERCISE 10 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 2-1 \rightarrow 2-4)

Check (\checkmark) all the correct verbs.



At Work

1. Where have your colleagues _____ so far?

5	0	
∕ been	traveled	presenting
went	taught	ridden
√ worked	living	flown
drove	ran	stay
2. We still haven't	_ the project.	
finished	worked on	began
complete	starting	study
did	spent time on	viewing
see	looked at	discussed
3. What hasn't your te	am yet?	
done	wrote	decided
saw	gotten	researched
tried	communicated	understanding
paid for	bought	spend

EXERCISE 11 \blacktriangleright Grammar and speaking. (Charts 2-1 \rightarrow 2-4)

Complete each sentence with the past participle form of a verb in the box. Some sentences have more than one possibility. Then interview another student and circle yes or no. If the person answers "yes," ask for more information.

	how teach leep witness		
1. Have you ever <u>dreamed / dreamt</u>	_ in English?	yes	no
2. Have you ever	$_{-}$ in a tent?	yes	no
3. Have you ever	_ someone a skill?	yes	no
4. Have you ever	_ an unusual pet?	yes	no
5. Have you ever	_ a crime?	yes	no
6. Have you ever	_ a test?	yes	no
7. Have you ever	_ in a rock band?	yes	no
8. Have you ever	_ someone around your city?	yes	no
9. Have you ever	_ software?	yes	no
10. Have you ever	_ seasick?	yes	no

*ace = do exceptionally well on something

EXERCISE 12 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 2-1 \rightarrow 2-4)

Underline the present perfect verbs. What is the time frame in each situation?

At a Party

Example: A: I haven't attended many parties since I came to this city. I hardly know anyone here.B: C'mon. I'll introduce you to some people.

Time frame: from the time the speaker arrived in this city to the present time

- A: Hi, Judy. Welcome to the party. Have you ever met my cousin, Mark?
 B: No, I haven't. It's nice to meet you.
- 2. A: How did you like the DVD I lent you?
 - B: Gosh, I'm sorry, but I haven't watched it yet. I haven't had time.
- 3. A: This week has been crazy so far. I've had two tests and a quiz. And it's only Wednesday!
 - B: I know. It gets really busy toward the end of the quarter.
- 4. A: This food looks delicious! I haven't eaten all day.B: Try the lobster. It's amazing.
 - A: Hmmm. I've never had lobster. I'll try it.

EXERCISE 13 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 2-1 \rightarrow 2-4)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the present perfect or simple past verb.

An Experience Studying Abroad

Gabriel is the first person in his family to study abroad. He (be	e) a student at
Oxford University for the past year. He is studying internation	al relations there on a scholarship.
His parents are very proud. No one in the family (receive, ever)	a
scholarship before. Gabriel (want)3	to study overseas since his family
(<i>take</i>) a trip to Asia when he was a teena	ger. He enjoyed meeting people
from other cultures and finding out more about them. Since h	e (<i>come</i>)5
to Oxford, he (<i>meet</i>) students from 6	around the world. During this
time, he (<i>discover</i>) common in	terests among his classmates. He
(hear, also) a variety of opinior	ns very different from his. He (learn)
much about the world both it	nside and outside the classroom

9

_ much about the world, both inside and outside the classroom.



Oxford University





lobster with shrimp around it

EXERCISE 14 \blacktriangleright Let's talk: game. (Charts 2-1 \rightarrow 2-4)

Sit in a circle (a maximum of 18 students). If there are more than 18, divide the class into two or more circles as necessary. Student 1 makes a true sentence with the given phrase, using the affirmative with *before* or the negative with *never*.

Example: 1. buy a car \rightarrow I've bought a car before. OR I've never bought a car.

Student 2 repeats the sentence using *He/She* and then makes a sentence for item 2.

Example: 2. break a window \rightarrow He's bought a car before. OR He's never bought a car before. I've never broken a window.

Student 3 repeats the sentences from Students 1 and 2, and then makes a sentence for item 3. Continue until all students have made sentences. Classmates may help students who are having difficulty.

- 1. buy a car
- 2. break a window
- 3. drive a truck
- 4. teach a class
- 5. make a cup of espresso
- 6. win a contest
- 7. ride an elephant
- 8. eat homemade ice cream
- 9. fall off a ladder

- 10. swing a baseball bat
- 11. lose my ID
- 12. forget to pay a bill
- 13. grow my own vegetables
- 14. build a house
- 15. accidentally tear a page out of a textbook
- 16. catch a big fish
- 17. dig up something valuable
- 18. wear socks that didn't match

EXERCISE 15 Reading, grammar, and speaking. (Chart 2-4)

Part I. Read the paragraph. <u>Underline</u> the present perfect verbs. Discuss their use.

A Bucket List

The phrase "bucket list" has become popular because of a movie of the same name: *The Bucket List*. In the movie, two cancer patients, one a playboy and the other a family man, become roommates in the hospital. Neither has a good prognosis. They spend a lot of time together and talk about what they want to do before they "kick the bucket." *Kick the bucket* is an idiom for "die." So the two friends make "a bucket list": a list of things they want to accomplish before they kick the bucket.

Now many people have made bucket lists. Activities often include traveling to exotic places and doing exciting sports like

skydiving or bungee jumping. There are books and websites with hundreds of suggestions.

Think about your life. What haven't you done but would like to do?

Part II. Work with a partner and take turns summarizing what Monica has already done and what she has not yet done. Use these sentences: *She has ... already.* OR *She hasn't ... yet.*

- Do you know these words? - cancer patient
- prognosis



SITUATION: Monica, an architect, is 65 years old. She has had a bucket list since she was 50. checkmarks are for the activities she has already done.

- 1. \checkmark ride in a hot-air balloon
- 2. ____ learn how to write computer code
- 3. \checkmark eat at a 5-star restaurant
- 4. ____ find a job she never wants to quit
- 5. _____ sing in front of a live audience
- 6. _____ discover a cure for her insomnia
- 7. _____ sleep on a beach under the stars
- 8. \checkmark swim with dolphins
- 9. \checkmark travel to Antarctica

10. \checkmark have an interesting conversation with a famous person

Part III. Make your own bucket list of 5-7 items. Share your list with your classmates. Who has the same wishes as you? Who has already accomplished some of them?

EXERCISE 16 > Warm-up: listening. (Chart 2-5)

Listen to these common questions. How are have and has pronounced?

- 1. How have you been?
- 2. How long have you been here?
- 3. What has happened?
- 5. When have I said that?
- 4. What have you done?
- 6. Where have you been?

2-5 Have and Has in Spoken English		
(a) <i>How have</i> you been? <i>Spoken:</i> How/v/ you been? OR How/əv/ you been?	In spoken English, the present perfect helping verbs <i>has</i> and <i>have</i> are often reduced following nouns and question words.* In (a): <i>have</i> can sound like /v/ or /əv/.	
(b) Jane has already eaten lunch. Spoken: Jane/z/ already eaten lunch. OR Jane/əz/ already eaten lunch.	In (b): has can sound like /z/ or /əz/. In (c): has can sound like /s / or /əs/.** NOTE: "ə" sounds like "uh."	
(c) <i>Mike has</i> quit his job. <i>Spoken: Mike/s/</i> quit his job. OR <i>Mike/əs/</i> quit his job.	Jane/z/ eaten. Jane's = Jane has Jane/z/ here. Jane's = Jane is Mike/s/ quit his job. Mike's = Mike has Mike/s/ here. Mike's = Mike is	

*In very informal writing, has is sometimes contracted with nouns (e.g., Jane's already eaten.) and question words (e.g., Where's he gone?). Have is rarely contracted in writing except with pronouns (e.g., l've). See Chart 2-4 for written contractions of have and has with pronouns. See Appendix Chart C for more information about contractions in general. **See Appendix Chart E-6 for the pronunciation of final -s after voiced and voiceless sounds.

EXERCISE 17 > Listening. (Chart 2-5)

Complete the sentences with is, has, or have. Write the full forms, not the contractions.

At Home with Roommates

Example: You will hear: Finally! The mail's come. You will write: Finally! The mail <u>has</u> come.

1. Someone's phone _____ ringing. It's not mine.

2. Your girlfriend _____ just left a message.

- 3. Her friends _____ canceled, so she's free tonight.
- 4. The coffee ______ fresh. Have some.
- 5. It looks like your package ______ arrived.
- 6. Your sister _____ downstairs. She's borrowing some boxes for her move.
- 7. Our neighbors _____ planned a party for next weekend.
- 8. What ______ we told them? Are we going?

EXERCISE 18 ► Warm-up. (Chart 2-6)

What do you notice about the verb tenses in blue? Discuss the differences.



2-6 Present Perfect v	vs. Simple Past	
PRESENT PERFECT	(a) <i>I've met</i> Linda, but I <i>haven't met</i> her husband. <i>Have</i> you <i>met</i> him?	The PRESENT PERFECT is used to talk about past events when there is no specific mention of time. In (a): The speaker is talking about some unspecified time before now.
SIMPLE PAST	(b) I <i>met</i> Helen <i>yesterday</i> at a party. Her husband <i>was</i> there too, but I <i>didn't meet</i> him. <i>Did</i> you <i>meet</i> him at the party?	The SIMPLE PAST is used when there is a specific mention of time. In (b): The speaker is thinking of a specific time: yesterday.
PRESENT PERFECT	(c) Sam <i>has been</i> a math teacher <i>for</i> ten years. He loves teaching.	The PRESENT PERFECT is used for situations that began in the past and continue to the present. In (c): The present perfect tells us that Sam is still a teacher now.
SIMPLE PAST	(d) Jim was a teacher for ten years, from 2000 to 2010. Now he is an engineer.	The SIMPLE PAST is used for situations that began and ended in the past. In (d): The simple past tells us that Jim is not a teacher now.

ove.

36 CHAPTER 2

EXERCISE 19 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Chart 2-6)

Use the information in the timeline to:

- a. make past tense sentences with: *leave, start;*
- b. make present perfect sentences with: be, live, study, work.

Jin's Timeline

Example: Jin's parents have been in Australia since 1990.

- 1990: Jin's parents immigrated to Australia from Hong Kong.
- 1991: They settled in Sydney, Australia.
- 1992: They opened a restaurant.
- 1995: Jin was born.
- 2013: He entered the University of Melbourne.
- 2015: He went to Hong Kong to study Chinese.
- Now: Jin is studying in Hong Kong. His parents are working at their restaurant in Sydney.

EXERCISE 20 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 2-6)

Complete the sentences. Use the simple past or the present perfect form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Noor is from a hot, dry country. She (see, never) ______ snow. Last January,

I (see) ______ snow for the first time in my life.

- 2. Last night my friend and I (have) ______ some free time, so
 - we (go) ______ to a show. Since classes began, I (have, not)

_____ much free time.

3. Ming Won (be) ______ in this class for three months. His English is

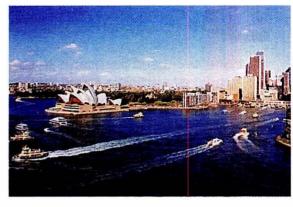
getting better and better. He plans to take this class until the end of May. Mrs. Perez (be)

_____ in our class for three months, but then she left school to get a job.

- 4. Late-breaking news! A major earthquake (*occur, just*) ______ in southern California. It (*occur*) ______ at 9:25 A.M.
- 5. A: Greg Adams? Yes, I know him. I (know) _____ him since college.
 - B: Did Natalie just say Joe North passed away? I'm sorry to hear that.
 - I (*know*) ______ him well when we were in college together.
- 6. I admit that I (get**) ______ older since I last (see) _____

you, but with any luck at all, I (get, also) ______ wiser.





^{*}Typically, the present perfect is used in sentences with *already*, *yet*, and *just*, but in some situations the simple past is also commonly used with these adverbs in informal English, especially American English, with no difference in meaning.

^{**}COMPARE:

⁽a) I have gotten or have got four letters so far this week. In this sentence, have gotten / have got is present perfect. (NOTE: Got is used as the past participle of get in both American English and British English. Gotten occurs only in American English.)

⁽b) I have got a problem. In this sentence, have got is not present perfect. I've got a problem = I have a problem. The expression have got means "have" and is common in informal spoken English. Its meaning is present; it has no past form.

EXERCISE 21 Reading and grammar. (Chart 2-6)

Read the blog entry by author Stacy Hagen. <u>Underline</u> the simple past and present perfect verbs in the paragraphs. Discuss as a class why they are simple past or present perfect.

BlueBookBlog Using Flashcards with Spaced-Repetition Practice

Have you ever used flashcards to study grammar or vocabulary? Have you made flashcards to study the past participle forms that you saw at the beginning of this chapter? Research has shown that using flashcards with spaced-repetition practice is a very effective way to memorize information.

Spaced repetition means spacing out your practice over a period of time. For example, after you study a list of vocabulary words, you wait a few days to review them. If you get the words correct, you wait longer before you review them again. On the other hand, for words you missed, you practice them over shorter periods of time. There are many apps for spaced-repetition flashcard practice. I personally like AnkiApp because it's very user-friendly. Anki follows your progress and chooses the flashcards for you to study each day.

Why is memorizing this way effective? Think about learning basic math. If you know your times tables (e.g., 5x1, 5x2, 5x3), then your mind is free to do more complex math because you don't have to figure out these basic equations. The answer is right there for you to use. We can think of grammar in a similar way. If you know your past participles automatically, you don't need to think about the form before you try to express your ideas.

For English grammar, I think spaced repetition is especially useful for learning irregular past tense and past participle forms; gerunds and infinitives; prepositions; and two- and three-word verbs. You can try out this technique with the past participles that we have studied in this chapter or with the gerunds and infinitives at the end of Chapter 1. See what you think. You may be pleasantly surprised by your progress. Good luck!

EXERCISE 22 \blacktriangleright Let's talk. (Charts 2-1 \rightarrow 2-6)

Work in groups of 5-7 students. Ask questions with the given words and **Who has**. When someone answers "yes," ask *wh*-questions to get more information. NOTE: The follow-up questions will use past tense.

Example: catch a big fish STUDENT A: Who has caught a big fish? STUDENT B: I have. STUDENT C: What did you catch? STUDENT D: Where did you catch it? etc.

- 1. write a blog?
- 2. lose a credit card?
- 3. climb to the top of a mountain?
- 4. give a speech to a large audience?
- 5. tell a lie?
- 6. sing in public?
- 7. ride on a motorcycle?

- 8. feed a lion?
- 9. drink Turkish coffee?
- 10. take a cooking class?
- 11. shake hands with someone famous?
- 12. hold a snake?
- 13. fall on ice?
- 14. accidentally shrink a shirt?

EXERCISE 23 Editing. (Chart 2-6)

Help Carolina send an effective job inquiry. Read her letter and correct the 8 errors she makes with past tense and present perfect verbs.

414 3rd Ave. New York, NY 10026

Dear Mr. Anderson:

I have just learned from my friend Robert Shaw that he has deciding to leave his position as tour guide and that you need to find a summer replacement quickly. I would like to apply for the position.

I have come to this city two years ago to study at Columbia University. I am a student in history and economics since that time. I am a hard worker and have held several part-time jobs at the college: tutor, library researcher, and History Department teaching assistant.

I am originally from Mexico City and speak fluent Spanish and English. My father is an English professor, and I have learned to speak English as a child. When I lived in Mexico, I have worked at my uncle's hotel. I help tourists with their travel arrangements in the city. I also give city tours in both Spanish and English. I have a good sense of humor, and my tours were a lot of fun.

Because of my history background, I am very interested in this city since I arrived. I have done a lot of reading and have discovered many fascinating stories about it.

I think I have the qualifications to make an excellent tour guide. Would it be possible to speak with you about the job at a convenient time? I thank you in advance.

Sincerely, Carolina Burns Carolina Burns

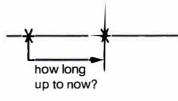
EXERCISE 24 > Warm-up. (Chart 2-7)

Check (\checkmark) the two correct sentences in each group.

- 1. Anita is at the bus stop.
 - a. _____ She is waiting for the bus.
 - b. _____ She is waiting for the bus for 15 minutes.
 - c. _____ She has been waiting for the bus for 15 minutes.
- 2. Tarik is at the bus stop too.
 - a. _____ He is standing beside Anita.
 - b. _____ He is standing there since five o'clock.
 - c. _____ He has been standing there since five o'clock.



2-7 Present Perfect Progressive



(a)	Right now I am sitting at my desk.	COMPARE:	
 (b) I have been sitting at my desk since seven o'clock. I have been sitting here for two hours. 		In (a): The PRESENT PROGRESSIVE expresses an activity in progress right now. (See Chart 1-1, p. 2.)	
 (c) It's been raining all day. It's still raining right now. 		In (b): The PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE expresses how long an activity has been in progress. In other words, it expresses the duration of an activity that began in the past and continues in the present.	
		Time expressions often used with this tense are	
		 since and for, as in (b); all day/all morning/all week, as in 	
		NOTE: In (c): It's been raining. It's = It has It's still raining. It's = It is	
. ,	l' ve known Alex since he was a child. DRRECT: - L've been knowing- Alex	The present perfect progressive is not used with non-progressive or stative verbs such as <i>know</i> . To express the duration of a situation that began in the past and continues to the present, only the present perfect is used.	
	since he was a child.	(See Chart 1-3, p. 7, for a list of non-progressive verbs.)	
	How long <i>have</i> you <i>been living</i> here? How long <i>have</i> you <i>lived</i> here?	For some (not all) verbs, the idea of <i>how long</i> can be expressed by either tense — the present perfect progressive or the present perfect.	
 (g) Ben has been wearing glasses since he was ten. NOTE: (e) and (f) have the same meaning; (g) and (h) have the same meaning. 			
(h)	Ben <i>has worn</i> glasses since he was ten.	Either tense can be used only when the verb expresses the duration of present activities or situations that happen regularly, usually, habitually: e.g., <i>live, work, teach, study, wear glasses, play chess, etc.</i>	
		recently	
(i)	I've been thinking about looking for a different job. This one doesn't pay enough.	When the tense is used without any mention of time, it expresses a general activity in progress recently, lately. For example, (i) means <i>I've been thinking about this recently, lately.</i>	
(j)	All of the students <i>have been</i> <i>studying</i> hard. Final exams start next week.		

EXERCISE 25 Looking at grammar. (Chart 2-7)

Complete the sentences with *is*, *are*, *has been*, or *have been*.

- 1. Mr. and Mrs. Jones _________ sitting outside on their porch right now.
- They _________ sitting there since after dinner.
- 2. The test begins at 1:00. Right now it's 11:00. Sara is at the library. She _____
- reviewing her notes right now. She ______ reviewing her notes all morning.
- Marco wants to buy a pair of jeans. He ______ waiting for a cashier right now.
 He ______ standing there for over five minutes. He needs to find someone.

EXERCISE 26 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 2-7)

Complete the email with the present perfect progressive form of the verbs in parentheses.

	<u>.</u>
From: Jack To: Dawson/Reed family Subject: Update	Today at 8:18 PM
Hi everyone, Here is a quick update on our family's activities for the past month. My brother (<i>look</i>)	
(<i>travel</i>)(6) research for a travel blog that she with the formation of the travel blog that she with the travel blog t	rites.
As you can see, we've all been very busy!	

EXERCISE 27 > Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 2-7)

With a partner, take turns asking and answering questions. Use the phrases in the box and the present perfect progressive for the answer.

drink a milkshake	stand outside in the cold	swim in the pool
admire your new hairstyle	work for six hours straight	try to fix a leak
drive around the city	listen to music with my headphones on	

- 1. Why are you shivering?
- 2. What took you so long? We're late!
- 3. Do you know you have a milk mustache?
- 1. I've ...
- 2. I got lost. I've ...
- 3. Oops. I've ...

Perfect and Perfect Progressive Tenses 41

- 4. When are you going to take a break?
- 5. Why are you under the kitchen sink?
- 6. I've been calling you. Didn't you hear me?
- 7. What?? Why are you looking at me like that?
- 8. Your eyes are really red. Have you been crying?
- 4. Soon. I've ...
- 5. I've ...
- 6. No, I've ...
- 7. Nothing's wrong. I've just ...
- 8. No, I've ...

EXERCISE 28 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 2-7)

Complete the sentences. Use the verb in *italics* in the first sentence to complete the remaining sentence(s). Use the present perfect or the present perfect progressive. In some sentences, either verb form is correct.

1. I'm trying to study. I <u>have been trying</u> to study for the last hour, but something always seems to interrupt me. I think I'd better go to the library.

2. Joe has an old bike. He <u>has had</u> the same bike for 20 years.

- 3. Matt works at ABC Appliances. He <u>has worked / has been working</u> there since 2005.
- 4. Toshi *is waiting* for his friend. He ______ for her since five o'clock. She's late for their date.
- 5. I like funny TV shows. I ______ comedies ever since I was a child.

6. Susie is watching several episodes in a row of her favorite comedy. She _____

_____ them all afternoon without a break.

7. Dr. Chang *teaches* math. He is an excellent teacher. He ______ math at this school for more than 25 years.

- 8. Don't wake Nora up. She *is sleeping*. She ______ all morning. She isn't feeling well.
- 9. Sue and Rick are playing tennis right now and they're getting tired. They _____

★ EXERCISE 29 ★ Listening. (Chart 2-7)

Listen to the conversation one time with your book closed. Then, with your book open, listen again and write the words you hear.

It's been a while!

A: Good to see you! So what	up to lately?	
B: Not too much.	it easy.	
A: How nice! Glad to hear you	too	hard. By the
way, your parents? I	them	for
a while.	40 40	

42 CHAPTER 2



B:	gree now that they're retired.	eat7	- ELTS
A:	How long8	retired?	mating by it is a
	Gosh, I don't know9		
	So		
B :	Yeah	in warm, sunny	
	places in the winter and		A CONTRACTOR
A:	What a great way to spend retireme	ent! I'm glad to hear	themselves.

EXERCISE 30 ► Reading and writing. (Chart 2-7)

Part I. Product reviews on websites often use the present perfect and present perfect progressive. Look at the following examples and <u>underline</u> the present perfect and present perfect progressive verbs. Discuss their use.

1. *** * * * ☆ Very Nice Camera!**

By Sammy P.

I have had this camera for 8 months now. It takes great pictures. I haven't had any problems with it. It's a little complicated to learn at first, but the instructions help. I have ordered other products from this site and have had great service.

2. ***** Incredible Product

By Vitafan

I have been taking these vitamins since last year. They're incredible! My memory has improved. I have had more concentration and have been doing better in school. I have lost weight and I haven't even been trying! This product is fantastic!

3. ☆☆☆☆ **DO NOT BUY**

By Adriana J.

I don't know why this company is in business. I have never been so disappointed with a product in my life. My laptop arrived with a dead battery. The customer service is terrible. I have emailed and called the company numerous times, but they haven't responded. I have asked for a refund and now am waiting for a response. Order from this company only if you want a defective product.

Part II. Find an online product review that uses present perfect and/or present perfect progressive. <u>Underline</u> the verbs in the perfect tenses.

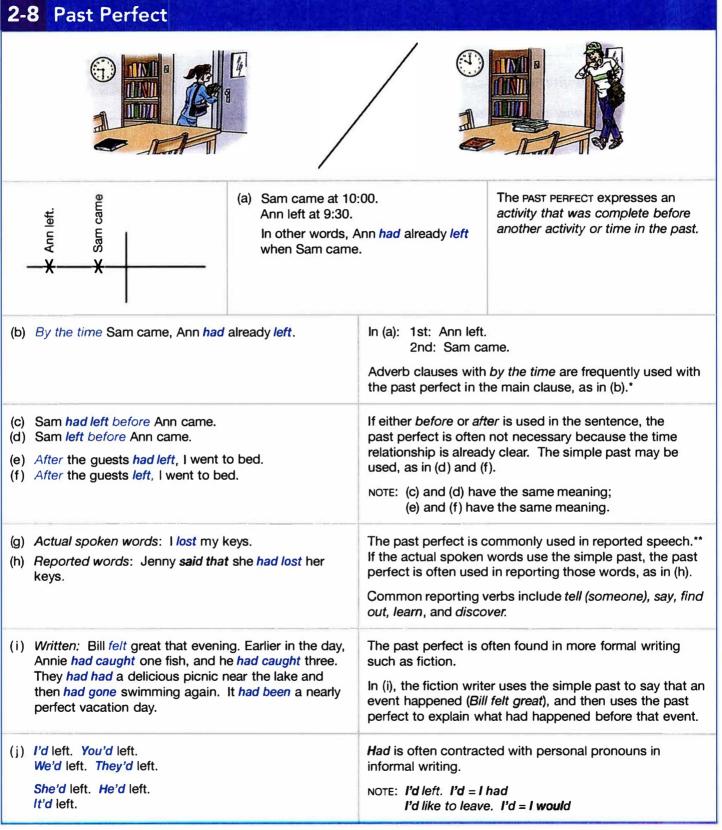
Part III. Write a short product review for an item you own. Use the present perfect and present perfect progressive at least one time each.

^{*}Notice: A statement form (not a question form) can sometimes be used to ask a question by using a rising intonation at the end of a sentence.

EXERCISE 31 ► Warm-up. (Chart 2-8)

Look at the verbs in blue. Which event happened first?

- 1. The teacher stood up. Someone had knocked on the classroom door.
- 2. I looked at the board. The teacher had written my name there.



*For more information about by the time, see Chart 17-2, p. 373.

**For more information about verb form usage in reported speech, see Chart 12-7, p. 262.

44 CHAPTER 2

EXERCISE 32 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 2-8)

Use the simple past or the past perfect form of the verbs in parentheses to complete the sentences. In some cases, either tense is correct.

How was your day?

- 1. I woke up with a headache, but I (feel) _____ better after I (take) _____ some medicine.
- 2. I was late for my first class. The teacher (give, already) ______a quiz when I (get) ______ to class.
- 3. It was raining really hard when I (leave) _____ home this morning. My shoes were soaked when I (get) ______ to work. Fortunately, by the time I (be) ______ ready to leave, they (dry, already) _____
- 4. I (make) ______ a fantastic lunch to take to work. I (put) ______ it in the staff fridge this morning. I never (*have*) ______ a chance to eat it. When I went to the fridge, someone (eat, already) ______ it.

EXERCISE 33 Looking at grammar. (Chart 2-8)

Complete the sentences with the given verbs and the simple past or past perfect.

1. feel / forget / look / offer

I got ready to pay the bill, but when I	in my purse, I discovered that
---	--------------------------------

______ so embarrassed. My friend I_____

generously ______ to pay my part of the bill for me.

2. lose / recognize / run / talk

Yesterday at the airport, I ______ into Rick Collins, an old friend of mine. I (not)

_____ to him in years. At first, I (not) ______

him because he ______ a great deal of weight.

3. decide / go / see

During my lunch break, I ______ to go to the art museum. I (never) _____ _____ any of Picasso's paintings before I ______ there.

EXERCISE 34 Warm-up: listening. (Chart 2-9) ČĆ

How is *had* pronounced in these sentences?

Excuses

- 1. I'm sorry I missed the appointment. I had written down the wrong date.
- 2. We knew we were running late. We had misread the bus schedule.
- 3. Sorry I wanted to come to your party, but my family had already made other plans.

2-9 Had in Spoken English				
(a)	Joe had already heard the story. Spoken: Joe /d/ already heard the story. OR Joe /əd/ already heard the story.	In spoken English, the helping verb had in the past perfect is often reduced following nouns and question words. It can be pronounced as /d/ or as /əd/.*		
(b)	Who had been there before you? Spoken: Who/d/ been there before you? OR Who/ad/ been there before you?	NOTE: "ə" sounds like "uh."		
(c)	The dog had a bone. <i>Spoken:</i> The dog <i>had</i> a bone.	Had is not reduced when it is a main verb, as in (c).		

*See Chart 2-4 for written contractions of had with pronouns.

EXERCISE 35 Grammar and listening. (Charts 2-5, 2-8, and 2-9)

Before listening, complete the sentences with *is*, *had*, or *would*. Then listen and note the reduced pronunciation for these verbs.

A Base Jumper

 My friend Tom ______ a base jumper. He jumps off buildings and mountains — for fun. Last year he jumped off a skyscraper. Tom and his team ______ planned it for over a year.



S S

- Family and friends ______ told him he was crazy, but that didn't change his mind.
- 3. I wanted to watch, but I ______ gotten sick the day before.
- 4. Afterward, Tom said it was the most thrilling experience he ______ ever had.
- 5. I ______ kind of like to try something like that, but I'm afraid of heights.

EXERCISE 36 > Listening. (Charts 2-5, 2-8, and 2-9)

Listen to the sentences. You will hear reduced forms for *had*, *would*, *has*, and *have*. Write their non-reduced forms.

Examples: You will hear: The kids'd stayed up too late. They were late for school.
You will write: The kids <u>had</u> stayed up too late. They were late for school.
You will hear: The kids'd like to stay up late. There's no school tomorrow.
You will write: The kids <u>would</u> like to stay up late. There's no school tomorrow.
You will hear: The kids've stayed up too late. They need to go to bed.
You will write: The kids <u>have</u> stayed up too late. They need to go to bed.

- 1. a. You're a new student, aren't you? How long ______ you been in this country?
 - b. You left your job? How long _____ you been there?
- 2. a. You're looking for Jack? Jack ______ left. He isn't here.
 - b. We were looking for Sam, but he _____ left by the time we got there.

- 3. a. Since we're teachers, we have the summers off and do a lot of traveling. We _ like to travel to Africa next.
 - b. We ______ wanted to travel with my parents on our last trip, but they became ill and needed to cancel.
- 4. a. Unfortunately, my phone died when we were lost. I ______ forgotten to recharge it.
 - b. My phone's dead, and I ______ forgotten to bring the charger.

EXERCISE 37 > Warm-up. (Chart 2-10)

Which sentence (a. or b.) logically follows each statement? Discuss the meanings of the verbs in blue.

- 1. I have been waiting for Jack since 5:00.
- 2. I had been waiting for Jack since 5:00.
- 3. I have been working outside for almost an hour.
- 4. I had been working outside for almost an hour.
- b. And I'm still here.

a. Then I left.

- a. It's hot. I think I'll go inside.
- b. But I got too hot and came inside.

duration of waiting 4:30-6:00	 (a) Eric finally came at six o'clock. I had been waiting for him since four-thirty. (b) The police had been looking for the criminal for two years before they caught him. 	The PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE emphasizes the duration of an activity that was in progress before another activity or time in the past. NOTE: The past perfect progressive is used infrequently compared to other verb tenses.
close in time	 (c) When Judy got home, her hair was still wet because she had been swimming. (d) I went to Ed's house after the funeral. His eyes were red because he had been crying. 	This tense also may express an activity in progress close in time to another activity or time in the past.

EXERCISE 38 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 2-10)

Read the sentences and answer the questions that follow.

- a. Ryan has been researching a topic for his thesis since the beginning of the year.
- b. Ryan had been researching a topic for his thesis when he decided to change majors.
- c. Ryan researched several different topics for his thesis.
- d. Ryan has researched several different topics for his thesis.
- e. Ryan had researched several different topics, but then he decided to change majors.
- 1. Which sentences emphasize the duration of the activity (research)?
- 2. In which sentences does the activity (research) continue up to now?
- 3. In which sentences is the activity (research) finished?
- 4. Which sentences have two activities in the past, one occurring before the other?

Perfect and Perfect Progressive Tenses 47

EXERCISE 39 Looking at grammar. (Charts 2-4, 2-7, and 2-10)

Choose the correct sentence in each pair. Explain why the other sentence is incorrect.

WWW.HISTOROW WWW.HISTOROW COMMENSATION

Updates on the Family

- a. My brother Jose has changed majors again. He's not sure what he wants to be.
 b. My brother Jose had changed majors again. He's not sure what he wants to be.
- 2. a. Until Uncle Rudi went to the doctor, he has not been sleeping well.b. Until Uncle Rudi went to the doctor, he had not been sleeping well.
- 3. a. The twins have been working on a science project all semester. It's taking a lot of time.b. The twins had been working on a science project all semester. It's taking a lot of time.
- 4. a. Jill damaged her knee during a soccer game. She had been having trouble walking, so she had surgery on it. Now she's much better.
 - b. Jill damaged her knee during a soccer game. She has been having trouble walking, so she had surgery on it. Now she's much better.
- 5. a. Our nieces are going to be in the school play next weekend. They had been rehearsing a lot. They're excited and a little nervous.
 - b. Our nieces are going to be in the school play next weekend. They've been rehearsing a lot. They're excited and a little nervous.

EXERCISE 40 Looking at grammar. (Charts 2-7 and 2-10)

Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect progressive or the past perfect progressive form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. a. We (*wait*) _____ have been waiting for Nancy for the last two hours, but she still hasn't arrived. b. We (wait) ______ had been waiting ______ for Nancy for over three hours before she finally arrived vesterday. 2. a. It is midnight. I (study) ______ for five straight hours. No wonder I'm getting tired. b. It was midnight. I (study) ______ for five straight hours. No wonder I was getting tired. 3. a. Jack suddenly realized that the teacher was asking him a question. He couldn't answer because he (daydream) ______ for the last ten minutes. b. Jack (daydream) _____ a lot. I wonder if he's in love. 4. a. Wake up! You (sleep) _____ long enough. It's time to get up. b. When I woke up, I didn't know where I was. I (sleep) ______ soundly. 5. a. Sofia (work) ________ as a software engineer when her company transferred her. Now she's head of the Information Technology department. b. Sofia (work) _____ long hours since she got the IT position.

EXERCISE 41 Let's talk. (Chapters 1 and 2 Review)

Answer the questions and discuss the meaning of the verb forms. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- a. When the rain stopped, Gloria was riding her bike to work.
 b. When the rain stopped, Paul jumped on his bike and rode to work.
 QUESTION: Who got wet on the way to work?
 ANSWER: *Gloria*.
- 2. a. Ms. Lincoln taught at this school for nine years.b. Mr. Sanchez has taught at this school for nine years.QUESTION: Who is teaching at this school now?
- 3. a. Alice was opening the door when the doorbell rang.b. George walked to the door after the doorbell rang.QUESTION: Who had been expecting a visitor?
- 4. a. Donna lived in Chicago for five years.b. Carlos has been living in Chicago for five years.QUESTION: Who still lives in Chicago?
- 5. a. Jane drank some lemonade because she had been working outside.b. Sue drank some lemonade because she was working outside.QUESTION: Who drank lemonade after she finished working?
- 6. a. I looked across the street. Mr. Fox was waving at me.b. I looked across the street. Mrs. Cook waved at me.QUESTION: Who began to wave at me before I looked across the street?
- 7. a. Dan was leaving the room when I walked in.b. Sam had left the room when I walked in.QUESTION: Who did I see when I came into the room?
- 8. a. Ken went to the store because he was running out of food.b. Ann went to the store because she had run out of food.QUESTION: Who is better at planning ahead?
- 9. a. Jack had been studying Spanish since he was in elementary school. He spoke it very well by the time he moved to Peru.
 - b. Robert has been studying Spanish since he was in elementary school. His Spanish is getting quite good.

QUESTION: Who is studying Spanish in school?

EXERCISE 42 • Looking at grammar. (Chapters 1 and 2 Review)

Complete the sentences with verbs in the box.

have has had is was were

Travel Experiences

- 1. You need to stay calm now. The plane _____ just hitting some turbulence.
- 2. Oh, no! I _____ lost my passport! It's not in my bag.

- have has had is was were
- 3. While we ______ traveling in Europe last summer on a rail pass, we met people from around the world.
- 4. I _____ never tried frog legs. Let's try them at this café. The reviews say they're delicious.
- 5. I ______ never tried frog legs until I visited France.
- 6. I ______ getting worried when you texted. I was afraid you ______ taken the wrong subway.
- 7. People are saying that the weather ______ never been so hot and humid. I hope it's not going to stay like this for long.
- 8. The most amazing thing happened when I was in Tokyo. The very first person I saw when I stepped outside my hotel was a student I ______ taught several years before in New Zealand!
- William _____ planned to leave for Asia on Tuesday when his sister called with bad news. Their parents _____ been in a car accident.
- 10. Travel ______ becoming harder for my grandfather now. He ______ lost his ability to walk and needs to use a wheelchair.
- 11. I ______ just found the tour podcasts you mentioned. Do you want to subscribe?

EXERCISE 43 > Listening. (Chapter 2 Review)

Listen to each situation. Choose the sentence (a. or b.) that correctly describes it.

New Careers?

Example: You will hear: Kristi and her husband have had several conversations in the past few months about changing careers.
You will choose: (a) They have thought about changing careers.
b. They changed careers a few months ago.

- a. Kristi knows how to design websites.
 b. Kristi is learning how to design websites.
- 2. a. Her husband knows how to design websites.b. Her husband is learning how to design websites.
- 3. a. Kristi is working as a nurse but finds it stressful.b. Kristi has experience as a nurse.
- 4. a. Eric is designing websites now.b. Eric designed websites when he was in college.
- 5. a. Eric wants his parents to work for him part-time.b. His parents have already done work for Eric part-time.

EXERCISE 44
Check your knowledge. (Chapters 1 and 2 Review) Correct the errors in verb tense usage.

- 1. Since I came to this country, I am learning a lot about the way of life here.
- 2. I arrive here only a short time ago. I am here since last Friday.
- 3. How long you are living here? I been here for almost two years.
- 4. Why you no have been in class for the last couple of days?
- 5. I am coaching a soccer team for the last two months.
- 6. When I was a child, I had lived with my aunt instead of my parents. My uncle has die before I am born, so I never knew him. My aunt raised me alone.
- 7. I'm living in my cousin's apartment since I have arrived here. It very small, and we are sharing the bedroom. I am needing my own place, but I don't find one so far.
- 8. My grandfather had lived in a small village in Italy when he was a child. At the age of 19, he had moved to Rome, where he had met and had married my grandmother in 1957. My father had been born in Rome in 1960. I am born in Rome in 1989.

EXERCISE 45 ▶ Reading and writing. (Chapter 2)

Part I. How has the world changed since the 1950s? Read the passage. Why does the first paragraph have mostly simple past and the second paragraph have more present perfect?

A Different World

My parents were born in the 1950s.* Since then, the world has gone through extraordinary changes, especially in the areas of

communication and electronics. My parents didn't have devices like computers and cell phones. There was no Internet until the 1990s. Students went to the library to do research, and it took them many hours to find information. They typed their papers on typewriters, and when they made a mistake, they began again. They often wrote letters because long-distance phone calls were expensive. They didn't have voicemail, so they had to call people back. Some homes still had party lines: families shared one phone line, and sometimes people picked up the phone and heard their neighbors' conversations. For entertainment, they had just a few channels on the TV, or they watched movies in theaters. They played music on phonographs or listened to the radio.

Since the 1980s, computers and the Internet have changed communication dramatically. People get information instantly online, and they can reach each other quickly through email. Cell phones have been available since the 1990s. Texting has become so popular that for many people it has replaced phone calls. Computers and cell phones have also introduced people to apps for games, social media, music, movie streaming, and photo editing, to name just a few. The world seemed very quiet in my parents' time, but for better or for worse, life today has become digital.

*Note that there is no apostrophe when adding -s to years.



Do you know these words? - extraordinary - dramatically



Part II. Think about the decade when your parents' generation was born. What was different about life in that decade? Here are some areas you can think about to get started: communication, culture, fashion, advertising, entertainment, inventions, transportation, and the environment.

- 1. Choose one topic and make a list of changes.
- 2. Write one or two paragraphs based on your list.
- 3. Think carefully about the use of the simple past and present perfect as you write.

WRITING TIP

If you want your writing to sound more natural, it is important to not translate from your language. There is a good chance that your language expresses ideas very differently. In the beginning, use simple sentence structures that you have learned. You may want to express a complex idea, but if you haven't learned the grammar for this, break the idea down into simpler language. As you learn more advanced grammar, you can begin to express more complex ideas.

Reading English books and listening to English are also very important for good writing. You start to see that particular words go with other words in a specific way. And certain words, phrases, and structures begin to sound familiar as well. At this point, you may find that they start to appear in your writing in a natural way.

Part III. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box indented paragraph(s)
- 2. \Box use of the simple past for activities that began and ended at a particular time in the past
- 3. □ use of the present perfect for activities that began in the past and are still in progress, or for unspecified or recent time
- 4. □ correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Go to the Essential Online Resources for Self-Study: Gerunds and Infinitives 2



PRETEST: What do I already know?

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct verb form and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. ____ The storm will starts after midnight. It is going to last through the morning. (3-1)
- 2. ____ Wendy is going to apply to an electrical engineering program. (3-1 and 3-2)
- 3. ____ Something's wrong. The lights won't turn on. (3-2)
- 4. ____ As soon as the snow will stop, we will leave. (3-3)
- 5. ____ The train gets in at midnight tomorrow. (3-4)
- 6. ____ When you get home, I will be sleeping. (3-5)
- 7. ____ By the time Violet retires, she will has worked as a nurse for 40 years. (3-6)

L'& I :soouest sourcout

EXERCISE 1 > Warm-up. (Chart 3-1)

Complete the sentences with words from the right column.



 1. The weather ______ be hot tomorrow.
 a. to

 2. Athena ______ going to go to the beach.
 b. is

 3. She will ______ a relaxing day.
 c. are

 4. Sergio and Yanni ______ going to join her in the afternoon.
 d. will

 5. They are going ______ come home after sunset.
 e. have

3-1 Simple Future: Forms of <i>Will</i> and <i>Be Going To</i>					
 *	(a) It <i>will snow</i> tomorrow.(b) It <i>is going to snow</i> tom	iorrow.	Will and be going to express future time and P often have essentially the same meaning. Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning. See Chart 3-2 for differences in meaning between the two forms.		
Will		and the second			
(c) The weather <i>will turn</i> cold tonight. INCORRECT: The weather wills-turn cold. INCORRECT: The weather will turns-cold. INCORRECT: The weather will to-turn cold.		 Will typically expresses predictions about the future, as in (c). Will does not take a final -s. Will is followed immediately by the simple form of a verb. 			
 (d) It will not warm up for several days. (e) The snow won't melt soon. 		NEGATIVE: <i>will + not = won't</i>			
(f) Will it be icy tomorrow? How will you get here?		QUESTION: <i>will</i> + <i>subject</i> + <i>main verb</i> In (e): The speaker is asking for information about a future event.*			
 g) Spoken or written: It'll be cold. h) Spoken: Tom'll shovel the snow. Written: Tom will shovel the snow. 		CONTRACTIONS WITH PRONOUNS AND NOUNS: <i>Will</i> is often contracted with pronouns in both speaking and informal writing: <i>I'll, you'll, she'll, he'll, it'll, we'll, they'll.</i>			
(i) Spoken or very informal Nobody'll be out.	Spoken or very informal writing: Nobody'll be out.		<i>Will</i> is also often contracted with nouns in speaking but usually not in writing, as in (h).		
That'll be strange. There'll probably be sor	<i>That'll</i> be strange. <i>There'll</i> probably be some accidents.		English and very informal writing, will may be with other kinds of pronouns and <i>there,</i> as in (i).		
Be Going To					
(j) Snow is going to continu The roads are going to l (k) Informally spoken: Snow	be icy.		also commonly expresses predictions about the nformal speech, <i>going to</i> is often pronounced		
(1) I'm not going to go out.	S goinia continae all WOEK.	Ū	e + not + going to, as in (I)		
(m) Is the storm going to be	dangerous?	QUESTION:	be + <i>subject</i> + going to , as in (m)		

* Will can also be used in questions to make polite requests: Will you open the door for me, please? See Chart 9-8, p. 176.

EXERCISE 2 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 3-1)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that are predictions about the future.

Future Doctors

- 1. _____ John is going to be a heart surgeon. He wants to work with young children.
- 2. ____ He is going to be a fantastic doctor.
- 3. _____ He'll be kind and patient with the kids.
- 4. ____ He is going to graduate from medical school in June. Then he is going to start his surgical training.
- 5. _____ John's wife doesn't want to be a surgeon. She is going to specialize in senior care.
- 6. _____ She will be fantastic. She is so caring.
- 7. ____ I think they're going to have very busy lives.

54 CHAPTER 3

EXERCISE 3 > Grammar, speaking, and writing. (Chart 3-1)

Work in small groups. Make predictions by completing each sentence with the words in the box. Give your own opinion, and take turns sharing each of your answers. Then write five predictions about life in the year 2050.

is are will isn't aren't won't

In the next decade, ...

- 1. the climate ______ going to get warmer.
- 2. cities near the ocean _____ have more flooding.
- 3. smartphones and tablets ______ going to replace computers.
- 4. electric cars ______ be more common than gas-powered cars.
- 5. we ______ going to have flying cars.
- 6. computers ______ be the main teachers in classrooms.
- 7. I ______ learn to speak English fluently.
- 8. my country _____ going to win the World Cup championship.



EXERCISE 4 > Listening. (Chart 3-1)

Complete the sentences about a final exam with the non-contracted forms of the verbs you hear.

- 1. _____ to turn in all your assignments by tomorrow.
- 2. ______ for the final exam on Monday.
- 3. The _____ 50 questions.
- 4. _____ 50 questions on the exam.
- 5. _____ the whole hour to complete the test.
- 6. It's a long exam. Sorry, but ______ early.
- 7. _____ a lot of work. Study hard!
- 8. The ______ available in my office the next day.

EXERCISE 5 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 3-2)

Read the sentences and answer the questions that follow.

- a. It's going to rain tomorrow.
- b. I'm going to paint the house next week.
- c. Here. I'll carry that box. It looks heavy.
- d. It will be cloudy this weekend.
- 1. Which sentence expresses a prior plan?
- 2. Which sentences are predictions? _____ and _____
- 3. Which sentence expresses an offer to help?

3-2 Will vs. Be Going To Prediction					
 (a) According to the weather report, it <i>will be</i> cloudy tomorrow. (b) According to the weather report, it <i>is going to be</i> cloudy tomorrow. 	 Will and be going to mean the same when they make predictions about the future (prediction = a statement about something the speaker thinks will be true or will occur in the future). Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning. 				
Prior Plan					
 (c) — Why did you buy this paint? — I'm going to paint my bedroom tomorrow. (d) — Are you busy this evening? — Well, I really don't have any plans. I'll eat/I'm going to eat dinner, of course. And then I'll probably watch/I'm probably going to watch TV for a little while. (e) The meeting will begin at 10:00 A.M. We will have two hours for discussion. 	Be going to is commonly used in speaking to express a <i>prior plan</i> (i.e., a plan made before the moment of speaking). In (c): The speaker already has a plan to paint his bedroom. He could also say, "I'm planning to paint my bedroom." NOTE: In (d), either <i>will</i> or <i>be going to</i> is possible. The second speaker has not planned her evening. She is "predicting" her evening (rather than stating any prior plans), so she may use either <i>will</i> or <i>be going to</i> . In writing, <i>will</i> is more common.				
Willingness	2. (137. http://doi.org/10.11/10				
 (f) — The phone's ringing. — I'll get it. (g) — How old is Aunt Agnes? — I don't know. She won't tell me. (h) The car won't start. Maybe the battery is dead. 	 Will (but not be going to) is used to express willingness or offer to help. In this case, will expresses a decision the speaker makes at the moment of speaking. In (f): The second speaker decides to answer the phone at the immediate present moment; she/he does not have a prior plan. Will not / won't can express refusal, as in (g) with a person or in (h) with an inanimate object. 				

EXERCISE 6 > Grammar, speaking, and listening. (Chart 3-2)

Part I. Work with a partner. Read each conversation aloud. Discuss the *italicized* verbs. Are the speakers expressing:

- a. predictions?
- b. decisions they are making at the moment of speaking (willingness)?
- c. plans they made before the moment of speaking?

Casual Conversations

- A: Are you busy Saturday night? I've got front-row seats for the baseball game.
 B: Oh, sorry. It sounds like a lot of fun, but I'm going to be at my cousin's wedding.
- 2. A: We're going to go out to dinner in a few minutes. Do you want to join us?
 B: Sure. Give me just a minute and I'll grab my coat.
- 3. A: I heard Sue and David are engaged for the third time!B: They won't ever get married. They fight too much.
- 4. A: How do you spell "misspell"? One -s or two?B: Gosh! I forget. I'll look it up.

- 5. A: That's great news about your new job.
 - B: Well, actually, I've changed my mind about it. I'm not going to take it after all. I've decided to stay with my old job.
- 6. A: Sofia's so much fun. And she's very patient with kids.B: I know. She'll be great as a camp counselor.

Part II. Listen to the conversations with your book closed. Notice how *will* and *going to* are pronounced.

EXERCISE 7 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 3-2)

Decide if each *italicized* verb expresses a prediction, a prior plan, or willingness.

Chatting Before Dinner

willingness 1. Dinner's almost ready. I'll set the table. prediction plan 2. I think you'll love this soup. The recipe is from the prediction willingness plan restaurant we went to. 3. Don't worry about the spilled coffee. I'll clean it up. prediction plan willingness 4. Your dad called. He has some vacation time. He prediction plan willingness is going to take next week off. prediction 5. Darn! I burned the rice. Someday, there is going plan willingness to be an alarm to prevent that! 6. I'm going to take some soup to my grandmother prediction willingness plan tomorrow. She's coming down with* a cold. 7. Uh-oh. It looks like the refrigerator light is out. prediction plan willingness I'll pick up one tomorrow. 8. I'm going to help the kids with their homework after prediction plan willingness dinner.

EXERCISE 8 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 3-2)

Complete the conversations with **be going to** if you think the speaker is expressing a prior plan. If you think there is no prior plan, use **will**. Use **won't** if the speaker is expressing refusal.

- 1. A: This letter is in French, and I don't speak French. Can you help me?
 - B: Sure. I (translate) ______ will translate ______ it for you.
- 2. A: Do you want to go shopping with me? I (go) <u>am going to go</u> to the mall downtown.
 - B: Sure! Thanks.
- 3. A: How about getting together for dinner tonight?
 - B: Sounds good. Where?
 - A: How about Alice's Restaurant or the Gateway Café? You decide.
 - B: Alice's Restaurant. I (meet) _____ you there around six.
 - A: Great. I (see) _____ you then.
 - B: It's a date.

*come down with = get (an illness)



- 4. A: Do you have plans for dinner?
 - B: Yes. I (*meet**) ______ a co-worker for dinner at Alice's Restaurant. Want to join us?
- 5. A: Who wants to erase the board? Are there any volunteers?
- B: I (do) ______ it!
 - C: I (*do*) ______ it!
- 6. A: Why does he have an eraser in his hand?B: He (*erase*) ______ the board.
- 7. A: Why is that little boy crying?
 - B: I don't know. He (*tell, not*) _____ me. I wonder where his parents are.
- 8. A: What's wrong?
 - B: The door (*open, not*) _____. I think the lock is broken.





• EXERCISE 9 • Grammar and listening. (Chart 3-2)

Choose the expected response (a. or b.). Then listen to the conversations and check your answers.

A Plan or an Offer to Help?

- 1. A: So, you were talking about your plans for the summer. What are you going to do?
 - B: a. I'm going to work at a summer resort in the mountains.b. I'll work at a summer resort in the mountains.
- 2. A: Can you help me out? I need to get this check in the mail by noon.B: a. Sure. I'm going to drop it off on my way to work.b. Sure. I'll drop it off on my way to work.
- 3. A: Tell me again. Why are you leaving work early?
 - B: a. I'm going to attend my cousin's funeral.
 - b. I'll attend my cousin's funeral.
- 4. A: Darn, this flashlight doesn't work.
 - B: a. Here, give it to me. I'm going to fix it for you.b. Here, give it to me. I'll fix it for you.
- 5. A: Here's the broom. What did you want it for?
 - B: a. I'm going to sweep the front steps.
 - b. I'll sweep the front steps.

I am going to meet Larry at Alice's Restaurant at six. OR I am meeting Larry at Alice's Restaurant at six.

^{*}When **be going to** expresses a prior plan, it is often also possible to use the present progressive with no change in meaning. There is no difference in meaning between these sentences:

EXERCISE 10 ► Let's talk. (Chart 3-2)

Work with a partner. Imagine you are planning to leave for a wedding in a few minutes. Choose one picture and complete the conversation in your own words. Then practice your conversation and perform it for the class. You can look at your book before you speak. When you speak, look at your partner.

A Fiasco





- A: Oh, no. What are we going to do?
- B: I know. We'll _____
- A: How will that help?
- B: I don't know. But we need to try something. Let's not panic!
- A: Wait! This'll work. We'll _____
- B: Perfect.

EXERCISE 11 • Listening and writing. (Chart 3-2)

- 1. Read the introductory paragraph below and listen to the passage that follows. Then write down as much as you can remember in paragraph form.
- 2. Work with a partner and share paragraphs. Make any necessary revisions to the content.
- 3. Work in small groups and compare paragraphs. Edit for correct verb usage, punctuation, and spelling.

A Successful Family Business

The Costa family began their restaurant business five years ago with a small coffee shop. They served coffee, tea, and fresh bakery items. They developed a following, and now they are so popular that they are going to expand their restaurant next month.

EXERCISE 12 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 3-3)

Complete the sentences with your own words. All the sentences talk about future time. What do you notice about the verbs in blue?

- 3. Before I do my homework, I'll _____
- 4. When I finish my English studies, I'm going to ______

3-:	3 Expressing the Future in Time C	lauses
(b) (c) (d)	 Bob will come soon. When Bob comes, we will see him. Linda is going to leave soon. Before she leaves, she is going to finish her work. I will get home at 5:30. After I get home, I will eat dinner. The taxi will arrive soon. As soon as it arrives, we'll be able to leave for the airport. They are going to come soon. I'll wait here until they come. 	In (a): When Bob comes is a time clause.* when + subject + verb = a time clause When the meaning of the time clause is future, the SIMPLE PRESENT tense is used. Will or be going to is not used in the time clause. A time clause begins with such words as when, before, after, as soon as, until, and while and includes a subject and a verb. The time clause can come either at the beginning of the sentence or in the second part of the sentence: When he comes, we'll see him. OR We'll see him when he comes. Notice: A comma is used when the time clause comes first in a sentence.
(f)	While I am traveling in Europe next year, I'm going to save money by staying in youth hostels.	Sometimes the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE is used in a time clause to express an activity that will be in progress in the future, as in (f).
	l will go to bed after I finish my work. I will go to bed after I have finished my work.	Occasionally, the PRESENT PERFECT is used in a time clause, as in (h). Examples (g) and (h) have the same meaning. The present perfect in the time clause emphasizes the completion of one act before a second act occurs in the future.

*A time clause is an adverb clause. See Charts 17-1, p. 371 and 17-2, p. 373 for more information.

EXERCISE 13 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 3-3)

Choose the correct verbs for these sentences.

Chores

- 1. After the rain stops / will stop, I am going to wash the car.
- 2. I'm going to vacuum the inside before I quit / will quit.
- 3. Are you going to help me before you go / will go to your friend's?
- 4. My dad cleans / is going to clean the garage after he has / will have lunch.
- 5. While he is cleaning / will clean the garage later, he listens / is going to listen to podcasts.
- 6. The garage is / will look great after he finishes / will finish tonight.

EXERCISE 14 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 3-3)

Complete the sentences with the given verbs. Use a form of **be going to**, the simple present, or the present progressive.

1. listen / sleep

I ______ to an English language course while I

_____ tonight. Do you think it will help me learn English faster?

2. come / wait

Bakir will be here soon. I _____ here until he _____.

3.	buy / stop / walk	IELTS
	I'm sure it will stop snowing soon. As soon as the snow	🛱 🛱
	I to the store and	some groceries.
4.	enter / get / go / graduate	
	Michelle is a junior in college this year. After she	with a B.A. next
	year, she graduate school and work on	an M.A. Then
	she on for her Ph.D. after she he	r master's degree.

EXERCISE 15 ► Let's talk: interview. (Chart 3-3)

Make questions using the given words. Ask two students each question. Share some of their answers with the class. Use **be going to** for the future verb.

- 1. What \ you \ do \ as soon as \ class \ end \ today?
- 2. Before $\ you \ o \ to bed \ tonight \ what \ you \ do?$
- 3. What \ you \ do \ after \ you \ wake up \ tomorrow?
- 4. What \ you \ do \ when \ you \ have \ free time \ this weekend?
- 5. After \ you \ complete \ this course \ what \ you \ do?

EXERCISE 16 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 3-3)

Correct the 12 errors in verb forms.

Getting Ready for a Business Trip

Tia need to leave work early. She is going to prepare for her business trip when she will get home. After she is packing her suitcase, she rehearse her PowerPoint[®] presentation for her clients. Her father is going to come over and watch her presentation after he is finishing dinner. While he watch, Tia is going to ask him to give her honest feedback. After she is practicing several times, she will not feel so nervous about her presentation. She will pays some bills and sending a few work emails before she is going to bed. After she gets into bed, she is going to fall asleep quickly because she is knowing that she is very tired.



EXERCISE 17 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 3-4)

Decide if each sentence has a present or future meaning. What do you notice about the verb tense in each sentence?

- 1. I'm having dinner at the airport later tonight.
- 2. I'm meeting a friend there.
- 3. We're taking a flight at midnight.

present meaning	future meaning
present meaning	future meaning
present meaning	future meaning

3-4 Using the Present Progressive and the Simple Present to Express Future Time

Present Progressive		
 (a) My wife has an appointment with a doctor. She is seeing Dr. North next Tuesday. (b) Sam has already made his plans. He is leaving at noon tomorrow. (c) — What are you going to do this afternoon? — After lunch, I am meeting a friend of mine. We are going to the mall. Would you like to come along? 	The PRESENT PROGRESSIVE may be used to express future time when the idea of the sentence concerns a planned event or definite intention. COMPARE: A verb such as rain is not used in the present progressive to indicate future time because rain is not a planned event. A future meaning for the present progressive tense is indicated either by future time words in the sentence or by the context.	
Simple Present		
 (d) The museum opens at 10:00 tomorrow morning. (e) Classes begin next week. (f) John's plane arrives at 6:05 P.M. next Monday. 	The SIMPLE PRESENT can also be used to express future time in a sentence concerning events that are on a definite schedule or timetable. These sentences usually contain future time words. Only a few verbs are used in this way: e.g., open, close, begin, end, start, finish, arrive, leave, come, return.	

EXERCISE 18 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 3-4)

Decide the meaning of each *italicized* verb: in the future, now, or habitually.

1. A: Students usually take four courses each semester.	habitually
Why are you only taking three?	now
B: I have a very demanding internship. But next semes five courses to make up.	ter, I am taking in the future
2. A: What are you doing?	
B: I'm sending an email to my parents. It's their anniver But they're probably out to dinner. That's how they ce	•
3. A: What? Our train <i>leaves</i> in five minutes?	
B: Yes, it <i>leaves</i> every hour on the hour.	
4. A: My brother's birthday is next week. I'm giving him a	a sweater.
B: That's what I usually give my brother. Sweaters make	xe a good gift.
EXERCISE 19 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 3-4) Complete each sentence with any present progressive verb.	
1. A: How about going across the street for a cup of coffee	e?
B: I can't. I am meeting Jennifer at	the library at 5:00.
2. A: Why are you in such a hurry?	

- B: I ______ the four o'clock plane to New York.
- 3. A: I see you're smoking. I thought you stopped last month.
 - B: I did, but I began again. I ______ tomorrow, and this time I mean it.

62 CHAPTER 3

www.ieltstep.com

- 4. A: Your cough sounds terrible! Are you going to go to the doctor?
 - B: Yes. I _____ Dr. Na later this afternoon.
- 5. A: Where are you and your family going for your vacation this summer?
 - B: Ontario, Canada. We're not going to fly. We ______ so we can take our time and enjoy the scenery.

EXERCISE 20 Reading, writing, and speaking. (Chart 3-4)

Part I. Read the passage. Underline the present verbs and discuss their usage.

My Vacation of a Lifetime

This coming Saturday, I am beginning my "vacation of a lifetime." The first place I'm going to is Bali. My plane leaves at six-thirty Saturday morning. I arrive in Bali late that afternoon. I'm staying at the Nusa Dua Beach Hotel. I leave Bali on the fifteenth and travel to Thailand. While I'm there, I'm staying with some friends. We'll take a boat tour in Bangkok and then travel to the countryside. There is a national park, and we'll do some hiking. Finally we'll finish in Phuket. It'll be nice to relax on the beaches and go windsurfing too. This will be my first trip to these places.



Part II. Imagine that you are going to take your ideal vacation next week. Write a paragraph about your plans, using Part I as a model. Use present tenses where appropriate. Share some of your plans with a partner, in small groups, or with the class.

EXERCISE 21 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 3-5)

Notice the verbs in blue. What do they have in common?

Right now I am sitting in class. Yesterday at this time, I was sitting in class. Tomorrow at this time, I will be sitting in class.

3-5 Future Progress	sive	
	(a) I will begin to study at seven. You will come at eight. I <i>will be studying</i> when you come.	The FUTURE PROGRESSIVE expresses an activity that will be in progress at a time in the future.
	(b) Don't call me at nine because I won't be home. I <i>am going to be studying</i> at the library.	The progressive form of <i>be going to:</i> be going to + be + -ing , as in (b)
	 (c) I'll be picking Susie up early for a dentist appointment. (d) We'll be contacting you shortly about your inquiry. 	Will + the progressive can be used with an activity that is not in progress at a time in the future. It is common in spoken English when the speaker wants to sound more polite or softer. It is an alternative to:
		1) the non-progressive form of will (I'll pick Susie up early for a dentist appointment.) OR
		2) be going to (I'm going to pick Susie up early for a dentist appointment.)



EXERCISE 22 Looking at grammar. (Chart 3 Complete the sentences. Use the future progressive for	WWW.IELTSTEP.COM
1. finish / sleep / study Please don't call our house at	fter 9:00 tonight. The baby
<u>is going to be sleeping / will be sleeping</u> . My hus	band
for a test. I a p	roject for work.
2. talk / do / see Dr. Roberts is the town's only med	lical doctor and works long hours.
Tomorrow she has an especially busy schedule. F	rom early in the morning until
lunch, she p	atients at her clinic. After lunch,
she research	at the hospital. In the evening, she
to medical s	students about rural health care.
EXERCISE 23 Looking at grammar. (Chart 3 Complete the sentences. Use <i>will</i> + progressive or the parentheses.	
1. Tomorrow I'm going to leave for home. When I (arrive) at the
airport, my whole family (<i>wait</i>)	for me.
2. When I (get) up tomor	row morning, the sun (shine)
, the birds (sing),	, and my
roommate (lie, still)	in bed fast asleep.
3. A: Just think! Two days from now I (<i>ski</i>) in Austria.	in the mountains
B: Sounds great! I (think)	about you.
4. A: Are you going to be in town next Saturday?	
B: No. I (visit)	my aunt in Chicago.
5. A: Where are you going to be this evening?	
B: I (work)	on my research paper at the library.
EXERCISE 24 Reading and grammar. (Chart Read the email message from a parent to a high school verbs. How does the use of future progressive affect the	l teacher. <u>Underline</u> the future progressive
Subject: Jill Bailey absence	Today at 4:32 PM
Dear Mrs. Rawley,	

Jill has some medical tests tomorrow and won't be attending school. Please let me know if there will be any homework to pick up. I'll be picking up my other children at 3:00 and can get the assignments then.

Thank you, Karen Bailey

EXERCISE 25 ► Warm-up. (Chart 3-6)

Decide which action in each sentence began first.

- 1. Leo will work until December 30th, and then he will retire.
- 2. When Leo retires, he will have worked at the same company for 30 years.
- 3. When Leo retires, he will have been working at the same company for 30 years.

3-6 Future Perfect and Future Perfect Progressive

NOTE: These two tenses are rarely used compared to the other verb tenses.

FUTURE PERFECT	 (a) I will graduate in June. I will see you in July. By the time I see you, I will have graduated. 	The FUTURE PERFECT expresses an activity that will be completed before another time or event in the future.
		Note the sentence pattern in (a) with by the time:
I		ADVERB CLAUSE by the time + simple present
		MAIN CLAUSE future perfect
	(b) I will go to bed at 10:00 P.M. Ed will get home at midnight. At midnight I will be sleeping. I will have been sleeping for two hours by the time Ed gets home.	The FUTURE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE emphasizes the <i>duration of an activity</i> that will be <i>in progress before another</i> <i>time or event in the future.</i>
	(c) When Professor Jones retires next month, he <i>will have taught</i> OR <i>will</i> <i>have been teaching</i> for 45 years.	Sometimes the future perfect and the future perfect progressive have the same meaning, as in (c). Also, notice that the activity expressed by either of these two tenses may begin in the past.

EXERCISE 26 ► Looking at grammar. (Charts 3-5 and 3-6)

Choose the correct verbs.

A Hospital Stay

- Roger will get to the hospital early tomorrow morning. He will stay / will have stayed there for a week. He is going to have back surgery.
- 2. When Roger leaves the hospital, he will stay / will have stayed there a week.
- 3. After Roger has back surgery, he will go / will have gone to the recovery room.
- 4. When Roger wakes up, he will be / will have been asleep for six hours.
- 5. When Roger first walks, he will need / will have needed assistance.
- 6. By the time Roger can walk unassisted, he will have / will have had many hours of physical therapy.
- 7. Several specialists will help / will have helped Roger by the time he goes home.





www.ieltstep.com



EXERCISE 27. Looking at grammar. (Charts 3-5 and 3-6)

Complete the sentences. Use any appropriate tense of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Ann and Andy got married on June 1st.

married for one week.

- c. By June 29th, they (*be*) ______ ¹⁷ married for four weeks.
- 2. a. This traffic is terrible. We're going to be late. By the time

we (get) ______ to the airport, Yuri's plane (arrive, already*)

_____, and he'll be wondering where we are.

June See Nos Tues Wed Thurs Frf

26 27

28 29 30

8 9

3 4

10 11 12 13 14 15 16

18 19 20 21 22 23

25

- b. The traffic was terrible. By the time we (get) ______ to the airport, Yuri's plane (arrive, already) ______.
- 3. a. This morning I came to class at 9:00. Right now it is 10:00, and I am still in

class. I (sit) ______ at this desk for an hour. By 9:30, I

- (sit) _____ here for half an hour. By 11:00,
- I (sit) ______ here for two hours.
- b. Classes start at 9:00 every day. It's 9:30 and the school bus is late. When the bus

gets to school, classes (begin) _____. The teachers (teach)

______ since 9:00.

EXERCISE 28 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 3-5 and 3-6)

Look at each pair of sentences. The preferred or correct sentence is checked in each one. Can you explain why the other sentence is not checked?

- 1. I'm checking airline flights right now.
- \checkmark a. By the time you come back from lunch, I will have made our reservation.
 - b. By the time you come back from lunch, I will have been making our reservation.
- 2. This is an incredibly long car ride.
 - a. Do you realize that by the time we arrive in Phoenix, we will have driven for 20 hours straight?
- Is b. Do you realize that by the time we arrive in Phoenix, we will have been driving for 20 hours straight?
- 3. Go ahead and leave on your vacation. Don't worry about this work.
- \checkmark a. By the time you get back, we will have finished the project.
 - b. By the time you get back, we will have been finishing the project.

- 4. I don't understand how those long-distance swimmers do it! The race began more than an hour ago.
- a. By the time they reach the finish line, they will have swum steadily for more than two hours.
- b. By the time they reach the finish line, they will have been swimming steadily for more than two hours.

EXERCISE 29 > Check your knowledge. (Chapter 3 Review)

Correct the errors in verb tense usage.

- 1. Marnie will makes a good project manager. She has strong leadership skills.
- 2. Where you will be after the game finishes?
- 3. The car no will start. Maybe it has a dead battery.
- 4. I going to look for a new apartment when my roommate move out.
- 5. After the movie end, we are going to go out for ice cream.
- 6. By the time I am 60, my daughter will has finish medical school.
- 7. Don't worry, honey. Your dad will picking you up soon.
- 8. My appointment is for 10:15 tomorrow. What time will we be leave here?
- 9. As soon as the term will be over, I apply for a part-time job.
- 10. By their next anniversary, my parents will have together for 43 years.

EXERCISE 30 > Reading, speaking, and writing. (Chapter 3)

Part I. Read the three email messages. Discuss the appropriateness of each.

SITUATION 1: College student to professor:

 Subject: Out of town visit
 Today at 7:46 PM

 Hey Prof!
 How's it going? I need an extension on my project. Maybe an extra week? Some family from out of town are going to arrive tomorrow. No notice. LOL!

 Thanx (2)

Janice

SITUATION 2: College student to professor:

Subject: Jamal Benson absence tomorrow

Today at 9:04 PM

Dear Professor Wilson,

I'm sorry, but I won't be in class tomorrow. My mother is having surgery, and I'll be taking her to the hospital. I'll get the assignment from my roommate. Thank you for your understanding.

Sincerely, Jamal Benson Chem. 101



Subject: car accident

Today at 6:31 PM

Hope ur doing OK. Sorry i missed ur class. I was in a car accident and needed to go to the ER. Everything's OK, but i won't be ready for the test on Tuesday. Also, i lost my study guide, maybe in the accident. I don't know. Please send one ASAP!!!

Later, Rob

WRITING TIPS

Many students are unsure about how formal or informal an email message to an instructor needs to be. A formal style will come across as more respectful. This means that your message will be more like a business letter and not like a text message or a post on social media. Here are some key points to consider:

- Formal messages do not use texting language, for example, "u" for "you" or "thanx" for "thanks." They do not have smiley faces or other emoticons. Do not even use this: :)
- The subject line needs to be specific.
- At the college level, you can begin your message with *Dear Professor* _____ or *Dear Dr.* _____. If you don't know the title, then you can use *Mr.* or *Ms.* For K-12*, the title will generally be *Mr.*, *Mrs.*, or *Ms.*
- It is better to get class information/assignments online or from a classmate than by contacting the instructor. Only ask the instructor if there are no other options.
- Be sure you have an acceptable reason for your request or excuse. If you don't, don't mention a poor one.
- Sign your first and last name, and begin with one of the following: Thank you, Sincerely, Regards, Best, Respectfully.
- Double-check that you have the correct email address. If one letter is wrong, your email will not get to the intended person.
- Keep your message concise and to the point.

Finally, instructors receive a lot of emails in one day. Be sure to proofread for grammar and spelling mistakes. You want your message to be easy to read and you want to convey that you are a conscientious student.

These guidelines will also be useful for writing to other school officials or to people outside of school, such as employers, supervisors, and co-workers. You will probably find that some instructors have a more relaxed style, but until you hear from them, you won't go wrong with a formal style.

K-12 = kindergarten through 12th grade

Part II. Write two emails to a teacher. In the first, explain why you will be absent for three days. In the second, explain why you will miss an upcoming test. (They do not need to be true.) Share and discuss with one or two classmates.

Part III. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

WWW.HITTIP COM

- 1.
 specific subject line
- 2. \Box appropriate form of address and proper signature
- 3. \Box complete sentences
- 4. \Box formal tone
- 5. \Box no texting language or emoticons
- 6. \Box correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Go to the Essential Online Resources for Self-Study: Gerunds and Infinitives 3



PRETEST: What do I already know?

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct verb form and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers using the answer key below. The chapter numbers are in parentheses. Use them for reference as you make any necessary corrections.

- 1. ____ It's so noisy right now. Everyone shouting and making a lot of noise in the halls. (Ch. 1)
- 2. ____ I haven't been in this town very long. I just get here two weeks ago. (Ch. 2)
- 3. ____ I'm really glad you to come to my hometown next year. (Ch. 3)
- 4. _____Why were you deciding to become a nurse? (Ch. 1)
- 5. ____ I am in Australia for the last four months. During this time, I had done many things and saw many places. (Ch. 2)
- 6. ____ By the time I graduate from college, I will have taken out several student loans. (Ch. 3)

Incorrect sentences: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

EXERCISE 1 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)

Complete the sentences with any appropriate tense of the verbs in parentheses.

Malia's Busy Schedule

1. Malia is in my evening speech class. She (study)

______ speech this semester. She

_____ some other (take, also) _____ night classes. Her classes (begin) _____

at 6:00 every evening.

2. Yesterday Malia woke up at 5:00 A.M. She (get up, already) _____

when her alarm clock (*ring*) _____.

3. Malia (work) ______ at the mall during the day. She (eat, always) ______

_____a big breakfast before she (leave) ______. She

(have, not, usually) ______ time for a lunch break.

			S S
4.	Malia is in class every evening from 6:00 to 9:00. Y	esterday I (<i>call</i>)	
	her at 6:30, but she (answer, not)		E
	(attend) class	at that time.	confidence
5.	I can't call her tomorrow night because she (attend		class then.
6.	On Saturday Malia didn't have to work until noon.	She took a short nap from 10:0	0 to 10:30.
	I arrived at 10:15. When I (get)	there, Malia (sleep)	<u> </u>
	She (sleep)	for 15 minutes by the time I g	ot there.
7.	Right now Malia (sleep)	She (<i>fall</i>)	
	asleep an hour ago. She (sleep)	for an hour.	
8.	Tomorrow is her first day off in weeks. After she (h	ave) (linner,
	Malia (meet) me ar	d a friend. In other words, she	
	(have) dinner by the tin	ne she (<i>meet</i>)	us.

EXERCISE 2 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)

Choose the correct sentence in each group. Explain your choice.

A Stay in Canada

- 1. a. When I was in my country, I want to come to Canada for my studies.
 - b. When I was in my country, I wanted to come to Canada for my studies.
 - c. When I was in my country, I have wanted to come to Canada for my studies.
- 2. a. I wasn't nervous because I had cousins in Canada.
 - b. I didn't be nervous because I had cousins in Canada.
 - c. I not nervous because I had cousins in Canada.
- 3. a. I had been here for three months and I like it.
 - b. I have been here for three months and I like it.
 - c. I am here for three months and I like it.
- 4. a. I study here for a year.
 - b. I will studying here for a year.
 - c. I am going to study here for a year.
- 5. a. When I return to my country, I will have been away for 15 months.
 - b. When I return to my country, I am going to be away for 15 months.
 - c. When I return to my country, I was away for 15 months.

EXERCISE 3 \blacktriangleright Let's talk. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)

Answer the questions in complete sentences. Work in pairs, small groups, or as a class.

- 1. What are you doing right now? How long have you been doing that?
- 2. What were you doing at this time yesterday? What did you do after that?
- 3. What will you be doing tonight at midnight? What were you doing last night at midnight?
- 4. What places have you been to since you came to (this city)?
- 5. What are some of the things you have done in your lifetime? When did you do them?
- 6. What countries/cities have you visited? When did you visit (_____)? Why did you go there? What did you like about (_____)? What did you dislike about (_____)? Are you planning to go there again someday?

EXERCISE 4 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)

Complete the sentences with has, have, had, is, am, was, were, or will.

The Weather

- 1. It _____ snowing again. The roads _____ be slippery.
- 2. Billy _____ never seen snow before. He likes trying to catch the flakes.
- 3. It ______ been raining sideways all morning. When will it stop?
- 4. Shhh! I ______ trying to listen to the forecast. It sounds like a heat advisory ______ be in effect later this week.
- 5. When we ______ visiting my in-laws in India last month, there was a heat wave.
- 6. It was like an oven. I ______ never been in such hot weather before.
- 7. The lack of rain this month _____ made the smog really bad. My eyes _____ been watering since I got here.
- 8. When I ______ just started to fall. It was quite scary.
- 9. It _____ been a colder than normal winter. I'm ready for spring.
- I ______ never experienced such violent weather until I came here. The hailstones are huge. Sometimes they ______ the size of baseballs!

EXERCISE 5 \blacktriangleright Let's talk. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)

Work with a partner. Create a story or conversation about the picture. Share it with the class. Pay careful attention to verb tenses.



EXERCISE 6 • Editing. (Chapters 1 and 2)

Rewrite the paragraph on a separate piece of paper and correct the 7 verb errors.

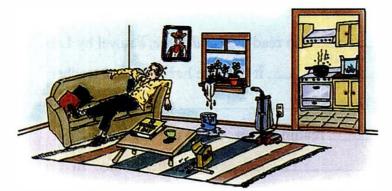
An Immigrant's Wish

In 1985, my parents were emigrating to the United States from Brazil. They have never traveled outside of Brazil and were excited by the challenge of relocating to a foreign country. Eventually, they settle in California. My twin sister and I were born ten years later and are growing up there. Last year, I had gone to Brazil for the first time to meet extended family. I had always want to learn more about my family's background. My dreams finally were coming true.

EXERCISE 7 > Writing. (Chapters 1 and 2)

Write about the picture using the verbs in the box and the given tenses.





cook	memorize
fix	plant
vacuum	wash

- 1. Tom has had a busy day so far. Right now he's taking a break. What has Tom been doing? Write at least four sentences on another piece of paper. Use the present perfect progressive.
- 2. Rewrite your sentences using yesterday. What verb tense will you use?
- 3. Rewrite your sentences using just. Use the present perfect.
- 4. Write one sentence about Tom using the past perfect progressive. You can add more verbs to the box.

EXERCISE 8 \blacktriangleright Reading and writing. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)

Read the blog entry by author Stacy Hagen, and respond in writing to the questions at the end.

BlueBookBlog

The Pomodoro Technique

One of the biggest challenges that students face is how to deal with procrastination. Even if you haven't heard of this word, you're probably familiar with it. Procrastination is putting off or delaying something you need to do. Maybe you need to study for a test, but you find lots of other things to do instead. Or perhaps you have a paper due, and you wait until the last minute to begin. With Internet and social media distractions, it's even harder to complete tasks, whether at school, home, or work.

A while ago, I came across a time-management technique I have found very helpful for dealing with my own tendency to procrastinate. It's called the Pomodoro technique. In Italian, pomodoro means "tomato." The Italian developer of this idea, Francisco Cirillo, had a food timer in the shape of a tomato, so he named his idea after it.

It's a very simple idea. You take a timer and set it for 25 minutes. Then you work uninterrupted until the timer goes off. Because it's only 25 minutes, it doesn't feel overwhelming. Instead of thinking about all the work you need to do to prepare for a test, for example, (which can seem daunting), you just do a piece of it for 25 minutes.

After the timer goes off, you reward yourself for five minutes. Maybe you look at social media or get a snack. When the five minutes is up, you set the timer again. After you do this four times, you can give yourself a longer reward: a break for maybe 15-30 minutes.

This technique has helped me a lot with procrastination. I have found that it makes tasks at home and work much more doable because you just need to think about 25 minutes of work at a time.

How about you? Do you have problems with procrastination? Have you found helpful techniques? Do you think the Pomodoro technique is something that you want to try?

o you know these word	
gou know these word	1

- se words? - challenges
- deal with
- tendency - uninterrupted
- distractions
- tasks
- overwhelming - daunting

EXERCISE 9 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)

Complete the sentences with any appropriate tense of the verbs in parentheses.

Vanessa's Reading List

Three weeks ago, Vanessa (start)	to read <i>War and Peace</i> , a novel by Leo
Tolstoy. She (read)2	it because her literature teacher
recommended it. It is a very long novel, a	and it (<i>have</i>) many characters.
She (<i>finish</i> , <i>not</i>)4	reading it yet. Since the beginning
of the summer, Vanessa (finish)	three other books. In
her lifetime, she (read)6	many famous novels, but this is the first
Tolstoy novel she (read, ever)	After this book, she
(start) 8	_ a popular French detective series.

EXERCISE 10 ▶ Let's talk. (Chapters 1 → 3)

Answer the questions in complete sentences. Work in pairs, small groups, or as a class.

- 1. What have we been studying? What is one tense we have studied since the beginning of the term? When, as best as you can remember, did we study it?
- 2. What else will we have studied in this class by the time the term ends?
- 3. This class began on (date). Had you studied verb tenses before that?
- 4. We're going to finish studying Chapter 4 on (*day or date*). How long will we have been studying Chapter 4 by that time?
- 5. Where are you going to be living next year?
- 6. Think about recent news. What's happening in world affairs? What's happened recently?

EXERCISE 11 ► Listening. (Chapters 1 → 3)

Listen to each situation and choose the sentence that comes next (a. or b.).

- 1. a. Now the passengers are waiting in the baggage claim area.
- 2. a. Then his boss called.
- 3. a. When did it stop?
- 4. a. People said "Shhh" as we sat down.
- 5. a. Her training is finished.
- 6. a. They never caught him.

- b. After the plane lands, the passengers will be waiting in the baggage claim area.
- b. He's finding it very relaxing.
- b. When's it going to stop?
- b. We missed the first half hour.
- b. She's going to take another lesson.
- b. They'll never catch him.

EXERCISE 12 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)

Choose the correct sentence in each group. Explain your choice.

- 1. a. I am studying here since last January.
 - b. I was studying here since last January.
 - c. I have been studying here since last January.

- 2. a. By the time Hassan returned to his country, he had been away from home for more than three years.
 - b. By the time Hassan returned to his country, he has been away from home for more than three years.
 - c. By the time Hassan returned to his country, he is away from home for more than three years.
- 3. a. After Neil will graduate, he is going to return to his hometown.
 - b. After Neil graduate, he going to return to his hometown.
 - c. After Neil graduates, he is going to return to his hometown.
- 4. a. I want to get married, but I don't meet the right person yet.
 - b. I want to get married, but I haven't met the right person yet.
 - c. I want to get married, but I hadn't met the right person yet.
- 5. a. We have been seeing that movie twice, and now we want to see it again.
 - b. We have seen that movie twice, and now we are wanting to see it again.
 - c. We have seen that movie twice, and now we want to see it again.
- 6. a. I don't like my job. My brother wants me to quit. I believe he is right.b. I am not like my job. My brother wants me to quit. I am believing he is right.
 - c. I don't like my job. My brother want me to quit. I believed he is right.
- 7. a. We cleaned up the kitchen after our dinner guests were leaving.
 - b. We cleaned up the kitchen after our dinner guests are going to leave.
 - c. We cleaned up the kitchen after our dinner guests left.
- 8. a. I know my neighbors Mr. and Mrs. Sanchez ever since I was a child.
 - b. I have known my neighbors Mr. and Mrs. Sanchez ever since I was a child.
 - c. I knew my neighbors Mr. and Mrs. Sanchez ever since I have been a child.
- 9. a. Many scientists believe there will be a major earthquake in California in the near future.
 - b. Many scientists believe there going to be a major earthquake in California in the near future.
 - c. Many scientists believe there will to be a major earthquake in California in the near future.
- 10. a. By the end of the 21st century, man will had discovered the cure for the common cold.
 - b. By the end of the 21st century, man will have discovered the cure for the common cold.
 - c. By the end of the 21st century, man will discovered the cure for the common cold.

⑦ EXERCISE 13 ► Listening. (Chapters 1 and 2)

Part I. Listen to the story with your book closed. Then open your book and read the statements. Write "T" for true and "F" for false.

A Silly Mistake

- 1. ____ The man broke the lock on the door.
- 2. ____ The man saw a stranger in his apartment.
- 3. ____ The man's wife opened the door.
- 4. _____ The man felt he had done something stupid.



Part II. Listen again. Complete the sentences with the verbs you hea	r.
When I home to my apartment last night, I2	LUM
door as usual. As always, I it in the lock, but the door	4
I my key again and again with no luck. So I6	
my wife to let me in. Finally the door, but I	my
wife on the other side. I a stranger. I	
into the wrong apartment! I quickly and	to my own.
I very stupid about what I	
EXERCISE 14 N Looking at grammar (Chapters 1	

EXERCISE 14 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)

Part I. Choose the correct verb in each pair.

	★ ≪ →	
From:	Yoko Anna K.	
To:	Anna K.	

Hi Yoko,

I get / got (1) your long email about two weeks ago and was trying / have been trying (2) to find time to write you back ever since. I am / have been (3) very busy lately. In the past two weeks, I was having / have had (4) four tests, and I have another one next week. In addition, a friend stayed / has been staying (5) with me since last Thursday. She wanted to see the city, so we were spending / have been spending (6) a lot of time visiting some of the interesting places here. We have been / were going (7) to the zoo, the art museum, and the waterfront.

Yesterday we went / have gone (8) to a park and watch / watched (9) a hot-air balloon race. Between seeing the city and studying for my exams, I am barely having / have barely had (10) enough time to breathe.

Right now it is / has been (11) 3:00 A.M., and I am sitting / was sitting (12) at my desk. I am sitting / have been sitting (13) here for five hours doing my studying. My friend's plane leaves / leave (14) in a few hours, so I decided / am deciding (15) not to go to bed. That's why I write / am writing (16) to you at such an early hour in the day. I am getting / get (17) a little sleepy, but I would rather stay up. I take / am going to take (18) a nap after I get / will get (19) back from taking her to the airport.

How do you get / are you getting (20) along? How \emptyset / are (21) your classes going? Please write soon.

Best, Yoko **Part II.** Write an email to a friend or family member. Discuss your activities, thoughts, feelings, and adventures in the present, past, and future. Use Yoko's email as an example.

Use as many different tenses as seems natural. For example, in the course of your message, tell your reader what you are doing, do every day, have done since a certain time, have been doing lately, did at some particular time, had done before you did something else, are going to do, etc.

Part III. <u>Underline</u> the verbs. Exchange papers with another student. Edit your partner's writing by checking all the verbs for correct form and tense. Discuss any suggestions you have.

EXERCISE 15 \blacktriangleright Speaking and writing. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)

Part I. Work with a partner.

PARTNER A: Pretend to be a famous living person. Tell your partner your name. Answer the reporter's questions. You can invent answers.

PARTNER B: You're a nosy reporter. Ask the famous person all kinds of questions about his/her past, present, and future.

Part II. Write an article with your partner about this person for a class newspaper. The newspaper will have articles about all the "famous" people in your class.

EXERCISE 16 \blacktriangleright Let's talk. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 3)

In a short talk (2 or 3 minutes), summarize a recent news event. Present your talk to a small group or to the class. If necessary, you may speak from brief notes (an outline of only the most important points). Each audience member will write down one or two questions to ask you at the end (as time permits).

Go to the Essential Online Resources for Self-Study: Gerunds and Infinitives 4

Subject-Verb Agreement

PRETEST: What do I already know?

CHAPTER

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct subject-verb agreement and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. ____ Baby cry when they are hungry or tired. (5-1)
- 2. ____ Chicken, duck, and turkey lay eggs. (5-1)
- 3. ____ Erica miss her mother and father. (5-2)
- 4. ____ Robert sings when he take a shower. (5-2)
- 5. ____ The audience is waiting for the show to begin. (5-3)
- 6. ____ Some of the work for my classes is pretty challenging. (5-4)
- 7. ____ Every employee in this building need a security badge. (5-4)
- 8. ____ There is always more homework on weekends than we expect. (5-5)
- 9. ____ Is eight hours of sleep enough for teenagers? (5-6)
- 10. ____ Mathematics is easy for me to understand, but physics is more difficult. (5-6)

Incorrect sentences: 1, 2, 3, 4, 7

EXERCISE 1 > Warm-up. (Chart 5-1)

Look at the words in blue. Are they singular or plural? Are they nouns or verbs?



	SINGULAR	PLURAL	NOUN	VERB
1. A wedding costs a lot of money.				
2. Weddings cost a lot of money.				
3. Wedding costs are increasing.				
4. The cost of weddings is increasing.				

78 CHAPTER 5

www.ieltstep.com

5-1 Final -s/-es: Use and Spelling	ALC: NOT THE OWNER OF			
5-I Final -s/-es: Use and Spelling				C
		-5/-65'	Use and	Shellind
		5/ 65.		Spennig

					Con			
(a)			<i>iend</i> s are important. ike my <i>classes</i> .	A final -s or -es is added to a not Friend and class = singular not Friends and classes = plural n	Duns			
(b) Verb + -s: Mary works at the bank. Verb + -es: John watches birds.			•	A final -s or -es is added to a simple present verb when the subject is a singular noun (e.g., <i>Mary, my father, the machine</i>) or third perso singular pronoun (she, he, it). <i>Mary works</i> = singular <i>The students work</i> = plural <i>They work</i> = plural				
Sp	elling			entral determines d'une a				
(c)	sing song	→ →	sings songs	For most words (whether a verb spell the word correctly.	or a noun), simply add a final -s to			
(d)	wash watch class buzz box	$\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \uparrow \\ \uparrow \\ \uparrow \\ \uparrow \\ \uparrow \\ \uparrow \end{array}$	washes watches classes buzzes boxes	Final -es is added to words that (NOTE: The pronunciation is /əz/ (*				
(e) (f)	toy buy baby cry	\rightarrow \rightarrow \rightarrow	toys buys babies cries	For words that end in -y : In (e): If -y is preceded by a v In (f): If -y is preceded by a c and -es is added.	rowel, only -s is added. consonant, the -y is changed to <i>-i</i>			

EXERCISE 2 > Spelling (Chart 5-1)

Add -s or -es.

1. floor <u>s</u>	4. bush	7. season	10. cough
2. tax <i>es</i>	5. hat	8. develop	11. method
3. talk <u>5</u>	6. rise	9. touch	12. language

EXERCISE 3 • Grammar and pronunciation. (Chart 5-1)

Work with a partner. Take turns making sentences. Focus on the -es pronunciation.

Example: an alarm clock $\ buzz$ \rightarrow An alarm clock buzzes.

- 1. a teacher \ teach
- 2. a freezer \ freeze
- 3. a ball \ bounce
- 4. a door \ close
- 5. a boxer $\ box$



- 6. a mosquito bite \ itch
- 7. a boss \ manage
- 8. a snake \ hiss
- 9. a soldier \ march
- 10. a coach $\ coach$



EXERCISE 4 ▶ Let's talk. (Chart 5-1)

Work in small groups. Take turns reading each sentence a few times. Pay attention to the sendings. Can you figure out the meaning? Do you agree or disagree with the proverb?

Common Proverbs

- 1. Too many cooks spoil the broth.
- 2. Tomorrow never comes.
- 3. Practice makes perfect.
- 4. Actions speak louder than words.

EXERCISE 5 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 5-2)

Look at the verbs in blue. What words determine if the verbs are singular or plural?

- 1. a. The fruit in the bowls is fresh.
 - b. The apples in the bowl are fresh.

- 5. People come in all shapes and sizes.
- 6. The early bird catches the worm.
- 7. Good things come in small packages.
- 8. No news* is good news.
- 2. a. Vegetables are good for you.
 - b. Eating vegetables is good for you.

Sin	gular Verb	Plural Verb	
(a)	My friend lives in Boston.	(b) My friends live in Boston.	<pre>verb + -s/-es = third person singular in the simple present tense noun + -s/-es = plural</pre>
		 (c) My brother and sister live in Boston. (d) My brother, sister, and cousin live in Boston. 	Two or more subjects connected by and require a plural verb.
(f) (g)	Every man, woman, and child needs love. Everyone is here. Everybody is here. Each book and magazine is listed in the bibliography.		EXCEPTION: Expressions with every and each are always followed immediately by singular nouns. (See Chart 6-10, p. 115.) Even when there are two (or more) nouns connected by and , the verb is singular, as in (h).
	That <i>book</i> on political parties <i>is</i> interesting. The <i>book</i> that I got from my parents <i>was</i> very interesting.	 (j) The <i>ideas</i> in that book are interesting. (1) The <i>books</i> I bought at the bookstore <i>were</i> expensive. 	Sometimes a phrase or clause separates a subject from its verb. These interrupting structures do not affect basic agreement. For example, in (i) the interrupting prepositional phrase <i>on political parties</i> does not change the fact that the verb <i>is</i> must agree with the subject <i>book</i> . In (k) and (I): The subject and verb are separated by an adjective clause. (See Chapter 13.)
(m)	Watching old movies is fun.		A gerund (e.g., <i>watching</i>) used as the subject of the sentence requires a singular verb. (See Chart 14-1, p. 303.)

*News takes a singular verb. (For more information, see Chart 5-6.)

EXERCISE 6 Speaking or writing. (Chart 5-2)

Work with a partner or in small groups to complete the sentences, orally or in writing. Use the present tense. Share some of the sentences with the class.

- 1. Every person in this room ...
- 2. Each student and teacher at this school ...
- 3. Everyone over the age of 18 ...
- 4. Every mother and father ...
- 5. Every parent of teenagers ...
- 6. Everybody born in this country ...
- 7. Every rainbow in the sky ...
- 8. Each galaxy in the universe ...

EXERCISE 7 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 5-2)

Choose the correct completions.

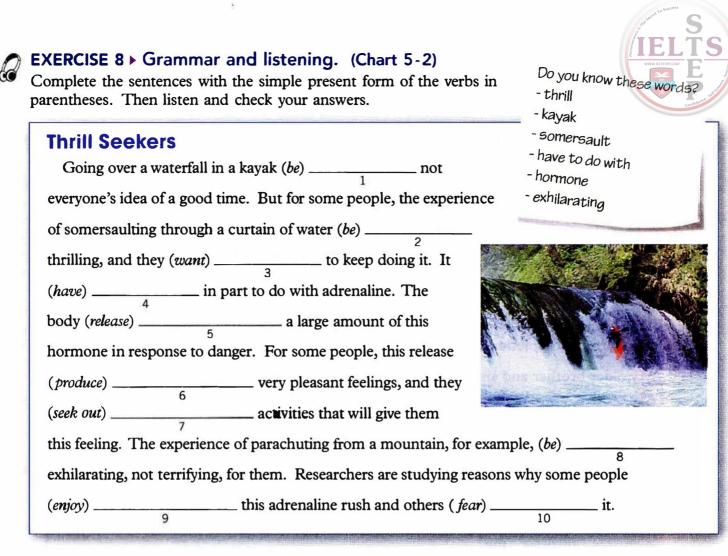
- 1. a. My older brother and sister is / are fraternal twins.
 - b. My brother was / were born on December 31st at 11:55 P.M., and my sister was / were born on January 1st at 12:05 A.M.
 - c. Everyone in my family was / were surprised when this happened.
 - d. Being born on different days and in different years is / are an interesting topic of conversation.
- 2. a. The subjects you will be studying in this course is / are in the syllabus.
 - b. The extent of the knowledge we need to have by the end of the semester really surprises / surprise me.
 - c. Almost every instructor and student at the university approves / approve of the new college president.
 - d. Do / Does Professor Karl and her graduate researchers work closely together?
 - e. Getting to know students from all over the world is / are one of the best parts of studying at an international university.
- 3. a. Every man, woman, and child is / are protected under the law.
 - b. Each man and woman in this country needs / need to pay taxes
 - c. Every person who buys gas in this state needs / need to pay a gas tax.
- 4. a. Where does / do your grandparents live?
 - b. Why was / were your mom and dad at the retirement home?
 - c. Is / Are taking care of the elderly the responsibility of the family or the government?
- 5. a. Oranges, tomatoes, fresh strawberries, cabbage, and lettuce is / are rich in vitamin C.
 - b. Tomatoes is / are easy to grow. Growing tomatoes is / are especially easy in hot climates.
 - c. I like to do the grocery shopping. The produce my roommate buys isn't / aren't fresh.
 - d. Lettuce is / are good for you.
 - e. Is / Are the bag of vegetables still in the car?





www.ieltstep.com





EXERCISE 9 > Warm-up. (Chart 5-3)

<u>Underline</u> the subject in each sentence. Which subjects refer to more than one person? What do you notice about the subject-verb agreement?

A group of people is cheering loudly for the performers. People are clapping excitedly. The audience is asking for an encore.

(a) The audience is	clapping loudly	Collective noune	c in (a) (d) refer to	more than one perso					
				more than one persor					
(b) The team practices at noon(c) The faculty has chosen a new president.		In American English	, singular verbs are	preferred with collecti	ve nouns				
				verb: The faculty hav	e chosen				
 (d) The staff has been working overtime. (e) The faculty are preparing for classes. (f) The staff have requested raises. (g) The staff members have requested raises. 		 a new president. OR The staff have been working overtime. A plural verb can be used to emphasize the individual members. Note the meaning: (e) = individual faculty members 							
					•		(f) = individual staff members		
					(h) Members of the staff have requested raises.				he word <i>members,</i> as dual members of the g
Common collective	e nouns								
audience	committee	faculty	group	staff					
		formily	is set of	team					
choir	Crew	family	jury	team					

82 CHAPTER 5

www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 10 Looking at grammar. (Chart 5-3)

Check (\checkmark) all the correct sentences.

WURTER CONCERNMENT

- 1. a. _____ Members of the audience are leaving early.
 - b. ____ The audience sometimes boos the performers.
- 2. a. ____ The choir practices in the school basement.
 - b. ____ The choir members is happy with their progress.
- 3. a. ____ The team has talked with the coach about the game.
 - b. ____ The team is working hard to improve.
 - c. ____ Members of the team has spoken with the coach privately about their performance.

EXERCISE 11 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 5-3)

Add the word *members* where possible or write \emptyset .

Paramedics

- 1. The ambulance crew _____ has two paramedics.
- 2. Paramedic staff ______ have the highest level of emergency life-saving training.
- 3. The crew ______ is the first on the scene to an accident or disaster.
- 4. The staff ______ work 24-hour shifts.
- 5. Family ______ are accustomed to their absences.
- 6. The public ______ pays for ambulance services either privately or through taxes.



EXERCISE 12 > Warm-up. (Chart 5-4)

Look at the verbs in blue. What words determine if the verbs are singular or plural?

- 1. Some of this book is interesting.
- 2. Some of those books are interesting.
- 3. Most of those books are interesting.
- 4. Most of the book is interesting.
- 5. One of those books is Linda's.
- 6. Each of those books is yours.
- 7. Fifty percent of the book is photos.
- 8. Fifty percent of the books are on sale.

Singular Verb	Plural Verb	
(a) Some of the book is good	(b) Some of the books are good.	With most expressions of quantity, the verb is determined by the noun (or pronoun) that
(c) A lot of the equipment is new.	(d) A lot of the printers are new.	follows of.
(e) Two-thirds of the money belongs to me.	(f) Two-thirds of the coins belong to me.	For example, in (a) and (b): some of + singular noun = singular verb some of + plural noun = plural verb
(g) Twenty percent of my income goes for rent.	(h) Twenty percent of my earnings go for rent.	
(i) Most of our homework look easy.	s (j) Most of our assignments look easy.	
(k) All of the advice was useful	I. (I) All of the suggestions were useful.	
(m) One of my friends is here.		EXCEPTIONS: One of, each of, and every one of take
(n) Each of my friends is here		singular verbs.
(o) Every one of my friends is here.		one of each of every one of + plural noun = singular verb
(p) None of the boys is here.	(q) None of the boys are here.	None of is used with a singular verb in formal English, but it is often used with a plural verb in informal spoken and written English.
(r) <i>The number</i> of students in the class <i>is</i> fifteen.	(s) A number of students are late or absent today.	COMPARE: In (r): The number is the subject. In (s): A number of is an expression of quantity meaning "a lot of." It is followed by a plural nour and a plural verb.

EXERCISE 13 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 5-4)

Part I. <u>Underline</u> the word in each sentence that determines subject-verb agreement

At a Car Dealership

- 1. Every one of the cars on the lot is on sale.
- 2. A number of cars are pre-owned.
- 3. The number of pre-owned cars is increasing each week.
- 4. Financing for pre-owned cars is available.
- 5. Do all of the new cars come with a rear view camera?
- 6. None of the cars has more than a 5% markup.
- 7. Have some of the cars been in accidents?
- 8. One of the best reasons for shopping here is the salesperson's willingness to show the car's actual cost (the dealer's cost).

Part II. Choose the correct completions.

- 1. a. Most of the salespeople was / were friendly.
 - b. Most of the discussion was / were about vehicle reliability.
 - c. One of the salespeople was / were pushy.
- 2. a. Each car has / have a vehicle history report.
 - b. Each of the models we looked at has / have a good safety record.
- 3. a. A lot of the safety equipment is / are standard in the new models.
 b. A lot of the safety features isn't / aren't available in the older cars.
- 84 CHAPTER 5



EXERCISE 14 Reading and writing. (Chart 5-4)

Part I. Read the story and choose the correct verbs.

King Midas

Do you know these wordsa - exceedingly - greedy - acquire - overjoyed - elaborate - disma - disma - disma - exceedingly - dawn on - overcome - spell - remorse - humble

ing Midas, an exceedingly greedy king, lives / lives (1) a life of great luxury, but his wealth and fortune is / are (2) not enough to satisfy him. Even the company of his lovely daughter is / are (3) less important to him than money. Acquiring more riches is / are (4) what occupies his thoughts all day long.

One day the king call / calls (5) upon a magician and order / orders (6) him to find more treasures. The magician, however, has something better to offer and give / gives (7) him the power to turn everything he touches / touch (8) into gold. The king, overjoyed with this gift, go / goes (9) out into the forest. Each object he puts / put (10) his finger on turns / turn (11) to gold: a tree, a flower, even a stone in the river. King Midas cannot believe his good fortune.

In the evening the king, alone with his new pieces of gold, sits / sit (12) down to an elaborate feast. To his dismay, the first piece of food he touches / touch (13) turns to gold. He tries a slice of bread, and the same thing happens / happen (14). Slowly it dawns / dawn (15) on him that none of the food is / are (16) edible.

The next morning, his beloved daughter runs / run (17) up to him for a kiss, but the king's embrace turns / turn (18) her into gold. A great sorrow overcomes / overcome (19) him, and he pleads / plead (20) with the magician for help. King Midas tells him that his love for his daughter is / are (21) greater than anything else in the world.

He promises to never be greedy again.

The magician waves his wand and the spell disappears / disappear (22). Full of remorse, the king shares his riches and becomes / become (23) a humble and generous ruler. Everyone in the kingdom loves / love (24) him, and he lives a long and contented life among his people.

Part II. Write a story, fairy tale, or folktale from your country. Describe the events in the present tense (present perfect is also OK). Pay special attention to subject-verb agreement with quantity words. Exchange papers with a classmate, and edit for subject-verb agreement.

Fluency Practice. Work with a partner. Take five minutes to tell your partner your story. Then tell your story to another student in four minutes. Finally, take three minutes to tell your story to a third student. The last time you speak should feel more comfortable and easier than the first time.

EXERCISE 15 ► Warm-up. (Chart 5-5)

Look around or think about your classroom and complete the statements.

There are

There is _____

in my classroom.

in my classroom.

5-5	Subject-Verb Agreement:	Using There + Be
(a) (b)	<i>There is a fly</i> in the room. <i>There are three windows</i> in this room.	There + be introduces the idea that something exists in a particular place.
		There + be + subject + expression of place*
		The subject follows be when there is used. In (a): The subject is a <i>fly.</i> (singular)
		In (b): The subject is three windows. (plural)
(c)	INFORMAL: There's two sides to every story.	In informal spoken English, some native speakers use a singular verb even when the subject is plural, as in (c). The use of this form is fairly frequent but is not generally considered to be grammatically correct.

*Sometimes the expression of place is omitted when the meaning is clear. For example, There are seven continents. The implied expression of place is clearly in the world.

EXERCISE 16 Grammar and speaking. (Chart 5-5)

Complete the sentences with *is/isn't/are/aren't*. Take turns sharing your opinions with a classmate.

What do you think?

- 1. There ______ a good reason for everything that happens to us.
- 2. There _____ people or beings on other planets.
- 3. There _______ enough resources (food, water, etc.) in the world for everyone right now.
- 4. There ______ a lot of problems in the world due to climate change.
- 5. There ______ too much gun violence in the world.
- 6. There ______ going to be cures for diseases like cancer and AIDs in the next decade.
- 7. With enough money, there ______ a solution for every problem in the world.

EXERCISE 17 Listening. (Chart 5-5)

Choose the words you hear. For many of the sentences, you will hear reductions of the given words. NOTE: Is + there can sound like "ih-zehr." For example, Is there ("ih-zehr") a holiday next week?

At Work

There's a receipt for supplies on your desk. **Example:** You will hear: You will choose: There is There are 1. There is There are 5. there is there are 2. There is There are 6. Is there Are there 3. Is there Are there 7. There is There are

- 4. Is there Are there
- 8. there is there are

EXERCISE 18 • Grammar and listening. (Charts $5 - 1 \rightarrow 5 - 5$)

<u>Underline</u> the words that determine agreement with the verbs. Then choose the correct verb. Listen to the passage and check your answers.

What's the difference?

1. Rain vs. Showers

Many people treats / treat these words as having the same meaning. For people who follow the weather, however, there is / are a difference. Rain is steady and covers / cover a larger area. Showers tends / tend to be more scattered and does not last / do not last as long. There is / are an easy way to remember the difference: think about taking a bath vs. taking a shower. Most of us gets / get wetter when we take a bath than when we stands / stand in the shower.

Now, which expression do you think is /are correct: It's raining out or It's showering out? If you 9^9 chose the first one, you are right. We use only rain, not shower, as a verb to talk about the weather.

2. Thief vs. Robber vs. Burglar

EXERCISE 19 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 5-6)

Look at the subjects and verbs (in blue) in each pair of sentences. Some of them are "exceptions to the rule." For example, nouns that end in -s usually take a plural verb, but sometimes not. Look for these irregularities.

- a. Nations are groups of people who share a common identity.
 b. The United Nations is an international organization.
- 2. a. Kilometers are measures of distance.b. Seven kilometers is too far for me to run.
- 3. a. English is a language.b. The English are concerned about global warming.
- 4. a. Mix and fix are verbs.b. Six and six is twelve.
- 5. a. Whales are mammals.
 - b. People are mammals.

5-6 Subject-Verb Agreement: Some Irregularities

Singular Verb

(b) The Philipp	l Nations ha s	s of more than 7,000 islands. tis headquarters in New	Sometimes a proper noun that ends in -s is singular. In the examples, if the noun is changed to a pronoun, the singular pronoun <i>it</i> is used (not the plural pronoun <i>they</i>) because the noun is singular. In (a): <i>The United States = It</i> (not <i>They</i>)	
(e) The news is	s interesting		News is a noncount noun and takes a singular verb.	
(f) Mathematic	cs is easy for	r her. Physics is easy for her too.	Fields of study that end in -ics require singular verbs.	
(g) Diabetes is	an illness.		Certain illnesses that end in -s are singular: <i>diabetes, measles, mumps, rabies, rickets, shingles.</i>	
	is too much		Expressions of time, money, and distance usually require a singular verb.	
	vo equals fo u vo <mark>is/equal</mark> s	four.	Arithmetic expressions require singular verbs.	
Plural Verb	h altroba	in his subject weight the fai	Hartsquare way find a selection of	
 (m) Those people are from Canada. (n) The police have been called. (o) Cattle are domestic animals. (p) Fish live under water. 				
(n) The police(o) Cattle are of	<i>have</i> been c domestic ani	alled.	<i>People</i> ,* <i>police, cattle,</i> and <i>fish</i> do not end in -s , but they are plural nouns in the example sentences and require plural verbs.	
(n) The police(o) Cattle are of	<i>have</i> been c domestic ani ider water.	alled.	they are plural nouns in the example sentences and	
 (n) The police (o) Cattle are of (p) Fish live units 	have been c domestic ani der water. b poken in tries.	alled. mals.	they are plural nouns in the example sentences and require plural verbs.	

*The word people has a final -s (peoples) only when it is used to refer to ethnic or national groups: All the peoples of the world desire peace.

1

EXERCISE 20 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 5-6)

Choose the correct completions.

- 1. The United States (has) have a population of around 325 million.
- 2. The New York Times is / are an established and respected newspaper.
- 3. Statistics is / are a branch of mathematics.
- 4. The statistics in that report on oil production is / are incorrect.*
- 5. Fifty minutes is / are the maximum length of time for the test.
- 6. Rabies is / are an infectious and often fatal disease.
- 7. The blind wants / want us to treat them the same way we treat everyone else.
- 8. French is / are somewhat similar to Spanish, isn't it / aren't they?
- 9. The French is / are proud, independent people.
- 10. Does / Do the police have training in mental health issues?
- 11. Thirty dollars is / are an unreasonable price for that T-shirt.
- 12. Four hours of skiing provides / provide plenty of exercise.

EXERCISE 21 ▶ Game. (Chart 5-6)

Work in teams. Choose the correct words (or numbers). Then complete the sentences with *is* or *are*.

- 1. The Scots / The Irish (The English) _____ are ____ famous for educational institutions like Oxford and Cambridge.
- 2. Statistics / Linguistics / Physics ______ the study of the structure and nature of language.
- 3. Diabetes / Measles / Mumps ______a blood-sugar illness.
- 4. English / French / Afrikaans ______ the official language of Namibia.
- 5. People from Canada _____ called Canadas / Canadians / Canadese.
- Approximately 60% / 70% / 80% of the earth _____ covered by water, but only 1% / 10% / 20% of the earth's water _____ drinkable.
- 7. 312 × .5 + 100 _____ 227 / 275 / 256.
- 8. The United Arab Emirates / The Netherlands / The Philippines ______ in the Northern Hemisphere (i.e., north of the equator).
- 9. Fish / Whales / Cattle _____ not mammals.
- 10. Five hundred thousand + five hundred thousand ______ten hundred / one million / one billion.
- 11. Macy's / Harrods / Hudson's Bay _____ a department store that began in London.

*Statistics is singular when it refers to a field of study (e.g., Statistics is an interesting field of study.). When it refers to particular numbers, it is used as a count noun: singular = one statistic (no final -s); plural = two statistics. For example, This statistic is correct. Those statistics are incorrect.





EXERCISE 22 > Let's talk. (Chart 5-6)

Work in small groups. Take turns giving answers.

- 1. How many hours of sleep is enough for you? What happens if you don't get that amount of sleep?
- 2. Write one math equation for each answer: 250, 75, 700, and 1,000. Use addition, subtraction, multiplication, or division. Read the equations aloud for others to answer.
- 3. What do you think is a reasonable amount of money to pay for school supplies and textbooks for one term?
- 4. What do you think is a manageable distance for a person to commute to and from a job? Give your answer in miles or kilometers.
- 5. In your opinion, what advantages do the old have over the young? The young over the old?
- 6. Consider various school subjects: science (biology, chemistry, etc.), mathematics (algebra, geometry, etc.), languages, etc. Which class is easy for you to understand? Which is difficult for you? Which is the most enjoyable?
- 7. Think of a country that has a history you're familiar with. Share some information about the people (the Chinese, the French, the Egyptians, etc.) of this country. Which country has a history you'd like to know more about?

EXERCISE 23 ► Game. (Chapter 5 Review)

Work in teams. Combine the phrases in the left column with phrases on the right. Add punctuation.

Physical Exercise

- 1. All of the people in the exercise class
- 2. One of the best ways to prevent injury
- 3. Recent fitness news
- 4. Exercise in the water
- 5. Unfortunately, a lot of people
- 6. Does
- 7. Different types of exercise
- 8. Is
- 9. Every person at the gym
- 10. Do
- 11. Exercising too much

- a. 30 minutes of exercise a day enough
- b. need to wear athletic shoes.
 - c. affect the muscles differently
 - d. the elderly use the gym
 - e. suggests that exercising with a buddy improves motivation
- f. is dangerous
- g. is to warm up first
- h. needs to wear appropriate clothing
- i. is easy on knee and hip joints
- j. don't exercise
- k. the exercise routine feel comfortable

EXERCISE 24 Let's talk. (Chapter 5 Review)

Work in small groups. Choose the correct verb in each sentence. Are the sentences true in your opinion? Circle yes or no. Compare and discuss some of your answers with those of your classmates.

- 1. The United Nations has / have an important role in today's world. yes no
- 2. Mathematics is / are an interesting subject. yes no
- 3. Both boys and girls needs / need to learn how to do housecleaning. yes no

- 4. Every girl and boy in my country needs / need to have immunizations for certain diseases before entering public school.
- 5. Two hours of homework per day is / are too much for elementary school children.
- 6. Having good computer skills is / are necessary if you want to get a high-paying job.
- 7. One of the biggest problems in the world today is / are the lack of suitable housing for significant numbers of people.
- 8. We may come from different cultures and have different customs, but yes I believe that people across the world is / are more alike than different.

EXERCISE 25 > Check your knowledge. (Chapter 5 Review)

Correct the errors in subject-verb agreement. Some sentences contain no errors.

- 1. The books in my office is very valuable to me.
- 2. All of the windows in our house was broken in the earthquake.
- 3. A lot of the people in my class works during the day and attends class in the evening.
- 4. The news about the effects of air pollution on the development of children's lungs is disturbing.
- 5. Studying a foreign language often lead students to learn about other cultures.
- 6. One of the most common names for dogs in the United States are "Rover."
- 7. A number of planes were late due to the snowstorm in Chicago.
- 8. Forty percent of the people in the state of New York lives in New York City.
- 9. A group of students are waiting for the advising office to open.
- 10. About 90% of an iceberg is below water.
- 11. Unless there are a dramatic and comprehensive change in government policies soon, the economic conditions in that country will continue to worsen.
- 12. The number of buses in the downtown area has decreased this year due to budget cuts.
- 13. While I was in Paris, some of my favorite meals was in small out-of-the-way cafés.
- 14. Most of the mountain peaks in the Himalayan Range has snow year-round.



www.ieltstep.com

yes

yes

yes

yes

no

no

no

EXERCISE 26 Reading and writing. (Chapter 5)

Part I. Read the passage. Then look at the verbs in **bold** and <u>underline</u> the word(s) that determine agreement.

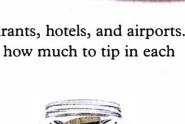
Tipping

Tipping **is** a common practice throughout the world although the custom can differ considerably among countries. Visitors

new to a country **are** often unsure about how much to tip in restaurants, hotels, and airports. Technology **has made** the practice easier. There **are** apps that tell how much to tip in each country for various services.

In the United States and Canada, workers in service industries such as restaurants, airports, and taxi driving commonly **receive** tips. In general, customers tip more when they are happy with the service and less when they are not. The amounts generally **range** from 10–20% of the bill, and the tip is based on the pre-tax amount, not the total bill.

In restaurants, 15% is average. Many restaurants now include suggested amounts at the bottom of the receipt. Some restaurants have a mandatory service charge if there is a large group (typically six or more people). It's important to ask about this charge because it is usually 15–20%. Some carry-out or take-out restaurants and coffee shops have tip jars that some customers use.



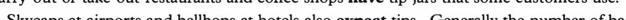
Do you know these word

- considerably - rely on - mandatory - wages

- informed

- common practice

- varies



Skycaps at airports and bellhops at hotels also **expect** tips. Generally the number of bags the traveler has **determines** the **u**p. The amount per bag **varies**, so it's good to check online before you travel. Tips for a taxi driver **are** usually based on a percentage of the fare, and 10–20% is common.

There **are** other service employees that rely on tip income: housekeeping, valet and concierge staff at hotels; food delivery drivers; hairdressers; and tour guides, to name a few. Many employers base their employees' pay on the belief that most customers will leave tips, and they set the pay lower for that reason. Employees **see** tipping as part of their wages, not as an extra.

Before you visit a country, it's a good idea to research tipping practices so you can make informed decisions about tipping.

Part II. Work with a partner or in a small group. Answer these questions.

- 1. What are your general thoughts on the practice of tipping?
- 2. Do people in your country leave tips? If so, for what kinds of services? What is the customary amount for these various services?
- 3. How do you handle tipping?
- 4. Is it right for employers to pay workers less because they expect their employees to earn tips?

Part III. Using the information from your discussion in Part II, write about tipping practices in your country or write about your opinion of tipping. Pay special attention to subject-verb agreement.

WRITING TIP

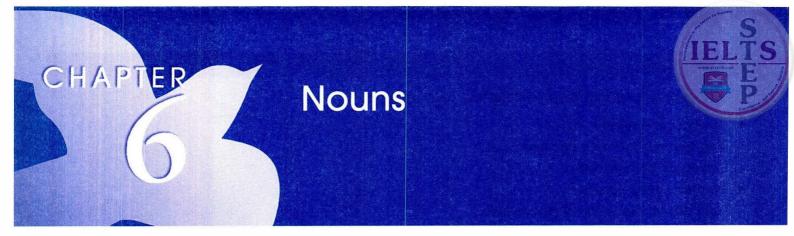
These expressions will help you express your opinion:

- In my opinion/view, X is ...
- X is a good/bad idea because ...
- I strongly believe that ...
- I believe in X because ...
- I am/am not in favor of X because ...
- In my experience, X is ...

Part IV. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box singular verbs with singular nouns
- 2. \Box plural verbs with plural nouns
- 3. \Box singular verbs with percentages
- 4. \Box singular verbs with *each* and *every*
- 5. \Box singular verbs when a gerund is the subject (e.g., *tipping*)
- 6. □ an interrupting structure with a prepositional phrase, *that*-clause, etc., that does not affect subject-verb agreement
- 7. □ correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Go to the Essential Online Resources for Self-Study: Gerunds and Infinitives 5



PRETEST: What do I already know?

Write "C" for the sentences with the correct noun, possessive, and quantifier forms and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

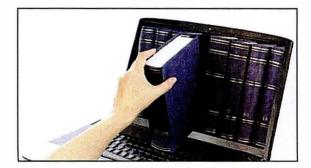
- 1. ____ The knifes in the drawer aren't sharp. (6-1)
- 2. ____ How many potatoes do you need for the soup? (6-1)
- 3. ____ Their three-years-old son is already reading. (6-2)
- 4. ____ I live in a bricks house from the 1920s. (6-2)
- 5. ____ Astrid's mother is moving here from Norway. (6-3)
- 6. ____ Both my boys beds need new mattresses. (6-3)
- 7. ____ I'm staying at the house of my brother for the summer. (6-4)
- 8. ____ Do you have the interview's questions? (6-4)
- 9. _____ Jeffrey will need a luck on his test. $(6-5 \rightarrow 6-7)$
- 10. ____ A great deal of work went into the project. (6-8)
- 11. ____ I have little time to relax at home. (6-9)
- 12. ____ Every employees at this company receives comprehensive health insurance. (6-10)
- 13. ____ Many of online reviews complained about the quality of the work. (6-11)

Incorrect sentences: 1, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13

EXERCISE 1 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 6-1)

Read the sentences and give your opinions. Do you know the singular forms for the words in blue? What do you notice about their plural endings?

- 1. Books belong on bookshelves, not electronic devices.
- 2. I like to share videos on social media.
- 3. I prefer to learn from digital rather than print curricula or materials.



				IELT
6-	1 Regular and	Irregular Plura	Nouns	The second secon
(a)	song-songs			The plural of most nouns is formed by adding final -s.*
(b)	box-boxes		7	Final -es is added to nouns that end in -sh, -ch, -s, -z, and -x.*
(c)	baby— <i>babies</i>			The plural of words that end in a consonant + -y is spelled -ies.*
(d)	man <i>— men</i> woman <i>— women</i> child <i>— children</i>	ox—oxen foot—feet goose—geese	tooth— <i>teeth</i> mouse— <i>mice</i> louse— <i>lice</i>	The nouns in (d) have irregular plural forms that do not end in -s.
(e)	echo—echoes hero—heroes	potato-potatoes tomato-tomatoes		Some nouns that end in -o add -es to form the plural.
(f)	auto-autos ghetto-ghettos kangaroo-kangaroos kilo-kilos memo-memos	photo—photos piano—pianos radio—radios solo—solos soprano—sopranos	studio— <i>studios</i> tattoo— <i>tattoos</i> video— <i>videos</i> zoo— <i>zoos</i>	Some nouns that end in -o add only -s to form the plural. NOTE: When in doubt, use your dictionary or spell-check.
(g)	memento — mementoes/ mosquito — mosquitoes/ tornado — tornadoes/torn	mosquitos zero-	o—volcanoes/volcanos zeroes/zeros	Some nouns that end in -o add either -es or -s to form the plural (with -es being the more usual plural form).
(h)	calf — calves half — halves knife — knives leaf — leaves	life — lives loaf — loaves self — selves shelf — shelves	thief — thieves wolf — wolves scarf — scarves/scarfs	Some nouns that end in <i>-f</i> or <i>-fe</i> are changed to <i>-ves</i> to form the plural.
(i)	belief — beliefs chief — chiefs	cliff— <i>cliffs</i> roof— <i>roofs</i>		Some nouns that end in <i>-f</i> simply add -s to form the plural.
(j)	one deer — two deer one fish — two fish** one means — two means one offspring — two offsp	one sh	eries — two series neep — two sheep nrimp — two shrimp*** necies — two species	Some nouns have the same singular and plural form: e.g., One deer is Two deer are
	criterion — criteria phenomenon — phenome bacterium — bacteria curriculum — curricula datum — data medium — media memorandum — memora	ena basis – crisis – hypoth parenti thesis -	is — analyses - bases - crises nesis — hypotheses hesis — parentheses — theses	Some nouns that English has borrowed from other languages have foreign plurals. In (I), the singular forms <i>datum</i> and <i>medium</i> are not commonly used. The plural forms <i>data</i> and <i>media</i> are used informally for both singular and plural.

*For information about the spelling of words ending in *-s/-es*, see Chart 5-1, p. 79.

** Fishes is also possible but rarely used.

***Especially in British English, but also occasionally in American English, the plural of shrimp can be shrimps.

EXERCISE 2 Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-1)

Write the plural form of each word in the correct column. Some forms have two spellings.

✓ belief	✓ deer	🗸 knife	memo	tomato	
box	fish	leaf	photo	video	
chief	half	life	mosquito	wolf	R. To
class	🗸 hero	loaf	scarf	zero	2 C
cloud	kilo	match	sheep	Z 00	4 5



EXERCISE 3 > Game. (Chart 6-1)

Work in teams of three to five students. Use Chart 6-1 to list plural nouns for each of the four categories. Your teacher will give you a time limit. Choose a leader to write the answers. The team that has the most words wins. Be ready to explain a choice if another team questions it. Your teacher will decide if the word is acceptable.

Example: things in nature that cause people problems

TEAM A LEADER (writes): mosquitoes, lice, tornadoes, deer, etc.

TEAM B: How do deer cause problems?

TEAM A: They eat plants.

TEACHER: OK. We'll accept that.

- 1. things in life that can be dangerous
- 2. things that you see every day

- 3. things that you find in nature
- 4. things that you can hear

EXERCISE 4 Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-1)

Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the nouns in the box. Use each noun only one time.

attorney	cliff	man	piano
beach	discovery	✓ match	phenomenon
datum	laboratory	medium	✓ tooth

1. The baby has been crying at night because she is getting her first <u>teeth</u>.

2. I need some <u>matches</u> to light the fire.

96 CHAPTER 6

- 3. Studies show that ______ process information differently from women.
- 4. Maria needed some legal advice for her businesses, so she contacted two _____
- 5. New scientific ______ occur every day in ______ throughout the world
- 6. Online companies collect a lot of ______ about their customers.
- 7. The north side of the island has no ______ for people to walk on. There are only _____. No one can climb these steep walls of rock. steep _____
- 8. The music building at the university has 27 _____ for students to practice on.
- 9. Thunder and lightning are ______ of nature.
- 10. Many people communicate on the Internet through social _____.

EXERCISE 5 Listening, grammar, and speaking. (Chart 6-1)

Part I. First listen to the conversation with your book closed. Then listen again and underline the plural nouns.

Ordering Office Supplies

- A: Let's see. What do we need?
- B: First, we need to order some printer ink cartridges.
- A: What quantity?
- B: Three combo packages of black and color will do.
- A: What about more paper? Do we have enough boxes in stock?
- B: No, we don't. Put down four.
- A: Anything else?
- B: Yes. We need 100 pens and 100 pencils.
- A: What else?
- B: I think that's it.
- A: Great. I'll put in the order right now.

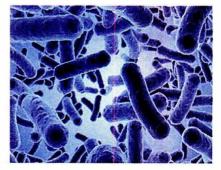
- Do you know these words and phrases? ~ quantity
- combo packages - will do
- in stock
- put down
- put in (an order)

Part II. Work with a partner. Imagine you both work for the same company (you choose the company). Make a new conversation and order different supplies. Pay attention to plural endings. Then practice your conversation and perform it for the class. You can look at your notes before you speak. When you speak, look at your partner.

EXERCISE 6 Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-1)

Choose the correct completions.

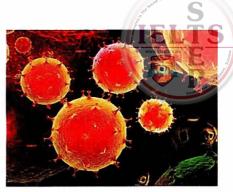
- 1. Bacterium / Bacteria are very small. They are microscopic (very small) organism / organisms that consist of one cell / cells.
- 2. Bacterium / Bacteria are in the air, water, and soil* as well as in the bodies of all living creature / creatures.
- 3. There are thousand / thousands of kinds of bacterium / bacteria. Most of them are harmless to human being / human beings, but some cause diseases such as tuberculosis and pneumonia.



bacteria

*Since they are noncount nouns, air, water, and soil have no plural form. See Chart 6-5 for more information.

- 4. Virus / Viruses are also microscopic organism / organisms. They live in the cell / cells of other living thing / things. By themselves, they cannot reproduce, but inside a living cell / cells, they become active and can multiply hundreds of time / times.
- 5. Virus /Viruses cause many disease / diseases. They infect human / humans with such illnesses as the common cold, influenza (the flu), measles, Ebola, and AIDS (Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome).



a virus

6. A virus / viruses is tiny. The virus that causes AIDS is 230 million* times smaller than the period / periods at the end of this sentence / sentences.

EXERCISE 7 ► Warm-up. (Chart 6-2)

Which nouns in the box commonly follow the nouns computer and airplane?

passenger	error	pilot	screen	skills	ticket	
1. compute	r			2. a	airplane	
compute	r			8	irplane	
compute	r			9	virnlane	

6-2 Nouns as Adjectives	
 (a) The soup has vegetables in it. It is vegetable soup. (b) The building has offices in it. It is an office building. 	When a noun is used as an adjective, it is in its singular form. INCORRECT: vegetable -s- soup NOTE: Adjectives do not take a final -s. INCORRECT: beautiful -s- picture
 (c) The test lasted two hours. It was a <i>two-hour</i> test. (d) Her son is five years old. She has a <i>five-year-old</i> son. 	When a noun used as a modifier is combined with a number expression, the noun is singular and a hyphen (-) is used. INCORRECT: She has a five year -s- old son.

EXERCISE 8 Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-2)

Complete the sentences with the words in *italics*. Use the singular or plural form as appropriate. Include hyphens (-) as necessary.

1. shoe	They sell	hoes at that store.	It is a <u>shoe</u>	store.

2. flower My garden has _____ in it. It is a _____ garden.

*When the words hundred, thousand, million, and billion are used with numerals, they remain in their singular form: Six hundred employees will attend the company picnic this year. There are three thousand entrants in the photo contest. When they are used without numerals to indicate an indefinite but large number of something, they are used in their plural form: Hundreds of people came to the concert. There are thousands of earthquakes in the world every year.

3. bean	This soup is made from black It is black
	soup.
4. baby	People can buy special food in small jars for It is called
	food.
5. child	Dr. Adams is a psychologist for She is a
	psychologist.
6. salad	At a formal dinner, there are usually two forks on the table. The smaller fork
	is for It is a fork.
7. mosquito	In tropical climates, sometimes it is necessary
	to hang a net over a bed to protect the sleeper
	from It is called a
	net.
8. two + hour	The plane was late. We had a
	wait. We had to wait for
9. ten + year + old	My brother is brother.
10. three + letter	Arm and dog are words. Each word has

EXERCISE 9 Game. (Chart 6-2)

Work in teams. Think of common expressions with the given noun + another noun. The team that comes up with the most expressions in the given time wins.

Example: flower \rightarrow a flower vase, a flower garden, a flower shop, etc.

1. cotton	5. telephone	9. morning	13. kitchen
2. grammar	6. mountain	10. street	14. baby
3. birthday	7. government	11. newspaper	15. vegetable
4. chicken	8. football	12. hotel	16. bicycle

EXERCISE 10 > Listening. (Chart 6-2)

Complete the sentences with the words you hear. Pay attention to singular/plural endings.

An Assistant Professor

- 1. Ted is an assistant _____ professor.
- 2. He worked for two ______ before he got a full-time job.
- 3. College ______ have a heavy workload.
- 4. Assistant ______ duties include teaching and research.
- 5. Ted also supervises the T.A., or teaching ______, program for his department.
- Teaching _______ attend his classes and then meet with students in small groups.

EXERCISE 11 Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-2)

Complete the sentences with the *italicized* words. Pay attention to singular/plural endings

1.	airplane / seat	
	a. I don't enjoy flying in <u>airplanes</u> anymore.	
	The <u>seats</u> are getting smaller and smaller.	
	b. <u>Airplane</u> <u>seats</u> are getting	A Company of the second
	more and more uncomfortable, don't you think?	
2.	. taxi / driver	and the second
	a. Joseph and Rob drive for a living.	
	b. They are	
3.	. manager / office	
	a of big have a log	t of responsibilities.
	b. Maria and her sister have good jobs. They're	
4.	school / activity	
	a offer a lot of for	students.
	b. Anna enjoys su	ch as playing soccer team
	and being on the debate team.	

EXERCISE 12 > Editing and writing. (Charts 6-1 and 6-2)

Part I. Read the passage and correct the errors. The number of errors is listed at the end of each paragraph.

Garage Sales

In the U.S. and Canada, a popular way to get rid of used item is through a garage sale. The owner chooses a day or two, usually over a weekend, and sells miscellaneous stuffs from the garage, driveway, or yard.* (2)

Popular items at garage sales include book, old magazine, art, clothes, jewelry, wood furniture, and toy. Usually the price are very low, and often the buyer can bargain with the seller. (4)

Some thing you don't want to buy for safety and health reason include bicycle helmets, child car seat, tire, mattress, upholstered furniture, crib, babies bottles, old cookware, and stuffed animal. The equipment might be outdated, and anything with

upholstery or stuffing might have bugs. (8)

Occasionally people find valuable merchandises at garage sales. In 1999, a man in the U.S. paid \$29 for a paintings by Martin Heade. It turned out the painting was worth over \$800,000! Another man bought a pictures frame for \$4.00. Inside was a rare copy of the Declaration of Independence, worth over \$2 million! (3)



*Some people call this a "yard sale."

Part II. Do you have garage sales in your country? Do you go to them? What do you do with things you no longer want? Write a paragraph about getting rid of stuff.



EXERCISE 13 ► Warm-up. (Chart 6-3)

Decide if the words in blue refer to one person or more than one person.

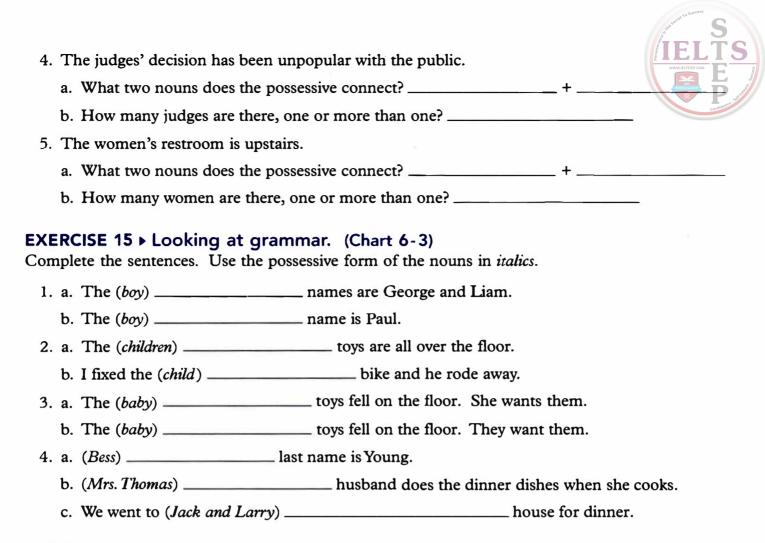
1. my son's school	one	more than one
2. my sons' school	one	more than one
3. the men's hats	one	more than one
4. the man's hats	one	more than one

Singular Noun	Possessive Form	To express possession — the idea of belonging to someone	
(a) the girl the girl's coat	the girl's coat Tom's coat	or something, add an apostrophe (') and -s to a singular noun: The girl's coat is in the closet.	
(b) Tom(c) my wife(d) a lady(e) Thomas	my wife's coat a lady's coat Thomas's/Thomas' coat	 Note in (e): If a singular noun ends in -s, there are two possible forms: 1. Add an apostrophe and -s: <i>Thomas's coat</i>. 2. Add only an apostrophe: <i>Thomas' coat</i>. Pronunciation of 's as in <i>Thomas's</i>: /ez/ 	
Plural Noun Possessive Form		Add only an apostrophe to a plural noun that ends in -s: The girls' coats are in the closet.	
(f) the girls(g) their wives(h) the ladies(i) the men(j) my children	the girls' coats their wives' coats the ladies' coats the men's coats my children's coats	Add an apostrophe and -s to plural nouns that do not end in -s : The men's coats are in the closet.	
(k) Alan and Lisa's ap	partment is on the third floor.	Note the apostrophe usage in (k) and (I):	
 Tom's and Joe's apartments are on the second floor. 		In (k), only the final name has an apostrophe. The apartment belongs to both Alan and Lisa.	
		In (I), Tom and Joe have different apartments. Both names have apostrophes.	

EXERCISE 14 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-3)

Answer the questions.

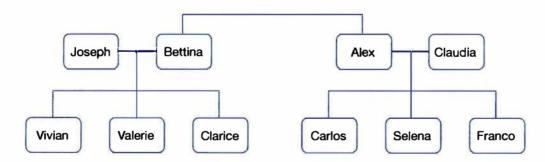
- 1. The kids' bedroom is really messy.
 - a. What two nouns does the possessive connect? <u>kids</u> + <u>bedroom</u>
 - b. How many kids are there, one or more than one?
- 2. Your manager's offices have a lot of space.
 - a. What two nouns does the possessive connect? ______ + ______
 - b. How many managers are there, one or more than one? _____
- 3. My cousin's grandparents are from Iceland.
 - a. What two nouns does the possessive connect? ______ + _______ +
 - b. How many cousins are there, one or more than one? _____



EXERCISE 16 > Let's talk. (Chart 6-3)

Part I. Work with a partner. Make sentences about the family tree. Use possessives.

mother/mom aunt niece sister-in-law first cousin father/dad uncle nephew brother-in-law



Examples: Bettina is Selena's aunt. Selena is Bettina's niece.

Part II. Draw a tree for your family or a friend's family. Explain the relationships to a classmate using possessives.

EXERCISE 17 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-3)

Correct the errors. Add apostrophes to the possessive nouns as necessary.

1. Texas is a leading producer of petroleum and natural gas. It is one of the world's largest storage areas for petroleum.

102 CHAPTER 6

- 2. Psychologists have developed many different kinds of tests. A "personality test" is used to evaluate an individuals personal characteristics, such as friendliness or trustworthiness.
- 3. Many fairy tales tell of heroes encounters with giants or dangerous animals. In one story, the heros encounter with a dragon saves a village from destruction.
- 4. Play is an important part of childrens lives. It teaches them about their environment while they are having fun. For instance, they learn from playing with miniature boats that boats float, and they can practice ways to make boats move across water.

EXERCISE 18 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 6-4)

Which phrase sounds better to you in each pair?

1. a. my cousin's home	OR	b. the home of my cousin
------------------------	----	--------------------------

- 2. a. this week's news OR
- b. the news of this week
- 3. a. my country's people OR
- b. the news of this week
- b. people in my country

6-4	More About Expressing	Possession
(b) (c) (d) (e) (f)	my brother's house the birds' feathers Canada's borders UNICEF's mission the cover of the book the start of the race the owner of the company	 -'s is generally used to express possession for the following: living creatures, as in (a)–(b); countries, as in (c) organizations, as in (d) Of is often used to show possession for non-living things, as in (e)–(g). NOTE: The examples in (a)–(g) show the more common usage. With some expressions, either form is acceptable: <i>the earth's surface</i> or the surface of the earth. These special occurrences are best learned on a surface of the earth.
	today's schedule this month's pay last week's announcement	case-by-case basis. Expressions of time do not generally take of . <i>INCORRECT:</i> schedule of today pay of this month announcement of last week
	people from my country people in m y country	When <i>country</i> is combined with <i>people</i> to show possession, the prepositions <i>from</i> or <i>in</i> are used.
(n)	I'll be at the <i>doctor's</i> . I was at my <i>accountant's</i> . I'm staying at my <i>cousin's</i> .	In (m–o), 's indicates a business or residence. (m) = doctor's office (n) = accountant's office (o) = cousin's home
	I filled out the <i>application form</i> . INCORRECT: the application's form Five astronauts were aboard the <i>space shuttle</i> . INCORRECT: the space's shuttle	A noun used as an adjective can indicate <i>type</i> or <i>kind</i> , rather than possession. In (p), <i>application</i> describes the type of form. It does not express possession. In (q), <i>space shuttle</i> indicates the type of shuttle. It does not express possession.

EXERCISE 19 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-4)

Choose the more common or correct expression according to Chart 6-4.

- 1. a. the start of the movie
- 2. a. this year's profits
- 3. a. the woman's purse
- 4. a. the news of yesterday
- 5. a. the offices of my bosses
- 6. a. the women's restroom
- 7. a. my country's people
- 8. a. the U.N.'s funds

- b. the movie's start
- b. the profits of this year
- b. the purse of the woman
- b. yesterday's news
- b. my bosses' offices
- b. the restroom of women
- b. people from my country
- b. the funds of the U.N.

EXERCISE 20 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-4)

Work with a partner. Choose the correct answer, and explain your reason.

- 1. a. Wilhelm is a factory's worker.
 - b. Wilhelm is a factory worker.
- 2. a. The astronauts had a wonderful view of the earth.b. The astronauts had a wonderful earth's view.
- 3. a. I have four aunts on my mother's side.b. I have four aunts' on my mother's side.
- 4. a. Let's leave at the show's end.b. Let's leave at the end of the show.
- 5. a. Can you pick me up at the doctors tomorrow?b. Can you pick me up at the doctor's tomorrow?
- 6. a. When I was in Chicago, I stayed at a cousin's apartment.
 - b. When I was in Chicago, I stayed at a cousins' apartment.
 - c. When I was in Chicago, I stayed at the apartment of cousins.
- 7. a. I enjoy visiting my friend home.
 - b. I enjoy visiting the home of my friend.
 - c. I enjoy visiting my friends home.
 - d. I enjoy visiting friends' homes.

EXERCISE 21 ▶ Game: Brain Teasers. (Chart 6-4)

Work with a partner to solve these puzzles. The first pair to get all the correct answers wins.

- 1. Nancy and Jack Hanson's family is large. They have ten sons. If each son has a sister, how many children do the Hansons have?
- 2. Lucy says, "She's my mother's daughter, but she's not my sister." Who is she?
- 3. Ricky's mother had four children. The first child's name was April, the second child's name was May, and the third child's name was June. What was her fourth child named?
- 4. Jake is looking at a photo of someone. His co-worker asks who it is. Jake says, "Sisters and brothers, I have none. But that man's father is my father's son." Who is the person in the photo?
- 5. A father and son are on a hiking trip in the mountains. They slip and fall down a steep hillside. The father dies on the way to the hospital, and the boy is taken immediately into surgery. The surgeon takes one look at him and says, "I can't operate on this boy. He is my son." Who is the surgeon?

www.ieltstep.com

WWW AT THE COM

EXERCISE 22 ► Warm-up. (Chart 6-5)

Choose all the correct completions.

A: Does the do	rm room have much	?	
a. desk	b. furniture	c. chair	d. bed

B: It has the basics: a _____ for each student. a. desk b. furniture c. chair

6-5 Cou	Int and None	ount Nouns	
 (a) I bought <i>a chair</i>. Sam bought <i>three chairs</i>. (b) We bought <i>some furniture</i>. <i>INCORRECT:</i> We bought some furniture -s <i>INCORRECT:</i> We bought -a- furniture. 		furniture - s .	 Chair is called a "count noun." This means you can count chairs: one chair, two chairs, etc. Furniture is called a "noncount noun." You cannot use numbers (one, two, etc.) with the word furniture.
	Singular	Plural	
COUNT NOUN	a chair one chair	two chairs some chairs many chairs Ø chairs*	A count noun: (1) may be preceded by <i>a/an</i> or <i>one</i> in the singular. (2) takes a final -s/-es in the plural.
NONCOUNT NOUN	some furniture a lot of furniture much furniture Ø furniture*		A noncount noun: (1) is not immediately preceded by <i>a</i> / <i>an</i> or <i>one</i> . (2) has no plural form, so does not add a final <i>-s/-es</i> .

d. bed

 $*\emptyset$ = nothing (i.e., no article or other determiner)

EXERCISE 23 Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-5)

Look at the *italicized* nouns. Write "C" above the count nouns and "NC" above the noncount nouns.

- 1. I bought some *chairs*, *tables*, and *desks*. We needed some new *furniture*.
- 2. Michiko likes to wear jewelry. Today she is wearing four rings, six bracelets, and a necklace.
- 3. We took pictures of mountains, fields, and lakes on our trip. We saw beautiful scenery.
- 4. The neighbors have a rusty *car* without an *engine*, broken *furniture*, and an old *refrigerator* in their front yard. Their yard is full of *junk*.
- 5. Gold and iron are metals.
- 6. I used an *iron* to press my wrinkled shirt.

EXERCISE 24 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-5)

Complete the sentences with *a*, *an*, or *some*.

Idioms

- 1. Every week our instructor gives us _____ new idioms and _____ slang.
- 2. She told us that ______ teachers find idioms hard to teach, but she enjoys explaining them.
- 3. To be honest, ______ idiomatic expressions are hard for me to make sense of and remember.







- 4. _____ phrase that doesn't make a lot of sense to me is "raining cats and dogs."
- 5. My teacher said to think about it as ______ figure of speech and not worry about the individual words.
- 6. _____ idiom that is easy for me to picture is "to get up on the wrong side of the bed."

EXERCISE 25 ► Game. (Chart 6-5)

Work in teams. The leader has paper and a pen. The teacher will say a noncount noun. As a team, make a list of things that belong to this category until the teacher says "Stop." The team with the most nouns in the list gets a point.

Example:

TEACHER (book open): mailLEADER writes (book closed): mailTEAM to LEADER (book closed): letters, postcards, packages, etc.1. fruit3. clothing5. traffic

2. jewelry 4. garbage 6. office equipment

EXERCISE 26 Grammar and speaking. (Chart 6-5)

Part I. Change the endings to plural with *-es* or *-ies* where necessary. Write Ø for no ending. NOTE: The only noncount noun is *garbage*.

Recycling in Sweden

Imagine a country that recycles 99% of its household garbage1. For Sweden, that's already $\frac{1}{1}$
a reality2. Only 1% of household waste goes into garbage dumps or landfills. How do the $\frac{2}{2}$
Swedes do this? Most separate their garbage in their homes. This includes newspaper4, $\frac{3}{4}$
plastic container, glass bottle, light bulb, battery, and electric appliance
In residential area, recycle bin are only 300 meter (328 yards) away from a home.
Fifty percent of the waste is burned or turned into energy. Garbage trucks go
around city and pick up electronics and dangerous chemicals. Pharmacy 14
take medicines that people don't need. Sweden is a world leader in recycling.

Part II. Discuss recycling habits for trash, old medicines, chemicals, etc., in your country. Is recycling common? Is it required? Are there different rules for different products?

EXERCISE 27 ▶ Warm-up. (Charts 6-6 and 6-7)

Agree or disagree with the statements. Which nouns in blue are noncount?

1. Sunshine is a good source of vitamin C.	yes	no
2. Smog is a combination of smoke and fog.	yes	no
3. In a storm, we hear thunder before we see lightning.	yes	no

6-6 Noncount Nouns Many noncount nouns refer to a "whole" that is made up of (a) I bought some chairs, tables, and desks. In other words, I bought some furniture. different parts. In (a): furniture represents a whole group of things that is made up of similar but separate items. In (b): sugar and coffee represent whole masses made up (b) I put some sugar in my coffee. of individual particles or elements.* (c) I wish you luck. Many noncount nouns are abstractions. In (c): luck is an abstract concept, an abstract "whole." It has no physical form; you can't touch it; you can't count it. A phenomenon of nature, such as sunshine, is used as a (d) Sunshine is warm and cheerful. noncount noun, as in (d). (e) NONCOUNT: Ann has brown hair. Many nouns can be used as either noncount or count COUNT: Tom has a hair on his jacket. nouns, but the meaning is different, e.g., hair in (e) and light in (f). (f) NONCOUNT: I opened the curtains to let in some light. (Dictionaries written especially for learners of English as COUNT: Don't forget to turn off the light before a second language are a good source of information on you go to bed. count/noncount usage of nouns.)

*To express a particular quantity, some noncount nouns may be preceded by unit expressions: a spoonful of sugar, a glass of water, a cup of coffee, a quart of milk, a loaf of bread, a grain of rice, a bowl of soup, a bag of flour, a pound of meat, a piece of furniture, a piece of paper, a piece of jewelry.

6-7 Some Common Noncount Nouns

This list is a sample of nouns that are commonly used as noncount nouns. Many other nouns can also be used as noncount nouns.

- (a) WHOLE GROUPS MADE UP OF SIMILAR ITEMS: baggage, clothing, equipment, food, fruit, furniture, garbage, hardware, jewelry, junk, luggage, machinery, mail, makeup, merchandise, money/cash/change, postage, scenery, stuff, traffic, etc.
- (b) FLUIDS: water, coffee, tea, milk, oil, soup, gasoline, blood, etc.
- (c) SOLIDS: ice, bread, butter, cheese, meat, gold, iron, silver, glass, paper, wood, cotton, wool, etc.
- (d) GASES: steam, air, oxygen, nitrogen, smoke, smog, pollution, etc.
- (e) PARTICLES: rice, chalk, corn, dirt, dust, flour, grass, hair, pepper, salt, sand, sugar, wheat, etc.
- (f) ABSTRACTIONS:
 - --beauty, confidence, courage, education, enjoyment, fun, happiness, health, help, honesty, hospitality, importance, intelligence, justice, knowledge, laughter, luck, music, patience, peace, pride, progress, recreation, significance, sleep, truth, violence, wealth, etc.
 - -advice, information, news, evidence, proof, etc.
 - -time, space, energy, etc.
 - -homework, work, etc.
 - -grammar, slang, vocabulary, etc.
- (g) LANGUAGES: Arabic, Chinese, English, Spanish, etc.
- (h) FIELDS OF STUDY: chemistry, engineering, history, literature, mathematics, psychology, etc.
- (i) RECREATION: baseball, soccer, tennis, chess, bridge, poker, etc.
- (j) ACTIVITIES: driving, studying, swimming, traveling, walking (and other gerunds)
- (k) NATURAL PHENOMENA: weather, dew, fog, hail, heat, humidity, lightning, rain, sleet, snow, thunder, wind, darkness, light, sunshine, electricity, fire, gravity, etc.

EXERCISE 28 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 6-5 \rightarrow 6-7)

Use each noun only one time. Add final -s, -es, or -ies if necessary.

advice	definition	music	symphony
✓ change	equipment	problem	traffic
✓ coin	homework	progress	truck
computer	information	river	vocabulary

- Yes, I have some money. I have a few <u>coins</u> in my pocket. In other words, I have some <u>change</u> in my pocket.
- 2. The Mississippi, the Amazon, and the Nile are well-known _____.
- 3. I like to listen to operas, ______, and folk songs. I enjoy

_____ and listen to it often on my iPod[®].

- 4. Look at all the cars, _____, and buses. This city is full of _____
- 5. There are ______, phones, copiers, and printers in a typical business office. A business office needs a lot of ______.
- 6. Tonight I have to read 20 pages in my history book, do 30 algebra ______, and write a composition. In other words, I have a lot of ______ to do tonight.
- Toronto is Canada's largest city and the fifth largest city in North America. This / These
 ______ didn't surprise me.
- I didn't feel good. Ann said, "You should see a doctor." Nick said, "You should go to bed." Martha said, "You should drink juice and rest." I got ______ from three people.
- 10. My English is slowly getting better. My vocabulary is increasing. I often understand people even when they talk fast. I'm satisfied with the ______ I've made in learning English.

EXERCISE 29 ► Trivia game. (Chart 6-7)

Work in teams. Answer the questions. All of the answers are noncount nouns from Chart 6-7.

- 1. What is one ingredient that is needed to make glass? _____
- 2. What was Albert Einstein's college major?
- 3. What language does the word *algebra* come from? ______
- 4. What natural force pulls things to the ground?
- 5. What comes from sheep that we can make into fabric?
- 6. Name one sport in which players score a goal.
- 7. What does boiling water produce? ______
- 8. What field of study looks at human behavior?

- 9. What substance in our body has red and white cells? _____
- 10. What does rain turn into at 23°F (-5°C)?

EXERCISE 30 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 6-5 \rightarrow 6-7)

Choose the correct completions.

- a. It took me a lot of time to finish my homework / homeworks.
 b. I had a lot of assignment / assignments.
- 2. a. I have been to Mexico three time / times.
 - b. I've spent a lot of time / times there.
- 3. a. Abdullah gave me some good advice / advices.
 - b. Nadia also gave me some good suggestion / suggestions.
- 4. a. Yoko learned several new word / words today.
 - b. She is increasing her vocabulary / vocabularies quickly.
- 5. a. I drank two glass / glasses of water.
 - b. Window / Windows are made of glass / glasses.
 - c. Mr. Chu wears glass / glasses because he has a poor eyesight / poor eyesight.
 - d. Tom put the wrong soap in the dishwasher. What sight / a sight!

EXERCISE 31 Grammar and listening. (Charts $6-5 \rightarrow 6-7$)

Add the correct endings (-s, -es, -ies) to the nouns where necessary. Write Ø for no ending. Then listen to the passage and check your answers.

Hoarding

Rebecca has a problem. She doesn't have any visitor_____. Her family doesn't come to see her anymore. It's not because they don't like her. It's because no one can get through her front door. There is too much stuff_____ blocking the way. Rebecca is a hoarder.

Hoarders are unable to throw out or give away thing _____ they no longer need such as newspaper ______, magazine ______, clothes, and furniture ______6. Some hoarders have box ______ that reach the ceiling.

Hoarding has just recently come to the attention of the general public_____. Hoarding is more than having a messy or cluttered home_____. Hoarding interferes with a person's ability to function. Occasionally, hoarding can become life-threatening. In one situation, the floor of a

hoarder's house _____ collapsed. Sometimes garbage _____ builds up in the house and health problem ______ arise.

Scientists believe that an area_____ in the brain affects a person's ability to make decision______ to get rid of thing______. Researchers are working on treatments for this condition_______.







EXERCISE 32 > Warm-up. (Chart 6-8)

Write <u>all</u> the words that can complete each sentence.

two a couple of both	several some a lot of	plenty of too many too much	a few a little a number of	a great deal of hardly any no	Control
1. I received	letters				
2. I received	mail				

Expressions of	Used with Count	Used with	na i zepādīta " uzbent" Z	
Quantity	Nouns	Noncount Nouns		
(a) one	one apple	0*	An expression of quantity may precede	
each	each apple	Ø	a noun.	
every	every apple	Ø	Some expressions of quantity are used	
(b) two, etc. both a couple of a few several many a number of	two apples both apples a couple of apples a few apples several apples many apples a number of apples	0 0 0 0 0	only with count nouns, as in (a) and (b).	
(c) a little	0	a little rice	Some are used only with noncount nouns, as in (c).	
much	0	much rice		
a great deal of	0	a great deal of rice		
(d) no hardly any some/any a lot of / lots of plenty of most ali	no apples hardly any apples some/any apples a lot of/lots of apples plenty of apples most apples all apples	no rice hardly any rice some/any rice plenty of rice most rice all rice	Some are used with both count and noncount nouns, as in (d). In spoken English, <i>much</i> and <i>many</i> are used in questions and negatives. For affirmative statements, <i>a lot of</i> is preferred. However, <i>too</i> + <i>much/many</i> is used in affirmative statements. Do you have much time? I don't have much time. I have a lot of time. I have too much time.	

*Ø = not used. For example, one is not used with noncount nouns. You can say "I ate one apple" but NOT "I ate one rice."

EXERCISE 33 Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-8)

Choose all the possible completions for each sentence.

- 1. A: I bought a number of thing / items / food / snacks for our party.
 - B: Let me see. Wow! You got a lot of chocolate / sweets / candy / junk food.
 - A: I know. I have no control / limits.

110 CHAPTER 6

- 2. A: How much homework / assignments / chores / responsibilities do you have?
 - B: A lot. Why do you ask?
 - A: Never mind. I don't want to bother you with too many problem / questions / requests / concern right now.
- 3. A: I sent you a few text / email / messages / emails about a new movie that opens today.
 - B: I know. I'm just reading them.
 - A: So ... do you want to go with me?
 - B: Sorry. I have hardly any time / money / gas in the car / clean clothes.
 - A: Seriously?
- 4. A: Miriam is dealing with a great deal of stress / anxiety / problems / issues.
 - B: I heard that. She's getting some help / assistance / advice / support from a counselor.

EXERCISE 34 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-8)

Complete the sentences with *much* or *many*. Write the plural form of the nouns as necessary. Circle the correct verb form where necessary.

Pierre is anxious.

- 1. There (isn't)/ aren't _____ much ____ money in his bank account.
- 2. He has too _____ medical bill this month.
- 3. He can't find ______ information for a presentation that's due next week.
- 4. There is / are too _____ long hour at work.
- 5. He doesn't have _____ time to relax.
- 6. He hasn't met ______ people since he came here, and he doesn't have ______ friend.
- 7. There isn't / aren't _____ news from his family.
- 8. There is / are too ______ violence in his neighborhood.

EXERCISE 35 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-8)

If the given noun can be used to complete the sentence, write it in its correct form (singular or plural). If the given noun cannot be used to complete the sentence, write \emptyset .

1. Helen bought several _____. 3. I need a little _____. lamp <u>lamps</u> money _____ furniture _____Ø advice _____ jewelry _____Ø____ time _____ necklace <u>necklates</u> minute _____ 2. Sam bought a lot of _____. 4. Alice bought a couple of _____. bread _____ stamp _____ rice _____ loaf of bread _____ honey _____ stuff _____ thing _____ jar of honey _____

JIF CARAGE

			S S
5.	I read a few	9.	Nick has a number of
	novel		shirt
	literature		homework
	poem		pen
	poetry		chalk
6.	I needed some	10.	The doctor doesn't have a great deal of
	orange juice		patience
	light bulb		wealth
	hardware		patient
	computer software		pencil
7.	We need plenty of	11.	The researchers have many
	sleep		idea
	information		theory
	fact		hypothesis
	help		knowledge
8.	I saw both	12.	Jack bought too much
	woman		shoe
	movie		salt
	scene		equipment
	scenery		tool Uo

EXERCISE 36 Writing and speaking. (Chart 6-8)

Use the quantity expressions below to state your opinions on the topics in the box. Then share and compare your opinions with a classmate's. How similar or different are your views?

famous celebrities food	serious problems in the world TV commercials
movies	teenagers
doctors	cities

1. A great deal of
2. A number of
3. Too many
4. A couple of
5. Too few
6. Hardly any
7. Plenty of
8. Most

112 CHAPTER 6

EXERCISE 37 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 6-9)

Choose the correct answers.

- 1. Which sentence gives a negative meaning of "not many people"?
 - a. Deserts are largely uninhabited. Very few people live in the middle of a desert.
 - b. We had a good time. We met a few people and had some nice conversations.
- 2. Which sentence gives a negative meaning of "not much water"?
 - a. It's hot today. You should drink a little water.
 - b. A desert is a dry place. There is *little water* in a desert.

6-	9 Using A Few and Few; A Little and Little	
N	COUNT: (a) We sang a few songs. IONCOUNT: (b) We listened to a little music.	A few and few are used with plural count nouns, as in (a).
		<i>A little</i> and <i>little</i> are used with noncount nouns, as in (b).
(c)	She has been here only two weeks, but she has already made a few friends. (Positive idea: She has made some friends.)	<i>A few</i> and <i>a little</i> give a positive idea; they indicate that something exists, is present, as in (c) and (d).
(d)	I'm very pleased. I've been able to save a <i>little money</i> this month. (Positive idea: I have saved some money instead of spending all of it.)	
(e)	I feel sorry for her. She has (very) few friends. (Negative idea: She does not have many friends; she has almost no friends.)	<i>Few</i> and <i>little</i> (without <i>a</i>) give a negative idea; they indicate that something is largely absent, as in (e).
(f)	I have (very) little money. I don't even have enough money to buy food for dinner. (Negative idea: I do not have much money; I have almost no money.)	Very (+ few/little) makes the negative stronger, the number/amount smaller, as in (f).

EXERCISE 38 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-9)

Without changing the meaning of the sentence, replace the *italicized* words with *a few*, *few*, *a little*, or *little*. Which statements are true for you or do you agree with?

a few

- 1. I like to stream movies on the Internet. Every week I watch two or three movies.
- 2. I don't watch TV very much because there are *hardly any* programs that I enjoy.
- 3. There is *almost no* snow in my country.
- 4. I need some sunshine to feel happy.
- 5. It's good to speak two languages, but not many people need more than two.
- 6. Everyone needs to take some vitamins every day to stay healthy.
- 7. Not many things in life are certain.
- 8. Some of the best things in life are free.





EXERCISE 39 • Grammar and listening. (Chart 6-9)

Complete the sentences with a few, few, a little, or little. Then listen to the sentences and check your answers.

With Friends

- 1. A: Do you have <u>a few</u> minutes? I need <u>a little</u> help. I'm having <u>problems with my laptop.</u>
 - B: Sure. Now is good. I have ______ time before I need to leave.
- - B: Give it ______ time. In ______ months, he'll have more.
- 3. A: I have ______ patience with lazy co-workers. They frustrate me!
 - B: Me too. I work with _____ people who do very _____ work but complain about how much they do!
- 4. A: I'll have ______ coffee with my dessert. Do you want some?
 - B: No, thanks. I drink very _____ coffee. It's too bitter.
 - A: I love coffee, especially with ______ sugar.
 - B: Whoa! You're using more than ______ sugar. Are you drinking coffee with sugar or sugar with coffee?
 - A: But it's really good. Do you want to try _____? Maybe you'd drink more coffee this way.
 - B: Uh, I don't think so! I have very ______ sugar in my diet. It makes me hyper.*

EXERCISE 40 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-9)

Choose the sentence that best describes the situation.

- Rosie was still hungry. She wanted some more rice.
 (a) Rosie wanted a little rice.
 (b) Rosie wanted little rice.
- 2. I don't really like much salt on my food.a. I add a little salt to my food.b. I add little salt to my food.
- 3. I have a long plane ride ahead of me.a. I packed a few sandwichesb. I packed few sandwiches.
- 4. Mr. Li has never studied English. He only knows how to say "hello."a. Mr. Li knows a little English.b. Mr. Li knows little English.
- 5. Talk to Mr. Li's daughter. If you speak slowly, you can have a conversation with her.a. His daughter knows a little English.b. His daughter knows little English.

^{*}hyper = short for hyperactive; having too much energy

- 6. Mr. Perez doesn't know how to be a good boss. He has a bad temper and yells at people all the time about nothing.
 - a. A few people like working for him.
- b. Few people like working for him.

EXERCISE 41 • Let's talk. (Charts 6-8 and 6-9)

Read the list of food in Dan and Eva's kitchen. Do they have enough food for the next week? Give your opinion using the expressions of quantity in the box. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

Example: $36 \text{ eggs} \rightarrow They have too many eggs.$

too much*	too little	(not) enough	just the right amount of just the right number of
too many	too few	(not) nearly enough	
The food in Da 40 apples	an and Eva's l	10 bags of rice	1 kilo of coffee
1 banana		20 cans of tomatoes	2 teabags
6 oranges		0 fresh vegetables	1 box of breakfast cereal
1 quart of oran		1 bottle of olive oil	2 slices of bread
4 gallons of ice		1 cup of sugar	5 pounds of cheese

EXERCISE 42 > Warm-up. (Chart 6-10)

Notice the words in blue. Complete the sentences with country or countries.

1. One _____ I would like to visit is Malaysia.

2. One of the _____ my wife would like to visit is Brazil.

3. It would be interesting to visit every ______ in the world. Each

_____ is unique.

4. I've had wonderful experiences in each of the ______ I've visited during my travels.

6-10 Singular Expressions of Quantity: One, Each, Every

 (a) One student was late to class. (b) Each student has a schedule. (c) Every student has a schedule. 	One, each , and every are followed immediately by singular count nouns (never plural nouns, never noncount nouns).
 (d) One of the students was late to class. (e) Each (one) of the students has a schedule (f) Every one of the students has a schedule. 	One of, each of, and every one of * are followed by specific plural count nouns (never singular nouns; never noncount nouns).

*COMPARE:

Every one (two words) is an expression of quantity (e.g., I have read every one of those books). Everyone (one word) is an indefinite pronoun. It has the same meaning as everybody (e.g., Everyone/Everybody has a schedule).

NOTE: Each and every have essentially the same meaning.

Each is used when the speaker is thinking of one person/thing at a time: Each student has a schedule. = Mary has a schedule. Hiroshi has a schedule. Carlos has a schedule. Sabrina has a schedule. Etc.

Every is used when the speaker means all: Every student has a schedule. = All of the students have schedules.

*In spoken English, too is often modified by way or far: They have way/far too many eggs. They have way/far too few teabags.

EXERCISE 43 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-10)

Complete the sentences. Use the singular or plural form of the nouns in parentheses.

A Youth Soccer Team

- 1. Every (*child*) ______ on the team has some experience.
- 2. One of the (*child*) _____ has been on the team for two years.
- 3. There is only one (goalie) ______ on the soccer team.
- 4. Only one of the (player) _____ has the skills to play goalie.
- 5. The coach is very pleased that each of the (*player*) ______ works extremely hard.
- 6. Every (child) _____ gets a certificate of participation.
- 7. The coach gives a certificate to each of the (*child*) ______.
- 8. He invites every (parent) ______ to the end-of-the-year party.
- 9. Every one of the (parent) ______ tries to attend.

EXERCISE 44 ► Game. (Chart 6-10)

Work in teams. Your teacher will randomly call out a sentence number. Correct the error(s). Some of the sentences do not contain any errors. The team that gives the correct answer first wins a point.

- 1. It's important for every students to have a book.
- 2. Each of the students in my class has a book. (no change)
- 3. The teacher gave each of students a test paper.
- 4. Every student in the class did well on the test.
- 5. Every chairs in that room is uncomfortable.
- 6. One of the equipment in our office is broken.
- 7. Each of the woman in the room has an interesting story to tell.
- 8. One of my favorite place in the world is an island in the Caribbean Sea.
- 9. Customs officials will check each one of your suitcases.
- 10. It's impossible for one human being to know every languages in the world.
- 11. I found each of the error in this exercise.
- 12. Vietnam is one of the country I want to visit.



116 CHAPTER 6

EXERCISE 45 • Warm-up. (Chart 6-11)

Complete the sentences with of or Ø. How do you know when to use of in expressions of quantity?

I saw _____

- 1. some $\underline{\emptyset}$ employees.
- 2. some <u>of</u> the employees.
- 3. some <u>*of*</u> them.

- 4. several ______ employees.
- 5. several _____ the employees.
- 6. several _____ your employees.
- 7. several _____ yours.



6-11 Using Of in Expressions of Quantity				
 (a) A number of movies came out today. (b) A number of the movies are available online. (c) None of my friends are available to watch a movie with me today. 	Some expressions of quantity always include of:50% ofa number ofthree-fourths ofa great deal ofhundreds ofa lot ofthousands ofa majority ofmillions ofnone of			
 (d) Many movies are available for free. (e) Many of the movies are free. (f) Most of the movies won awards. (g) One of those movies is really funny. (h) Many of my movies are in Spanish. (i) Some of them have subtitles. 	In the following expressions, of is optional: one, two, etc. (of) some (of) each (of) several (of) much (of) (a) few (of) many (of) (a) little (of) most (of) hardly any (of) all (of) almost all (of) Note the difference in meaning: In (d): movies in general In (e): specific movies (e.g., online) When of is used with these expressions, the noun must be modified by • an article, as in (e) and (f) • a demonstrative, as in (g) • a possessive, as in (h)* Or, a pronoun can be used, as in (i). <i>INCORRECT:</i> most of movies almost movies			
 (j) Every movie had a review. (k) No movie is perfect. 	<i>Every</i> and <i>no</i> are never used with of.			

*All is an exception. Even when the noun is modified, all can be used without of: all the movies, all those movies, or all my movies.

EXERCISE 46 Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-11)

Complete the sentences with of or O.





Junk Mail

1. I usually get a lot _____ mail.

2. A lot _____ the mail I get is junk mail.

- 3. I throw most _____ junk mail away.
- 4. Most _____ people I know don't like getting junk mail.
- 5. One _____ my neighbors sends it back to the company.
- 6. My husband got a few _____ catalogs yesterday.
- 7. Several _____ the catalogs often have coupons or special offers like free shipping.
- 8. I look at few _____ those.
- 9. Many _____ companies offer better deals online.
- 10. Some _____ charitable groups ask for donations via the mail.
- 11. Most ______ the charitable groups send several ______ requests every year.
- 12. I respond to some _____ them.

EXERCISE 47 > Let's talk. (Charts 6-10 and 6-11)

Make comments about the situation by using the expressions in the box and the information in the sentences. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

SITUATION: There are 15 employees taking a basic Chinese language class.

all of	the majority of	several of	a couple of
almost all of	some of	a few of	hardly any of
most of	about half of	very few of	one of

Example: Three have studied Chinese before. SPEAKER A: A few of them have studied Chinese before. SPEAKER B: Most of them have never studied Chinese before.

- 1. Thirteen speak English as their native language.
- 2. One speaks Thai, and one speaks Arabic.
- 3. No one speaks Spanish.
- 4. Two have studied several languages already.
- 5. Fifteen think Chinese is very difficult.
- 6. Fourteen are enjoying the class.
- 7. Five have already bought the textbook.
- 8. Four are men; eleven are women.

118 CHAPTER 6

EXERCISE 48 ► Grammar and writing. (Charts 6-10 and 6-11) Part I. Complete the sentences with of or Ø.



Junk food is a global phenomenon. Every country offers
snacks that taste delicious but have little $\underline{}_2$ nutritional value.
Most junk food has these characteristics: a great deal
fat and a high number calories. It probably contains a lot
$_{6}$ sugar, often high fructose sugar. It has a good deal $_{7}$ sodium, and it's somewhat
addictive. The sweet and salty ingredients make it difficult for most people to have just
one bite. Chips, crackers, and soda are a few $\frac{1}{9}$ the most popular junk foods.

Part II. Write a paragraph about snacks in your country. What do people like to eat for snacks? Are the foods healthy or unhealthy? Is there much junk food? What is your opinion of junk food?

EXERCISE 49 ▶ Let's talk: interview. (Charts 6-8 → 6-11)

Conduct a poll among your classmates and report your findings.

Part I. Prepare five *yes/no* questions that ask for opinions or information about your classmates' likes, dislikes, habits, or experiences. Interview at least five people and record their responses.

Sample questions:Do you read about the news in English?Do you like living in this city?Do you have a car?

Part II. Report your findings to the class. Use expressions of quantity to make generalizations.

Sample report: Only a few of the people in this class read about the news in English. Most of them like living in this city. Three of the people in this class have cars. Very few of them have ridden a camel at some time in their lives. Almost all of them are going to be in bed before 11:00 tonight.

EXERCISE 50 \blacktriangleright Let's talk. (Charts 6-8 \rightarrow 6-11)

Most of the statements are overgeneralizations. Make each statement clearer or more accurate by adding an expression of quantity. Add other words to the sentences or make any other changes you wish. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

Example: My classmates are from Japan.

- \rightarrow Most of my classmates are from Japan.
- \rightarrow All (of) my classmates are from Japan.
- \rightarrow One of my classmates is from Japan.
- \rightarrow Hardly any of my classmates are from Japan.
- \rightarrow None of my classmates is from Japan.

Alexandra

- 1. Babies are born bald.
- 2. People are friendly.
- 3. My classmates speak Arabic.
- 4. The pages in this book contain illustrations.
- 5. The students in my class are from South America.
- 6. People like to live alone.
- 7. The people I know like to live alone.
- 8. The countries in the world are in the Northern Hemisphere.
- 9. The citizens of the United States speak English.
- 10. Children like to read scary stories.
- 11. The children in my country go to school.
- 12. The rivers in the world are polluted.
- 13. The pollution in the world today is caused by human beings.

EXERCISE 51 • Check your knowledge. (Chapter 6 Review)

Correct the errors.

- 1. That magazine contain many different kind of story and article.
- 2. In my country, there is alot of language schools.
- 3. Alicia is always willing to help her friends in every possible ways.
- 4. Your country has one of the best-trained army in the world.
- 5. There are a lot of equipments in the research laboratory.
- 6. I have a five years old daughter and a three years old son.
- 7. Most of people in my apartment's building is friendly.
- 8. Dennis family lives on a sailboat.
- 9. We had two difficults tests in chemistry last week.
- 10. Almost students in my class are from Asia.
- 11. It's difficult for me to understand English when people use a lot of slangs.
- 12. George works in research and development at an airplane's company.

EXERCISE 52 • Grammar, reading, and writing. (Chapter 6)

Part I. Read the following passage.

Web Design

Websites come in all shapes and sizes. Some are easier to use than others, and some are more attractive than others. Some of this is due to personal preference. Everyone has favorite colors or designs. But there are features that seem to make a website easier to navigate or more visually appealing to us.

For many designers, Apple Inc. is an example of a company with an effective website. The homepage is clean and uncluttered. There isn't much information on the page. It has large photos of its products rather than small ones. It is user-friendly. The links are easy to see and fast. There are many helpful tutorials for products, and they are short. This is important because people want information quickly and don't want to watch long videos. These features have made this company's website attractive and useful.



Part II. In your opinion, what features make a good website? Check (1) the answers.

- 1. _____ a lot of photos
 8. _____ links to pages (rather than scrolling)

 2. _____ fast links
 9. _____ music

 3. _____ colorful font
 10. _____ professional art

 - 12. _____ social media links
- 7. _____ speed: pages that load quickly 14. _____ muted colors

Part III. Choose a website. It can be one you like, dislike, or have mixed feelings about. Write a paragraph and evaluate its effectiveness. Consider your choices in Part II, and give your opinion. Use these sentences as a guide:

- _____ is an example of an effective/helpful/weak, etc. website.
- The opening page is ...

4. _____ a lot of white space

5. ____ contact information

6. _____ user-friendly pages

- It is/has ...
- There is/are/isn't/aren't ...
- These features have made/make ...

WRITING TIP

It's important to use specific details in your writing and avoid details that are too general or vague. For example, look at the following pairs of sentences.

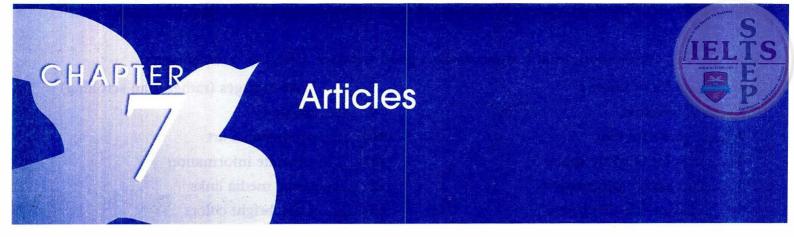
- a. The opening page is interesting.
- a. There is a link for a tutorial.
- b. The opening page has a colorful logo.
- b. There is a tutorial on three additional uses for this product.

In the b. sentences, the writer uses clearer or more specific language. When you write, try to provide this kind of specific information for your reader.

Part IV. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box correct use of *-s/-es-/ies* endings for plural nouns
- 2. \Box no *-s/-es-/ies* endings for noncount nouns
- 3. □ no plural endings on adjectives
- 4. \Box correct use of expressions of quantity
- 5. \Box specific details
- 6. \Box correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Go to the Essential Online Resources for Self-Study: Gerunds and Infinitives 6



PRETEST: What do I already know?

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct article usage and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, write any necessary corrections.

- 1. ____ Here's some coffee. Watch out. It's hot. (7-1)
- 2. ____ Price of rice and flour is increasing. (7-1)
- 3. ____ A dolphin is extremely intelligent. (7-2)
- 4. ____ Carrots and tomatoes are rich in vitamin A. (7-2)
- 5. _____ Is the wallet on the desk yours? (7-3)
- 6. ____ An assistant in my office in also a part-time flight instructor. (7-3)
- 7. ____ Sun sets around 7:00 р.м. tonight (7-4)
- 8. ____ There's a surprise waiting for you in the kitchen! (7-4)
- 9. ____ Who is going to clean windows? (7-4)
- 10. ____ How far is Australia from New Zealand? (7-5)
- 11. ____ Nile River flows through several countries. (7-5)

II '6 'L 'Z :sououos 100100

EXERCISE 1 > Warm-up. (Chart 7-1)

Match the explanation to the sentence it describes.

- a. gifts in general b. a specific gift
- 1. ____ I received a Valentine's gift.
- 2. ____ The gift was very thoughtful.
- 3. _____ Is it better to give or receive gifts?

c. one gift, but not specific



7-1 Articles (A, An, The) with Indefinite and Definite Nouns

Indefinite Nouns		
 (a) I had a banana for a snack. (b) I had Ø bananas for a snack. (c) I had Ø fruit for a snack. (d) I had some bananas for a snack. (e) I had some fruit for a snack. 	In (a): The speaker is not refe "the banana you gave me." one banana. The listener do banana was eaten; it was sin Because a * means one , it is r nouns, as in (b) and (c). Some may be used with inde	that has not specifically been identified. erring to "this banana" or "that banana" or The speaker is simply saying that she/he ate es not know or need to know which specific nply one banana out of all bananas. not used with indefinite plural and noncount finite plural count and noncount nouns, as in
Definite Nouns	(d) and (e).	nints
 (f) Thank you for the banana. (g) Thank you for the bananas. (h) Thank you for the fruit. 	 A noun is definite when both the speaker and the listener are thinking about the same specific noun. In (f): The speaker uses <i>the</i> because the listener knows which specific banana the speaker is talking about, i.e., that particular banana which the listener gave to the speaker. Note that <i>the</i> is used with both singular and plural count nouns, as in (f) and (g), and with noncount nouns, as in (h). 	
Summary of Articles with Inde	finite and Definite Nouns	a new production of the second second
	INDEFINITE	DEFINITE
COUNT (SINGULAR) COUNT (PLURAL) NONCOUNT	alan* Ø, some Ø, some	the the the

*Before vowels, use an: an apple.

EXERCISE 2 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-1)

Decide if the nouns in blue are definite or indefinite.

Nicknames

1. Nicknames are common in my culture.	definite	indefinite
2. My husband has a nickname.	definite	indefinite
3. It's "Cowboy." He doesn't like the name.	definite	indefinite
4. Sometimes cities have nicknames.	definite	indefinite
5. Chicago is called the "the windy city."	definite	indefinite

EXERCISE 3 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-1)

Add some where possible.

To-do

- some 1. We have, bills to pay.
- 2. Here's a bill from the electrician. no change
- 3. Do you have time to pay them?
- 4. Look at the floors. They're really dirty.

- 5. There's spilled coffee under the chair.
- 7. Please make your lunch for tomorrow.

There are leftovers in the fridge.

6. Where's the grocery list? I have things to add.

EXERCISE 4 Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-1)

Complete the sentences with a, an, the, or Ø. Capitalize where necessary.

1. DEFINITE: Where is <u>the</u> phone?

INDEFINITE: Where is _____ phone?

2. DEFINITE: Please pick up _____ toys on the floor.

INDEFINITE: Please pick up _____ toy at the store for Sue's baby.

INDEFINITE: Sue's baby plays with _____ toys.

3. INDEFINITE: I need ______ onion for dinner.

DEFINITE: ______ onions I just cut are making me cry.

DEFINITE: _____ onion looks spoiled.

INDEFINITE: I need ______ onions for tonight's dinner.

4. INDEFINITE: I smell ______ smoke.

INDEFINITE: _______ smoke always makes my eyes water.

DEFINITE: ______ smoke from the fire is bothering my eyes.

EXERCISE 5 ► Game. (Chart 7-1)

A popular group game is My Grandfather's Store. Each person begins his/her turn by saying *I went to my grandfather's store and bought*. The first person names something that begins with the letter "A." The second person repeats what the first person said, and then names something that begins with the letter "B." The game continues to the letter "Z." Assume that "grandfather's store" sells just about anything anyone would ever think of. Use *a*/*an* and *some*.

Example:

SPEAKER A: I went to my grandfather's store and bought an apple.

- SPEAKER B: I went to my grandfather's store and bought an apple and some bread.
- SPEAKER C: I went to my grandfather's store and bought an apple, some bread, and a camel.

SPEAKER D: I went to my grandfather's store and bought an apple, some bread, a camel, and some dark socks. Etc.

EXERCISE 6 Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-1)

Work with a partner. Check (\checkmark) the incorrect sentences, and explain why they are wrong. Make the necessary corrections.

- 1. ___ We're having a vegetables for dinner. (Reason: Vegetables is plural. Do not use a with a plural noun.)
- 2. ____ Flowers make a nice gift.
- 3. ____ My favorite fruits are an apples and oranges.
- 4. ____ Do all living things need an oxygen?
- 5. _____ Rice is a popular dish in my country.
- 6. ____ I need some coin for the bus fare.

124 CHAPTER 7



EXERCISE 7 Listening. (Chart 7-1)

Articles can be hard to hear. Listen to each sentence and choose the word you hear. If you do not hear a or an, circle Ø.

Example:	You will You will		That's an exce a an	ellent idea. Ø	
1. a	an	Ø	5. a	an	Ø
2. a	an	Ø	б. а	an	Ø
3. a	an	Ø	7. a	an	Ø
4. a	an	Ø	8. a	an	Ø

EXERCISE 8 > Warm-up. (Chart 7-2)

Complete the sentences with the correct number in the box. Which statements are generalizations rather than comments about specific people or things?

- 12 20 36 52
- 1. A wedge of cantaloupe has about _____ calories.
- 2. A box has _____ sides (inside and outside).
- 3. Pianos have _____ white keys and _____ black keys.

7-2 Articles: Generic Nouns

A speaker uses generic nouns to make generalizations. A generic noun represents a whole class of things; it is not a specific, real, concrete thing, but rather a symbol of a whole group.

SINGULAR COUNT NOUN	In (a) and (b): The speaker is talking about any banana, all bananas,
 (a) A banana is yellow. PLURAL COUNT NOUN (b) Ø Bananas are yellow. NONCOUNT NOUN (c) Ø Fruit is good for you. 	 bananas in general. In (c): The speaker is talking about any and all fruit, fruit in general. Note in (a): <i>A</i> is used with a singular count noun. No article (Ø) is used to make generalizations about plural count nouns, as in (b), and noncount nouns, as in (c).
 (d) The blue whale is the largest mammal on earth. (e) Who invented the wheel? The telephone? The airplane? (f) I'd like to learn to play the piano, Do you play the guitar? 	 The is sometimes used with a singular generic count noun. "Generic the" is commonly used with: species of animals, as in (d). inventions, as in (e). musical instruments, as in (f).
 (g) Janice works with <i>the elderly</i>. (h) Do <i>the wealthy</i> have a responsibility to help <i>the poor</i>? 	The is used with nouns that refer to groups of people, as in (g) and (h). Common examples include <i>the unemployed, the needy, the weak,</i> and <i>the sick</i> . These nouns are plural, and the meaning is generic. (See Chart 5-6, p. 88, for more information.)

EXERCISE 9 Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-2)

Check (\checkmark) if the noun in blue is singular or plural. Also check (\checkmark) the nouns that have a generic meaning.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	GENERIC
1. a. The eggs are fresh.			
b. Eggs have cholesterol.			
c. An egg has a lot of protein.			
d. Are the eggs safe to eat?			
2. a. Doctors treat the sick.			
b. A doctor treats sick people.			
c. Doctors treat sick people.			
d. The doctors are waiting outside.			

EXERCISE 10 Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-2)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that make generalizations.

- 1. _____We need water to survive.
- 2. ____ Water is becoming scarce in some parts of the world.
- 3. ____ The water in the river isn't drinkable.
- 4. ____Water is expensive in some countries.
- 5. ____ Don't go in the water. It's not safe for swimming.

EXERCISE 11 Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-2)

Work in small groups. Choose the sentence (a. or b.) that best describes the given sentence.

- 1. Lions are magnificent animals.
 - a. All lions are magnificent.
 - b. Some lions are magnificent.
- 2. A lion is fierce.
 - a. One lion is fierce.
 - b. All lions are fierce.
- 3. I saw a lion at the zoo.
 - a. I saw all lions.
 - b. I saw one lion.
- 4. The lion that we saw looked fierce.
 - a. One lion looked fierce.
 - b. Several lions looked fierce.

EXERCISE 12 → Let's talk. (Chart 7-2)

Work in small groups. Follow the instructions.

- 1. Think about wild animals. Choose three and make general statements. Use *a*/*an*.
- 2. Think about inventions. Choose three and make general statements. Use the plural.
- 3. Think about the rich, the poor, and/or the elderly. Make three general statements.

- 5. A lion has a loud roar.
 - a. All lions have a loud roar.
 - b. One lion has a loud roar.



EXERCISE 13 ▶ Game. (Chart 7-2)

Work in small groups. Complete each sentence with the correct word and an article if necessary. All of the sentences have generic meanings. The team that has the most correct answers wins.

apple adjectives ✓ bird	bridge ✓ food gold	island	sentence sentences tennis	tennis player tennis players water
1	A bird	_ has wings.		
2	Food	_ contains impo	rtant vitamins a	nd minerals.
3		is composed of	f oxygen and hy	drogen.
4		_ is a sport.		
5		need to practic	e long hours.	
6		_ needs to have a	a strong arm.	
7		_ is a piece of la	nd surrounded	by water.
8		are land surrou	unded by water.	
9		_ is an expensive	e metal.	
10		_ is a structure t	hat is over a rive	er.
11		is of the most i	important thing	s in life.
12		_ describe nouns	5.	
13		_ usually contair	n a subject and a	a verb.
14		_ needs punctua	tion.	
15		_ can be red, gre	en, or yellow. F	Red is the most popular.

EXERCISE 14 Game: What am I? (Chart 7-2)

Work in pairs. Complete the sentences with *a*, *the*, or Ø. Then answer each question.

- I produce ______ oxygen and keep the air clean. I provide ______ food and am ______ source of lifesaving medicines. _____ people can use products from me to build ______ houses and to make ______ paper and ______ cloth. What am I? _______
- 3. About 98% of me contains _____ water. My job is to protect a part of the human body from _____ dust, _____ dirt, and _____ smoke. I help relieve _____ stress. I also keep _____ dryness away. You will see me most often on _____ person's face. I am more common in some people than in others. What am I? ______

EXERCISE 15 Warm-up. (Chart 7-3)

Read the conversations. In which sentence does excuse mean "a specific one"?

- A: I hope you have an excuse for your absence.
 B: I do.
- 2. A: Did you think the excuse Mike gave for his absence was believable?B: Not really.

7-3 Descriptive Information with	Definite and Indefinite Nouns
 (a) I'd like a cup of coffee from the café next door. (b) The cup of coffee I got was wonderful. 	Descriptive information may or may not make a noun definite or specific. Study the examples.
(c) Do you have a pen with red ink?(d) The pen in my bag is leaking.	In (a), <i>from the café next door</i> does not make the <i>cup of coffee</i> definite. It is one cup of coffee among many.
	In (b), the speaker is referring to a specific cup of coffee — the cup that the speaker got.
	In (c), the speaker is referring to one of many pens, not a specific one.
	In (d), the speaker is referring to a specific pen.
 (e) The manager who trained me got a promotion. (f) A manager who trains workers has a lot of responsibility. 	Descriptive clauses may or may not make a noun specific. (e) = a specific manager (f) = any manager
(g) Managers who train workers have a lot of responsibility.	(g) = any managers
 (h) There is a piece of the puzzle. (i) There is the piece you were looking for. (j) There are Ø pieces on the floor. (k) There are the pieces you were looking for. 	In general, <i>there is</i> and <i>there are</i> introduce new topics. Therefore, the noun that follows is usually indefinite. However, in cases where the noun is already known, <i>the</i> is used. (h) and (j) = not specific (i) and (k) = specific
(1) Jim works for a real estate office.(m) I stopped at the real estate office after work.	Adjectives do not automatically make nouns specific. (1) = one real estate office of many, not specific (m) = a specific or known real estate office

EXERCISE 16 Reading and grammar. (Chart 7-3)

Look at the nouns in blue. Which ones are specific?

Captive Dolphins

I was listening to the news and heard a sad story. It appears there is evidence that dolphins in captivity suffer. Dolphins that are free in nature live around 40 years. Captive dolphins live an average of 12 years. It is believed that in some cases, captive dolphins even commit suicide. Animal rights activists are working to bring more awareness to the situation of captive dolphins.





EXERCISE 17 Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-3)

Work with a partner. Look at the nouns in blue. Which ones have the meaning of "one of many?"

- a. Have you had time to think about the new program that Jackie presented?
 b. William is developing a new computer program for his company.
- 2. a. Here's a ticket for the new movie.b. The ticket that James got for speeding is really expensive.
- 3. a. A detail that the witness told police was very helpful.b. The detail that the witness remembered was very helpful.
- 4. a. The sport that everyone in my class watches is soccer.b. My son is teaching himself a new sport: stand-up paddle boarding.

EXERCISE 18 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-3)

Write *a*, *the*, or Ø according to the given information.

- 1. Specific: <u>the</u> ball on the soccer field General: <u>a</u> ball on the soccer field
 - GENERAL: $\underline{\emptyset}$ balls on the soccer field
- 2. SPECIFIC: ______ secretary at my school
 - GENERAL: ______ secretary at my school GENERAL: ______ secretaries at my school
- 3. GENERAL: ______ fruit in the bowl
 - SPECIFIC: _____ fruit in the bowl



- 4. SPECIFIC: _____ company that makes hats GENERAL: _____ company that makes hats
 5. SPECIFIC: _____ worker who is sick
 GENERAL: _____ workers who are sick
 GENERAL: _____ worker who is sick
 - SPECIFIC: _____ workers who are sick

EXERCISE 19 \blacktriangleright Grammar and speaking. (Charts 7-1 \rightarrow 7-3)

Complete the sentences with a, an, the, or O. Do you agree or disagree with the statements? Circle yes or no. Share some of your answers with the class. Capitalize as necessary.

1. Everyone needs to have cell phone.	yes	no
2. If you have a cell phone, you don't need to wear watch.	yes	no
3 cell phones are replacing watches.	yes	no
4. One key to <u>healthy life is daily physical exercise</u> .	yes	no
5. I'd like to read a book about life and art of Pablo Picasso.	yes	no
6 jewelry looks good on both men and women.	yes	no
7. English is <u>easy language to learn</u> .	yes	no
8. Listening to loud rock music is fun.	yes	no
9 music I like best is rock 'n roll.	yes	no
10 vocabulary in this exercise is easy.	yes	no
11 golf is exciting sport.	yes	no

EXERCISE 20 ► Warm-up. (Chart 7-4)

Which of the two conversations do you think is correct?

- A: A moon is very bright tonight.
 B: Stars are beautiful too.
- 2. A: The moon is very bright tonight.B: The stars are beautiful too.





(a)	<i>The sun</i> is bright today. Please hand this book to <i>the teacher</i> . Please open <i>the door</i> . Omar is in <i>the kitchen</i> .	GUIDELINE: Use the when you know or assume that your listener is familiar with and thinking about the same specific thing or person you are talking about.
(b)	Yesterday I saw some dogs. The dogs were chasing a cat. The cat was chasing a mouse. The mouse ran into a hole. The hole was very small.	GUIDELINE: Use <i>the</i> for the second mention of an indefinite noun.* In (b): first mention = <i>some dogs</i> , a <i>cat</i> , a <i>mouse</i> , a <i>hole</i> ; second mention = <i>the dogs</i> , <i>the cat</i> , <i>the mouse</i> , <i>the hole</i>
(c) (d)	CORRECT: Apples are my favorite fruit. INCORRECT: The apples are my favorite fruit. CORRECT: Gold is a metal. INCORRECT: The gold is a metal.	GUIDELINE: Do not use <i>the</i> with a plural count noun (e.g., <i>apples</i>) or a noncount noun (e.g., <i>gold</i>) when you are making a generalization.
(e)	CORRECT: (1) I drove a car. / I drove the car. (2) I drove that car. (3) I drove his car. INCORRECT: I drove car. I drove a that car. I drove a his car.	 GUIDELINE: A singular count noun (e.g., <i>car</i>) is always preceded by: (1) an article (<i>a</i>/<i>an</i> or <i>the</i>); OR (2) <i>this / that</i>; OR (3) a possessive adjective.

*The is NOT used for the second mention of a generic noun. COMPARE:

(1) What color is a banana (generic noun)? A banana (generic noun) is yellow.

(2) Joe offered me a banana (indefinite noun) or an apple. I chose the banana (definite noun).

EXERCISE 21 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-4)

Complete the conversations with a, an, the, or Ø. Capitalize as necessary.

1. A: I have <u>an</u> idea. Let's go on <u>a</u> picnic Saturday.

B: OK.

2. A: Did you have fun at <u>the</u> picnic yesterday?

B: Sure did.

3. A: Where's my blue shirt?

B: It's in _____ washing machine.

A: That's OK. I can wear _____ different shirt.

4. A: I wish we had _____ washing machine.

B: So do I. It would make _____ my life a lot easier.

5. A: Have you seen my boots?



- B: They're in _____ closet in _____ front hallway.
- 6. A: Wait! Please hold _____ elevator for me.
 - B: Hurry. _____ door is closing.

EXERCISE 22 Grammar, listening, and speaking. (Chart 7-4)

Part I. Complete the conversation with a, an, or the. Capitalize as necessary. Then listen to the conversation and correct your answers.

A Mishap

- A: What happened to your bike? _____ front wheel is bent.
- B: I ran into $__2$ parked car when I swerved to avoid $__3$ big pothole.
- A: Did you damage _____ car?
- B: A little.
- A: What did you do?
- B: I left ______ note for ______ owner of ______ car. A: What did you write on ______ note?
- B: My name and phone number. I also wrote $\underline{\qquad}_{\Omega}$ apology.





a pothole

Part II. Work with a partner. Choose one of the pictures and create a conversation following the model. Perform it for the class.





- A: What happened to the ____? The ____.
- B: I _____. Even worse, it doesn't belong to me. It _____.
- A: What are you going to do? (Etc.)

EXERCISE 23 Check your knowledge. (Chart 7-4) Correct the errors.

What do you like to buy at the grocery store?

- 1. I always like to have the rice in my cupboard. I eat it every day.
- 2. I buy the junk food. I know it's not healthy, but I buy it anyway.
- 3. My a favorite food is the fruit. I have apple or orange every day.
- 4. I'm on diet, so I don't really enjoy shopping right now!
- 5. Hmmm. That's interesting question. Probably anything with sugar. I have sweet tooth.

EXERCISE 24 ▶ Let's talk. (Chart 7-4)

Work with a partner. Put the sentences below in the correct order to make a story. Be prepared to explain your choices. (It may help to write out the sentences on strips of paper so you can move them around.)

A Brief Encounter with a Shark

- ____ The shark didn't fight them and left.
- _____ I recently read an interesting article about a long-distance swimmer and an amazing experience he had during a race.
- _____ The man survived because of the dolphins' protection.
- _____ The dolphins continued to swim with him and guided him for more than an hour.
- _____ During the race, he looked down and saw a shark swimming under him.
- _____ The man was swimming off the coast of New Zealand
- _____ The dolphins made a protective circle around the swimmer.
- _____ Fortunately, ten dolphins were swimming nearby.
- _____ The area had sharks.

С

EXERCISE 25 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-4)

Complete the sentences with a, an, the, or Ø. Capitalize as necessary.

- 1. a. $\underline{\emptyset}$ gaps can protect our heads from the sun.
 - b. Bradley is wearing <u>a</u> baseball cap today.
 - c. Bradley likes to wear _____ caps.
 - d. _____ cap is _____ piece of clothing.
 - e. _____ caps are _____ pieces of clothing.
 - f. _____ brown cap on the chair belongs to Sam.
- 2. a. _____ beef is a kind of meat.
 - b. _____ beef we had for dinner last night was excellent.
 - c. Vegetarians do not eat _____ beef.
- 3. a. _____ engineer designed the Brooklyn Bridge in New York City.
 - b. John Roebling is ______ name of ______ engineer who designed the Brooklyn Bridge. He died in 1869 from ______ infection.

14 S 16 3 1

- c. Roebling's son, Washington, took over the construction of _____ bridge after his father died.
- d. Washington became sick, and his wife, Emily, supervised the completion of _____ bridge.
 She had studied as _____ engineer.





EXERCISE 26 > Listening. (Charts 7-4)

First, listen to this informal talk with your book closed. Then open your book and listen again. Complete the sentences with *a*, *an*, or *the*.

Computer Bugs

When there is _____ problem with _____ computer, we often say we have _____ "computer bug." Of course, it's not _____ real insect. It refers to ______ technical difficulty we are having. _____ expression actually goes back to Thomas Edison, who was ______ famous inventor. When he was working on his first phonograph, he had a lot of problems. He blamed ______ problems on ______ imaginary insect that had hidden inside ______ machine. He was quoted in ______ newspaper as saying there was "______ bug" in his phonograph. This was in 1889, and it is ______ first recorded use of ______ word *bug* in such ______ context.

EXERCISE 27 Interview. (Charts 7-3 and 7-4)

Complete the questions with a, the, or Ø. Then interview a different classmate for each item. The classmate needs to answer in complete sentences.

- 1. Do you have ______ siblings? What are _____ names of your brothers and/or sisters?
- 2. Do you have _____ pet? What is _____ name of your pet?
- 3. What is _____ your favorite restaurant? Where is _____ restaurant?
- 4. Think of _____ color. What is _____ color you first thought of?
- 5. Where is _____ fun place to go on weekends?
- 6. Imagine you are on _____ plane. Where are you sitting on _____ plane? Why?
- 7. What is ______ airline you have heard good things about? What have you heard?
- 8. What is _____ business you have heard complaints about? What are _____ complaints?
- 9. How is ______ weather in your hometown this time of year?

EXERCISE 28 > Warm-up. (Chart 7-5)

Complete the sentences with words in the box. What do you notice about article usage?

the Gulf IslandsVthe CascadesNthe Canadian RockiesN

Vancouver Island Mount Rainier Mount Robson

- 1. _____ and
- _____ are west of Vancouver.
- 2. _____ are in the provinces of

the Canadian Rockies

Alberta and British Columbia.

3. _____ is in the Canadian Rockies.





7-5 Using The or Ø with Tit	les and Geographic Names
 (a) We met Ø Mr. Harper. I go to Ø Doctor Shue. Ø President Costa is the new leader. 	The is NOT used with titled names. INCORRECT: We met the Mr. Harper.
 (b) They traveled to Ø Africa. Ø Australia is the smallest continent. 	The is NOT used with the names of continents. INCORRECT: They traveled to the Africa.
 (c) He lives in Ø Singapore. Ø Canada is a vast country. (d) She's from the United Arab Emirates. The Czech Republic is in Europe. Have you ever visited the Philippines? 	The is NOT used with the names of most countries. INCORRECT: He lives in the Singapore. The is used in the names of only a few countries, as in (d). Others: the Netherlands, the United States, the Dominican Republic.
(e) He works in Ø Tokyo. I recently traveled to Ø Kuwait City.	The is NOT used with the names of cities. INCORRECT: He works in the Tokyo.
 (f) The Amazon River is long. They crossed the Atlantic Ocean. The North Sea is in Europe. (g) Ø Lake Baikal is the deepest lake in the w Ø Lake Tanganyika is the second deepest 	
 (h) We hiked in the Rocky Mountains. The Alps are in Europe. (i) We climbed Ø Mount Kilimanjaro. Ø Mount Everest is in the Himalayas. 	The is used with the names of mountain ranges. The is NOT used with the names of individual mountains. INCORRECT: the Mount Everest
 (j) The Hawaiian Islands and the Canary Islan popular with tourists. (k) Ari is from Ø Tahiti. (I) Have you ever been to Ø Vancouver Islan 	The is NOT used with the names of individual islands.

EXERCISE 29 Trivia Game. (Chart 7-5)

Work in teams. Choose the correct place in the box. Complete the sentences with *the* or \emptyset . The team with the most correct answers wins.

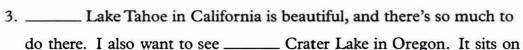
Amazon River Antarctica Australia	Brazil Canary Islands Caspian Sea	-		Lake Tanganyika United Arab Emirates Yangtze River
1 border Switzerland, Italy, and France.				
2 is on the Indian Ocean.				
3		is the third longest river in the world.		
4. Ten countries border				
5 is the biggest salt-water lake in the world.				he world.
6 shares a border with Germany				any
7. Dubai is par	t of			í.
8	8 is the driest continent.			

EXERCISE 30 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-5)

Complete the sentences with *the* or Ø.

What part of the world would you like to travel to?

- 1. I've been looking at brochures of _____ Tahiti and _____ Hawaii.
- 2. _____ Himalayas are stunning. I'd love to see _____ Mount Everest.



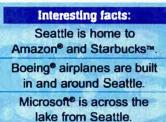
top of a volcano.

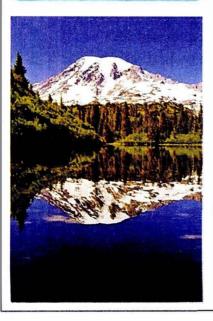
- 4. I do a lot of traveling to major cities like _____ Paris, _____ Shanghai, and _____ Mumbai for business. I would like to see the beaches in _____ Thailand.
- 5. My husband dreams of sailing to various ports in _____ Mediterranean Sea.
- 6. I've never been to _____ Eastern Europe. _____ Hungary and _____ Poland interest me.
- 7. My Japanese teacher, _____ Dr. Kato, says _____ Kyoto and _____ Nara are two of the most scenic cities in _____ Japan.

EXERCISE 31 > Speaking and writing. (Chart 7-5)

Work in groups or individually. Choose a location you think people would like to visit. Create a brochure for it, using the brochure about Seattle as an example. Include the following information:

- a list of points of interest
- some area facts
- a short description of a place to visit (5–7 sentence paragraph)





magnificent Mount Rainier. There are tour buses from Seattle, or you can rent a car. It's about a three-hour trip one way. Mount Rainier is the tallest mountain in the Cascades. From the Paradise Visitor Center, you'll have breathtaking views of old-growth forests and wildflower meadows. There are spectacular hikes in every direction. Mount Rainier is a not-to-be-missed destination!



Experience Music Project Chihuly Garden and Glass International District



Crater Lake

EXERCISE 32 • Reading and grammar. (Chapter 7 Review) Part I. Read the passage.

OYS IN THE SEA

In 1997, a container ship was traveling from Holland to New York. As it passed the British coastline, a freak wave hit the boat. Sixty-two containers went crashing into the Atlantic Ocean. Inside those containers were LEGO® building bricks, a very popular children's toy. Not just a few went to the bottom of the sea, but millions - 4,756,950 pieces to be exact. Since that time, they have been washing up on beaches around the world.

The BBC has put together a map of the countries and cities where pieces have been found. Some have traveled as far as Australia. Children and collectors have been happy to find them, but they are a problem for wildlife. They are very small, and birds and fish have eaten them.

Another problem is that petroleum-based plastic never goes away. It can degrade, or get smaller and smaller, until it's the size of a molecule, but it never disappears. It's still in the water for sea life and birds to ingest. Eventually it reaches the human food chain. Plastic also releases toxic chemicals as it breaks down, and these chemicals harm sea life.



- freak
- petroleum
- molecule
- ingest
- human food chain
- toxic
- harm
- -litter
- uphill battle



a container ship

People are more aware of the problem, and volunteer groups have formed to pick up the pieces along with other plastic litter. However, they face an uphill battle with so much plastic in the oceans and so many little floating pieces.

Part II. Answer the questions in complete sentences. Pay special attention to article usage in your sentences.

- 1. Where did the voyage begin?
- 2. What was the ship's destination?
- 3. What caused problems for the boat?
- 4. What happened to 62 containers?
- 5. What was inside the containers?

- 6. Where have people found the plastic pieces?
- 7. What problems are plastic pieces causing?
- 8. How small does the plastic become?
- 9. Why is plastic bad for sea life?
- 10. Will it be easy to pick up all the plastic litter?

EXERCISE 33 Check your knowledge. (Chapter 7 Review)

Correct the errors in article usage.

- 1. The Bali is very interesting island.
- 2. I want to live in warm place after I graduate from college.
- 3. When I was high school student, I took my first airplane ride overseas.
- 4. Seoul is capital city of South Korea.
- 5. I had very strange experience at a party last night.
- 6. Is it good idea to put plastic in microwave oven?

136 CHAPTER 7

www.ieltstep.com

- 7. At the store, salesperson ignored me. I bought my clothes elsewhere.
- 8. What are some differences between the men and the women?
- 9. Is cost of living very high in your country?
- 10. I need to tell you about very important problem in society today.
- 11. Photos you took are a very beautiful.
- 12. The orange juice is on sale at the store.
- 13. Everyone seeks the happiness in the life.

EXERCISE 34 Reading, grammar, speaking, and writing. (Chapter 7)

Part I. Read the blog entry by author Stacy Hagen. Look at the words in blue. Work with a partner and explain the article usage (or lack of an article) for each.

BlueBookBlog An "Aha" Moment in Language Learning

When I was a college student, I went to Austria for a year to study German. I had studied German for two years at a university, but I wanted to learn the language in more authentic surroundings. I was a shy learner at first because my spoken German wasn't very strong. There was a technique I found especially helpful in those early days. I listened to the news on the radio in the morning. Usually I listened for an hour a day while I was doing other things such as getting ready in the morning or cleaning. I didn't listen carefully, and sometimes I just had it on as background noise. But I always had on news or talk radio, not music.

People on the news use a lot of passive sentences. I had studied a lot of complicated German grammar in college, and the passive was especially confusing to me. I really didn't understand the rules, so it wasn't part of my spoken German. But one morning I woke up after about three months, and I knew the passive! I could use all of the forms effortlessly.

This was my "aha" moment. I realized that I had been learning even when I hadn't been studying. The rules I had learned in college helped me, but listening to the radio turned that knowledge into usage. And the radio was an especially effective way to learn because it required listening. There were no clues from the speaker's face or actions to help me. All of this was a powerful lesson for me.

Have you found some especially helpful techniques for learning English? Have you had an "aha" moment?

Part II. Discuss these questions in small groups. Then write about your own experiences as a second language learner.

- 1. How much English do you speak and read outside the classroom?
- 2. Is using English in class sufficient for you to meet your language-learning goals?
- 3. What are some good ways to practice English outside the classroom?
- 4. Do you avoid certain situations if you have to speak English? For example, speaking on the phone? Attending a party? Participating in class discussion?
- 5. Are you afraid of making mistakes when you speak? Everyone who is learning a second language makes mistakes. It's part of the process. Do mistakes matter?
- 6. Are there aspects of English grammar that are especially hard for you?

- 7. Think about your language-learning experience. What techniques have you found especially helpful for learning English?
- 8. Have you had an "aha" moment yet while learning English?

WRITING TIP

One way to organize your writing is to begin with more general information. As your writing progresses, give more detailed information. For example, you can begin by describing the type of language learner you are, overall. Then choose one or two specific problems you are having. Give details about these problems. End by describing how you deal with or possibly have solved these problems.

Part III. Edit your writing.

1. Use this list to check your article usage:

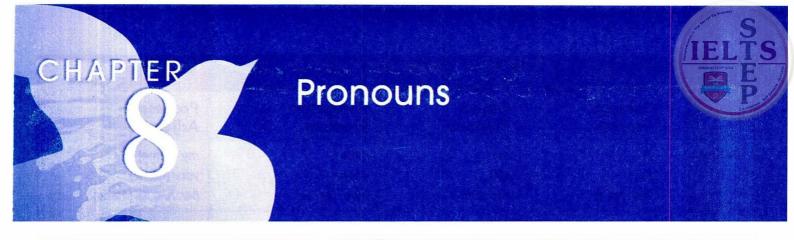
Is the noun specific?

- If yes: Use the for singular count nouns. Use the for plural count nouns. Use the for noncount nouns.
- If no: Use a/an for singular count nouns. Use Ø for plural count nouns. Use Ø for noncount nouns.

Exception: Are you making a general statement about an invention or instrument? Use *the* with the singular count form of the noun.

- 2. <u>Underline</u> any titles and place names in your writing. Review Chart 7-5 for correct use of titles and place names.
- 3. Check for correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Go to the Essential Online Resources for Self-Study: Gerunds and Infinitives 7



PRETEST: What do I already know?

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct pronoun usage and agreement and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. ____ The manager asked for a meeting with Bill and I. (8-1)
- 2. ____ That is your order. This one is ours. (8-1)
- 3. ____ I enjoy dessert after dinner. Do you enjoy too? (8-1)
- 4. _____A student needs to check their work carefully. (8-2)
- The baseball team is going to win the championship. It has been working hard all year. (8-3)
- 6. ____Why are you staring at yourself in the mirror? (8-4)
- 7. ____ How does one apply for early admissions to college? (8-5)
- 8. ____ Let me tell you other reason I need to borrow some money. (8-6)
- 9. ____ These vegetables are fresh. The others have been frozen. (8-6)
- 10. ____ Michael and Reina would rather work with each other on the various projects. (8-7)
- 11. _____ I'd prefer that you don't tell anyone. In another words, I would like to keep this secret. (8-7)

II '8 '7 'E 'I :souroures 100000

EXERCISE 1 > Warm-up. (Chart 8-1)

Decide if the words in blue are subject or object pronouns. Write "S" for subject and "O" for object.

- A: _____ I just finished cleaning. Look at all these remotes.
 - _____ They were everywhere.
- B: _____ That's because the kids never put them away.
- A: _____What about this one? Do we ever use it?
- B: _____ I have no idea. I've never seen it before.



8-1 Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives				
	Subject Pronoun	Object Pronoun	Possessive Pronoun	Possessive Adjective
SINGULAR	l you she, he, it	me you her, him, it	mine yours hers, his, —	<i>my</i> (name) <i>your</i> (name) <i>her, his, its</i> (name)
PLURAL	we you they	us you them	ours yours theirs	<i>our</i> (names) <i>your</i> (names) <i>their</i> (names)
 (a) I read a book. It was good. (b) I read some books. They were good. (c) I like tea. Do you like it too? 		 A PRONOUN is used in place of a noun. The noun it refers to is called the "antecedent." In (a): The pronoun <i>it</i> refers to the antecedent noun <i>book</i>. A singular pronoun is used to refer to a singular noun, as in (a). A plural pronoun is used to refer to a plural noun, as in (b). 		
		Sometimes the antecedent noun is understood, not explicitly stated. In (c): <i>I</i> refers to the speaker, and <i>you</i> refers to the person the speaker is talking to. Note that the direct object cannot be omitted. <i>INCORRECT:</i> Do you like too?		
(d) John has a car. <i>He drives</i> to work.		SUBJECT PRONOUNS are used as subjects of sentences, as <i>he</i> in (d).		
O (e) Bill works in my office. I <i>know him</i> well. O (f) Will you talk to Bill and <i>me</i> about it?		OBJECT PRONOUNS are used as the objects of verbs, as <i>him</i> in (e), or as the objects of prepositions, as <i>me</i> in (f). <i>INCORRECT:</i> talk to Bill and I		
	g) That book is <i>hers.</i> Yours is over there.		POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS stand alone; they are not followed immediately by a noun, as in (g).	
h) <i>INCORRECT:</i> That book is her's. Your's is over there.		Possessive pronouns DO NOT take apostrophes, as in (h). (See Chart 6-3, p. 101, for the use of apostrophes with possessive nouns.)		
	i) Her book is here. Your book is over there.		POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES are followed immediately by a noun; they do not stand alone.	
(k) <i>INCORREC</i> (†) <i>It's</i> cold (m) The Harl		ngs to fly. old hotel. It's been in	possessive adjective, <i>It's</i> has an apostrophe of <i>it is</i> , as in (I), or <i>it h</i> present perfect tense	e when it is used as a contraction as when has is part of the

EXERCISE 2 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-1)

Draw arrows from the pronouns to their antecedents.



What's new with the family?

- 1. Robert just received a promotion. He is now assistant manager of the company.
- 2. Nancy and Thomas have adopted an infant daughter. They have had her for a month.
- 3. Grandma's cat ran away. She has been sad ever since. I would like to get her a new one, but she says no one can replace him.
- 4. Emil is applying to several colleges. Because he had high test scores, they are offering him scholarships.
- 5. Mom's eye surgery was successful. It was just a week ago, but she is reading again.

EXERCISE 3 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-1)

Choose the correct completions.

At a Party

- 1. Let me introduce you to my parents. I've wanted to introduce you to they / them for some time.
- 2. There's Rachel. Come with me. I need to tell both you and she / her something.
- 3. Just between you and I / me, I think Sam is in danger of losing his job.
- 4. Me and Ella / Ella and I are good friends. Ella needs to know the truth about my meeting with Sam too. I'm going to tell you and she / her exactly what happened.
- 5. Do you need a ride home? Do you want to come with my brother and I / me?

EXERCISE 4 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-1)

Complete the sentences with pronouns/possessive adjectives for the words in blue.

SITUATION 1: There's Sarah,

- 1. I need to go talk to <u>her</u>.
- 2. _____ and I have been friends since high school.
- 3. I went to elementary school with _____ brother and _____.
- 4. _____ parents are best friends with my parents.
- 5. _____ is getting married next month. Another friend and I are taking _____ on a short trip before _____ wedding.
- 6. Being with _____ is a lot of fun. We laugh a lot.

SITUATION 2: I'm not feeling well. I think I'd better stay home today.

- 7. My friends and ______ were planning to volunteer at our local food bank* today.
- 8. The food bank often asks my friends and ______ to help them with various projects.

*food bank = a place that receives donations of food and gives them away to needy people

- 9. But my friends will have to go without _____
- 10. I'd better call ______ friend Sami to tell him I can't come today.
- 11. Could I use your cell phone? I forgot _____.

EXERCISE 5 Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-1)

Choose the correct completions.

At the Lost-and-Found

- 1. This is (my)/ mine umbrella. Your (Yours) is in the box.
- 2. No, my / mine umbrella is black. That isn't my / mine.
- 3. Are these Mom's keys? The key ring looks like her / hers, but I don't remember so many keys.
- 4. I've lost my wallet. It's red and has a hole in it / its.

In the Neighborhood

- 5. Our / Ours house is almost the same as our / ours neighbor's house. The only difference is that our / ours is gray and their / theirs is beige.
- Lisa and Michael each have our / their own vegetable garden. Lisa grows tomatoes and peas in her / hers and Michael grows potatoes and carrots in his / its.



- We have fruit trees in our / ours yard. It / They produce a lot of apples in the fall.
 We pick it / them in September and make juice from it / them.
- 8. There are no crosswalks on our / ours streets. It's dangerous for the kids. Some parents walk with they / them to the bus stop.

EXERCISE 6 > Let's talk. (Chart 8-1)

Work with a partner. Complete the conversations with the *italicized* words. Then choose one conversation from each pair to practice. Perform the conversations in small groups without looking at your book.

- 1. he's / his / its / it's / mine / my / Ø
 - a. A: My phone bill is really expensive.
 - B: I know. ______ is really high too. I'd like to find a cheaper company.

A: Me too, but _____ difficult.

- b. A: Is this your phone?
 - B: No, _____ has a blue case.
 - A: Maybe this belongs to Tom.
 - B: No, ______ is black.

a. A: Are these the appetizers you and Jae brought?

B: No, _____ are in the fridge.

A: Do you want me to take _____ out?

B: Sure.

b. A: Your chicken dish is delicious! Is it your own recipe?

- B: No, I got _____ off the Internet. _____ really easy to make.
- A: Our dorm doesn't have a kitchen, so I'm not able to cook much.
- B: We're lucky that ______ does. People on ______ floor cook a lot.

EXERCISE 7 Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-1)

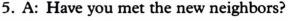
Choose <u>all</u> the correct answers.

- 1. A: Do you like living here?
 - B: (a.) Yes, I like it a lot. b. Yes, I like a lot. (c.) Yes, I do.
- 2. A: Are you enjoying your new job?
 - B: a. Yes, I'm enjoying. b. Yes, I am.
 - c. Yes, I'm enjoying it.
- 3. A: Nice car! Is it new?
 - B: a. Yes, I just got it.
 - b. Yes, I just got.
 - c. Yes, it is.
- 4. A: I haven't seen your girlfriend lately.
 - B: a. Unfortunately, I haven't seen either.
 - b. Unfortunately, I haven't either.
 - c. Unfortunately, I haven't seen her either.

EXERCISE 8 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-1)

Complete the sentences with *its* or *it's*.

- A: Beautiful horse. What's _____ name?
- B: Thunder.
- A: Oh. Is that because _____ noisy?
- B: No, _____ named after _____ father, whose name was Lightning.
- A: _____ very calm.
- B: No, not this horse! _____ anything but calm.



- B: a. Yes, I have. They seem nice.b. Yes, I have met them. They seem nice.c. Yes, I have met. They seem nice.
- 6. A: There's Joe over there. You know him, don't you?
 - B: a. Sure, I know him.
 - b. Sure, I know.
 - c. Sure I do.



EXERCISE 9 Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-1)

Complete the sentences with *it*, *its*, *it's*, *they*, or *them*.

- 1. There is an interesting bird in Florida called an anhinga. _____ a fish eater.
- 2. _____ dives into the water and spears _____ prey
- on _____ long, sharp bill.
- 3. Then ______ tosses the fish into the air, catches
 - _____ in mid-air, and swallows _____ headfirst.
- 4. _____ interesting to watch these birds in action. I enjoy
 - watching _____ a lot.

EXERCISE 10 • Listening. (Chart 8-1)

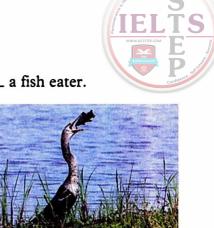
Pronouns can be hard to hear in spoken English because they are usually unstressed. Additionally, if the pronoun begins with "h," the /h/ sound is often dropped in rapid, relaxed speech. Complete each conversation with the words you hear.

- 1. Where's Kim?
 - A: I don't know. I haven't seen _____ this morning.
 - B: I think ______ in the restroom.
 - C: I'm looking for _____ too.
 - D: Ask ______ assistant. He'll know.
 - E: Have you tried looking in ______ office? I know ______ not there much, but maybe ______ surprise you.
- 2. The Nelsons are giving their daughter a motorcycle for graduation.
 - A: Hmmm. ______ like motorcycles that much?
 - B: Really? ______ a motorcycle rider?
 - C: That's an odd gift. I wonder what _____ were thinking.
 - D: That's what the Smiths gave ______ son. I think ______ already had an accident.
 - E: I'm not a fan of motorcycles. Cars just don't see _____ in traffic.
 - F: I think ______ a wonderful gift! I've had ______ for years, and ______ been great.

EXERCISE 11 Warm-up. (Chart 8-2)

Pretend you are writing an article about seat belts. Which sentence would you choose to include? Why? NOTE: All the sentences are grammatically correct.

- 1. A driver needs to put on his seat belt as soon as he gets in his car.
- 2. A driver needs to put on her seat belt as soon as she gets in her car.
- 3. A driver needs to put on his or her seat belt as soon as he or she gets in his or her car.
- 4. Drivers need to put on their seat belts as soon as they get in their cars.



(a)	A student walked into the room. She was looking for the teacher.	In (a) and (b): The pronouns refer to particular individuals whose gender is known. The nouns are not generic.	
(b)	A student walked into the room. He was looking for the teacher.	or	
(c)	A student needs to complete his assignments on tim	e. A GENERIC NOUN is not specific. It does not refer to a particular person or thing.	
(d)	A student needs to complete his or her assignmen on time.	In (c): A student is a generic noun; it refers to anyone who is a student.	
(e)	A student needs to complete her assignments on time.	With a generic noun, a singular masculine possessive adjective has been used traditionally, but many English speakers now use masculine and/or feminine possessive adjectives to refer to a singular generic noun, as in (d) and (e).	
(f)	Students need to complete their assignments on time.	Problems with choosing masculine and/or feminine possessive adjectives can often be avoided by using a plur rather than a singular generic noun, as in (f).	
Ind	efinite pronouns		
	everyone someone	anyone no one*	
	everybody somebody	anybody nobody	
	everything something	anything nothing	
(g)	Somebody left his book on the desk.	In formal English, the use of a singular possessive adjective	
(h)	Everyone has his or her own ideas.	to refer to an INDEFINITE PRONOUN is considered to be grammatically correct, as in (g) and (h).	
(i)	INFORMAL:	In everyday, informal English (and sometimes even in more	
	Somebody left their book on the desk.	formal English), a plural possessive adjective is usually used	
	Everyone has their own ideas.	to refer to an indefinite pronoun, as in (i).	

* No one can also be written with a hyphen in British English: No-one heard me.

EXERCISE 12 Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-2)

Work with a partner. Change the sentences by using plural instead of singular generic nouns where possible. Change pronouns and verbs as necessary. Discuss the advantages of using plural rather than singular generic nouns.

- When a student wants to study, he or she should find a quiet place.
 → When students want to study, they should find a quiet place.
- I talked to a student in my chemistry class. I asked to borrow her notes from the class I missed. She kindly gave them to me. (no change)
- 3. Each student in Biology 101 has to spend three hours per week in the laboratory, where he or she does various experiments with his or her lab partners.
- 4. We heard a really interesting lecture in our government class yesterday. The guest speaker discussed her experiences as a judge.
- 5. She said a citizen has two primary responsibilities. He should vote in every election, and he should serve willingly on juries.

EXERCISE 13 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-2)

Work with a partner. Complete each sentence with the pronoun(s) that seem(s) most appropriate for the situation. Choose the correct verb in blue. Discuss formal vs. informal pronoun usage.

- 1. One classmate to another: Look. Somebody left <u>their</u> book on my desk. Is it yours?
- One friend to another: Of course you can learn to dance! Anyone can learn how to dance if ______ wants / want to.
- 3. Business textbook: An effective manager must be able to motivate ______ employees.
- 4. One roommate to another: If anyone asks where I am, tell ______ you don't know. I want to keep my meeting with Jim a secret.
- 5. Son to his mother: Gosh, Mom, everyone who came to the class picnic was supposed to bring ______ own food. I didn't know that. I'm really hungry!
- 6. A university lecture: I will end my lecture today by saying that I believe a teacher needs to work in partnership with ______ students.
- 7. A magazine article: People do not always see things the same way. Each person has

_____ own way of understanding a situation.

EXERCISE 14 Warm-up. (Chart 8-3)

All the pronouns in blue refer to the noun *team*. Discuss how the pronouns in the two sentences are different. NOTE: Both sentences are correct.

- 1. When the soccer team won in the closing moments of the game, they ran to the player who had scored the winning goal and lifted him on their shoulders.
- 2. A basketball team is relatively small. It doesn't have as many members as a baseball team.

8-3 Personal Pronouns: Agreement with Collective Nouns				
(a) My <i>family</i> is large. It is composed of nine members.	COLLECTIVE NOUNS can be singular or plural. When the speaker wants to refer to a single impersonal unit, a singular pronoun can be used, as in (a).			
(b) My <i>family</i> is loving and supportive. They are always ready to help me. I love <i>them</i> very much.	When the speaker wants to refer to the individual members, a plural pronoun can be used for the pronoun, as in (b).*			
 (c) The committee meets once a month. It doesn't have a lot of business to take care of. OR They don't have a lot of business to take care of. 	Choosing a singular or plural pronoun is partly a matter of judgment. In (c), both are possible.			

*See Chart 5-3, p. 82, for an explanation of collective nouns.

EXERCISE 15 Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-3)

Part I. Look at the pronouns in blue in each pair. Which one refers to the individual members of the group? Which one refers to the group as a whole?

- 1. a. I have a wonderful family. I love them very much, and they love me.
 - b. I looked up some information about the average American family. I found out that it consists of 2.3 children.

*also possible: his; his or her; her or his

- 2. a. The crowd at the soccer game was huge. It exceeded 100,000 people.
 - b. The crowd became more and more excited as the premier's motorcade approached. They began to shout and wave flags in the air.

Part II. Complete the sentences with pronouns. Choose the correct verb in blue. Explain your choices.

- 1. a. A jury has a great deal of power. ______ decides a person's guilt or innocence.
 - b. The jury looked very serious when _____ came back into the courtroom.

_____ did not make eye-contact with the defendant.

- 2. a. The class is planning a party for the last day of school. _______ is / are going to bring many different kinds of food and invite some of their friends to celebrate with ______.
 - b. The class is too small. _____ only has / have eight students.
- 3. a. The faculty wants a bigger lunch room. _________ sits / sit around one small table.
 - b. The faculty has a weekly meeting to review curriculum. _____ makes / make ongoing changes.

EXERCISE 16 Warm-up. (Chart 8-4)

Complete each sentence. Use *herself*, *himself*, or *themselves*.

- 1. The basketball coach told the players to believe in _____
- After the team captain made the winning basket, the coach told her to be proud of ______.



3. The coach plays basketball as a hobby. He's 60 and proud of ______ for staying in good shape.

8-4 Reflexive Pronouns

Singular	Plural	
myself yourself herself, himself, itself, oneself	ourselves yourselves themselves	
 (a) Larry was in the theater. <i>I saw him</i>. I talked to him. (b) <i>I saw myself</i> in the mirror. <i>I</i> looked at <i>myself</i> for a long time. (c) <i>INCORRECT:</i> I saw me in the mirror. 	Compare (a) and (b): Usually an object pronoun is used as the object of a verb or preposition, as <i>him</i> in (a). (See Chart 8-1.) A reflexive pronoun is used as the object of a verb or preposition when the subject of the sentence and the object are the same person, as in (b).* <i>I</i> and <i>myself</i> are the same person.	
 Did someone email the report to Mr. Lee? Yes. Are you sure? (d) - Yes. <i>I myself</i> emailed the report to him. (e) - <i>I</i> emailed the report to him <i>myself</i>. 	Reflexive pronouns are also used for emphasis. In (d): The speaker would say "I myself" strongly, with emphasis. The emphatic reflexive pronoun can immediately follow a noun or pronoun, as in (d), or come at the end of the clause, as in (e).	
(f) Anna lives by herself.	The expression by + a reflexive pronoun means "alone."	

*Sometimes an object pronoun is used after a preposition even when the subject and object pronoun are the same person. Examples: I took my books with me. Bob brought his books with him. I looked around me. She kept her son close to her.

EXERCISE 17 Grammar and speaking. (Chart 8-4)

Part I. Complete the sentences with appropriate reflexive pronouns.

Selfies

- 1. I took a picture <u>myself</u>.
- 2. Rosa took a picture of ______.
- 3. Yusef took a picture of _____.
- 4. The children took pictures of _____.
- 5. We took a picture of _____.
- 6. Olga, you took a picture of _____, didn't you?
- 7. All of you took pictures of _____, didn't you?
- 8. When one takes a picture of ______, it is called a selfie.

Part II. Look at the statements about selfies. Do you agree or disagree with any of the statements? Work in pairs, small groups, or as a class.

- 1. When you take a lot of pictures of yourself, it means you like yourself.
- 2. People who take a lot of pictures of themselves like themselves too much.
- 3. In my culture, we don't take pictures of ourselves. It's not appropriate.
- 4. My parents think it's weird that I like to take so many pictures of myself.
- 5. They say if you need to take a lot of pictures of yourself, you need a lot of attention.
- 6. It's healthy to like yourself. There's nothing wrong with taking pictures of yourself.
- 7. I think women take more pictures of themselves than men.

EXERCISE 18 Grammar and speaking. (Chart 8-4)

Part I. Complete the conversations with appropriate reflexive pronouns.

- 1. A: Tommy told a lie. He felt really bad about it.
 - B: I know. He was ashamed of <u>himself</u>
- 2. A: William cut ______ badly while he was chopping down a tree. And then
 - he drove ______ to the hospital!
 - B: My mom did that once after she accidentally cut ______ with a knife.
- 3. A: I see employees at your company voted to give ______ raises instead of more vacation time.
 - B: Yes, but I wanted vacation time. I ______ voted for that.

4. A: Mr. and Mrs. Grayson live by _____.

B: I know. They're very independent for a couple in their late 90s.

- 5. A: Should I marry Steve?
 - B: No one can make that decision for you, Ann. Only you ______ can make such an important decision about your own life.
- 6. A: I envy Jacob. He's self-employed. He loves working for _____.

B: Yeah. I'd like to work for _____ too.

148 CHAPTER 8

7. A: Jason, you need to eat better and get more exercise. You should take better care

of ______, and I take

care of ______. Your dad and I are healthy because we take good care

of ______ have a better chance

of staying healthy than those who don't.

B: OK, Mom. Are you done with your speech?

Part II. Work with a partner. Write a short conversation that has one or more reflexive pronouns. Use one of the conversations in Part I as a model. Perform it for the class.

EXERCISE 19 Reading, grammar, and speaking. (Chart 8-4)

Part I. Read the web article about Amy Cuddy's research on body language. Then <u>underline</u> the reflexive pronouns. Draw an arrow to each antecedent.



With these postures, people send the message that they have confidence in themselves.

According to Cuddy, high-power stances affect the chemicals in our bodies. Just holding a power stance for two minutes increases testosterone, a hormone that makes us feel dominant, and decreases cortisol, a hormone that causes stress. It's not just that we appear stronger to others; there are measurable changes in our body chemistry, and we feel differently about ourselves.

*TED = Technology, Education, and Design

Part II. Discuss these questions in small groups.

- 1. What basic power stances are discussed in the reading?
- 2. Are these power stances acceptable in your culture?
- 3. What do people in your culture do to show power?
- 4. Find Cuddy's TED talk online, and watch it. What do you think of her findings?

EXERCISE 20 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-4)

Complete each sentence with a word or expression in the box and an appropriate reflexive pronoun. Use each word/expression only one time.

enj	gry atfeeling sorry forlaugh atproud ofoyintroducedpattalking toertainedkilledpromised1 aught				
	Karen Williams never took piano lessons. She <u>taught her self</u> how to play.				
2.	Did Roberto have a good time at the party? Did he?				
	All of you did a good job. You should be				
4.	You did a good job, Barbara. You should on the back.				
5. A man down the street committed suicide. We were shocked that he had					
6.	The children played very well without adult supervision. They				
	by playing school.				
7.	I had always wanted to meet Hong Tran. When I saw her at a party last night, I walked				
	over and to her.				
8.	Nothing good ever comes from self-pity. You should stop				
	, George, and start doing something to solve your problems.				
9.	People might think you're a little crazy, but is				
	one way to practice using English.				
10.	Humor can ease the problems we encounter in life. Sometimes we have to be able to				
11.	Carol made several careless mistakes at work last week, and her boss is getting impatient with				
	her. Carol has to do better work in the future.				
12.	Yesterday Fred's car ran out of gas. He had				
	to walk a long way to a gas station. He is still for forgetting				
	to fill the tank.				



EXERCISE 21 ► Listening. (Chart 8-4)

Listen to the beginning of each sentence. Choose the correct completion.

Example: You will hear: We wanted to save money, so we painted our apartment .

You will circle:	myself	Ourselves	yourselves
1. himself	itself		yourself
2. yourself	myself		ourselves
3. ourselves	themselve	s	myself
4. themselves	himself		herself
5. ourselves	yourselves		themselves
6. himself	herself		myself

EXERCISE 22 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 8-5)

Read the conversation. Discuss the pronouns in blue. Who or what do they refer to?

MRS. COOK: Jack Woods bought a used car. Did you hear?

MR. COOK: Yes, I heard all about his car. He paid next to nothing for it.

MRS. COOK: Yes, and now it doesn't run.

MR. COOK: Well, as they say, you get what you pay for.

MRS. COOK: That's right. One gets what one pays for.

8-5 Using You, One, and They as Impersonal Pronouns				
(a) One should always be polite.	In (a) and (b): One means "any person, people in general."			
(b) How does one get to Fifth Avenue from here?	In (c) and (d): You means "any person, people in general."			
(c) You should always be polite.(d) How do you get to Fifth Avenue from here?	One is much more formal than you . Impersonal you , rather than one , is used more frequently in everyday English. Impersonal you is not acceptable in academic writing.			
(e) Iowa is an agricultural state. <i>They</i> grow a lot of corn there.	They is used as an impersonal pronoun in spoken or very informal English to mean "people in general" or "an undefined group of people." Often the antecedent is implied rather than stated. In (e): They = farmers in Iowa			
(f) Tommy, we do not chew with our mouths open.	When talking to children about rules or behavior, parents often use we.			
	In (f): we = people in general			

EXERCISE 23 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-5)

Discuss the meanings of the pronouns in *italics*.

- 1. a. Kyung took his dad's advice and decided to quit his corporate job and go to art school. I think *you* need to follow *your* dreams.
 - \rightarrow The pronouns refer to everyone, anyone, people in general, all of us.
 - b. Jake, if you really want my advice, I think you should find a new job.
 - → The pronouns refer to Jake specifically.

- 2. a. Wool requires special care. If you wash wool in hot water, it will shrink. You shouldn't throw a wool sweater into a washing machine with your cottons.
 - b. Alex, I told you not to wash your sweater in hot water. Now look at it. It's ruined!
 - c. Sonya, let's make a deal. If you wash the clothes, I'll fold them.
- 3. a. Memory is selective. They say you remember only what you want to remember.
 - b. If you ask two people to remember an experience they shared, they might tell you two different stories.
- 4. I've grown to dislike airplane travel. *They* never give *you* enough room for *your* legs. And if the person in front of *you* puts his seat back, *you* can barely move. *You* can't even reach down to pick up something from the floor.

EXERCISE 24 > Let's talk. (Chart 8-5)

Discuss the meanings of these English sayings in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. "You can't teach an old dog new tricks."
- 2. "You can't win them all."
- 3. "If you want a job well done, do it yourself."
- 4. "You can lead a horse to water, but you can't make it drink."

EXERCISE 25 Reading, writing, and speaking. (Chart 8-5)

Part I. A common problem in academic writing is switching between the pronouns *they* and *you*. Typically, an unskilled writer begins by talking about people in general by using *they*, and then switches to the impersonal and informal *you*. Read the following example from a student paper.

The Negative Impact of Social Media on Children and Teens

Many parents have concerns about the impact of social media on their children. One danger is Internet addiction: kids want to have their phones or computers with them at all times. They become anxious if they can't answer an email or message immediately. They want to do their homework while they are chatting with friends. Teenagers say you can concentrate and still check social media. However, parents worry that their children need constant interaction and cannot handle quiet time.

Another problem is that social media takes away from in-person contact. Children and teenagers are at risk of interacting with screens more than they interact with one another. Texting and chatting online are not the same as actual conversation. You need to learn how to initiate and engage in extended conversations with people. Additionally, when you don't have much human contact, you can become isolated.

A third concern is that social media exposes children and teens to potentially inappropriate content. Parents can monitor their posts, but you can't control other people's posts. There's a good chance your child will see something before you even know about it.

Part II. It is clear that *you* in these paragraphs means "people in general." However, this usage of "you" in academic writing is not acceptable. Correct all the errors in pronoun usage.

Part III. In small groups, discuss the advantages and/or disadvantages of social media. Give your opinion. Then share some of the most common opinions from your group with the class.

EXERCISE 26 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 8-6)

the other (is)

Match each sentence to the picture it describes.

- 1. Some of the crows are flying. The others are sitting on a fence. _____
- 2. Some of the crows are flying. Others are sitting on a fence. _





8-6 Forms of Other Singular another = singular Meaning in (a): one more in addition to or different from the another one(s) already mentioned one ADJECTIVE FORM: another subject is (a) One subject that interests me is math. Another subject is psychology. OR Another is psychology. PRONOUN FORM: another is the other = singular Meaning in (b): all that remains of a given number; the last one the other ADJECTIVE FORM: the other elective is (b) I'm going to take two electives next term. One is sociology. The other elective is psychology. PRONOUN FORM: the other is OR The other is psychology Plural other(s) = plural Meaning in (c): several more in addition to or different from the one(s) already mentioned other(s) some ADJECTIVE FORM: other movies are (c) There are a lot of interesting movies this weekend. Some are comedies. Other movies are dramas. OR PRONOUN FORM: others are Others are dramas. the other(s) = plural Meaning in (d): the rest; the last ones in a group the other(s) some ADJECTIVE FORM: the other movies are (d) I've found several movies to watch this weekend. PRONOUN FORM: the others are Some are comedies. The other movies are dramas. OR The others are dramas. (e) I will be here for another three years. Another is used as an adjective with expressions of time, money, and distance even if these expressions contain plural (f) I need another five dollars. nouns. Another means "an additional" in examples (e)-(g). (q) We drove another ten miles. Summary of Other/Another Forms SINGULAR PLURAL ADJECTIVE another book (is) other books (are) the other book (is) the other books (are) PRONOUN another (is) others (are)



Pronouns 153

www.ieltstep.com

the others (are)

EXERCISE 27 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-6)

Complete the sentences with a form of other.

1. a. Look at your hand. You have five fingers. One is your thumb. _____ Another is your index finger. ______ is your middle finger. ______ finger is your ring finger. And _______ finger (the last of the five) is your little finger. b. Look at your hands. One is your right hand. ______ is your left hand. 2. a. I have two cell phone chargers. I keep one in the car and _____ next to my bed. b. I'd like to buy ______ one and leave it in the kitchen. 3. a. I just got three messages. One is from my father. ______ one is from my sister. _____ message is from my girlfriend. b. I sent Henry a response, but it came back. Does he have ______ email address? 4. a. Some people have red hair. _____ have brown hair. b. Some people have red hair. _____ people have brown hair. c. I have four children. One of them has red hair. _____ children have brown hair. d. I have four children. One of them has red hair. _____ have brown hair. **EXERCISE 28** Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-6)

Read each pair of sentences and answer the question that follows.

- a. One North African country Helen plans to visit is Algeria. Another is Morocco.
 b. One North African country Alex plans to visit is Tunisia. The other is Algeria. QUESTION: Who is planning to visit more than two countries in North Africa?
- 2. a. Purple is one of Mai's favorite colors. The others she likes are blue and green.b. Purple is one of Elaine's favorite colors. Others she likes are blue and green. QUESTION: Who has only three favorite colors?
- 3. a. Kazuo took a cookie from the cookie jar and ate it. Then he took another one and ate it too.b. Susie took a cookie from the cookie jar and ate it. Then she took the other one and ate it too. QUESTION: Whose cookie jar had only two cookies?
- 4. a. Some of the men at the business meeting on Thursday wore dark blue suits. Others wore black suits.
 - b. Some of the men at the business meeting on Friday wore dark blue suits. The others wore black suits.

QUESTION: Mr. Anton wore a gray suit to the business meeting. Which day did he attend the meeting, Thursday or Friday?

EXERCISE 29 ▶ Let's talk. (Chart 8-6)

Work with a partner. Take turns completing the sentences with an appropriate form of other.

Partner A	PARTNER B
1. I speak two languages. One is	1. I have two books. One is
2. I speak three languages. One is	2. Hawaii is a popular tourist destination.
3. I lost my textbook, so I had to buy	Italy is
4. Some people have brown hair, but	3. Some TV programs are excellent, but
5. Some people need at least eight hours of sleep each night, but	4. There are three colors that I especially like. One is
6. There are three places in particular I would like to see when I visit (<i>a city/country</i>). One	 Only two of the students failed the quiz. All of
is	6. I have two candy bars. I want only one of them. Would you like ?

EXERCISE 30 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-6)

Complete the sentences with a form of other.

- 1. There are two women standing on the corner. One is Helen Jansen, and <u>the other</u> is Pat Hendricks.
- 2. My neighbors have three children. One has graduated from college and has a job.

	is at Yale University	_ is still living at home.
3.	I would like some more books on this subject. Do you have any	that
	you could lend me?	
4.	I would like to read more about this subject. Do you have any	books
	that you could lend me?	
5.	Mari reads the New York Times every day. She doesn't read any	

- newspapers.
- 6. Some people prefer jazz, but ______ prefer rock music.
- 7. I'm almost finished. I just need ______ five minutes.
- One of the most important inventions in the history of the world was the printing press.
 ______ was the electric light. ______ were the telephone, the

television, and the computer.

- 9. Some babies begin talking as early as six months; ______ don't speak until they are more than two years old.
- 10. One common preposition is *from.* ______ common one is *in.* ______ _____ are *by*, *for*, and *of*. The most frequently used prepositions in English are *at*, *by*, *for*,

from, in, of, to, and with. What are some ______ prepositions?

11. That country has two basic problems. One is inflation, and _______ is the instability of the government.

12. I have been in only three cities since I came to the United States. One is New York, and

_____ are Washington, D.C., and Chicago.

13. When his alarm went off this morning, Toshi shut it off, rolled over, and slept for

_____ hour.

14. It's important to recognize individual differences in children. One child might have a strong interest in mathematics and science. ______ child might be more artistic.

EXERCISE 31 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-6)

Choose the sentence (a. or b.) that best describes the given sentence.

- 1. I need another hour of sleep, and then I'll feel fine.
 - a. I need one more hour.
 - b. I need one more hour, maybe more.
- 2. The #8 bus goes to the mall. The others are the #11 and #15.
 - a. Only three buses go to the mall.
 - b. More than three buses go to the mall.
- 3. We're not ready to leave yet. We need another ten minutes.a. We need ten more minutes or more.b. We can leave in ten minutes.
- 4. I'm stuck. Do you have any other ideas for our project?a. I need just one more idea from you.b. Do you have more ideas?
 - b. Do you have more ideas?

⑦ EXERCISE 32 ► Listening. (Chart 8-6)

Complete each sentence with the form of other that you hear.

- 1. This coffee is delicious. Could I please have _____ cup?
- 2. The coffee isn't in this grocery bag, so I'll look in _____ one.
- 3. There are supposed to be ten chairs in the room, but I count only five. Where are _____

?

- 4. No, let's not use this printer. Let's use _____ one.
- 5. Bill is a short form for William. _____ are Billy and Will.
- 6. The sky is clearing. It's going to be _____ beautiful day.

EXERCISE 33 ► Warm-up. (Chart 8-7)

Read the situation and the statements that follow. Circle "T" for true and "F" for false.

SITUATION: Lisa and Kate talk to each other every other day. Kate saw Lisa the other day at the park. Lisa was with her five children. They were walking behind her, one after the other.

1. Kate talks to Lisa often.	Т	F
2. Kate talked to Lisa today. She'll talk to her again tomorrow.	Т	F
3. Kate last saw Lisa a few weeks ago.	Т	F
4. Lisa's children were walking in a line.	T	F

www.ieltstep.com

8-	7 Common Expressions with Other	
(a)	Mike and I write to each other every week. We write to one another every week.	Each other and one another indicate a reciprocal relationship.* In (a): I write to him every week, and he writes to me
(b)	Please write on <i>every other</i> line.	every week. <i>Every other</i> can give the idea of "alternate." The meaning in (b): Write on the first line. Do not write on the second line. Write on the third line. Do not write on the fourth line. (Etc.)
(c)	 Have you seen Ali recently? Yes. I saw him just <i>the other day</i>. 	The other is used in time expressions such as <i>the other day, the other morning, the other week, etc.,</i> to refer to the recent past. In (c): the other day means "a few days ago, not long ago."
(d) (e)	The ducklings walked in a line behind the mother duck. Then the mother duck slipped into the pond. The ducklings followed her. They slipped into the water one after the other. They slipped into the water one after another.	In (d): one after the other expresses the idea that separate actions occurred very close in time. In (e): one after another has the same meaning as one after the other .
(f) (g)	No one knows my secret <i>other than</i> Rosa. No one knows my secret <i>except</i> (<i>for</i>) Rosa.	Other than is usually used after a negative to mean "except," as in (f). Example (g) has the same meaning as (f).
(h)	Fruit and vegetables are full of vitamins and minerals. In other words, they are good for you.	In (h): <i>In other words</i> is used to explain, usually in simpler or clearer terms, the meaning of the preceding sentence (s).

*In typical usage, *each other* and *one another* are interchangeable; there is no difference between them. Some native speakers, however, use *each other* when they are talking about only two persons or things, and *one another* when there are more than two.

EXERCISE 34 • Looking at grammar. (Charts 8-6 and 8-7)

Complete the sentences with a form of *other*.

- 1. Two countries border on the United States. One is Canada. <u>The other</u> is Mexico.
- 2. One of the countries I would like to visit is Sweden. ______ is Malaysia. Of course, besides these two countries, there are many ______ places I would like to see.
- 3. Louis and I have been friends for a long time. We've known _______ since we were children.
- 4. A: I talked to Sam _____ day.

B: Oh? How is he? I haven't seen him for ages.

- 5. In the Southwest, there is a large area of land that has little or no rainfall, no trees, and very few plants ______ than cactuses. In ______ words, this area is a desert.
- 6. Thanks for inviting me to the party. I'd like to go, but I've already made ______ plans.

	7.		are short. Some people	
		nearsighted; are sh	people are farsighted. Some people.	ople are talkative; P
	8.		They support	
			In words	
	9.	A: How often do you travel to	Portland?	
			month I go there to visit my grand	mother in a nursing home.
	10.		leed to write a check, but I have nothing	
		than t		5
	11.		tie after until	
			hat's why she had a bad stomachache.	A
	12.		ne behind their mother one after	
		·		
	Worl	re indicated.	he sentences orally with your own word while (<i>other</i>) prefer	ls. Use a form of other
	1.	I have two One is	_, and (<i>other</i>) is	
	2.	One of the longest rivers in the	e world is (other) is	
	3.	Some people like to in the	heir free time. (<i>other</i>) prefer	_,
	4.	There are three that I es	pecially like. One is (other)	
		(other) is		
	5.	There are many kinds of (<i>other</i>) are		, and
R	Liste	ERCISE 36 > Listening. (Ch en to the way other and excep you hear.	oart 8-7) of are used. Choose the sentence that i	s closest in meaning to the
	Exar	-	d a lot of time with my grandmother.	We enjoy each
		You will choose: a. My	grandmother and I like to spend time njoy spending time with my grandmoth	

- a. All of the students had the wrong answer.
 b. Some students had the wrong answer.

- 2. a. The Clarks each see others on weekends.b. The Clarks spend time together on weekends.
- 3. a. Susan spoke with him a while ago.b. Susan spoke with him recently.
- 4. a. Three people know about the engagement.b. Four people know about the engagement.
- 5. a. Jan knows about the party.b. Jan doesn't know about the party.

EXERCISE 37 > Check your knowledge. (Chapter 8 Review)

Correct the errors.

- 1. My friends and me ordered Indian food at the restaurant. I wasn't very hungry at first, but I it ate most of them.
- 2. When we were in school, my brother used to play tennis with my sister and I every day after school.
- 3. My cousin and her husband moved to other city because they don't like cold weather.
- 4. If you want to pass your exams, you need to study very hard for it.
- 5. I like to travel because I like to learn about other country and custom.
- 6. When I lost my passport, I had to apply for other one.
- 7. When I got to class, all of the others students were already in his seats.
- 8. In hot weather, you need to water the plants every other days.
- 9. I live in a two-room apartment. Its too small for mine family.
- 10. A child needs to learn how to get along with another people, how to spend their time wisely, and how to depend on yourself.
- 11. Other from Tom, everyone has responded to the wedding invitation.
- 12. After work, Mr. Gray asked to speak to Mona and I about the company's new policies. He explained it to us and asked for ours opinions.
- 13. My cousins asked to borrow my car because their's was in the garage for repairs.
- 14. The players were looking at one anothers, trying to find their weakest opponent.
- 15. The manager introduced Manual and I to the other employees in the new branch office.
- 16. A hippopotamus spends most of it's time in the water of rivers and lakes.





EXERCISE 38 Reading and writing. (Chapter 8)

Part I. Read the passage. <u>Underline</u> each sentence that introduces a reason.

Is checking text messages in a meeting appropriate?

Checking text messages in a meeting sends a negative message. First, it is disrespectful. When people check messages, they aren't paying attention to others in the meeting. It is impossible to read messages and listen to the speaker at the same time. Another problem is that the speaker expects the other members to participate in some way. Maybe they are at the meeting because they need to learn new information or perhaps they need to help problemsolve an issue. They can't participate when they are looking at



their phone. Finally, when people check messages, they send the message that their lives are more important than the content of the meeting. This superior attitude can make other people resentful.

Part II. Choose one question and give three reasons. Then write a one-paragraph response based on your reasons.

- 1. Is checking text messages in class appropriate?
- 2. What are three advantages/disadvantages of social media?
- 3. What are three advantages/disadvantages of the Internet?
- 4. What is your opinion of selfies? (You may want to refer to Exercise 17, Part II, for ideas.)

WRITING TIP

To give reasons for something, it is helpful to use the following format:

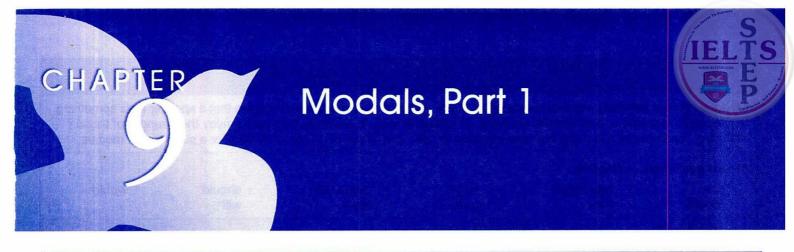
- First, ...
- Another reason/problem/issue/etc. ... (Using *another* is very common when adding an additional reason.)
- Finally/Last/Third, ...

Part III. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box correct agreement of pronouns
- 2. \Box correct forms of *other*
- 3. □ no use of impersonal "you"
- 4. \Box use of *it's* for *it is* and *its* for the possessive
- 5. \Box correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Go to the Essential Online Resources for Self-Study: Gerunds and Infinitives 8

www.ieltstep.com



PRETEST: What do I already know?

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct modal verb in form and meaning and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

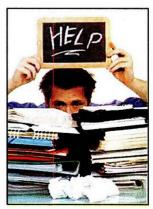
- 1. ____ Applicants must to fill in the forms in ink. (9-1)
- 2. ____ We got to finish this project before we go home tonight. (9-2)
- 3. ____ The bus doesn't come for a half hour. We don't need to hurry. We must not run. (9-3)
- 4. ____ I should leave now, and you ought to begin your homework. (9-4)
- 5. ____ What time we supposed to be at the train station tomorrow? (9-5)
- 6. ____ The teacher should be back any minute. She just needed to get supplies. (9-5)
- 7. ____ Are you able to read my handwriting? (9-6)
- 8. ____ It can snow tomorrow night. There is a 50% chance. (9-7)
- 9. ____ You may pay the bill online if you prefer. (9-8)
- 10. ____ May you help me? (9-9)
- 11. ____ Would you mind turn up the heat? (9-10)
- 12. ____ Let's not stay home tonight. Shall we go to a movie? (9-11)

Incorrect sentences: 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 10, 11

EXERCISE 1 > Warm-up. (Chart 9-1)

Check (1) the grammatically correct sentences. Which sentences do you agree with?

- 1. ____ School can be stressful.
- 2. ____ Too much work may be harm a student's health.
- 3. _____ A teacher doesn't has to give homework.
- 4. _____ Science and math might be the two most important skills to have for the future.
- 5. _____ Schools should get rid of grades.
- 6. ____ Colleges ought to eliminate entrance exams.



9-1 Basic Modal Introduction

Modal auxiliaries generally express speakers' attitudes. For example, modals can express that a speaker feels something is necessary, advisable, permissible, possible, or probable; and, in addition, they can convey the strength of those attitudes. Each modal has more than one meaning or use. See Chart 10-11, pp. 208-209, for a summary of modals.

Modal auxiliaries in English ought (to) should can had better might would could mav must shall will **Modal Auxiliaries** Modals do not take a final -s, even when the subject is she, he, or it. can do it. CORRECT: She can do it. could do it. 1 INCORRECT: She cans do it. had better do it. You may do it. Modals are followed immediately by the simple form of a verb. He might do it. She CORRECT: She can do it. must do it. INCORRECT: She can to do it. / She can does it. / She can did it. It ought to do it. We The only exception is ought, which is followed by an infinitive (to + the shall do it. You should do it. simple form of a verb). They CORRECT: He ought to go to the meeting. will do it. would do it. See Appendix Chart B-1 for question forms and D-1 for negative forms with modals **Phrasal Modals** be able to do it Phrasal modals are common expressions whose meanings are similar to those of some of the modal auxiliaries. For example: be able to is similar to be going to do it be supposed to do it can; be going to is similar to will. have to do it An infinitive (to + the simple form of a verb) is used in these similar have got to do it expressions.

EXERCISE 2 Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-1)

Complete the sentences with to or Ø as necessary.

An All-Nighter

- A: You look exhausted!
- B: I know. And I am. I just pulled an all-nighter*. I've got _____ turn in my college applications today.
- A: Did you finish?
- B: Just barely. You know, applying for college shouldn't _____ be so much work!
- A: How many are you applying to?
- B: Three right now. I may _____ do a few later. Some have deadlines in a couple of months. What about you?
- A: I don't graduate until next year, but I might _____ apply early.
- B: You really ought _____. It's pretty stressful waiting until the last minute like I did!

^{*}pull an all-nighter = stay up all night to finish something

EXERCISE 3 > Warm-up. (Chart 9-2)

Read the statements. Decide the more typical context for the words in blue: everyday conversation or formal writing. Discuss their meanings.

- 1. Oh, gosh. Look at the time. I've got to go. I have class in five minutes!
- 2. All applicants must be 18 years of age and must have a valid driver's license.
- 3. We have to prepare a research paper on climate change in Dr. Chen's seminar this term. I think it'll be an interesting project.

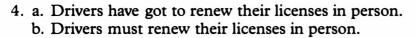
9-2 Expressing Necessity: Must,	Thave 10, have dot 10
Must, Have To	recommendation de sui
(a) All applicants <i>must take</i> an entrance exam.(b) All applicants <i>have to take</i> an entrance exam.	Must and have to both express necessity. The meaning is the same in (a) and (b): It is necessary for every applicant to take an entrance exam. There is no other choice. The examis required.
(c) I'm looking for Sue. I have to talk to her about ou lunch date tomorrow. I can't meet her for lunch because I have to go to a business meeting at 1:0	in everyday speech and writing than must.
 (d) Cell phones <i>must be</i> in your backpacks during class. (e) Johnny, you <i>must stay</i> away from the stove. It is very hot. (f) Do you have to leave? 	Must is typically stronger than have to and indicates urgence
	Adults also use <i>must</i> when talking to young children about rules, as in (e). <i>Have to</i> , not <i>must</i> , is commonly used in questions, as in (f).
 (g) I have to ("hafta") be home by eight. (h) He has to ("hasta") go to a meeting tonight. 	NOTE: Native speakers often say "hafta" and "hasta," as in (g) and (h).
Have Got To	south a state was been been all and a large
 (i) I have got to go now. I have a class in ten minute (j) I have to go now. I have a class in ten minutes. (k) Do you have to go now? 	have the same meaning. <i>Have got to</i> is informal and is used primarily in spoken English.
	<i>Have to</i> is used in both formal and informal English. <i>Have to</i> is more common in questions, as in (k).
(I) I have got to go ("I've gotta go / I gotta go") now.	The usual pronunciation of <i>got to</i> is "gotta." Sometimes <i>have</i> is dropped in speech: "I gotta do it."

EXERCISE 4 Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-2)

Work with a partner. In the following sentences, *have to*, *have got to*, and *must* are all grammatically correct. However, *must* is more often found in the context of rules or legal documents. In each pair, which sentence do you think is more common?

- 1. a. Your signature on the document has to be legible.
 - b. Your signature on the document must be legible.
- 2. a. We've got to hurry. The movie starts in ten minutes.
 - b. We must hurry. The movie starts in ten minutes.

3. a. Charlie and Andy are a few minutes behind us. They have to stop for gas.b. Charlie and Andy are a few minutes behind us. They must stop for gas.



EXERCISE 5 Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-2)

Which verb is best for each sentence? Use the correct form of *must* or *have to*. (Both verbs are grammatically correct.)

- 1. All passengers ______ show their passports to the customs officer.
- 2. Mai _____ get up early tomorrow.
- 3. Sorry. Julie and I ______ leave the party early.
- Before an operation, all patients _______ sign a consent form, or the surgeon will not perform the surgery.
- 5. I'll be home a little late. I _____ pick up groceries after work.
- 6. (Vicki) ______ work tomorrow?
- 7. Drivers ______ pull over when they see a police car's flashing blue lights.
- 8. (our neighbor) _____ play his music so loud every night? It's so noisy.
- Susie, you ______ put your toys away before you go outside.
- 10. (we) _____ buy our tickets in advance,



or are they available at the box office?

EXERCISE 6 → Grammar and speaking. (Chart 9-2)

Write questions for the following. Then ask another student these questions. Share a few of your answers with the class.

- 1. what \ you \ have to do \ after class today _____
- 2. what \ you \ have to do \ first thing in the morning
- 3. what \ students in this class \ have to pay attention to
- 4. what time $\ \ u \ \ be \ \ u$ you $\ be \ \ u$ your first class
- 5. what \ some rules that students \ must follow ______
- 6. what \ some requirements that students \ must complete (for this class, for graduation, etc.)

EXERCISE 7 > Warm-up. (Chart 9-3)

Choose the responses for Speaker B that make sense.

SPEAKER A: The meeting starts in an hour. We have plenty of time.

SPEAKER B: a. We must not hurry. b. We don't have to hurry.



c. We don't need to hurry

9-3 Lack of Necessity (Not Hav	e To) and Prohibition (Must Not)		
Lack of Necessity			
(a) Tomorrow is a holiday. We <i>don't have to go</i> to class.	When used in the negative, must and have to have different meanings.		
(b) I can hear you. You don't have to shout.*	Negative form: do not have to = not necessary		
	The meaning in (a): We don't need to go to class tomorrow because it is a holiday.		
Prohibition	and the second second second second		
(c) You <i>must not tell</i> anyone my secret. Do you promise?	must not = prohibition (DO NOT DO THIS!) The meaning in (c): Do not tell anyone my secret. I forbid it. Telling anyone my secret is prohibited.		
 (d) Don't tell anyone my secret. (e) You can't tell anyone my secret. (f) You'd better not tell anyone my secret. 	<i>Must not</i> is very strong. Speakers generally express prohibition with imperatives, as in (d), or with other modals, as in (e) and (f).		

*Lack of necessity may also be expressed by need not + the simple form of a verb: You needn't shout. This is more common in British English.

EXERCISE 8 Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-3) Complete the sentences with a verb that makes sense. Then write the negative form.

bu	y fill out offer wait work / write
1.	College applicants must <u>write</u> an essay as part of the admissions process. NEGATIVE: <u>College applicants don't have to write an essay as part of the admissions process</u> .
2.	We've got to groceries on the way home.
	NEGATIVE:
3.	You have to for Martha. She's late.
	NEGATIVE:
4.	The city has got to more public transportation options.
	NEGATIVE:
5.	You must the application form by tomorrow.
	Negative:
6.	Jin has to overtime this weekend.
	Negative:

EXERCISE 9 Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-3)

Complete the sentences with *must not* or *do/does not have to*.

- 1. a. Since you've already finished your homework, you <u>don't have to</u> study tonight.
 - b. You _______ skip class. Unexcused absences will lower your grade.
 - c. I ______ contact my professor. I found the information I was looking for.
- 2. a. I ______ go to the doctor. I'm feeling much better.
 - b. Patients ______ leave the hospital without their doctor's permission.
 - c. You ______ introduce me to your doctor. We've already met.
- 3. a. Park visitors ______ approach the bears because they can be unpredictable and dangerous.
 - b. If you encounter a bear, you ______ run. Instead, back away slowly.
- 4. a. A person ______ get married in order to lead a happy and fulfilling life.
- b. A person ______ become rich and famous in order to live a successful life.

EXERCISE 10 > Let's talk. (Chart 9-3)

What do you look for in a leader? What qualities do you think a leader needs in order to be effective? Complete the sentences with *must*, *must not*, *has to*, or *doesn't have to*. Discuss your answers.

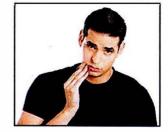
An effective leader of a country ...

- 1. _____ be well educated.
- 2. _____ be flexible and open to new ideas.
- 3. _____ be wealthy.
- 4. _____ have a family (spouse and children).
- 5. _____ be male.
- 6. _____ have a military background.
- 7. _____ use his or her power for personal financial gain.
- 8. _____ ignore the wishes of the majority of the people.
- 9. _____ be a good public speaker.

EXERCISE 11 Warm-up. (Chart 9-4)

Amir has a bad toothache. What advice would you give him?

- 1. He should see a dentist immediately.
- 2. He should wait and see if the pain goes away.
- 3. He should call an ambulance.
- 4. He could put an ice-pack on his cheek.
- 5. He ought to take some pain medicine.
- 6. He should get a friend to pull the tooth right away.



9-4 Advisability/Suggestions: Should, Ought To, Had Better, Could (a) You should study harder. Should and ought to both express advisability. Their meaning ranges in strength from a suggestion (This is a good idea) You ought to study harder. to a statement about responsibility or duty (This is a very (b) Drivers should obey the speed limit. important thing to do). Drivers ought to obey the speed limit. The meaning in (a): This is a good idea. This is my advice. In (b): This is an important responsibility. Native speakers often pronounce ought to as "otta" in (c) I ought to ("otta") study tonight, but I think I'll watch TV instead. informal speech. (d) You shouldn't leave your keys in the car. Negative contraction: shouldn't NOTE: the /t/ is often hard to hear in relaxed, spoken English. Ought to is not commonly used in the negative. (e) The gas tank is almost empty. We had better stop In meaning, had better is close to should and ought to, but had better is usually stronger. Often had better implies a at the next gas station. warning or a threat of possible bad consequences. (f) You had better take care of that cut on your hand The meaning in (e): If we don't stop at a gas station, there soon, or it will get infected. will be a bad result. We will run out of gas. Notes on the use of had better: It has a present or future meaning. • It is followed by the simple form of a verb. It is more common in speaking than writing. (g) You'd better take care of it. Contraction: 'd better, as in (g). In spoken English, you may not hear the "d" in you'd. However, "d" is necessary in writing. (h) You'd better not be late. Negative form: had better + not (i) - I'm having trouble in math class. Could can also be used to make suggestions. The meaning - You could talk to your teacher. OR in (i): I have some possible suggestions for you. It is - You could ask Ann to help you with your math possible to do this. Or it is possible to do that. lessons. OR Should is stronger and more definite than could. The - I could try to help you. meaning in (j): I believe it is important for you to do this. (j) You should talk to your teacher. This is what I recommend. (k) Maybe you should talk to your teacher. In (k), maybe softens the strength of the advice.*

*Two other common ways to give softer suggestions are with the expressions *might want* and *I would*: You *might want to* talk to your teacher. OR *I would talk to your teacher*. The meaning in the latter is: If I were you, I would In speaking, this is often shortened to *I would* You will study this verb form more in Chapter 20.

EXERCISE 12 Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-4)

Complete the conversations with your own words. Use *should*, *ought to*, *could*, or *had better* to give advice.

1. A: The shoes I bought last week don't fit. When I tried them on in the store, they felt fine, but

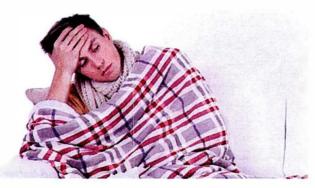
now they're killing my feet. Fortunately, I've only worn them indoors.

B: You _____

- 2. A: Have you gotten your airplane ticket?
 - B: No, not yet.
 - A: Flights fill up fast near the holidays. You ______
- 3. A: Yikes! My class starts in five minutes. I didn't notice the time.
 - B: You ____
- 4. A: I have the hiccups.
 - B: You ____
- 5. A: I bought these expensive apples, and all of them are rotten inside.
 - B: You _____
- 6. A: I have six months to improve my English.
 - B: You _____

EXERCISE 13 Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-4)

Work with a partner. Discuss Speaker B's and C's use of **should** and **could**. What are the differences in meaning?



- 1. A: Ted doesn't feel good. He has the chills, and he has a flight tomorrow night. What do you think he should do?
 - B: He should go to urgent care right now.
 - C: Well, I don't know. He *could call* his doctor for advice. Or he *could postpone* his trip for a day or two.



- 2. A: I need to get to the airport in the morning.
 - B: You should take the airport shuttle. It's cheaper than a taxi.
 - C: Well, you *could take* the shuttle, but that's a long ride from here. Maybe you *could ask* Matt to drive you. He works near the airport.

EXERCISE 14 ► Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 9-4)

Work with a partner. Complete the conversations.

PARTNER A	PARTNER B
1. Oops! I spilled \ldots . \rightarrow coffee on my shirt.	1. You'd better before the stain sets.
 My is coming for dinner, and I'm a terrible cook. 	2. Well, I think you'd better
3. I've been studying for three days straight.	3. I know. You should
Partner B	Partner A
4. Lately, it's been so hard for me to	4. Maybe you could
I'm not getting anything done. I feel	
5. My kids are too much.	5. You'd better
My apartment is a mess and my is coming to visit tomorrow.	6. You could

EXERCISE 15 ► Looking at grammar. (Charts 9-2 → 9-4)

Complete the sentences with *should* or *have to/must*. In some sentences either one is possible, but the meaning is different. Discuss the difference in meanings.

- 1. a. A person <u>has to / must</u> eat in order to live.
 - b. A person <u>should</u> eat a balanced diet.
- 2. a. The weather is so dark and gloomy right now. Maybe we ______ go somewhere warm for our vacation.
 - b. We ______ start looking at places on the Internet.
- 3. a. According to the college website, an incoming freshman ______ have four years of high school English for acceptance. Three years is not enough.
 - b. If you want to become a doctor, you ______ go to medical school for many years.
- 4. a. I don't have enough money to take the bus, so I ______ walk home.
 - b. If you want to get more exercise, you ______ walk to and from work.
- 5. a. You ______ rinse rice before you cook it.
 - b. Rice ______ have water in order to grow.



www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 16 ▶ Reading, speaking, and writing. (Charts 9-2 → 9-4)

Read the emails. Then work with a partner. Write an email to a friend or relative asking for advice. Make up a personal problem that you need help with. Give your email to another pair, who will write an answer.

From: Lillian	
To: Kate Subject: Help!	Today at 4:56 PM
Dear Aunt Kate,	

I need your help! I'm having a problem with my roommate and I don't know what to do. I hope you don't mind. You always give me good advice.

We've only lived together in the dorm a month, but she's driving me crazy. Our room is always a mess. She never puts anything away. I have to walk over her clothes to get to my bed. Her books and papers are everywhere too. We don't have a lot of space, so a lot of her stuff is in my space.

I've mentioned that we need to clean more often, but she just rolls her eyes. I've picked up her stuff and put it on her bed, but she doesn't get the hint. The next day, it's all over the room again. Help!!

Lillian



Dear Lillian,

It sounds like you've been very gentle with your roommate (good for you!), but at this point, I think you should be more direct. You've told her "we" need to clean. I'm guessing that your part of the room is already clean. You really mean "you." And your friendly hints haven't worked. There are a few ways you could handle this.

You might want to sit down with her and say, "I really like you (if you do), but our roommate arrangement isn't working. It's important for me to have a cleaner room." Then tell her specifically what changes you would like to see.

If she still refuses to change, you could get a piece of chalk and draw a line on the floor (seriously!). You could tell her that all her stuff has to be on her side of the line. Anything that goes over, you could put in a bag.

If she absolutely won't make any changes, I would talk to a dorm advisor and ask for suggestions. I think it's important that you find a solution. College is stressful enough as it is!

Good luck, and let me know what happens.

Aunt Kate

EXERCISE 17 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 9-2 \rightarrow 9-4)

Choose the answer that has the same meaning as the given sentence. In some cases both answers are correct.

Traveling

- 1. Don't carry large sums of money with you.
 - a. You don't have to carry large sums of money.
 - b. You must not carry large sums of money.
- 2. The guide said it's not necessary to rent a car. There is a bus.
 - a. You don't have to rent a car.
 - b. You must not rent a car.
- 3. To apply for a visa, proof of citizenship is necessary.
 - a. You must show proof of citizenship.
 - b. You have to show proof of citizenship.
- 4. It will be a good idea to arrive at the train station early tomorrow. It's a holiday weekend.
 - a. You ought to arrive early.
 - b. You should arrive early.
- 5. Only airline passengers with boarding passes can go to the gate.
 - a. To go to the gate, passengers should have boarding passes.
 - b. To go to the gate, passengers must have boarding passes.

EXERCISE 18 Warm-up. (Chart 9-5)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences you agree with.

In my country, ...

- 1. _____ students are supposed to stand up when a teacher enters the room.
- 2. ____ people are supposed to take off their shoes before they enter a home.
- 3. _____ children are supposed to address adults formally, for example, as "Sir" and "Ma'am."
- 4. _____ students are supposed to knock before they come into a classroom.

9-5 Expectation: Be Supposed To/Should				
 (a) The game <i>is supposed to begin</i> at 10:00. (b) The committee <i>is supposed to vote</i> by secret ballot. 	 Be supposed to expresses the idea that someone (<i>l, we, they, the teacher, lots of people, my father, etc.</i>) expects something to happen. Be supposed to often expresses expectations about scheduled events, as in (a), or correct procedures, as in (b). 			
 (c) I am supposed to go to the meeting. My boss told me that he wants me to attend. (d) The children are supposed to put away their toys before they go to bed. 	Be supposed to also expresses expectations about behavior. The meaning is the same in (c) and (d): Someone else expects (requests or requires) certain behavior. NOTE: I am supposed to = I am expected to I suppose = I guess, I think, I believe			
(e) The mail <i>should be</i> here soon.(f) Amy <i>should be</i> back any minute.	Should can also express expectation. In (e): The speaker expects the mail to be here soon. In (f): The speaker expects Amy to be back any minute.			

EXERCISE 19 ► Let's talk. (Chart 9-5)

Answer the questions with be supposed to. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

Example:

SPEAKER A (book open): If you're driving and a traffic light turns red, what are you supposed to do? SPEAKER B (book closed): You're supposed to come to a complete stop.

- 1. What are you supposed to do if you're involved in a traffic accident?
- 2. What are you supposed to do before takeoff in an airplane?
- 3. What are some things athletes in training are supposed to do, and some things they're not supposed to do?
- 4. If you're driving and an ambulance with flashing lights and blaring sirens comes up behind you, what are you supposed to do?
- 5. In the place you live or work, who is supposed to do what? In other words, what are the duties or responsibilities of the people who live or work with you?

EXERCISE 20 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-5)

Rewrite the sentences with *should*.

- 1. I expect you to pass your class. It's fairly easy. <u>You should pass your class</u>.
- 2. It's 10:00. I expect the movie is over now. _____
- 3. I expect Aja will hear about the job offer soon.
- 4. I expect your advisor will have a solution for you.
- 5. I expect our flight will take off on time.

EXERCISE 21 \blacktriangleright Speaking or writing. (Charts 9-2 \rightarrow 9-5)

Make sentences about the occupations listed below. Use the verbs in the box.



should have to be not supposed to be supposed to







have got to had better not ought to must do not have to had better shouldn't must not

Example: A vet should be very gentle with animals.

- 1. a tour guide
- 2. an artist
- 3. an engineer
- 4. a nurse

- 5. a taxi driver
- 6. a salesclerk
- 7. a plumber
- 8. a veterinarian (vet)

EXERCISE 22 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 9-2 \rightarrow 9-5)

Which sentence in each pair is stronger?

- a. You had better wear a seat belt.
 b. You have to wear a seat belt.
- 2. a. You *must wear* a seat belt.b. You *had better wear* a seat belt.
- 3. a. You have to wear a seat belt.b. You are supposed to wear a seat belt.

EXERCISE 23 → Warm-up. (Chart 9-6)

Decide if the sentence expresses a. a physical ability or b. a learned skill.

- 1. _____ Isabel knows how to play chess.
- 2. ____ Jonathan can run really fast. He's a natural.
- 3. ____ Theodore knows how to use sign language. His mother is deaf and taught him.
- 4. _____ I won't be able to go swimming on our trip. I have an ear infection.

9-6 Ability: Can, Know How To, and Be Able To (a) Tom is strong. He can lift that heavy box. Can is used to express physical ability, as in (a). (b) I can see Central Park from my apartment. Can is frequently used with verbs of the five senses: see, hear, feel, smell, taste, as in (b). (c) My husband cannot stay awake past 10:00. The negative form has three options: cannot, can't, or can not. Can not is becoming unusual in written English. (d) We can't wait any longer for Bill. In spoken English, can is typically unstressed and pronounced /ken/. Can't is stressed and is usually pronounced /kænt/ although the "t" is often not heard. (e) Maria can play the piano. She's been taking lessons Can and know how to are used to express a learned skill. for many years. In (f): knows how to play = can play (f) Maria knows how to play the piano. (g) I am able to help you now. Be able to expresses ability. (h) Are you able to help me I lift this? In (g): be able to help = can help (i) Sorry, I'm not able to help you. It's too heavy. Note the question and negative forms, as in (i) and (j). Not able may also be expressed as unable, as in (i). (j) Sorry, I'm unable to help you.

EXERCISE 24 Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-6)

Part I. Rewrite the sentences using be able to.

- 4. a. We are supposed to bring ID.b. We have to bring ID.
- 5. a. We ought to bring ID.b. We have got to bring ID.
- 6. a. We should bring ID.b. We could bring ID.



- 5. I can't remove the stain on your white shirt.
- 6. Every employee can do CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation).

Part II. Which three sentences can be rewritten with *know how to*? Restate them.

1	 	 	
2	 	 	
3.	 	 	

EXERCISE 25 > Let's talk. (Chart 9-6)

Interview your classmates. Ask each person a different question. Share some of their answers with the class.

Sleep Habits

- 1. In general, are you able to fall asleep easily? About how long does it take you?
- 2. How many hours can you sleep before waking up?
- 3. How many hours of sleep do you need every night? Are you able to function well with less sleep?
- 4. Are you able to sleep with noise (e.g., TV, radio, snoring)?
- 5. Can you sleep on airplanes? If yes, are you able to sleep during takeoffs and landings?
- 6. Have you ever had jet lag? Do you know how to recover from it quickly?
- 7. Are you able to sleep well the night before something stressful, such as a big test?
- 8. Do you find that reading on a screen before you go to sleep makes it harder for you to fall asleep?

► EXERCISE 26 ► Listening. (Chart 9-6)

Part I. Listen to the pronunciation of can and can't.

- 1. The secretary can help you.
- 2. My mother can't speak English well.
- 3. Our friend can meet you at the train station.
- 4. Scott can't work late tonight.

Part II. Write the words you hear.

- 1. We ______ to the meeting.
- 2. Our two-year-old _____ to 50.
- 3. You ______ that course next term.
- 4. I _____ complicated dishes.
- 5. ______ with us?
- 6. I _____ a semi-truck.







www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 27 ► Warm-up. (Chart 9-7)

Which two sentences mean "It's a general possibility"?

- 1. This soup may need salt and pepper.
- 2. Pepper can make people sneeze.
- 3. Spices can make food taste better.
- 4. My cooking tonight might be too spicy for you.





(a)	Spices can be expensive.	Can is used to express a general possibility.
(b)	You can learn a lot of by watching cooking	In (a), this is generally possible, typical, or common.
	shows.	In (b), You can learn means It's possible for people in general to learn. You is impersonal. It refers to people in general rather than a specific person.
(c)	Spices <i>may/might be</i> more expensive at that store.	<i>May</i> and <i>might</i> express present or future possibility. The idea: <i>There is a chance.</i>
(d) Liza may/might need your help in the kitchen.	In (c): There is a chance that spices are (or will be) more expensive at that store.	
		In (d): There is a chance that Liza needs (or will need) your help.
		Can is not used for this meaning.
		INCORRECT: Liza can need your help in the kitchen.

EXERCISE 28 Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-7)

Check (\checkmark) all the grammatically correct sentences. Discuss their meanings.

- 1. a. ____ Physical exercise may improve your mental state.
 - b. _____ Physical exercise can improve your mental state.
- 2. a. ____ The weather may be breezy tomorrow.
 - b. ____ The weather can be breezy tomorrow.
- 3. a. ____ Eating out every day can be expensive.
 - b. ____ Eating out every day might be expensive for you.
- 4. a. ____ The apartment sounds nice, but it can be too far away from my job.
 - b. ____ This apartment sounds nice, but it may be too far away from my job.

EXERCISE 29 Speaking and writing. (Chart 9-7)

Work in small groups or with a partner. Give a few different completions for each sentence orally. Then write your own sentence for each. Share some of your sentences with the class.

- 3. Studying all classes online might be _____
- 4. People can learn a lot about life from
- 5. Music might help us feel ______
- 6. Psychology can help us understand _____
- 7. Literature may help us ______

EXERCISE 30 ► Warm-up. (Chart 9-8)

Choose all the correct completions.

- 1. Excuse me, ____ I look at that book?
 - a. can d. may
 - b. could e. will
 - c. would

- 2. ____ you hand me that book, please?
 - a. Can d. May
 - b. Could e. Will
 - c. Would

"I" as the Subject: May, Could, Can	
 (a) May I borrow your pen (please)? (b) Could I (please) borrow your pen? (c) Can I borrow your pen? 	 May I and could I are used to request permission. May I sounds more formal.* NOTE in (b): In a polite request, could has a present or future meaning, not a past meaning. Can I is usually considered less formal than may I or could I.
TYPICAL RESPONSES Certainly. Yes, certainly. Of course. Yes, of course. Yes, you may. Yes, you can. <i>INFORMAL</i> : Sure.	Often the response to a polite request is an action, such as a nod or shake of the head, or a simple "uh-huh," meaning "yes." Both <i>may</i> and <i>can</i> express permission. <i>May</i> is more formal than <i>can</i> .
"You" as the Subject: Would, Could	l, Will, Can
 (d) Would you pass the salt (please)? (e) Will you (please) pass the salt? 	Would you and will you in a polite request have the same meaning. Would you is more common and is often considered more polite. The degree of politeness, however, is often determined by the speaker's tone of voice.
(f) Could you pass the salt (please)?	Basically, <i>could you</i> and <i>would you</i> have the same meaning, and they are equally polite. <i>Would you</i> = Do you want to do this please? <i>Could you</i> = Do you want to do this please, and is it possible for you to do this?
(g) Can you (please) pass the salt?	 <i>Can you</i> is often used informally. It usually sounds less formal than <i>could you</i> or <i>would you</i>. <i>May</i> is not possible in (g). In polite requests, <i>may</i> is only used with <i>I</i> or <i>we</i>. <i>INCORRECT: May you pass the salt?</i>
TYPICAL RESPONSES Yes, I'd (I would) be happy to / be glad to. Certainly. INFORMAL: Sure.	A person usually responds in the affirmative to a polite request. If a negative response is necessary, a person might begin by saying, "I'd like to, but" (e.g., "I'd like to pass the salt, but I can't reach it.").

*Might is also possible: Might I borrow your pen? Might I is quite formal and polite; it is used much less frequently than may I or could I.

EXERCISE 31 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-8)

Write all the correct verbs: Can, Could, May, Will, Would.

1	you pass the salt, please?	
2. Hello	I help you?	

176 CHAPTER 9

www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 32 > Let's talk. (Chart 9-8)

Take turns asking and answering polite questions with Would or Could.

Example:

- SPEAKER A: You and I are co-workers. We don't know each other well. We're at a lunch table in a cafeteria. You want the pepper.
- SPEAKER B: Would/Could you please pass me the pepper? (*Will* is also possible because the speaker uses *please*, but *can* is probably not appropriate in this situation.)

SPEAKER A: Sure. I'd be glad to. Here you are.

- 1. You and I are good friends. We're in my apartment. You want to use the phone.
- 2. I'm your instructor. You want to leave class early.
- 3. I'm your supervisor at work. You knock on my half-open office door. You want to come in.
- 4. I'm Dr. North's assistant. You want to make an appointment to see Dr. North.
- 5. You are running toward the elevator. I'm already inside. You ask me to hold the door open.

EXERCISE 33 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 9-9)

In each conversation, choose the speaker (A or B) who is going to turn on the air-conditioning.

- A: This car is like an oven! Would you mind turning on the air-conditioning?
 B: No, not at all.
- 2. A: This car is like an oven! Would you mind if I turned on the air-conditioning?B: No, not at all.

Asking Permission	the state is made and a mer building a state to a
 (a) Would you mind if I opened the window? (b) Would you mind if I used the phone? (c) Would you mind if I close the door? (d) Mind if I close the door? TYPICAL RESPONSES No, not at all. No, of course not. No, that would be fine. 	 Notice in (a): Would you mind if I is followed by the simple past.* The meaning in (a): May I open the window? Is it all right if I open the window? Will it cause you any trouble or discomfort if I open the window? Sometimes, in informal spoken English, the simple present is used, as in (c). Would you mind if I can be shortened to Mind if I, as in (d). Notice that the typical response is "no." "Yes" means Yes, I mind. In other words: It is a problem for me. Another typical response might be "unh-uh," meaning "no."
Asking Someone to Do Something	A STATE OF A
 (e) Would you mind opening the window? (f) Excuse me. Would you mind repeating that? TYPICAL RESPONSES No. I'd be happy to. Not at all. I'd be glad to. INFORMAL: No problem. / Sure. / OK. 	 Notice in (e): <i>Would you mind</i> is followed by the <i>-ing</i> form of a vert (a gerund). The meaning in (e): <i>I don't want to cause you any trouble, but would you please open the window? Would that cause you any inconvenience?</i> The informal responses "Sure" and "OK" are common but not logical. The speaker means <i>No, I wouldn't mind</i> but seems to be saying the opposite: <i>Yes, I would mind.</i> Native speakers understand that the response "Sure" or "OK" in this situation means that the speaker agrees to the request.

*The simple past does not refer to past time after *would you mind*; it refers to present or future time. See Chart 20-3, p. 430, for more information.

EXERCISE 34 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-9)

Make sentences using Would you mind.

- a. I want to turn up the heat. → Would you mind if I turned up the heat?
 b. I want you to turn up the heat. → Would you mind turning up the heat?
- 2. a. I want to leave early.b. I want you to leave early.
- 3. a. I want you to talk to Andrew.b. I want to talk to Andrew.

EXERCISE 35 Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-9)

Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use if I + the past tense OR the -ing form of the verb. In some of the sentences, either response is possible, but the meaning is different.

- 1. A: I'm very tired and need to sleep. Would you mind (go) ______ if | went _____ to bed?
 - B: I'm sorry. I didn't understand what you said. Would you mind (repeat) _____ repeating _____ that?
- 2. A: Are you coming with us?
 - B: I know I promised to go with you, but I'm not feeling very good. Would you mind

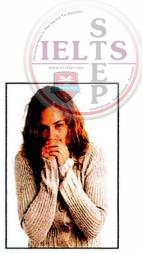
(stay) _____ home?

- A: Of course not.
- 3. A: It's getting hot in here. Would you mind (open) ______ the window?
 - B: No.
- 4. A: This is probably none of my business, but would you mind (*ask*) ______ you a personal question?
 - B: It depends.
- 5. A: Would you mind not (smoke) _____?
 - B: Oh, sure. Sorry.
- 6. A: Excuse me. Would you mind (*speak*) ______ a little more slowly? I didn't catch what you said.
 - B: Sure. Of course.
- 7. A: I don't like this TV program. Would you mind (*change*) ______ the channel?B: Unh-uh.

Listen to each request. Choose the expected response (a. or b.). In relaxed speech, you in would you may sound like "ju" or "juh."

Example: You will hear:This room is stuffy. Would you mind if I opened the door?You will choose:(a) No, of course not.(b) Yes.

1. a. Yes.	b. Not at all.	4. a. Yes.	b. No, that's fine.
2. a. Yes.	b. No, that would be fine.	5. a. Yes.	b. No problem.
3. a. Yes.	b. No, I'd be happy to.	6. a. Sure.	b. Of course not.



EXERCISE 37 > Let's talk: pairwork. (Charts 9-8 and 9-9)

Work with a partner. Imagine what the speaker might say for each situation, and complete the conversations in your own words.

1.	JACK:	What's the trouble, Officer?
	OFFICER:	You made an illegal U-turn. May see your driver's license?
	Jack:	Sure. Here's my wallet.
	OFFICER:	Wouldyou please remove it from your wallet?
	Jack:	Here you are.
2.	WAITER:	Good evening. Are you ready to order?
	CUSTOMER:	No, not quite yet. Would you mind
	WAITER:	Of course. I'll be back shortly.
3.	SALLY:	Are you driving to the meeting tonight?
	SAM:	Yes, I am.
	SALLY:	Could
	SAM:	Sure. I'll pick you up at 7:00.
4.	Mr. Penn:	Something's come up, and I can't meet with you Tuesday. Would you mind
	Ms. Gray:	Let me check my calendar.
5.	MECHANIC:	What seems to be the would with your car?
	CUSTOMER:	Something's wrong with the brakes, I think. Could
	Mechanic:	Sure. Just pull the car into the garage.
6.	Mike:	Oh, good. The movie hasn't started. How are these seats?
	SHELLEY:	Well, the man in front of us is pretty tall. Would you mind
	Mike:	Not at all. There are two seats across the aisle. (To moviegoer) Excuse me. May

MOVIEGOER: I'm sorry. My kids are sitting here, but it looks like the seats in front of me are free.

EXERCISE 38 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 9-10)

Imagine that next Tuesday is a holiday. You and your roommate are making plans. Which suggestions below sound good to you?

- 1. Let's go to a movie.
- 2. Why don't we study grammar all day?
- 3. Let's go shopping.
- 4. Why don't we fly to Rome for lunch?
- 5. Let's play video games.
- 6. Why don't we clean and do the laundry?

(a) Let's go to a movie.	let's = let us
	Let's means I have a suggestion for us. Let's is followed by the simple form of a verb.
(b) Let's not go to a movie. Let's stay home instead.	Negative form: <i>let's</i> + <i>not</i> + <i>simple verb</i>
(c) Why don't we go to a movie?(d) Why don't you come around seven?	Why don't is used primarily in spoken English to make a friendly suggestion.
(e) Why don't I give Mary a call?	The meaning in (c): Let's go to a movie. In (d): I suggest that you come around seven. In (e): Should I give Mary a call? Do you agree with my suggestion?
(f) Shall I open the window? Is that OK with yo	
(g) Shall we leave at two? Is that OK?	usually making a suggestion and asking another person if she/he agrees with this suggestion, as in (f) and (g). The use of shall + <i>I/we</i> is relatively formal and infrequent in American English.
(h) Let's go, shall we?	Sometimes shall we ? is used as a tag question after let's , as in (h). More informally, OK ? is used as a tag question, as in (i).

EXERCISE 39 Let's talk. (Chart 9-10)

Complete the conversations with your own words.

- 1. A: A new Japanese restaurant just opened downtown. Let's <u>eat there tonight</u>
 - B: Great idea! I'd like some good sushi.
 - A: Why don't ______ you call and make a reservation? _____ Make it for about 7:30.
 - B: No, let's _____ *make it for 8:00.* ____ I'll be working until 7:30 tonight.
- 2. A: I don't feel like staying home today.
- B: Neither do I. Why don't _____

A: Hey, that's a great idea! What time shall _____

- B: Let's leave in an hour.
- 3. A: Shall ______ or _____ first?
 - B: Let's ______ first. Then we can take our time over dinner.
 - A: Why don't _____
 - B: Good idea.
- 4. A: Let's ______ over the weekend. The fresh air would do us both good.
- B: I agree. Why don't _____
 - A: No. Sleeping in a tent is too uncomfortable. Let's ______

EXERCISE 40 Reading and speaking. (Chapter 9 Review)

Part I. Read the passage from a handbook for incoming freshmen. <u>Underline</u> the modal (or phrasal modal) verbs. With a partner or in small groups, discuss their meaning.

A Challenge for College Freshmen

Freshman year can turn out to be the most challenging time in college for students. The transition from high school to college or university involves many changes. One of the biggest differences is the amount of freedom you must learn to manage.

In high school, your life is very structured, and you generally can't choose how you spend your day. It begins and ends at the same time. Teachers take attendance and check homework. They tell you (or your parents) about missing assignments and low grades. Many give daily homework so that there is not too much work at one time.

However, college life is much more unstructured. The class schedule might not be the same every day. You can sleep in one morning and have to be up early the next. If you decide to skip a class, there is probably no one there to say you can't do that.

College professors don't have to take attendance or check whether their students have completed assignments. Instructors may have all their assignments on a syllabus and not even mention them in class. They might not remind you about deadlines or missing work.

- Do you know these words?
- challenging
- stretches (of time)
- -hefty
- extra-curricular
- not to mention
- -evaporate
- grades may suffer

You may hear an instructor say, "I am not your parent." Or even, "I am not a babysitter."

You may find you have large blocks of unscheduled time. There are fewer classes each day than in high school, and you will probably not have every class every day. A two- or three-credit class may meet only once or twice a week. Instructors view these longer stretches of time between classes as valuable opportunities for studying. They often assign hefty amounts of reading, but with so many extra-curricular activities available, not to mention social media and Internet distractions, this study time can quickly evaporate. Your grades may suffer if you can't manage time well. Some students don't realize they are in trouble until it is too late.

With an understanding of the challenges ahead, you can prepare in advance. Most colleges offer programs to help students with their transition, and there are many online resources available. The key is to remember that the responsibility for time management rests with you, not with your parents or teachers.

Part II. In small groups, answer the questions. Then discuss your answers as a class.

- 1. What are some major distractions for today's student? For you?
- 2. If you are or were a college freshman, what are/were some of the challenges you had moving from high school to college?
- 3. Has time management with assignments and studying ever been a problem for you?
- 4. Do you like to have structure in your day? If so, how do you create it?
- 5. What recommendations would you give a student who needs to manage time more effectively? Make a list, and use *should/should not/ought to/had better* in your sentences. You can check online resources for ideas.

EXERCISE 41 Writing or speaking. (Chapter 9 Review)

Work with a partner. What would you say for each of the following situations? Use some of the words in the box to come up with at least three possibilities. Share some of your answers with the class.

Example: Imagine that you are an apartment manager. You are talking to a person who is interested in renting an apartment. There is some information about apartment regulations you need to give him/her.

- \rightarrow You must not smoke anywhere in the building.
- \rightarrow You have to recycle all paper products and glass.
- → Quiet time is 10 P.M. to 7 A.M. You are not supposed to play loud music or make a lot of noise during those hours. ...

should	had better	must	had better not
be supposed to	have to	shouldn't	do not have to
ought to	have got to	be not supposed to	must not

- 1. Imagine that you are a tour guide and you are helping two students who have arrived for a vacation (choose the place). You want to explain some of the local customs of the places they will be visiting.
- 2. Imagine that you are the manager of a café and you are talking to two new employees. You want to acquaint them with their jobs and your expectations.
- 3. Imagine that you are a computer lab instructor and you need to talk to new students about rules for using the computer lab.

EXERCISE 42 • Check your knowledge. (Chapter 9 Review)

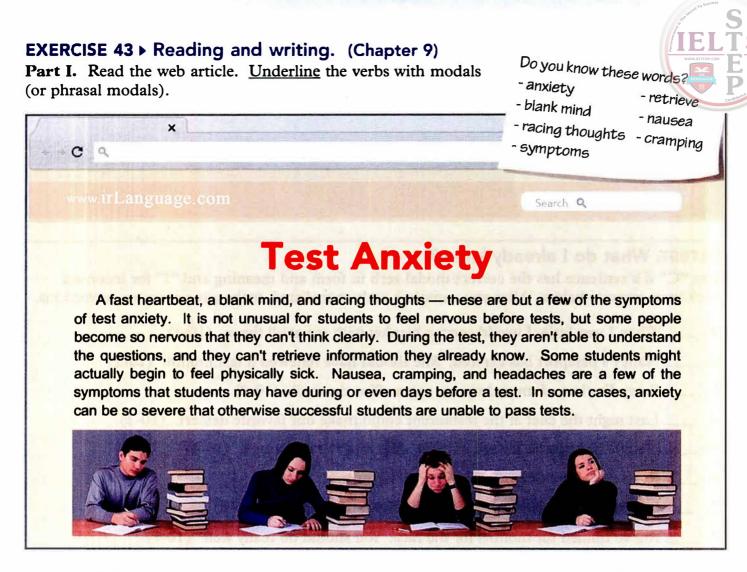
Correct the errors.

- 1. If you have a car, you can traveling around the United States.
- 2. A film director must has control over every aspect of a movie.
- 3. I'm sorry. I don't have training in this area. I not able help you.
- 4. You don't have to have your cell phone on during the test. If you do, you will fail.
- 5. We supposed to bring our books to class every day.
- 6. You can having a very good time as a tourist in my country. However, my country has many different climates, so you have better plan ahead before you came.
- 7. May you please help me with this?
- 8. The janitor supposed to unlock the building doors.
- 9. During class the students must to sit quietly.
- 10. Would I leave a few minutes early today? I have a doctor's appointment.



a janitor

- 11. I'm suppose to be at the meeting. I suppose I better go.
- 12. When you visit a big city in my country, you must to be paying attention to your wallet in a crowded place because a thief maybe try to steal it.



Part II. Write a paragraph to answer one of the following questions. Use modals in your answer. You may find it helpful to do research on the Internet.

- 1. What suggestions do you have for a person with test anxiety? Think about what the person can do before the test as well as during it.
- 2. What can teachers do to help students feel more relaxed when they take a test? Think about test review and preparation as well as the classroom atmosphere.

WRITING TIP

When you write, it is important to avoid excessive repetition of the same words. Instead, try to vary your wording. For example, if you are giving suggestions, you don't want to use *should* for all your sentences. Use other modals that communicate the same idea (*ought to/could/etc.*).

Part III. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box use of modals to express possibility, uncertainty, etc.
- 2. \Box correct forms for *be able to*
- 3. \Box no -s on the main verb after a modal
- 4. \Box use of different modals with the same meaning to avoid repetition
- 5. \Box correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Go to the Essential Online Resources for Self-Study: Gerunds and Infinitives 9



PRETEST: What do I already know?

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct modal verb in form and meaning and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. ____When I was little, I would carry a blanket with me at all times. (10-1)
- 2. ____ Nancy's passport has expired. She should have renewed it last month. (10-2)
- 3. ____ Sorry I'm late. I must drop my mom off at the mall. (10-2)
- 4. ____ Last night the chef at the restaurant could make our favorite dessert. (10-3)
- 5. ____ Nadine has missed a week of class. She must be really sick. (10-4)
- 6. ____ Ryan can't be a doctor! He failed all his exams. (10-5)
- 7. ____ I can't find my wallet. It may have fell out of my purse. (10-6)
- 8. ____You've trained for months for the race. You should do really well. (10-7)
- 9. ____ Roger jumped when the teacher asked him a question. He must have been daydream. (10-8)
- 10. ____ We aren't going to be able to catch our plane if we don't get out of this traffic. (10-9)
- 11. ____ My husband rather cook dinner at home tonight than go out to a restaurant. (10-10)

II '6 'L 'F 'E :sourous 100100

EXERCISE 1 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 10-1)

Are the meanings of the two sentences the same or different?

- 1. When I was a child, I used to build sandcastles at the beach.
- 2. When I was a child, I would build sandcastles at the beach.



10-1 Using Would to Express a Repeated Action in the Past

(a) (b)	When I was a child, my father <i>would read</i> me a story at night before bedtime. When I was a child, my father <i>used to read</i> me a story at night before bedtime.	Would can be used to express an action that was repeated regularly in the past. When would is used to express this idea, it has the same meaning as used to (habitual past). Sentences (a) and (b) have the same meaning. Would is more common for this purpose than used to in academic writing.
(c)	I used to live in California. He used to be a Boy Scout. They used to have a Ford.	To express past situations or states, only used to , not would , is possible, as in (c).

EXERCISE 2 Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-1)

Work with a partner. Choose the correct sentence(s). In some cases, both sentences may be correct.

Visiting My Grandparents

- a. Every summer, I would visit my grandparents in Mexico for a month.
 b. Every summer, I used to visit my grandparents in Mexico for a month.
- 2. a. They used to live in the city, but when I was ten, they moved to the coast.b. They would live in the city, but when I was ten, they moved to the coast.
- 3. a. I used to speak Spanish with them, but now my Spanish is a little rusty.b. I would speak Spanish with them, but now my Spanish is a little rusty.
- 4. a. I used to know Spanish pretty well, but I've forgotten a lot of vocabulary.b. I would know Spanish pretty well, but I've forgotten a lot of vocabulary.
- 5. a. I loved visiting them. I would feel really sad each time I said good-bye. b. I loved visiting them. I used to feel really sad each time I said good-bye.

EXERCISE 3 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-1)

Complete the sentences with the given words. For a repeated action in the past, use *would* or *used* to. For a past state, use *used* to.

When I was a child ...

- 1. I (be) _______ used to be ______ very shy. Whenever a stranger came to our house,

 I (hide) ______ would hide / used to hide ______ in a closet.
- 2. Aunt Ella (visit) ______ us often. She (give) _____

_____ me a big kiss and pinch my cheek when she first saw me.

- 3. I (like) ______ junk food, but now I avoid it and eat healthy snacks.
- 4. I (be) ______ afraid of flying. My heart (start) _____
 - _____ pounding every time I got on a plane. But now I'm used to flying and enjoy it.
- 5. I got a new bike for my birthday. My friends (*ask*) _______ to ride it, but for a long time, I never let anyone else use it.
- 6. I (*take*) _______ a flashlight to bed with me so that I could read comic books without my parents knowing about it.

EXERCISE 4 Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-1)

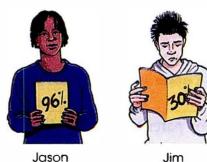
Complete the sentences with the correct verb. Use would or used to and the words in the box to express a repeated action in the past. Use *used to* to express a past state.

hike	live	see take	wake
My sister	1	in Montana,	and when I visited her, we
	-		mountains for as long as a week.
	g, we d of singing birds. D	During the day, we	
	4 s. Often we	through meadows and be 5 ent off in the opposite direct	-
be	find	gather get	spend
I	6	an anthropology major	r. Once, I was a member of an
			up before
			our entire day in the field.
Sometimes one	e of us	a pa	articularly interesting item, such as
THE REAL	a tool or weapon	like an arrowhead. When the	hat happened, other members
stone arrowhead	of the group	10	around to see what had
unowneuu	been discovered.		

EXERCISE 5 > Warm-up. (Chart 10-2)

Choose the correct answer in each pair.

- 1. A: How was your weekend?
 - B: a. Not fun. I had to clean my house. b. Not fun. I must have cleaned my house.
- 2. "We were supposed to have a party last weekend." This means
 - a. We had a party.
 - b. We didn't have a party.
- 3. Who said: "I should have studied."
 - a. Jason
 - b. Jim





10-2 Expressing the Past: Necessity, Advisability, Expectation

PRESENT: PAST:	 (a) Julia has to get a visa. (b) Julia has got to get a visa. (c) Julia must get a visa. (d) Julia had to get a visa. 	Past necessity: <i>had to</i> In (d): <i>had to = needed to: Julia needed to get a visa.</i> There is no other past form for <i>must</i> (when it means necessity) or <i>have got to</i> .
PRESENT:	 (e) I should study for the test. I want to pass it. (f) I ought to study for the test. (g) I had better study for the test. I failed the test. (h) I should have studied for it. (i) I ought to have studied for it. (j) I shouldn't have gone to the movies the night before. 	Past advisability: should have ought to have + past participle In the past, should is more common than ought to. The past form of had better (had better have) is almost never used. The meaning in (h) and (i): Studying was a good idea, but I didn't do it. I made a mistake. The meaning in (j): It was a bad idea to go to the movies. I made a mistake. Usual pronunciation of should have: "should-əv" or "should-ə."
PRESENT: PAST:	 (k) We are supposed to leave now. (1) We were supposed to leave last week. 	was/were supposed to: unfulfilled expectation or obligation in the past
PRESENT: PAST:	(m) The mail <i>should be</i> here.(n) The mail <i>should have been</i> here by now.	Should have + past participle: past expectation The speaker expected something to happen; it may or may not have occurred, as in (n).

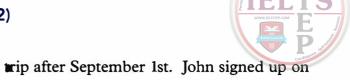
EXERCISE 6 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-2)

Make the sentences express past necessity.

1.	I have to leave now I must leave now. I've got to leave now. I	yesterday.
2.	They've got to get new passports. They have to get new passports. They must get new passports.	_ new passports last week.
3.	Nelson must have surgery. Nelson has got to have surgery. Nelson has to have surgery.	surgery last Monday.
4.	Do you have to retake the test?	the test this morning?
5.	When do we have to register to vote for this election? When	
	for this election?	
6.	Why does it have to rain on our vacation? Why	on
	our vacation?	

EXERCISE 7 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-2)

Answer the questions using past necessity.



- You must pay a late fee if you sign up for the hiking wip after September 1st. John signed up on September 4th. What was the result? <u>He had to pay a late fee.</u>
- Swimmers must take showers before they enter the pool. Susie went swimming. What did she need to do before she got in the pool?
- 3. Sanji agreed to pick up his friend at the airport. The plane was late. Sanji waited at the airport for three hours. What did Sanji have to do last night?
- Mila is writing a research paper. She needs a grade of 75% or she has to rewrite it. She got 70%. What did Mila need to do?
- 5. Jacob bought a car, but before he got the car, the dealer gave him a contract to sign. What did Jacob need to do?
- 6. Guests at national parks must make reservations online for campsites. Bob went camping last month at a national park. He stayed at a campsite. What did he need to do before he left home?



EXERCISE 8 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-2) Make new sentences using *should/shouldn't have*.

- 1. You are cold because you didn't wear a coat. _____ *I should have worn a coat.*
- 2. The room is full of flies because you opened the window.
- 3. You don't have any food for dinner because you didn't go to the grocery store.
- 4. You bought a friend a box of candy for her birthday. It has peanuts in it, and she's allergic to them.
- 5. Your friend is upset because you didn't return his call.
- 6. Your friend is upset because you ignored his call.

EXERCISE 9 ▶ Let's talk. (Chart 10-2)

Work in pairs or small groups. Read the situation and give several answers for each question.

SITUATION: Tom didn't study for the test. During the exam, he panicked and started looking at other students' test papers. He didn't think the teacher saw him, but she did. She warned him once to stop cheating, but he continued. As a result, the teacher took Tom's test paper, told him to leave the room, and failed him on the exam. The teacher told the principal, and the school suspended him for a week.

- 1. What should/shouldn't Tom have done?
- 2. What should/shouldn't the teacher have done?
- 3. What should/shouldn't the school have done?

EXERCISE 10 ► Listening. (Chart 10-2)

Choose the sentence that best explains each statement you hear.

Example: You will hear: I should have run a spell-check on my final paper.You will choose: a. I ran a spell-check.(b) I didn't run a spell-check.

- 1. a. He still needs more coffee.
 - b. He had too much coffee.
- 2. a. She saved her money.
 - b. She didn't save her money.
- 3. a. I didn't go to the doctor.b. It was a bad idea to go to the doctor.
- 4. a. The president shouldn't have been dishonest.b. It's OK for the president to be dishonest.

EXERCISE 11 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-2)

Make complete sentences. Use one item from each column.

- 1. The flight was supposed to be quick, but _____.
- 2. The hotel was supposed to give us a nonsmoking room, but ____.
- 3. The weather should have been beautiful for our vacation, but _____.
- 4. My parents weren't supposed to visit last weekend, but ____.
- 5. Tyler should have been home at midnight, but ____.
- 6. The pharmacy should have had a prescription ready for me, but _____.
- 7. The cafeteria was supposed to begin serving healthier meals, but ____.
- 8. Tom was supposed to get a promotion to manager, but _____.

- a. it rained all week
- b. he stayed out until the early morning
- c. they put us on the wrong floor
- d. we haven't noticed any changes
- e. they lost it
- f. management chose someone from outside the company
- g. they surprised us
- h. ice on the runway caused a delay

EXERCISE 12 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-2)

Answer the questions with **be supposed to**.



- 1. Ali's mom told him to get up early, but he overslept. What was Ali supposed to do? He was supposed to get up early.
- Ray's boss expected him to work overtime yesterday, but his wife and kids got sick. What was Ray supposed to do?
- 3. The students expected their teacher, Mr. Robbins, to be absent. He told them he had a doctor's appointment. But he came to class the next day, as usual. What was supposed to happen yesterday?
- 4. The teacher ordered textbooks with exams, but the ones that arrived didn't have them. What were the books supposed to have?
- 5. Vivian set her alarm for 5:00 A.M., but it didn't go off. What time was Vivian supposed to get up?

EXERCISE 13 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-2)

Restate each situation with *should have* and one of the verbs in the box.

get	finish	land	pick	✓ come

- 1. My package isn't here. I expected it yesterday. It <u>should have come yesterday</u>.
- 2. The plane's arrival time was 2:00. It's 3:00. The plane _____ by now.
- 3. We called and asked for a taxi an hour ago. A taxi ______ us up already.
- I returned an online purchase on the 1st of the month. Now it's the 25th, and my refund hasn't come. I ______ my refund by now.
- 5. It's 12:30. I expect the race was over at noon. It ______ a half hour ago.

EXERCISE 14 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 10-3)

Choose all the correct answers.

- A: Did you sleep during the flight?
- B: a. Yes, I was able to fly business class.
 - b. Yes, I could fly business class.
 - c. No, I couldn't relax.
 - d. No, I wasn't able to relax.



10-3 E	xpi	essing Past Ability	
PRESENT: PAST: PRESENT: PAST:	(a) (b) (c) (d)	I <i>can speak</i> Farsi. I <i>could speak</i> Farsi ten years ago. I <i>am able to speak</i> Farsi. I <i>was able to speak</i> Farsi ten years ago.	Past ability: could was/were able to
INCORRECT:	(e)	Maya was able to do well on her exam. OR Maya did well on her exam. Last week, Maya could do well on her exam.	For a single action in the past <i>affirmative</i> , <i>was/were able to</i> or the simple past is used, as in (e). <i>Could</i> is not typically used.* For the negative, both verbs are possible: <i>Maya couldn't do well on the test.</i> <i>Maya wasn't able to do well on the test.</i>

*Exception: Could can be used in the past for one action with these sense verbs: hear, feel, see, smell, taste; and the verbs understand, remember, guess.

EXERCISE 15 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-3)

Part I. Check (\checkmark) the sentences that describe one action in the past.

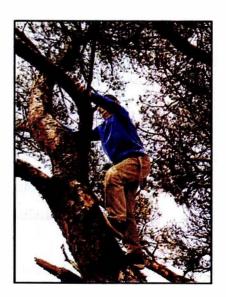
- 1. ____ Most students were able to finish the test in under an hour.
- 2. ____When I was younger, I was able to hold my breath underwater for three minutes.
- 3. ____ We were able to help take care of our grandkids last weekend.
- 4. ____ My father is a brilliant mathematician. When he was a child, he was able to do complex problems in his head.
- 5. ____ I was able to give my speech last night without sounding nervous.

Part II. Rewrite the checked sentences with the simple past. Rewrite the unchecked sentences with *could*.

EXERCISE 16 Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-3)

Choose the correct verb. In some cases, both verbs are correct.

- When I was a child, I _____ spend hours climbing trees, but now I have trouble climbing stairs!
 - a. could b. was able to
- 2. Jackson's very intelligent. He <u>read</u> by the time he was three.a. could b. was able to
- 3. I _____ do anything last week! I had the flu.a. couldn't b. wasn't able to
- 4. I <u>talk briefly with your college advisor</u>. She's very nice.a. couldb. was able to
- 5. We were late, but we _____ catch the train. It was also late.a. couldb. were able to



EXERCISE 17 > Warm-up. (Chart 10-4)

Max and his wife had a party last night. The next morning they found a hat on their couch. Max is thinking about whose hat it is. Match Max's thoughts on the right to the statements on the left.

- 1. Max thinks the hat looks familiar, but he's not certain whose it is.
- 2. Max thinks he recognizes the hat. He's almost sure he knows the owner.
- 3. Max knows exactly whose hat it is.

- a. "It is Joe Green's hat."
- b. "It could belong to Joe Green. It might be Al Goldberg's. Or it may belong to Mr. Perez across the hall."
- c. "It must be Joe Green's hat."

 Why isn't John in class? 100% sure: He is sick. 	Degree of certainty refers to how sure we are — what we think the chances are — that something is true.
95% sure: He <i>must be</i> sick. 50% sure or less: He <i>might be</i> sick. He <i>could be</i> sick.	If we are sure something is true in the present, we don't need to use a modal. For example, if I say, "John is sick," I am sure; I am stating a fact that I am sure is true. My degree of certainty is 100%.
NOTE: These percentages are approximate.	NOTE: Can does not express degrees of certainty.
	INCORRECT: He can be sick.
 Why isn't John in class? (a) He must be sick. 	Must expresses a strong degree of certainty about a present situation, but it is still less than 100%.
(Usually he is in class every day, but when I saw him last night, he wasn't feeling good. So my best guess is that he is sick today. I can't think of another possibility.)	In (a): The speaker is saying, "Probably John is sick. I have evidence to make me believe that he is sick. That is my logical conclusion, but I do not know for certain."
— Why isn't John in class?	May, might, and could express a weak degree of certainty.
 (b) He may be sick. (c) He might be sick. (d) He could be sick. (I don't really know. He may be at home watching TV. He might be at the library. He could be out of town. 	In (b), (c), and (d): The meanings are all the same. The speaker is saying, "Perhaps, maybe, possibly John is sick. I am only making a guess. I can think of other possibilities."
(e) Maybe he is sick.	In (e): <i>maybe</i> (one word) is an adverb. In (b): <i>may be</i> (two words) is a verb form.

EXERCISE 18 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-4)

Complete the sentences by using *must* or *may/might/could* with the expressions in the box or your own words.

✓ be very proud	fit Jimmy	miss them very much
be at a meeting	have the wrong number	

1. A: I've heard that your daughter recently graduated from law school and that your son has

gotten a scholarship to the state university. You <u>must be very proud</u> of them.

- B: We are.
- 2. A: Hello. May I speak to Ron?
- B: I'm sorry. You ______. There's no one here by that name.

- 3. A: Where's Ms. Adams? She's not in her office.
 - B: I don't know. She ______, or maybe she's in the staff lounge
- 4. A: This jacket is still in good shape, but Brian has outgrown it. Would it fit one of your sons?
 - B: Well, it's probably too small for Danny too, but it __
- 5. A: How long has it been since you last saw your family?
 - B: More than a year.
 - A: You _____

EXERCISE 19 Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 10-4)

Work with a partner. Take turns making guesses. Use must.

Example: PARTNER A: Alice always gets the best grades in the class. Why? PARTNER B: She must study hard. / She must be intelligent.

Partner A	PARTNER B
 The students are yawning. Why? Carol has goose bumps on her arms. Why? 	 The bride is crying. Why? Katrina is blushing. Why?
3. Lisa's stomach is growling. Why?4. Bob is scratching his arm. Why?	3. The fans are jumping up and down and clapping. Why?
5. Yusef is staring off into space. Why?	4. Don't look at a clock. What time is it?5. Eliza is sneezing. Why?

EXERCISE 20 > Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 10-4)

Work with a partner. Take turns answering the questions with I don't know + may/might/could.

Example: PARTNER A: Amy's grammar book isn't on her desk. Where is it? PARTNER B: I don't know. It may/might/could be in her backpack.

- 1. (name of a student) isn't in class today. Where is she/he?
- 2. What do you think I have in my briefcase/pocket/bag, etc.?
- 3. What kind of phone does our teacher have?
- 4. I can't find my wallet. Do you know where it is?
- 5. What city do you think (someone famous) lives in?
- 6. How old do you think (someone famous) is?

EXERCISE 21 > Warm-up. (Chart 10-5)

Answer the questions.

SITUATION: Tim says, "Someone told me that Ed quit his job, sold his house, and moved to a Pacific island."

- OPINIONS: Lucy says, "That may not be true." Linda says, "That must not be true." Hamid says, "That can't be true." Rob says, "That isn't true."
 - 1. Who is absolutely certain?
 - 2. Who is almost certain?
 - 3. Who has an open mind and hasn't decided?



	IELT
10-5 Degrees of Certainty: Prese	nt Time Negative
100% sure	e: Sam isn't hungry.
99% sure	e: { Sam <i>couldn't be</i> hungry. Sam <i>can't be</i> hungry.
95% sure	e: Sam must not be hungry.
50% sure or less	s: { Sam <i>may not be</i> hungry. Sam <i>might not be</i> hungry.
NOTE: These percentages are approximate.	
(a) Sam doesn't want anything to eat. He isn't hungry. He told me his stomach is full. I heard him say that he isn't hungry. I believe him.	
(b) Sam couldn't/can't be hungry. That's impossible. I just saw him eat a huge meal. He has already eater enough to fill two grown men! Did he really say he'd like something to eat? I don't believe it.	n that Sam is hungry (but the speaker is not 100% sure).
(c) Sam isn't eating his food. He <i>must not be</i> hungry. That's the only reason I can think of.	In (c): The speaker is expressing a logical conclusion, a "best guess."
(d) I don't know why Sam isn't eating his food. He may not/might not be hungry right now. Or maybe h doesn't feel well. Or perhaps he ate just before he got here. Who knows?	In (d): The speaker uses may not/might not to mention a possibility.

EXERCISE 22 > Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 10-5)

Work with a partner. Give possible reasons for Speaker B's conclusions.

- Example: A: Someone is knocking at the door. It might be Lillian.B: It couldn't be Lillian. (Reason? Lillian is in Moscow. / She's at a movie. / Etc.)
 - A: Someone left this jacket here. I think it belongs to Alex.
 B: It couldn't belong to him. (*Reason?*)
 - 2. A: Someone told me that Karen is in Norway.B: That can't be right. She couldn't be in Norway. (*Reason?*)
 - 3. A: Look at that animal. Is it a wolf?B: It couldn't be a wolf. (*Reason?*)
 - 4. A: Someone told me that Marie quit her job.B: You're kidding! That can't be true. (*Reason?*)

EXERCISE 23 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-5)

Make a guess with not. Use a modal that corresponds to the percentage.

- 1. A: Yuko has flunked every test so far this semester.
 - B: She (95% sure) <u>must not study very hard.</u>
- 2. A: Tarek's been in bed all day.

B: He (50% sure) _____

- 3. A: I'm trying to be a good host. I've offered Rosa a glass of water, a cup of coffee, and a softdrink. She doesn't want anything.
 - B: She (95% sure) _____
- 4. A: Daniel hasn't answered my text message.
 - B: Hmmm. He (50% sure) _____
- 5. A: Mrs. Garcia seems very lonely to me.
 - B: I agree. She (95% sure) _____
- 6. A: George almost hit a cat, a dog, and then a tree when he was driving.
 - B: His eyesight (50% sure) _____

EXERCISE 24 > Let's talk: pairwork. (Charts 10-4 and 10-5)

Work with a partner. Create a conversation based on the given situation. Perform your conversation for the class or a group of classmates. You can look at your notes before you speak. When you speak, look at your partner.

SITUATION: You and your friend are at home in the evening. The power suddenly goes out. The weather is very calm, and there is no wind. Initially, you feel afraid, but after talking about possibilities, you come up with a logical explanation. What may / might / could / must / may not / couldn't / must not be the cause?

EXERCISE 25 ► Warm-up. (Chart 10-6)

Decide which past modal in the box best completes each sentence. One of the modals is not appropriate for any of the sentences.

must have left	couldn't have left
should have left	might have left

STIUATION: Jackie can't find her sunglasses.

- 1. Laura thinks it's possible that Jackie left them on the table at the restaurant. She says, "You _______ them on the table at the restaurant, but I'm just guessing."
- 2. Sergio disagrees. He looked at everything on the table before they left and doesn't remember seeing her sunglasses there. He thinks it is impossible that Jackie left them there, so he says, "You _______ them there. I'm sure they are somewhere else. Did you check your purse?"
- 3. Maya disagrees with Sergio. She remembers seeing the sunglasses on the table, so she says, "You _______ them there. That's the only logical explanation I can think of."

10-6 Degrees of Certainty: Past Time Past Time: Affirmative - Why wasn't Mary in class? In (a): The speaker is sure. 100%: She was sick. (a) In (b): The speaker is making a logical conclusion, e.g., "I saw Mary yesterday and (b) 95%: She must have been sick. found out that she was sick. I assume that is the (She may have been sick. reason why she was absent. I can't think of any (c) 50% sure or less: She might have been sick. other good reason." She could have been sick. In (c): The speaker is mentioning one possibility. **Past Time: Negative** - Why didn't Sam eat? 100%: Sam wasn't hungry. In (d): The speaker is sure. (d) Sam couldn't have been hungry. 99%: In (e): The speaker believes that it is impossible (e) Sam can't have been hungry. for Sam to have been hungry. (f) 95%: Sam must not have been hungry. In (f): The speaker is making a logical conclusion. Sam may not have been hungry. Sam may not have been hungry. (a) 50% sure or less: In (g): The speaker is mentioning one possibility.

EXERCISE 26 Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-6)

Use past modals to restate the sentence in parentheses.

SITUATION 1: The doorbell rang, but I was in bed trying to take a nap. So I didn't get up. I wonder who it was.

- 1. (Maybe it was a friend.) It <u>may / might / could have been</u> a friend.
- 2. (It's not possible that it was my next-door neighbor. He was at work.) It _____

____ my next-door neighbor.

3. (I'm 95% sure it was a delivery person. There was a package outside my door when I got up.)

It ______ a delivery person.

SITUATION 2: I sent my best friend a birthday present, but she never responded or thanked me. That's not like her. I wonder why I never heard from her.

- 5. (My mother thinks it's possible that it got lost in the mail, but she's just guessing.) My mother thinks it ______ lost in the mail. I guess that's possible.

EXERCISE 27 > Let's talk. (Chart 10-6)

Make guesses using past modals.

SITUATION: Dan, David, Dylan, Dick, and Doug are all friends. One of them got engaged last night. Who do you think it is?

1. Dan had a huge argument with his girlfriend last night.

- It couldn't / must not have been Dan because he fought with his girlfriend last night.

196 CHAPTER 10

www.ieltstep.com

- 2. David met with his girlfriend's parents two nights ago.
- 3. Dylan invited his girlfriend to dinner and took a diamond ring with him.
- 4. Dick is going to wait to get married until he has a better job.
- 5. Doug isn't sure if he's ready for marriage. He thinks he's a little young to be a husband.

EXERCISE 28 Let's talk. (Chart 10-6)

Work with a partner. Partner A asks a question, and Partner B responds with may have/might have/could have. Then Partner A disagrees. Partner B responds with a stronger conclusion. Choose one of your conversations to perform for the class. You can look at your book before you speak. When you speak, look at your partner.

Example:

PARTNER A: Larry was absent yesterday afternoon. Where was he?
PARTNER B: I don't know. He may/might/could have skipped class.
PARTNER A: I don't think so. He's not the type.
PARTNER B: He must have had an appointment.
1. A: Beth seems upset.
B: She
A: I don't think so
B: Well, she
2. A: How did Claudio get to school today?
B: He
A: I don't think so.
B: Well, he
3. A: The subway station is closed.
B: There
A: I don't think so
B: Well, there

EXERCISE 29 Looking at grammar. (Charts $10-4 \rightarrow 10-6$)

Complete the conversations with *must* and the verbs in parentheses. Use not if necessary.

- 1. A: Paula fell asleep in class this morning.
 - B: She (stay up) _____ must have stayed up_____ too late last night.
- 2. A: Jim is eating everything in the salad but the onions. He's pushed all of the onions to the side of his plate.
 - _____ onions. B: He (*like*) _____
- 3. A: Marco had to give a speech in front of 500 people.
 - B: Whew! That's a big audience. He (be) ______ nervous.
 - A: He was, but no one could tell.



- 4. A: What time is it?
 - B: Well, we came at 7:00, and I'm sure we've been here for at least an hour. So it (be) ______ around 8:00.
- 5. A: I met Ayako's husband at the reception. We said hello to each other, but when I asked him a question in English, he just smiled and nodded.
 - B: He (speak) _____ much English.
- 6. A: You have a black eye! What happened?
 - B: I walked into a door.
 - A: Ouch! That (hurt) _____.

7. A: Who is your teacher?

- B: I think his name is Mr. Rock or something like that.
- A: Mr. Rock? Oh, you (mean) _____ Mr. Stone.
- 8. A: I grew up in a small town.
 - B: That (be) _____ boring.
 - A: No, actually it was really fun. There was so much to do outdoors.
- 9. A: No one's here. Doesn't the party start at 7:00?
 - B: No, 8:00.
 - A: Oh, I (misunderstand) ______
- 10. A: Listen. Do you hear a buzzing sound in the kitchen?
 - B: Yes, it's coming from the fridge. Something (be) ______ wrong with the motor.
 - A: I hope it's not dying.

EXERCISE 30 \blacktriangleright Listening. (Charts 10-2 \rightarrow 10-6)

The spoken forms of some modals are often reduced. For example, *may have gone* may sound like "may-uv gone" or "may-uh gone." Write the non-reduced forms of the verbs that you hear.

What's wrong? Your parents look upset.

Example: You will hear: You shouldn't have done that. You will write: You <u>shouldn't have done</u> that.

- 1. We _____ them.
- 2. We ______ them.
- 3. You ______ them.
- 4. You _______ to find out.
- 5. Maybe you _____ out so late.
- 6. You ______ a good excuse for being late.
- 7. You ______ them what you planned to do.
- 8. You ______ your behavior would cause problems.

www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 31 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 10-7)

Match each sentence to the percentage it best describes.

- 1. We might get some snow tomorrow.
- 2. We will get some snow tomorrow.
- 3. We may get some snow tomorrow.
- 4. We should get some snow tomorrow.
- 5. We could get some snow tomorrow.

(a)

(b)

(c)

10-

7	Degrees of Ce	rtainty: Future Time			
	100% sure:	Kay will do well on the test.	>	The speaker feels sure.	
	90% sure :	{Kay should do well on the test. Kay ought to do well on the test. }	->	The speaker is almost sure.	

8800

00%

- The speaker is guessing.

50%

90%

EXERCISE 32 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-7)

Complete the sentences with the speakers' names based on how certain they are.

SITUATION: Jan asked her roommates, "What time are you going to be home tonight?"

She may do well on the test.

She could do well on the test.

She might do well on the test.

CERTAINTY: Marco feels 100% sure.

50% sure or less:

Linda is almost sure.

Ned doesn't know. He's guessing.

- 1. _____ said, "I might be back by ten."
- 2. ______ said, "I'll be home by eight."
- 3. ______ said, "I should be here around nine."

EXERCISE 33 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 10-4 and 10-7)

Complete the sentences with will, should/ought to, or must. In some cases, more than one modal is possible. Discuss the meanings that the modals convey.

- 1. A: Lots of people are standing in line to get into that movie.
 - B: It _____ be good.
- 2. A: Roberto's going to take care of his niece for the first time tonight. She's only a year old.
 - B: That ______ should / ought to / will ______ be interesting.
- 3. A: Look. Jack's car is in front of his house. He ______ be at home.

B: Let's stop and visit him.

- 4. A: Hello. May I speak to Elena?
 - B: She isn't here right now, but she _____ be home around nine or so.
- 5. A: Which team do you think is going to win the game tomorrow?
 - B: Well, we have better players, so we ______ win, but anything can happen.

6. A	A :	It's	very	important	for	you	to	be	there	on	time.
------	------------	------	------	-----------	-----	-----	----	----	-------	----	-------

- B: I ______ be there at seven o'clock. I promise!
- 7. A: Susie is yawning and rubbing her eyes.
 - B: She ______ be sleepy. Let's put her to bed early tonight.
- 8. A: Martha has been working all day. She left for work early this morning.
 - B: She ______ be really tired tonight.
- 9. A: When's dinner?
 - B: We're almost ready to eat. The rice _____ be done in five minutes.
- 10. A: Ed has been acting strangely lately.
 - B: He ______ be in love!

EXERCISE 34 Grammar and speaking. (Charts $10-4 \rightarrow 10-7$)

Work with a partner. Take turns completing the sentences based on the facts of each situation.

SITUATION 1: Someone's knocking at the door. I wonder who it is.

FACTS: Ross is out of town.

Fred called half an hour ago and said he would stop by this afternoon. Alice is a neighbor who sometimes drops by in the middle of the day.

- 1. It must be <u>Fred</u>.
- 2. It couldn't be <u>Ross</u>.
- 3. I suppose it might be <u>Alice</u>.

SITUATION 2: Someone ran into the tree in front of our house. I wonder who did it. FACTS: Stacy has a car, and she was out driving last night.

Beth doesn't have a car and doesn't know how to drive.

Ron has a car, but I'm pretty sure he was at home last night.

Barb was out driving last night, and today her car has a big dent in the front.

- 4. It couldn't have been _____.
- 5. It must not have been _____.
- 6. It could have been _____.
- 7. It must have been _____.

SITUATION 3: There is a hole in the bread. It looks like something ate some of the bread. The bread was in a closed drawer until I opened it.

FACTS: A mouse likes to eat bread and often gets into drawers. In fact, we found one last week. A cat can't open a drawer. And most cats don't like bread.

A rat can sometimes get into a drawer, but I've never seen one in our house.

- 8. It could have been _____.
- 9. It couldn't have been _____
- 10. It must have been _____.



SITUATION 4: My friends Mark and Carol were in the living room with my neighbor. I heard someone playing a very difficult piece on the piano.

FACTS: Mark has no musical ability at all and doesn't play any instrument. Carol is an excellent piano player. I don't think my neighbor plays the piano, but I'm not sure.

- 11. It couldn't have been _____.
- 12. I suppose it could have been _____.
- 13. It must have been _____.

SITUATION 5: The meeting starts in 15 minutes. I wonder who is coming. FACTS: I just talked to **Bob** on the phone. He's on his way.

Stephanie rarely misses a meeting.

Andre comes to the meetings sometimes, and sometimes he doesn't. Janet is out of town.

- 14. _____ won't be at the meeting.
- 15. ______ should be at the meeting.
- 16. ______ will be here.
- 17. _____ might come.

EXERCISE 35 ► Warm-up. (Chart 10-8)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences where the activity is or may be in progress.

- 1. ____ Grandpa takes a nap every afternoon.
- 2. ____ Grandpa may take a nap this afternoon.
- 3. ____ Shhh. Grandpa is taking a nap.
- 4. ____ Shhh. Grandpa may be taking a nap.

10	-8 Progressive Forms of Modals	
(a) (b)	Knock on the door lightly. Tom <i>may be sleeping</i> . (<i>right now</i>) All of the lights in Ann's room are turned off. She <i>must be</i> <i>sleeping</i> . (<i>right now</i>)	Progressive form, present time: modal + be + -ing Meaning: in progress right now
(c)	Sue wasn't home last night when we went to see her. She might have been studying at the library.	Progressive form, past time: modal + have been + -ing
(d)	Joe wasn't home last night. He has a lot of exams coming up soon, and he is also working on a term paper. He <i>must</i> <i>have been studying</i> at the library.	Meaning: in progress at a time in the past

EXERCISE 36 Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-8)

Complete the sentences. Use the appropriate progressive forms of *must*, *should*, or *may/might/could* and the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. A: Look. Those people who are coming in the door are carrying wet umbrellas.
 - B: It (rain) _____ must be raining _____.

2. A: Why is Margaret in her room?

B: I don't know. She (do) <u>may / might / could be doing</u> her homework.

		Strate Sciences
3.	A:	Do you smell smoke?
	B:	I sure do. Something (burn) in the kitchen.
4.	A:	Julio hasn't answered his text messages all day. What do you suppose he's doing?
	B:	I don't know. He (<i>work</i>)
5.	A:	What's all that noise upstairs? It sounds like a herd of elephants.
	B:	The kids (play) some kind of game.
	A:	That's what it sounds like to me too. I'll go see.
6.	I need to call Howard. Do you know which hotel he's staying at in Boston?	
	B:	Well, he (stay) at the Hilton, but I'm not sure. He
		(stay) at the Holiday Inn.
7.	A:	What are you doing?
	B:	I'm writing an email to a friend, but I (study) I have a test tomorrow.
8.	A:	Did you know that Majid just quit school and is hitchhiking to Alaska?
	B:	What? You (joke)
9.	A:	Did Joe mean what he said about Majid yesterday?
	B:	I don't know. He (joke) when he said that, but who knows?
10.	A:	Did Joe really mean what he said yesterday?
	р.	No. I don't think to I think he (ishe)

B: No, I don't think so. I think he (joke) _____

EXERCISE 37 → Let's talk. (Chart 10-8)

Work in small groups to answer the questions about the drivers in the pictures.





- 1. In your opinion, which drivers in the pictures are distracted?
- 2. What should/shouldn't these drivers be doing? Make a list of sentences.
- 3. Is distracted driving a problem in your country? You may want to support your answer with statistics from the Internet or elsewhere.
- 4. Have you ever been in the car with a distracted driver? If so, what were you thinking?
- 5. Does age matter? For example, are adults better able to handle distractions than teens?

www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 38 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-8)

Complete each sentence with the appropriate form of the words in parentheses. Add	10t if	
necessary.		

- 1. Alex needs to study for a test. He (should + watch) _____shouldn't be watching__TV right now.
- 2. There's Mr. Chang. He's standing at the bus stop. He (must + wait) _____ _____ for the two o'clock bus. 3. Kathy lost her way while driving to River City. She (should + leave) _____ _____ home without directions. 4. My leather jacket isn't in my closet. I think my roommate (*might + borrow*) _____ _____ it. He often borrows my clothes without asking me. 5. When I walked into the room, the TV was on, but the room was empty. Dad (must + watch) _____TV a short while before I came into the room. He (must + forget) _______ to turn it off before he left the room. 6. A: Why wasn't Mai at the meeting last night? B: She (may + attend) ______ the lecture at Shaw Hall. I know she really wanted to hear the speaker. 7. A: Where's that cold air coming from? B: Someone (*must* + *leave*) ______ the door open. 8. A: Where's Jessica? I haven't seen her for weeks. B: I'm not sure. She (*might + travel*) ______ in Europe. I think I heard her mention something about spending a few weeks in Europe this spring. 9. A: When I arrived, Tarek looked surprised. B: He (must + expect) _____ _____ you. 10. A: Why didn't Roberto answer the teacher when she asked him a question? B: He was too busy staring out the window. He (must + daydream) _____ _____. He (should + pay) ______ attention. He (should + stare) ______ out the window during class.

EXERCISE 39 Let's talk. (Charts $10-2 \rightarrow 10-8$)

A man and woman are sitting at a table having a conversation. In pairs or small groups, use modals to make guesses about the two people and what's happening. What possibilities can you think of? Answer the questions and add your own to the discussion.

MAN: I don't think you should do this alone.

WOMAN: But you don't understand. I have to.

MAN: Let me go with you (taking out his wallet). Just give me a minute to pay the bill.

WOMAN: No, I'll be fine.

MAN: You must let me help.

WOMAN: There's nothing you can do (standing). This is something I need to do for myself.

MAN: OK. If that's the way you want it.

WOMAN: (leaving) I'll call you.

- 1. Where are the man and woman?
- 2. Who are they? What is their relationship?
- 3. Where's the woman going?
- 4. Why does she want to go alone?
- 5. Why does the man want to go with her?

EXERCISE 40 Looking at grammar. (Charts $10-2 \rightarrow 10-8$)

Choose the best completion for each sentence.

1. A: Is Jeff a good student?

- B: He _____. I don't know him well, but I heard he got a scholarship for next year. (a.) must be b. could be c. is
- 2. A: I heard that Eva is visiting. Do you know where she's staying?
 - B: She _____ at Barbara's house. Or maybe she's at her sister's.a. must be staying b. could be staying c. is staying
- 3. A: I stayed up all night finishing this report for the boss.
 - B: You _____ really tired. a. must feel b. might feel c. feel
- 4. A: Where's the leftover chicken from dinner last night?
 - B: I just saw it when I got some ice cubes. It _____ in the freezer. a. must be b. might be c. is
- 5. A: It's supposed to rain tomorrow.
 - B: I know, but the forecast _____ wrong. Weather forecasts are far from 100% accurate.
 a. must be b. could be c. is
- 6. A: I heard that Junko has received a scholarship and will be able to attend the university in the fall.
 - B: That's great news. She _____ very happy.a. must be feelingb. may be feelingc. is feeling

		ll me which bus I should take to g there. But you'd better ask b. might go	WWW.IEITSTEP.COM
8. A:	Which bus should I take t	o get to the main post office?	
B:	Bus number 39. It a. must go	right to the post office. b. could go	c. goes
9. A:	Do you suppose Mrs. Chi	u is sick?	
B:	She I can't think o	f any other reason she isn't at this	s meeting.
	a. must be	b. may be	c. is
10. A:	Is that Adam's brother sta	nding with him in the cafeteria li	ne?
B:	It, I suppose. He d	oes look a little like Adam.	
	a. must be	b. could be	c. is
11. A:	Let's be really quiet when to wake her up.	we go into the baby's room. The	e baby, and we don't want
B:	OK.		
	a. might sleep	b. might be sleeping	c. might have been sleeping
12. A:	I wonder why the TV is or	n in the family room. No one's in	there.
B:	Grandma to turn it a. must forget	off. She was in the family room of b. must have forgotten	earlier. c. must be forgetting
EVEDC			

EXERCISE 41 Warm-up. (Chart 10-9)

Check (\checkmark) the correct sentences.

1 I will can stay late at the office today.	4 I may be able to stay late today.
2 I will be able stay late today.	5 I will have to stay late today.
3 I may have to stay late today.	6 I'm going to have to stay late today.

10-9 Combining Modals with Phrasal Modals				
(a) INCORRECT: Janet will can help you tomorrow.	A modal cannot be immediately followed by another modal. In (a): The modal <i>will</i> cannot be followed by <i>can</i> , which is another modal.			
(b) Janet <i>will be able to</i> help you tomorrow.(c) You <i>will have to</i> pick her up at her home.	A modal can, however, be followed by the phrasal modals be able to and have to . In (b): The modal will is correctly followed by the phrasal modal be able to .			
(d) Tom <i>isn't going to be able to</i> help you tomorrow.	It is also sometimes possible for one phrasal modal to follow another phrasal modal. In (d): be going to is followed by be able to . This form is more common in negatives and questions than in the affirmative.			

EXERCISE 42 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-9)

Complete the sentences with the verb phrases in the box. In some cases, more than one completion may be possible. Discuss the differences in meaning.

	have to be able to	
	should not have to	
1	not be going to be able to	

must not have been able to would rather not have to

- 1. My schedule is completely full for the next few weeks. I'm <u>not going to be able to</u> meet with you until the end of the month.
- You need to see a doctor you feel comfortable talking to. It's important that she knows how you feel. You _______ tell her exactly how you're feeling.
- Jill just called from work. She sounded upset, but she won't tell me what's wrong. She was planning to ask her supervisor for a raise today. I bet that's the problem. She ______ get the raise.
- 4. Let's get to the movie a little late. I don't mind if we miss the previews. It's freezing outside, and I ______ stand in a long line outdoors until they let us in.
- 5. Tommy and Jimmy, this room is a mess! I am not going to tell you again to clean it up. Really, I _______ tell you this more than once!

EXERCISE 43 Speaking or writing. (Chart 10-9)

Create a conversation or write a story about the man in the picture using most of the given verb phrases. If you make a conversation, work with a partner, and perform it for the class.

- 1. might not be able to
- 2. is going to have to
- 3. has to be able to
- 4. shouldn't have to
- 5. must not have been able to
- 6. is not going to be able to
- 7. may have had to

EXERCISE 44 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 10-10)

Answer the questions with would rather.

- 1. You are at school right now. Where would you rather be?
- 2. What would you rather do than go to class?
- 3. What did you do last night? What would you rather have done?
- 4. What are you doing right now? What would you rather be doing?



10-10 Expressing Preference: Would Rather

(a) (b)	I would rather go to a movie tonight than study grammar. I'd rather study history than (study) biology.	 Would rather expresses preference. In (a): Notice that the simple form of a verb follows both would rather and than. In (b): If the verb is the same, it usually is not repeated after than.
(c)	 How much do you weigh? I'd rather not tell you. 	Contraction: <i>I would = I'd</i> Negative form: <i>would rather + not</i>
(d)	The movie was OK, but I would rather have gone to the concert last night.	The past form: <i>would rather have + past participle</i> Usual pronunciation: "I'd rather-əv"
(e)	l' <i>d rather be lying</i> on a beach in India than (be) sitting in class right now.	Progressive form: would rather + be + ing

EXERCISE 45 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-10)

Complete the sentences with would rather and your own words.

- 1. A: Do you want to go to the concert tonight? B: Not really. I _____ 2. A: Did you go to the concert last night? B: Yes, but I _____ 3. A: What are you doing right now? B: I'm studying grammar, but I _____ 4. A: How was the movie last night? B: So-so, I _____ 5. A: You look really tired. B: I am. I sull have jet lag from my trip. Instead of working, I _____ _____ right now. 6. A: I ______ than _____ than _____ B: Not me. I ______ than ______ EXERCISE 46 > Let's talk: interview. (Chart 10-10) Interview your classmates. Begin each question with Would you rather. Would you rather ...
 - 1. go to Paris, Cairo, or Buenos Aires? Why?
 - 2. see a movie, a play, or an opera? Why?
 - 3. use a bike, a motorcycle, or a car for transportation? Why?
 - 4. prepare your own meals, have someone at home prepare them, or eat out? Why?
 - 5. be playing soccer, shopping for clothes, or taking care of a pet right now? Why?
 - 6. have been born in an earlier century? Why?
 - 7. be swimming at the beach right now or doing this interview? Why?

			IFIT
10-11 Su	mmary Chart of Moda	ls and Similar Express	sions
Auxiliary	Uses	Present/Future	Past
may	(1) polite request(only with "I" or "we")	May I borrow your pen?	
	(2) formal permission	You may leave the room.	
	(3) 50% or less certainty	 Where's John? He may be at the library. 	- Where was John? He may have been at the library.
might	(1) 50% or less certainty	Where's John? He might be at the library.	— Where was John? He <i>might have been</i> at the library.
	(2) polite request (rare)	Might borrow your pen?	
should	(1) advisability	I should study tonight.	I should have studied last night, but I didn't.
	(2) expectation	She should do well on the test tomorrow.	She should have done well on the test.
ought to	(1) advisability	I ought to study tonight.	I <i>ought to have studied</i> last night, but I didn't.
	(2) expectation	She <i>ought to do</i> well on the test tomorrow.	She <i>ought to have done</i> well on the test.
had better	(1) advisability with threat of bad result	You <i>had better be</i> on time, or we will leave without you.	(past form uncommon)
be supposed to	(1) expectation/obligation	Class is supposed to start at 10:00.	
	(2) unfulfilled expectation/ obligation		Class was supposed to start at 10:00.
must	(1) strong necessity	You must sign the forms in ink.	(You had to sign the forms in ink.)
	(2) prohibition (negative)	You must not open that door.	
	(3) 95% certainty	Mary isn't in class. She must be sick.	Mary <i>must have been</i> sick yesterday.
have to	(1) necessity	I have to go to class today.	I had to go to class yesterday.
	(2) lack of necessity (negative)	I don't have to go to class today.	I <i>didn't have to go</i> to class yesterday.
have got to	(1) necessity	I have got to go to class today.	(I had to go to class yesterday.)
will	(1) 100% certainty	He will be here at 6:00.	
	(2) willingness	- The phone's ringing. I'll get it.	
	(3) polite request	Will you please help me?	
be going to	(1) 100% certainty (prediction)	He is going to be here at 6:00.	
	(2) definite plan (intention)	I'm going to paint my bedroom.	
	(3) unfulfilled intention		I was going to paint my room, but I didn't have time.

			IFI
Auxiliary	Uses	Present/Future	Past
can	(1) ability	I can run fast.	I <i>could run</i> fast when I was a child, but now I can't.
	(2) informal permission	You can use my car tomorrow.	
	(3) informal polite request	Can I borrow your pen?	
	(4) possibility	People <i>can learn</i> from their mistakes.	
	(5) impossibility (negative only)	That can't be true!	That can't have been true!
could	(1) past ability (not for a single past event)		I <i>could run</i> fast when I was a child.
	(2) polite request	Could I borrow your pen? Could you help me?	
	(3) suggestion (affirmative only)	- I need help in math.	You <i>could have talked</i> to your teacher.
		You could talk to your teacher.	
	(4) 50% or less certainty	 Where's John? He could be at home. 	He could have been at home.
	(5) impossibility (negative only)	That couldn't be true!	That couldn't have been true!
be able to	(1) ability	I am able to help you. I will be able to help you.	I was able to help him.
would	(1) polite request	Would you please help me? Would you mind if I left early?	
	(2) preference	I would rather go to the park than stay home.	I would rather have gone to the park.
	(3) repeated action in the past (not past situations or states)		When I was a child, I <i>would</i> visit my grandparents every weekend.
	(4) polite for "want" (with "like")	I would like an apple, please.	
	(5) unfulfilled wish		I would have liked a cookie, but there were none in the house.
used to	(1) repeated action in the past		I used to visit my grandparents every weekend.
	(2) past situation or state		I used to live in Spain. Now I live in Korea.
shall	(1) polite question to make a suggestion	Shall I open the window?	
	(2) future with / or we as subject	I <i>shall arrive</i> at nine. ("will" = more common)	

NOTE: The use of modals in reported speech is discussed in Chart 12-8, p. 264. The use of modals in conditional sentences is discussed in Chart 20-3, p. 430.

EXERCISE 47 > Let's talk. (Chart 10-11)

Discuss the differences in meaning, if any, in each group of sentences. Describe situations in which these sentences might be used. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. a. May I use your phone?
 - b. Could I use your phone?
 - c. Can I use your phone?
- 2. a. You should take an English course.
 - b. You ought to take an English course.
 - c. You're supposed to take an English course.
 - d. You must take an English course.
- 3. a. You should see a doctor about that cut on your arm.
 - b. You had better see a doctor about that cut on your arm.
 - c. You have to see a doctor about that cut on your arm.
- 4. a. You must not use that door.b. You don't have to use that door.
- 5. a. I will be at your house by six o'clock.b. I should be at your house by six o'clock.
- 6. There is a knock at the door. Who do you suppose it is?
 - a. It might be Wendy.
 - b. It may be Wendy.
 - c. It could be Wendy.
 - d. It must be Wendy.
- 7. There's a knock at the door. I think it's Ibrahim.
 - a. It may not be Ibrahim.
 - b. It couldn't be Ibrahim.
 - c. It can't be Ibrahim.
- 8. Where's Jeff?
 - a. He might have gone home.
 - b. He must have gone home.
 - c. He had to go home.
- 9. a. Each student should have health insurance.b. Each student must have health insurance.
- 10. a. If you're having a problem, you could talk to Mrs. Ang.
 - b. If you're having a problem, you should talk to Mrs. Ang.
 - c. If you're having a problem, you should have told Mrs. Ang.
 - d. If you're having a problem, you could have told Mrs. Ang.
- a. The family in the picture must be at a restaurant.
 b. The family in the picture are at a restaurant.



EXERCISE 48 > Looking at grammar. (Chapters 9 and 10 Review)

Use a modal or phrasal modal with each verb in parentheses.

- WWW.UTTIFICON WWW.UTTIFICON WWW.UTTIFICON P
- 1. It looks like rain. We (shut) _____ should / had better / ought to shut _____ the windows.
- 2. Anya, (you, hand) _____ me that dish? Thanks.
- 3. Spring break starts on the 13th. We (go, not) ______ to classes again until the 22nd.
- 4. The baby is only a year old, but she (say, already) ______ a few words.
- 6. There was a long line in front of the theater. We (*wait*) ______ almost an hour to buy our tickets.
- 7. A: I'd like to go to a warm, sunny place next winter. Any suggestions?
 - B: You (go) ______ to Hawaii or Mexico. Or how about Indonesia?
- 8. A: Mrs. Wilson got a traffic ticket. She didn't stop at a stop sign.

B: That's surprising. She's a very cautious and safe driver. She (see, not) _____

_____ the sign.

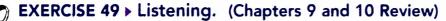
9. A: This is Steve's laptop, isn't it?

- B: It (be, not) ______ his. He doesn't have a laptop, at least not that I know of. It (belong) ______ to Jana or to Mindy. They sometimes bring their laptops to class.
- 10. In my country, a girl and boy (go, not) ______ out on a date unless they have a chaperone with them.
- 11. Jimmy was serious when he said he wanted to be a cowboy when he grew up. We (laugh, not)

_____ at him. We hurt his feelings.

- 12. A: Look at all the beautiful flowers! Are those annuals or perennials?
 - B: I'm not sure. They (be) ______ perennials.Let's ask.





Listen to each situation and choose the statement (a. or b.) you would most likely say. In some cases, both answers may be possible.

Example: You will hear: It's almost 5:00. Peter's mom will be home soon. She told him to clean his room today, but it's suil a mess. She's going to be mad. You will choose: a. He might clean it up right away.

(b) He'd better clean it up right away.

- 1. a. He should have come.
 - b. He must have come.
- 2. a. I am supposed to take a break from studying.b. I would rather lie in the sun and listen to music.
- 3. a. He may have gotten caught in traffic.b. He ought to have called by now.
- 4. a. He's not going to be able to go to work for a few days.b. He might not have to go to work today.
- 5. a. She could have been daydreaming.b. She must have been daydreaming.

EXERCISE 50 > Let's talk. (Chapters 9 and 10 Review)

In small groups, debate one or more of the given statements. Do you agree with these statements? Why or why not? At the end of the discussion, choose one member of your group to summarize the main ideas and present them to the class.

- 1. Violence on television influences people to act violently.
- 2. Government agencies should censor the Internet.
- 3. People of different religions should not marry.
- 4. People shouldn't marry until they are at least 25 years old.
- 5. All people of the world should speak more than one language.

EXERCISE 51 • Check your knowledge. (Chapter 10 Review)

Correct the errors.

to

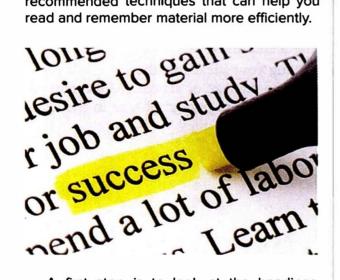
- 1. I used know a lot of Spanish, but I've forgotten a lot.
- 2. If you can't find your coat, you should to go to the lost-and-found office.
- 3. When I was a child, I can climb to the roof of my house and saw all the other houses and streets.
- 4. It may be snow tomorrow. I hope so!
- 5. We need to reschedule. I won't can see you at the time we scheduled for tomorrow.
- 6. I could break my leg in a soccer game three months ago.
- 7. Many students would rather to study on their own than going to classes.
- 8. Why did Joe must have surgery last week? He looked so healthy.
- 9. When you visit a big city in my country, you must to be paying attention to your wallet when you are in a crowded place because a thief maybe try to steal it.

- 10. We supposed to review for the test today, but we ran out of time.
- 11. Our team could win the soccer championship last week.

EXERCISE 52 Reading and writing. (Chapter 10 Review) **Part I.** Read the passage from a student handbook.

What is the best way to read a textbook?

Do you use a highlighter pen when you read? For many students, especially at the college level, this has long been a common practice. However, recent research questions the value of highlighting passages in textbooks. In fact, you may want to discard the highlighter pen if you are only marking material instead of actively working with it. Highlighting is a passive skill. Learning is more effective when you can interact with the text. Here are some recommended techniques that can help you read and remember material more efficiently.



A first step is to look at the headings, subheadings, lists, examples, charts, and graphs in the chapter. These can serve as a roadmap for what is important in the reading. For example, if a section has the heading *Solt and High Blood Pressure*, an important question to ask is "What is the connection between *salt and high blood pressure*?" You should write down such questions and try to find the answers in the reading.

Usually you do not have to read every word carefully. Textbooks are written for large

Do you know these words?

practice - passive skill - effective - efficiently - headings/ subheadings

populations of students; instructors often have a more specific focus, and they usually don't have the time to cover everything in one course. Instructors specify learning objectives, and you can find them in your syllabus and assignments. You can also pick up on themes from the questions that instructors ask. it's important to connect all this with the information you are reading.

A very important tool for reading more deeply is annotation, or adding notes. One way to annotate is to write notes in the margin. These notes explain or summarize key points. Annotations can be brief. If you need more space, you can write in a separate notebook rather than in the margins. After you annotate, put your notes into a short summary. You only need to mention key ideas.

You may have purchased a used textbook that is already annotated. It is still best if you put the textbook material into your own words. That way your notes will be understandable. Additionally, reading another person's notes is a passive activity, like reading a textbook passage all over again.

Once you identify key concepts, you can write practice test questions based on the textbook material. Some students use online flashcard programs for their questions. Whatever the method, it is important that you quiz yourself repeatedly over many days. Spacing out your practice has proven to be more effective than studying information all at one time. Some researchers recommend that students teach the material to others as a way to learn it really well. Study groups may provide good opportunities for doing this.

Learning needs to be an active process. By taking some or all of these steps, you will interact with the material more and remember it better. **Part II.** Reread the passage and annotate each paragraph. Then in small groups, identify the key points. Together, write at least five test questions that you can use for review.

EXERCISE 53 ▶ Reading and writing. (Chapter 10)

Part I. Read the following summary. Does the summary match your ideas of the key points in the previous reading?

Summary: What is the best way to read a textbook?

For students to understand textbook reading material well, they must be active learners. Highlighting is a passive activity. Students instead need to put the ideas into their own words. They should write notes, either in the margin or in a notebook, and then summarize key information. They can use the chapter organization as a guide, for example, and focus on headings, subheadings, and lists. Students should also find out the information the instructor considers important and pay attention to this when they read. After they identify the key information, they ought to make selfstudy quizzes, so they can test themselves many times in the days before an exam.

Part II. Find a textbook passage or online article that provides advice on how to do something. Your instructor will tell you how long it should be. Annotate the key points. Then write a summary, using modal verbs appropriately.

WRITING TIP

A summary is much shorter than the original passage or article. When you write a summary, you highlight the essential points without repeating ideas, and without bringing in your own conclusions or opinions.

Here is one effective, two-step approach to developing a summary:

- 1. Write a topic sentence that provides an overview, tying your ideas together.
- 2. Write one sentence summarizing each paragraph of the passage or article. Make sure your individual summarizing sentences flow together in meaningful paragraphs, as in the example above.

Part III. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box correct forms for present modals
- 2. \Box correct forms for past modals
- 3. \Box correct meaning of modal verbs
- 4. \Box correct forms for phrasal modals
- 5. □ correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Go to the Essential Online Resources for Self-Study: Gerunds and Infinitives 10

The Passive



PRETEST: What do I already know?

CHAPT

FR

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct verb form and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

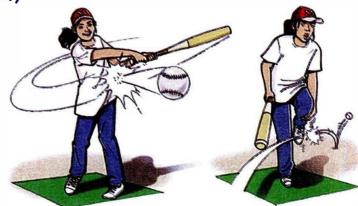
- 1. _____ A car accident was occurred in front of my office yesterday. (11-1)
- 2. ____ The tax bill checked by the accountant last week. (11-1)
- 3. ____ A new apartment building is being built next to my house. (11-2)
- 4. ____ Has the text message been sent already? (11-2)
- 5. ____ Coffee is best grown in wetter climates. (11-3)
- 6. ____ The exams will be reading by two different teachers. (11-4)
- 7. ____Your homework should have be done before you went to your friend's. (11-4)
- 8. ____ Sorry, the project isn't quite finish yet. (11-5)
- 9. ____ Did you know that Alexa is marry to Khalifa? (11-5)
- 10. ____ What would you like to be remembered for? (11-6)
- 11. ____ Tomas is two hours late. I'm get nervous. (11-7)
- 12. ____ The speaker had a monotone voice. We were really boring. (11-8)

Incorrect sentences: 1, 2, 6, 7, 8, 9, 11, 12

EXERCISE 1 > Warm-up. (Chart 11-1)

Match the sentences to the pictures.

- 1. ____ The girl hit the ball.
- 2. ____ The ball was hit by the girl.
- 3. ____ The girl was hit by the ball.
- 4. ____ The ball hit the girl.
- 5. ____ The girl was hitting the ball.



Picture A

Picture B

Active: (a) Mary helped the boy.					In the passive, <i>the object</i> of an active verb becomes <i>the subject</i> of the passive verb: <i>the boy</i> in (a) becomes the subject of the passive verb in (b).	
Passive: (b) The boy was helped by Mary.					Notice that the subject of an active verb follows by in a passive sentence. The noun that follows by is called the "agent." In (b): Mary is the agent.	
						Sentences (a) and (b) have the same meaning.
Passive:	(c)	He He He	be + is was will be	past participle helped helped helped	by her. by her. by her.	Form of the passive: be + past participle
Active:	(d)	An acci	dent <i>hap</i>	pened.		Only transitive verbs (verbs that can be followed by an object) are used in the passive. Here are some common
Passive:	(e)	(none)				object) are used in the passive. Here are some common intransitive verbs; they are never passive: <i>appear, arrive,</i> <i>belong, come, die, fall, happen, look like, occur, resemble,</i> <i>seem, sleep.</i> (See also Appendix Chart A-1.)

EXERCISE 2 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-1)

Identify the **be** verb in each sentence, and identify the past participle if there is one. Then indicate whether or not the sentence is passive.



The	Movies	BE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PASSIVE
1.	What movie is playing this week?	is	Ø	no
2.	A world premiere movie will be shown tonight.	will be	shown	<u>yes</u>
3.	A popular movie was shown last week.			
4.	Tickets are sold at the theater and online.			
5.	Tickets for the upcoming movie will be sold online soon.			
6.	Tickets will be available soon.			
7.	Discounts are given for advance purchases.	<u></u>		
8.	We are giving tickets to our friends.			
9.	The movie will be a blockbuster.			
10.	The last ticket was just sold.			

216 CHAPTER 11

EXERCISE 3 Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-1)

Decide if the sentences are active (A) or passive (P).

- 1. a. \underline{A} Kate made the salad.
 - b. <u>*P*</u> The rice was made by Jamal.
 - c. _____ Siri was making the dessert.
 - d. _____ Andy has made the tea.
- 2. a. _____ Anita and Alex came to our apartment for dinner last night.
 - b. _____ On their way over, Anita was stopped by the police for speeding.
 - c. _____ She was upset, but Alex calmed her down.
- 3. a. ____ Dinosaurs existed millions of years ago.
 - b. _____ The remains of about 14 dinosaurs are discovered every year.
 - c. _____ After a discovery, the bones will be studied by paleontologists for years.

EXERCISE 4 Warm-up. (Chart 11-2)

Complete the passive sentences with the correct verb form of the words in the box.

are	were	have been	will be	
ACTIV	E		PASSIVE	
1. Two	instructors wi	ll score the tests.	→ The tests	scored by two instructors.
2. Two	instructors sco	ored the tests.	→ The tests	scored by two instructors.
3. Two	instructors sco	ore the tests.	→ The tests	scored by two instructors.
4. Two	instructors ha	ve scored the tests.	→ The tests	scored by two instructors.

11-2 Tense Forms of the Passive

	Active	Passive	
(a) simple present	Mary <i>helps</i> the boy.	The boy is helped	by Mary.
(b) present progressive	Mary <i>is helping</i> the boy.	The boy is being helped	by Mary.
(c) present perfect*	Mary has helped the boy.	The boy has been helped	by Mary.
(d) simple past	Mary <i>helped</i> the boy.	The boy was helped	by Mary.
(e) past progressive	Mary was helping the boy.	The boy was being helped	by Mary.
(f) past perfect*	Mary had helped the boy.	The boy had been helped	by Mary.
(g) simple future	Mary will help the boy.	The boy will be helped	by Mary.
(h) be going to	Mary is going to help the boy.	The boy is going to be helped	by Mary.
(i) future perfect*	Mary will have helped the boy.	The boy will have been helped	by Mary.
(j) questions	Is Mary helping the boy?	Is the boy being helped	by Mary?
	Did Mary help the boy?	Was the boy helped	by Mary?
	Has Mary helped the boy?	Has the boy been helped	by Mary?
	Will Mary help the boy?	Will the boy be helped	by Mary?

*The progressive forms of the present perfect, past perfect, and future perfect are rarely used in the passive.





www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 5 Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-2)

Complete the sentences. Change the verbs in *italics* from active to passive.

The door __________ 1. Tom opens the door. by Tom. 2. Tom is opening the door. The door _____ by Tom. 3. Tom has opened the door. The door ____ by Tom. 4. Tom opened the door. The door ______ by Tom. 5. Tom was opening the door. The door _____ by Tom. The door ______ by Tom. 6. Tom had opened the door. 7. Tom will open the door. The door _____ by Tom. 8. Tom is going to open the door. The door ______ by Tom. 9. Tom will have opened the door. The door ______ by Tom. the door _____ by Tom? 10. Did Tom open the door? _____ the door ______ by Tom? 11. Will Tom open the door? _____ the door _____ by Tom? 12. Has Tom opened the door?

EXERCISE 6 ▶ Let's talk. (Chart 11-2)

Work in small groups or with a partner. Answer the questions with a passive verb.

- 1. Who designed the Eiffel Tower? The Eiffel tower ...
- 2. Who collects taxes in your country? Taxes ...
- 3. Who taught your last English class? My last English class ...
- 4. Who has helped you a lot in your life? I ...
- 5. Who sings your favorite music? My favorite music ...
- 6. Who is supervising this activity? This activity ...
- 7. Who will pay your next bill? My next bill ...
- 8. Who is going to decide your future? My future ...

EXERCISE 7 Looking at grammar. (Charts 11-1 and 11-2)

Work with a partner. Check (\checkmark) all the correct sentences in each group. Explain why the incorrect sentences are wrong.

- 1. a. \checkmark A surprising thing happened at the game yesterday.
 - b. _____ A surprising thing was happened at the game yesterday.
 - c. ____ Jackie scored the winning goal.
 - d. ____ The winning goal was scored by Jackie.
- 2. a. ____ I agree with Dr. Ikeda's theory.
 - b. _____ I am agree with Dr. Ikeda's theory.
 - c. ____ Dr. Ikeda developed that theory.
 - d. _____ That theory was developed by Dr. Ikeda.

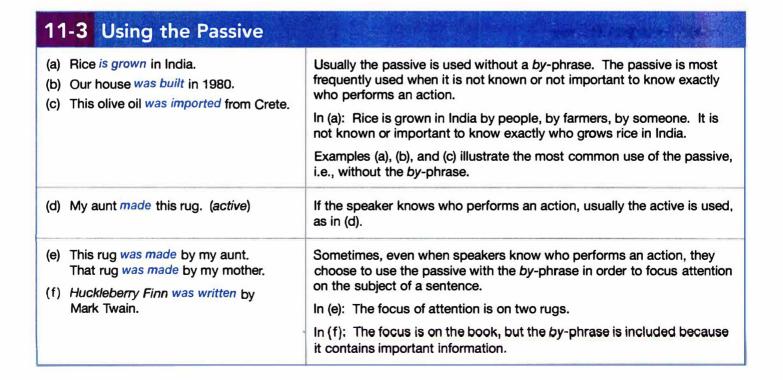




- 3. a. ____ Professor Quirk was given us a difficult math problem.
 - b. _____ Professor Quick gave us a difficult math problem.
 - c. ____ The answer to the problem appeared to me in a dream.
 - d. ____ The answer to the problem was appeared to me in a dream.
- 4. a. ____ The police are going to arrest the suspect.
 - b. ____ The police are going to be arrested the suspect.
 - c. ____ The suspect is going to be arrested by the police.
 - d. ____ The suspect is going to arrest by the police.
- 5. a. ____ A hurricane has destroyed much of the town.
 - b. ____ Much of the town has been destroyed.
 - c. ____ People seem to be in shock.
 - d. _____ People are seemed to be in shock.
- 6. a. _____What was happened?
 - b. _____What happened?
 - c. _____What was occurred?
 - d. ____What occurred?
- 7. a. ____Will our plan be succeed? c. ____Will people agree with it?
 - b. _____Will our plan succeed?

EXERCISE 8 > Warm-up. (Chart 11-3)

Tell the class where something that you're wearing or own was made (e.g., your shoes, shirt, cell phone, etc.). Do you know who made these items? Is it important to know?



d. ____Will people be agree with it?



EXERCISE 9 ► Looking at grammar. (Charts 11-1 → 11-3)

Discuss why passive was chosen for these sentences instead of active.

Tech Age

- 1. My smartphone was made in China.
 - → The speaker or writer probably uses the passive here because he or she doesn't know who made the smartphone. An active sentence (Someone made my smartphone in China) wouldn't add any important information.
- 2. The first video was taken by Carlos. The second video was taken by Natasha.
- 3. Over 500 websites are created every minute.
- 4. Millions of blog posts are being written right now.
- 5. A self-driving car is being developed by a computer company.
- 6. What new technology will be designed next?

EXERCISE 10 ▶ Reading and grammar. (Charts 11-1 → 11-3)

Read the passage. <u>Underline</u> the passive verbs. Discuss why the writer chose to use passive rather than active. Answer the questions in complete sentences.

Early Writing Materials

The chief writing material of ancient times was papyrus. It <u>was used</u> in Egypt, Greece, and other Mediterranean lands. Parchment, another writing material that was widely used in

ancient times, was made from the skins of animals, such as sheep and goats. After the hair had been removed, the skins were stretched and rubbed smooth to make a writing surface. Paper, the main writing material today, was invented by the Chinese.

Ink has been used for writing and drawing throughout history. No one knows when the first ink was developed. The ancient Egyptians and Chinese made ink from various natural substances such as berries, soot, and tree bark. Through the centuries, thousands of different formulas have been developed for ink. Most ink today is made from chemicals.

- 1. Before paper was invented, what materials were used for writing?
- 2. What was parchment made from?
- 3. What three things were done to animal skins to make writing material?
- 4. Who first used paper?

220 CHAPTER 11

- 5. When was ink first used?
- 6. In ancient times, what ingredients did the Egyptians and Chinese use for ink?
- 7. What substances are in ink today?



Do you know these words?

- papyrus
- ancient
- substances
- soot
- tree bark
- formulas



EXERCISE 11 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 11-1 \rightarrow 11-3)

Make complete sentences with the given words. Use the simple past. Some are active, and some are passive.

- 1. a. A package $\$ deliver $\$ to our apartment yesterday $\rightarrow A$ package was delivered to our apartment yesterday.
 - b. It \ send \ to the wrong address
 - c. We $\$ send $\$ it back
- 2. a. Maria \ teach \ her son to use the crosswalk for the first timeb. She \ teach \ by her parents when she was six
- 3. a. The pickpocket \ almost disappear \ into the crowd b. He \ catch \ by an alert police officer
- 4. a. Tony \ cut down\ a dead tree
 - b. The tree $\$ fall $\$ to the ground with a crash
 - c. Fortunately, no one \ hurt
- 5. a. Something very sad \ happen \ yesterday
 - b. A deer \ hit \ by a truck
 - c. It \ kill \ instantly
 - d. It \ die \ instantly
- 6. a. When I was in elementary school, we \ require \ to wear uniforms
 - b. Later, my high school \ require \ students to follow a dress code
 - c. I \ agree, not \ with the dress code
 - d. Now \ my children \ require \ to wear uniforms



EXERCISE 12 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 11-1 \rightarrow 11-3)

Choose the sentences that have the same meaning as the given sentence.

- 1. The assistant manager interviewed Mr. Evans for the sales job.
 - (a.) Mr. Evans was interviewed.
 - (b.) Someone interviewed Mr. Evans.
 - c. The assistant manager was interviewed.
- 2. There was a group of noisy kids at the movie theater. They were told to leave.
 - a. The kids told others to leave.
 - b. The kids were told something.
 - c. Someone told the kids to leave.
- 3. A famous architect has been asked to design the new library.
 - a. An architect has asked someone to design the library.
 - b. Someone would like the architect to design the new library.
 - c. A famous architect would like to design the new library.
- 4. I was ignored by the salesclerk while she spent five minutes talking on the phone.
 - a. The salesclerk ignored me.
 - b. I ignored the salesclerk.
 - c. Someone ignored me.

- 5. After the speech, the audience will ask the speaker follow-up questions.
 - a. The speaker will ask questions.
 - b. The audience will be asked questions.
 - c. The speaker will be asked questions.
- 6. The staff is planning a retirement party for Dr. Wilson.
 - a. A party is being planned by Dr. Wilson.
 - b. A party is being planned by the staff.
 - c. The staff is making plans.

EXERCISE 13 ► Looking at grammar. (Charts 11-1 → 11-3)

Change each news headline into a complete sentence. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.



1.	5 PEOPLE KILLED BY TORNADOES	
	Five people	yesterday.
2.	DECISION ON TAX INCREASE TO BE ANNOUNCED SOON	
	A decision on a tax increase	soon.
3.	MORE THAN 2 BILLION CUPS OF COFFEE CONSUMED WORLDWIDE	
	More than two billion cups of coffee	worldwide each day.
4.	200,000 cars recalled for brake defects since last year	
	Two hundred thousand cars	for brake defects since last year.
5.	NEW HIGH-SPEED COMPUTER CHIPS DELAYED	
	New high-speed computer chips	until next year.

EXERCISE 14 ► Looking at grammar. (Charts 11-1 → 11-3)

Work with a partner. Change the sentences to passive if possible, orally or in writing. Use the *by*-phrase only if necessary.

A Contest

- 1. Someone asked me to be a judge for a design contest at a nearby university.
- 2. I had taught at the school years before.
- 3. The school offers many different classes in graphic design.
- 4. It is a very popular major.
- 5. A visiting professor is teaching the introductory class.

222 CHAPTER 11



- 6. Someone has asked students to submit their best work from the course.
- 7. Judges will judge applicants on originality and their use of color.
- 8. Someone is going to announce the winner at the end of the term.
- 9. Several top students have already submitted designs.
- 10. Someone will award a scholarship to the winner.

EXERCISE 15 \blacktriangleright Game. (Charts 11-1 \rightarrow 11-3)

Work in teams. Make true sentences by matching the information on the left with the information on the right. Change the verb forms as necessary. Some sentences are passive, and some are active. Three items are questions. Punctuate carefully. The team with the most correct (factually and grammatically) wins.

Example: 1. The electric light bulb was **invented** by Thomas Edison.

- 1. The electric light bulb was \underline{h}
- 2. An island is _____
- 3. Some forest fires are _____
- 4. Is ID theft ____
- 5. The -ing form of sit is _____
- 6. Weather satellites orbit _____
- 7. Coins were first _____
- 8. Will taxes _____
- 9. Students have _____
- 10. People with numerophobia are _____
- 11. Are wedding rings _____

- a. (spell) with a double "t."
- b. (grow) because of poor smartphone security.
- c. the earth and (send) back images.
- d. (wear) by more women than men.
- e. (use) around 1000 B.C.
- f. (cause) by lightning.
- g. (frighten) by math.
- ✓ h. (invent) by Thomas Edison.
 - i. always (collect) by governments.
 - j. (surround) by water.
 - k. long (confuse) by English grammar.

EXERCISE 16 \blacktriangleright Listening. (Charts 11-1 \rightarrow 11-3)

Listen to the report about mirrors with your book closed. The book and listen again. Complete the sentences with the verbe	
Early Mirrors	- lava
Mirrors are not a modern invention; they1	grind/ground down
since the stone age. The first mirrors2	from
rocks. A special type of stone3	: obsidian. This is a volcanic glass
that in lava. To make the mirror, t down on one side with another stone until the surface w	5
surface was highly reflective, and people were able to see	me extremely shiny. At that point, the e themselves.
obsidian stone polist	ned obsidian stone

www.ieltstep.com



EXERCISE 17 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 11-1 \rightarrow 11-3)

Complete the sentences with the active or passive form of the verbs in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense.

Did you know ... ?

- 1. The first antibiotic, penicillin, (discover) <u>was discovered</u> by Alexandar Fleming in 1928.
- 2. The Amazon valley is extremely important to the ecology of the earth. Forty percent of the world's oxygen (*produce*) ______ there.
- Frostbite occurs when a person's skin (*expose*) _______ to extreme cold.
 It most frequently (*affect*) ______ the skin of the cheeks, chin, ears, fingers, nose, and toes.
- The first cola flavored drink (*introduce*) ______ in 1881. Coca-Cola[™]
 (*invent*) ______ a few years later in 1886. Since that time, many other
 - brands of soft drinks (*develop*) ______ and sold around the world.
- The first email message (send) ______ in 1971. Computer engineer Ray Tomlinson (send) ______ messages to himself from one computer to another. Now billions of emails (send) ______ every day.
- 6. Taxes (collect) _________ since ancient times. In Mesopotamia, there were
 - no coins, so male citizens (require) ______ to pay with a cow or a sheep.
- 7. Carl Gauss (recognize) ______ as a mathematical genius when he
 - was just ten years old. One day a professor gave him an arithmetic problem. Carl (ask)
 - _____ to add up all the numbers from 1 to 100 (1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5, etc.).
 - It (*take*) ______ him only eight seconds to solve the problem. How could he

do it so quickly? Can you do it quickly?

Carl could do it quickly because he (know) ______ that each pair of numbers

(1 + 100, 2 + 99, 3 + 98, and so on to 50 + 51) equaled 101. So he (*multiply*)

______ 50 times 101 and (*come*) ______ up with the answer: 5,050.

EXERCISE 18 Let's talk: interview. (Chart 11-3)

Work in pairs or small groups. Take turns answering the questions. The questions are in the active form, but give answers using the passive.

- 1. What did your parents expect you to do when you were a child? \rightarrow I was expected to ...
- 2. What frightens you?
- 3. What bothers you?
- 4. What often confuses people?
- 5. Do you ever deal with insomnia? What causes it?
- 6. Do you ever get headaches? What causes them?
- 7. What piece of technology has helped you the most as a student?

EXERCISE 19 ► Warm-up. (Chart 11-4)

Complete the sentences in your own words. Are the verbs active or passive?

- 1. <u>Children</u> should be taught to be kind to animals.
- 2. ______ should be expected to be in class on time.
- 3. _____ can't be grown in a desert.
- 4. _____ must be treated with kindness.

11-4 The Passive Form of Modals and Phrasal Modals

Pa	ssive form:	modal*	+	be +	F	past partie	iple
(a)	Tom	will		be		invited	to the picnic.
(b)	The window	can't		be		opened.	
(C)	Children	should		be	1	taught	to respect their elders.
(d)		May I		be		excused	from class?
(e)	This book	had better		be		returned	to the library before Friday
(f)	This letter	ought to		be		sent	before June 1st.
(g)	Mia	has to		be	1	told	about our change in plans
(h)	Fred	is supposed to		be	1	told	about the meeting.
Pa	st-passive form:	modal	+	have been	ad.	+ past pa	articiple
(i)	The letter	should		have been		sent	last week.
(j)	This house	must		have been		built	over 200 years ago.
(k)	Eric	couldn't		have been		offered	the job.
(1)	Jill	ought to		have been		invited	to the party.

*See Chapters 9 and 10 for a discussion of the form and use of modals and phrasal modals.

EXERCISE 20 > Grammar and speaking. (Chart 11-4)

Work with a partner. Check (\checkmark) the sentences that have passive modals. <u>Underline</u> the complete verb in each. Then decide what type of job this is. Is this a good job for you? Why or why not?

Job Requirements

- 1. _____You must be able to work in all types of weather.
- 2. ____You must be physically strong.
- 3. ____You must attend weekly staff meetings.
- 4. _____You will be expected to work some weekends.
- 5. ____ You may be called in for emergencies.
- 6. ____You may be subjected to random drug testing.
- 7. _____ Jewelry may not be worn.
- 8. ____ The animals must be treated with respect.
- 9. ____ All safety rules must be strictly observed.
- 10. _____You will be expected to interact with the public and answer questions about the animals.
- 11. _____You have to truly love animals!

```
Job; _____
```



EXERCISE 21 Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-4)

Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use the appropriate form, active or passive

- 1. a. James (should + tell) <u>should be told</u> the news as soon as possible.
 - b. Someone (should + tell) ______should tell ______ James the news immediately.
 - c. James (should + tell) ______ should have been told____ the news a long time ago.
- 2. a. Meat (must + keep) ______ in a refrigerator or it will spoil.
 - b. You (must + keep) _____ meat in a refrigerator or it will spoil.
- 3. a. We're trying, but the window (can't + open) ______
 It's painted shut.
 - b. I'm trying, but I (can't + open) _____ the window.
- 4. a. The class for next semester is too large. It (ought to + divide) _____

_____ in half, but there's not enough money in the budget to hire another teacher.

b. Last semester's class was too large. It (ought to + divide)

_____ in half.

- 5. a. These books (*have to + return*) ______ to the library by tomorrow.
 - b. Polly (have to + return) ______ these books by next Friday. If she doesn't
 - return them, she (will + have to + pay) ______ a fine to the library.
- 6. a. Good news! I (may + offer) ______ a job soon. I had an interview at an engineering firm yesterday.
 - b. Kristina has good news. The engineering firm where she had an interview yesterday (*may* + offer) ______ her a job soon.

a job by a competing firm before we made our offer.

- 7. a. A: Andy, your chores (had better + finish) ______

by the time I get home, including taking out the garbage.

- B: Don't worry, Mom. I'll do everything you told me to do.
- b. A: Andy, you (*had better + finish*) ______ your chores before Mom gets home.
 - B: I know. I'll do them in a minute. I'm busy right now.

^{*}A midsentence adverb such as *already* may be placed after the first auxiliary (e.g., *might already have come*) or after the second auxiliary (e.g., *might have already come*).

- 8. a. This application (be supposed to + send) ______ to the personnel department soon.
 - b. Ann's birthday was on the 5th, and today is the 8th. Her birthday card (should + send)

_____ a week ago. Maybe we'd better give her a call

to wish her a belated happy birthday.

9. a. A: Yoko (*must + surprise*) ______ when she saw her boss

at the movies. He had called in sick.

- B: She was.
- b. A: Yoko (must + surprise) ______ when she runs into her boss

outside of work. He's not very social.

B: She is.

EXERCISE 22 > Let's talk. (Chart 11-4)

Restate the computer lab rules with passive modals. Make at least two sentences for each rule. Work in pairs or small groups.

Computer Lab Rules

Example: Do not bring food into the lab. \rightarrow Food cannot be brought into the lab. \rightarrow Food must not be brought into the lab. \rightarrow Food must be left outside.

- 1. Turn off cell phones.
- 2. Computers are for school use only.
- 3. Do not play computer games.
- 4. Do not download music from the Internet.
- 5. Use the printer for schoolwork only.

EXERCISE 23 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-4)

Make complete sentences with the given words.

<i>Example:</i> must	 a. Seat belts \ wear \ during takeoff and landing → Seat belts must be worn during takeoff and landing. b. All passengers \ wear \ their seat belts during takeoff and landing → All passengers must wear their seat belts during takeoff and landing.
1. will	 a. Many lives \ save \ with the new medical procedure b. The procedure \ save \ many lives
2. can	 a. Shoppers \ look for \ product information on the Internet every day b. Product information \ find \ on the Internet
3. should	 a. People \ test \ smoke alarms once a month b. Smoke alarms \ test \ once a month
4. may	 a. The typhoon \ kill \ hundreds of villagers yesterday b. Hundreds of villagers \ kill \ in the typhoon yesterday c. Hundreds of villagers \ die \ in the typhoon yesterday
5. had better	a. Medical supplies \ deliver \ soonb. Villagers \ receive \ medical supplies soon

EXERCISE 24 Let's talk. (Chart 11-4)

Part I. Work with a partner or in small groups. Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses and the modal or phrasal modal that sounds best to you. All of the sentences are passive

Renting an Apartment

1.	A rental application (fill out) must be filled out	
2.	A 1st month's deposit (require)	
3.	A last month's deposit (require)	·
4.	A cleaning deposit (need)	
5.	A lease agreement (sign)	
6.	All terms of the agreement (understand)	
	by the renter.	
7.	Any problems with the apartment (disclose)	by
	the manager.	
8.	The renter should ask if the lease (break)	early.
9.	Community rules (explain)	_ by the manager.

Part II. What else needs to be considered? Write 3 to 5 more sentences about renting an apartment (or home or car). Use modals or phrasal modals.

EXERCISE 25 > Let's talk. (Chart 11-4)

Work with a partner. Complete each conversation with at least one passive modal. Share a few of your conversations with the class.

Out of the Ordinary



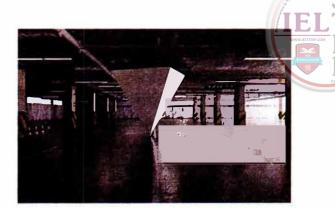


- 1. A: Who designed this office?
 - B: _____ It must have been designed by a robot!____
 - A: <u>lagree</u>. No imagination was used.
- 2. A: Why is this house upside down?
 - B: _____
 - A: _____

irLanguage.com

228 CHAPTER 11





3. A: What is that on the wall?

4.

B:	
A:	
A:	There's a pyramid in the parking garage!
B:	
A:	

\bigcirc EXERCISE 26 \blacktriangleright Listening and grammar. (Charts 11-1 \rightarrow 11-4)

Part I. Listen to the lecture on the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami with your book closed.



Part II. Open your book and choose all the grammatically correct sentences in each group.

- 1. a. An earthquake hit the Indian Ocean.
 - b. The Indian Ocean was hit by an earthquake.
 - c. An earthquake was hit the Indian Ocean.
- 2. a. Millions of lives were changed forever by the earthquake.b. Millions of lives changed forever by the earthquake.
- 3. a. The quake followed by giant tsunami waves.
 - b. The quake was followed by giant tsunami waves.
 - c. Giant tsunami waves were followed the earthquake.
 - d. Giant tsunami waves followed the earthquake.
- 4. a. Thousands of people swept out to sea.
 - b. Thousands of people were swept out to sea.
 - c. The tsunami wave swept thousands of people out to sea.

www.ieltstep.com

- 5. a. Nearly 300,000 people died.
 - b. Nearly 300,000 people were died.
 - c. Nearly 300,000 people were killed.
 - d. Nearly 300,000 people killed.

- WWELTEREN ER
- 6. a. The damage could have been lessened by a tsunami early-warning system.
 - b. A tsunami early-warning system could have lessened the damage.
 - c. A tsunami early-warning system could have been lessened the damage.
- 7. a. An early-warning system already exists for the Pacific Ocean.b. An early-warning system already is existed for the Pacific Ocean.

Part III. Listen again. Complete the sentences with the verbs you hear.

The 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami

In 2004, several countries that border the Indian Ocean, including Indonesia, Thailand, India,
Malaysia, and Somalia by an earthquake and subsequent tsunami.
(As you may already know, a tsunami is a giant ocean wave.) In just a few short hours, millions
of lives forever. The earthquake
at 9.3 on the Richter scale. It was the fourth largest earthquake since 1900 and the second
largest that on the Richter scale.
The quake by four giant waves as high as 100 feet
(or 30 meters). Whole villages Thousands of people
out to sea, and many others due to lack of
medical care. In total, almost 300,000 people, and 1.3 million
people homeless. Aftershocks from the earthquake
for several days.
Tragically, the damage
tsunami early-warning system. Such a system already for the Pacific
Ocean, but it to the Indian Ocean. Since the tsunami disaster,
governments together to develop an early-warning system
so that Southeast Asia

EXERCISE 27 > Warm-up. (Chart 11-5)

Look around the room and answer these questions. Notice the words in blue.

- 1. Are the windows closed?
- 2. Is the door shut?
- 3. Are the lights turned on?
- 4. Is anything broken? If so, what?

 (a) The door is <i>old</i>. (b) The door is <i>green</i>. (c) The door is <i>locked</i>. 	 In (a) and (b): <i>old</i> and <i>green</i> are adjectives. They describ the door. In (c): <i>locked</i> is a past participle. It is used as an adjective. It describes the door.
 (d) I locked the door five minutes ago. (e) The door was locked by me five minutes ago. (f) Now the door <i>is locked</i>. (g) Ann broke the window yesterday. (h) The window was broken by Ann. (i) Now the window <i>is broken</i>. 	 When the passive form is used to describe an existing situation or state, as in (c), (f), and (i), it is called the "stative" or "non-progressive" passive. In this form: no action is taking place; the action happened earlier. there is no by-phrase. the past participle functions as an adjective.
 (j) I am interested in Chinese art. (k) He is satisfied with his job. (1) Ann is married to Alex. 	Prepositions other than by can follow stative (non-progressive) passive verbs. (See Chart 11-6.)
 (m) I don't know where I am. I am lost. (n) I can't find my purse. It is gone. (o) I am finished with my work. (p) I am done with my work. 	Sentences (m)–(p) are examples of idiomatic usage of the passive form in common, everyday English. These sentences have no equivalent active sentences.

EXERCISE 28 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-5)

Complete the sentences with the non-progressive passive of the verbs in parentheses. Use the simple present or simple past.

Problems

1.	I had to get new sunglasses.	My other ones (make) <u>were made</u>	of cheap plastic
	and broke.			

2. The only gas station in town (*close*) ______ right now.

- 3. The water to the house (*turn*) ______ off yesterday.
- 4. The room is stifling hot and the window (lock) _____.

5. Yesterday it was hot in this room because the window (lock) ______.

- 6. I don't have my final paper. I'm sorry. It (finish, not) _____
- 7. Hmmm. My dress (*tear*) ______. I wonder how that happened.
- 8. How can we sit down to dinner? The table (set, not) ______, the meat and rice (do, not) ______, and our guests aren't
 - here!
- 9. I have no idea where we are. We (lose) _____!
- 10. Where's my money? It (go) _____! Did someone take it?

EXERCISE 29 Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-5)

Complete the sentences with the given words. Use the appropriate form.

- 1. bear (born) * / confuse / divorce / marry
 - a. My friends Alison and Roger were married to each other for only a year, but now they <u>are divorced</u>.
 - b. I'm not sure why they are no longer together. Alison told me one thing and Roger told me another. I ______.
 - c. They have one child. He ______ a month after the divorce.
 - d. I'm lucky. I ______ to a wonderful woman. We love each other.
- 2. clog / qualify / plug in / schedule / spoil / stick

 - b. We're having a problem with our window. It won't open. The latch _____
 - c. The drain in our sink is very slow. It _____

_____ with grease.

- d. Our neighbor tried to fix it. He was very nice, but he (not)______ for the job.
- e. We've called a plumber. He ______ for the day after tomorrow.
- f. We had one other problem. Our TV wasn't working, but that was an easy fix. It (not)

3. cover / crowd / exhaust / locate

_____!

- a. The Grand Bazaar in Istanbul ______ in the Old City.
- b. As many as 400,000 people visit the bazaar every day. It ______ very ______.
- c. There are 60 streets and 5,000 shops. At the end of the day, many shoppers ______.
- d. The bazaar is like a mall. The streets _____

_____ with domed roofs.



Grand Bazaar in Istanbul, Turkey

*In the passive, **born** is used as the past participle of **bear** to mean "given birth to."





_____. We'll have to

EXERCISE 30 \blacktriangleright Reading and grammar. (Charts 11-1 \rightarrow 11-5)

Read the blog entry by author Stacy Hagen. <u>Underline</u> the past participles. Which ones are used in the passive? Which past participle functions as an adjective?

BlueBookBlog The Importance of Context

How important is context to reading? Extremely! In the 1970s, a famous study was conducted by Bransford and Johnson. Participants were asked to listen to a passage and then answer questions. The passage was similar to the following. Take a minute to read it:

This is a fairly easy process. It can be completed at home or at a different place if the necessary machinery isn't available. First, items are put into different groups. But if there isn't too much to deal with, one group may be enough. It's important to look at everything carefully; a mistake could ruin a group. This first phase doesn't take very long, especially the more times you do it. The next phase goes faster. Once it is taken care of, it won't require your attention until it is finished. At that point, the items will be separated again. These groups will determine where everything goes. Once things are put away, you have finished until the process is repeated the next time.

Did the reading make sense to you? If you were confused, you are not alone. It's difficult to make sense of. Then participants were given the title "Washing Clothes" and asked to read it again. Try this now.

As you can see, context makes a significant difference. That is why you have probably already learned how helpful it is to look at chapter heads and subheads when you are reading a textbook. And don't forget to look at photos and other illustrations even before you start to read — or do an exercise. All of this information will help you read more efficiently.

EXERCISE 31 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 11-6)

Answer the questions.

What is something that you are ...

- 1. interested in?
- 2. annoyed by?
- 3. concerned about?
- 4. scared of?
- 5. excited about?
- 6. accustomed to?



11-6 Common Stative (Non-Progressive) Passive Verbs + Prepositions

(a) I'm interested in(b) He's worried at	n Greek culture. Dout losing his job.		Many stative verb than by .	s are followed by prepositions of	her _
be concerned be excited be worried	about	be composed be made be tired	} of	be acquainted be associated be cluttered be crowded	
be discriminated	against	be frightened be scared	of/by	be done be equipped with	
be known be prepared		be terrified	J	be filled be finished	
be qualified be remembered	for	be accustomed be addicted	Ì	be pleased be provided	
be well known	J	be connected		be satisfied	
be divorced be exhausted		be dedicated be devoted		be annoyed be bored } with / b	ער
be gone	from	be engaged	to	be covered	· y
be protected)	be exposed be limited			
be dressed be interested	in	be married be opposed			
be located	J	be related	λ		
be disappointed be involved	} in / with				

EXERCISE 32 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-6)

Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

Maya, a Toymaker

- 1. Maya is excited <u>about</u> creating toys that children enjoy.
- 2. She is known _____ creating high-quality toys.
- 3. Her toys are made _____ wood.
- 4. She is pleased ______ the response to her toys.
- 5. The materials in her toys are limited ______ wood.
- 6. She is interested _____ how children play with one another.
- 7. She is disappointed _____ many of the popular toys in stores today.
- 8. She worries ______ toys that don't encourage children to use their imagination.



EXERCISE 33 ► Listening. (Chart 11-6)

Listen to the sentences. They contain non-progressive passive verbs + prepositions. Write the prepositions you hear.

Example: You will hear: Carol is interested in ancient history.

	You will write: _	in
1		5
2		6
3		7
4		8

EXERCISE 34 ► Game. (Chart 11-6)

Work in teams. Complete the sentences by adding the correct prepositions. Then match the person to the sentence. The first team with the most correct sentences (both grammatically and factually) wins.

Juliet Capulet	Florence Nightingale	Marie Curie	Johnny Cash	✓ Mohatma Ghandi
Steve Jobs	Nelson Mandela	Rosa Parks	Robin Williams	Cleopatra

Who am I?

to

- 1. He was committed A non-violence in the struggle for independence for India. <u>Mohatma Ghandi</u>
- 2. She was devoted the sick and is known as the founder of modern nursing.
- 3. He was discriminated because of the color of his skin and fought for freedom for black people in his country.

4. She was married Romeo in Shakespeare's tragedy. _____

5. He was known his comedies, but he was well-acquainted depression.

6. She was related King Ptolemy. ______

7. He was associated technological innovation. _____

- 8. This singer was dressed black so often that he was called "The Man in Black."
- She was opposed segregation laws in the American South and refused to give up her seat on the bus to a white person.
- 10. Her life was dedicated science, and she was the first woman to win the Nobel Prize.



www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 35 ► Let's talk. (Chart 11-6)

Think about changes that modern life has brought in communications, travel, work, school, daily life, etc. Complete the phrases with the correct prepositions and then take turns answering the questions. Work in pairs or small groups.

What changes or innovations are you (or people you know) ...

- 1. excited _____?
- 2. concerned _____?
- 3. opposed _____?
- 4. annoyed _____?
- 5. addicted _____?
- 6. not accustomed _____?



solar panels

EXERCISE 36 Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-6)

Complete each sentence with the non-progressive passive form of the verb and an appropriate preposition. Use the simple present.

With Friends

- 1. I can't believe it! Derek has come to the party in his work clothes. He's a mechanic, and they (cover) ______ are covered in _____ grease.
- 2. Pat (*finish*) ______ her wedding dress. It's stunning. She designed it herself.
- 4. Leo (satisfy, not) ______ his new job. He's looking for another.
- 5. Hashim (engage) _____ Fatima.
- 6. Elaine (*divorce*) _____ Pierre.
- 7. Did you know that Rebecca (relate) ______ the president?
- 9. What's going on? Miguel (*dress*) ______ a tuxedo! We're just going to a movie.
- 10. My best friend (*commit*) ______ improving the water quality of lakes and rivers in our area.
- 11. A: Are you (do) ______ getting ready for your camping trip?
 - B: Yes, we finished packing our sleeping bags, tent, first-aid kit, food, and warm clothes.We are finally (*prepare*) ______ to leave in the morning.

EXERCISE 37 ▶ Writing. (Chart 11-6)

Choose an object and write a short paragraph about it. Do NOT include the name of the object in your writing; always use a pronoun to refer to it, not the noun itself.

Describe the object (What does it look like? What is it made of? What does it feel like? Does it make a noise? Does it have a smell? Etc.), and explain why people use it or how it is used. Begin with its general characteristics; then gradually get more specific.

Finally, read your paragraph aloud to the class or to a small group of classmates. They will try to guess what the object is.

Example:

It is usually made of metal. It is hollow. It is round on one end. It can be very small — small enough to fit in your pocket — or large, but not as large as a car. It is used to make noise. It can be used to give a signal. Sometimes it's part of an orchestra. Sometimes it is electric and you push a button to make it ring.

What is it? ____

EXERCISE 38 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 11-7)

Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Notice the word forms that follow the verb get.

dirty	fixed	hurt	wet
dressed	hungry	lost	

1. We didn't have a map or GPS, so we got ______ on our way to the airport.

We saw a lot of the city, though.

2. Don't go out in the rain without a coat. You'll get _____.

- 3. I'll be ready to leave as soon as I get ______. I just need to throw on a T-shirt and jeans, and I'll be ready.
- 4. If I skip breakfast, I always get ______ during my late morning class.
- 5. It was a bad accident, but luckily no one got seriously _____.
- 6. The Internet is working again. I don't know why it went out, but somehow it got _____.
- 7. The kids like making clay pots in art class because their hands can get _____, and they don't get in trouble.



www.ieltstep.com

11-7	7 The	Passive	with	Get

Get + Adject	ive				IS UNITED UNITED	
 (a) <i>I'm getting hungry</i>. Let's eat soon. (b) <i>I</i> stopped working because <i>I got sleepy</i>. 		 Get may be followed by certain adjectives. Get gives the idea of change — the idea of becoming, beginning to be, growing to be. In (a): I'm getting hungry = I wasn't hungry before, but now I'm beginning to be hungry. 				
					Common adject	tives that follow get
angry	cold	fat	hungry	quiet	tall	
anxious	comfortable	full	late	ready	thirsty	
bald	dark	good	light	rich	warm	
better	dizzy	hard	mad	ripe	well	
big	easy	healthy	nervous	serious	wet	
busy	empty	heavy	noisy	sick	worse	
chilly	famous	hot	old	sleepy		
Get + Past Pa	articiple					
(c) I stopped wo	orking because I got to	ired.	Get may also	be followed by	a past participle.	
(d) They are get	They are getting married next month.			The past participle functions as an adjective; it describes the subject.		
(e) You didn't wa) You didn't wash the dishes.		The passive with get can be used to present information			
(f) The dishes <i>didn't</i> get washed.			more indirectly. Note the difference in tone between (e) and (f).			
		The passive with <i>get</i> is common in spoken English, but not in formal writing.				
Common past p	participles with get					
get accepte	d (for, into)	get dress	ed (in)	get invi	ted (to)	
get accusto		get drunk	(on)	get invo	get involved (in, with)	
get acquain	ted (with)	get electe	ed (to)	get kille	get killed (by, with)	
get arrested	(for)	get engag	ged (to)	get lost	get lost (in)	
get bored (v		get excite	ed (about)	•	get married (to)	
get confuse		get finish	· ·	• •	get prepared (for)	
get crowded		get fixed			get scared (of)	
	get divorced (from) get hurt (by)			get sunburned		
get done (w	ith)	get intere	sted (in)	ed (in) get worried (about)		

EXERCISE 39 Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-7) Complete the sentences with <u>all</u> the words that make sense.

1.	1. The meeting starts in an hour. I need to get for it.				
	a. prepare	(b.) prepared	c. ready	d. readying	
2.	2. I think I'll stop working for the day. I'm getting				
	a. tire	b. tired	c. dark	d. late	
3.	3. Sonia stopped working because it was getting				
	a. late	b. dark	c. tired	d. sleepy	

				secret To Success
4. We can leave as	soon as you get			IELST S
a. pack	b. finish	c. packed	d. finished	P
5. Sam was suppos	ed to be home an hour ag	go, but he still isn't her	e. I'm getting	Continue
a. nervous	b. anxious	c. worry	d. worried	
6. I didn't stav for	the end of the movie beca	use I got		
a. bore	b. bored	c. interested	d. am bored	
7. Are you going to	get ?			
a. marriage	-	c. married	d. engage	
	oking at grammar. ((uanda in the how	
Complete the senten	ces with any appropriate t	tense of get and the w	ords in the box.	
accustom	do 🗸 hi	ingry pa	у	
better dark			marry	
depress		arry we ervous we		
divorce				
1 What time are u	ve going to eat? I	m aettina hunar∨		
	umbrella, so I			vesterday
			-	yesterday.
	re to give a speech, I			
	turning on the light? It.			
	is improving. It			
	ick, so I sent him a card.			,
•	take you to		_	
	soon as I			
	wh			up.
	ted, he			
11. But later he	be	cause he didn't do his	work.	
12. Ben and Sara ha	we had an interesting rela	tionship. First, they _		·
	. L			
Finally, they		Today they are a	happily married cou	ple.
13. I	on Fridays. 1	I'll give you the money	I owe you next Frid	lay. OK?
_	on you to the par			
		tol Print		

www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 41 > Let's talk: interview. (Chart 11-7)

Interview your classmates. Share some of their answers with the class.

Example: Have you ever gotten dizzy? Tell me about it.

→ Yes. I got dizzy when I went on a ride at the fair last summer. But it was a lot of fun!

- 1. Tell me about a time you got lost. Where were you and what happened?
- 2. Do you ever get sleepy during the day? If so, tell me about it. If not, when do you get sleepy?
- 3. Have you ever gotten really scared? What scared you?
- 4. Think of the world situation today. What things are getting better, and what things are getting worse?
- 5. Have you ever gotten hurt in a traffic accident or any kind of accident? What happened?
- 6. Tell me about a time you got confused about something.
- 7. Have you or has someone you know ever gotten cheated when you bought something? Tell me about it.
- 8. Is there an election coming up in this country or another country that interests you? If so, who do you think is going to get elected? Who got elected in the last election in this country?

EXERCISE 42 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-7)

Restate the information with *get* to present the information more indirectly.

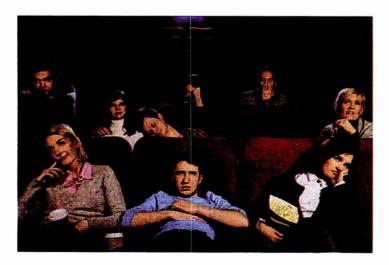
1. The clothes in the dryer are wet. You didn't turn on the dryer.

The dryer didn't get turned on.

- 2. The TV's on. You didn't turn it off. _____
- 3. The car is still dirty. John didn't wash it. _____
- 4. Your old photos are on the floor. Susie hasn't put them away.
- 5. I know it's raining outside, but you're dripping! You're getting the floor all wet.

EXERCISE 43 > Warm-up. (Chart 11-8)

Complete the sentences with *movie* and *audience*.



 1. The _______ is bored.
 2. The _______ is boring.

11-8 -ed/-ing Adjectives	
 The problem confuses the students. (a) It is a confusing problem. 	The present participle can serve as an adjective with an active meaning. The noun it modifies performs an action.
	In (a): The noun <i>problem</i> does something; it <i>confuses.</i> Thus, it is described as a "confusing problem."
 The students are confused by the problem. 	The past participle can serve as an adjective with a passive meaning.
(b) They are confused students.	In (b): The students are confused by something. Thus, they are described as "confused students."
- The story amuses the children.	In (c): The noun story performs the action.
c) It is an amusing story.	
 The children are amused by the story. 	In (d): The noun children receives the action.
(d) They are amused children.	
(e) It was a delightful story.	There are exceptions to these rules. For example, there is no
(f) It was a scary story.	adjective -ing form for delight and scare, as in (e) and (f).

EXERCISE 44 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-8)

Match the sentences to the pictures. Some sentences describe <u>neither</u> picture.







- 4. _____The child is frightening.
- 5. _____ The tiger is frightened.
- 6. ____ The tiger is frightening.
- 3. _____The child is frightened.

The monster is frightened.
 The monster is frightening.

EXERCISE 45 Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-8)

Complete each sentence with the present or past participle of the verb in *italics*.

- 1. a. The class *bores* the students. It is a <u>boring</u> class.
 - b. The students *are bored* by the class. They are <u>bored</u> students.
- 2. a. The game excites the people. It is an _____ game.
 - b. The people are excited by the game. They are _____ people.

- 3. a. The news surprised the man. It was ______ news.
 - b. The man was surprised by the news. He was a _____ man.
- 4. a. The child *was frightened* by the strange noise. The ______ child sought comfort from her father.
 - b. The strange noise *frightened* the child. It was a ______ sound.
- 5. a. The work *exhausted* the men. It was ______ work.
 - b. The men *were exhausted*. The ______ men sat down to rest under the shade of a tree.

EXERCISE 46 ▶ Let's talk. (Chart 11-8)

Your teacher will ask you questions. Answer them with a present or past participle. Close your book for this activity.

Example:

TEACHER:If a book confuses you, how would you describe the book?SPEAKER A:confusingTEACHER:How would you describe yourself?SPEAKER B:confused

- 1. If a story amazes you, how would you describe the story? How would you describe yourself?
- 2. If a story depresses you, how would you describe yourself? How would you describe the story?
- 3. If some work tires you, ...?
- 4. If a movie bores you, \dots ?

- 5. If a painting interests you, ...?
- 6. If a situation embarrasses you, \dots ?
- 7. If a book disappoints you, ...?
- 8. If a person fascinates you, ...?
- 9. If an assignment frustrates you, ...?
- 10. If a noise annoys you, \dots ?
- 11. If an event shocks you, ...?
- 12. If an experience thrills you, ...?

► EXERCISE 47 ► Listening. (Chart 11-8)

Listen to the sentences. Choose the words you hear.

Example: You will hear: We went on an exciting roller coaster ride. You will choose: excite (exciting) excited

1. frighten	frightening	frightened
2. scare	scary	scared
3. excite	exciting	excited
4. thrill	thrilling	thrilled
5. finish	finishing	finished
6. thrill	thrilling	thrilled



EXERCISE 48 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-8)

Complete the sentences with the present or past participle of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. The thief tried to break open the (lock) ______ cabinet in the pharmacy.
- 2. I found myself in an (embarrass) _______ situation last night.

- 3. The (*injure*) ______ woman was put into an ambulance.
- 4. The teacher gave us a (challenge) ______ assignment, but we all enjoyed doing it.
- 5. The (*expect*) ______ event did not occur.
- 6. The invention of the (*print*) ______ press was one of the most important events in the history of the world.
- 7. (*Experience*) _______ travelers pack lightly. They carry only the necessities.
- 8. A (grow) ______ child needs a (balance) _____ diet.
- 9. No one appreciates a (spoil) _____ child.
- There is an old saying: "Let (*sleep*) ______ dogs lie."
 It means "Don't bring up past problems."
- 11. We had a (*thrill*) ______ but hair-raising experience on our backpacking trip into the wilderness.
- 12. The (*abandon*) ______ car was towed away by
 a tow truck.
- 13. (Pollute) ______ water is not safe for drinking.
- 14. I don't have any furniture of my own. Do you know where I can rent a (furnish)

_____ apartment?

- 15. The equator is the (*divide*) ______ line between the Northern and Southern hemispheres.
- 16. We all expect our (elect) ______ officials to be honest.

EXERCISE 49 > Listening. (Chart 11-8)

Listen to the sentences. Choose the correct completions.

 Examples:
 You will hear:
 I attended a great lecture last night. It was _____.

 You will choose:
 fascinating
 fascinated

 You will hear:
 The audience listened carefully to the lecture. They were _____.

 You will choose:
 fascinating
 fascinated

- 1. shocking shocked
- 2. shocking shocked
- 3. delightful delighted
- 4. delightful delighted
- 5. confusing confused
- 6. confusing confused

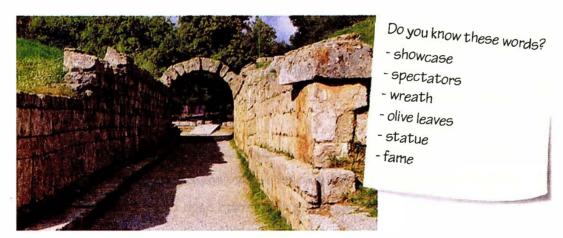
EXERCISE 50 → Let's talk: interview. (Charts 11-5 → 11-8)

Make questions with the given words. Interview two students for each question. Share some of their answers with the class.

- What \ be \ you \ worried about in today's world?
 → What are you worried about in today's world?
- 2. What \ be \ you \ tired of?
- 3. What (or who) \ be \ you \ pleased with?
- 4. What \ you \ get \ really nervous about?
- 5. What \ you \ want \ to be \ remembered for?
- 6. What \ be \ excite \ to you?
- 7. What \ kids \ get excited about?
- 8. What \ be \ confuse \ to students?
- 9. What \ be \ you \ confused by?
- 10. What \ confuse \ to children?

EXERCISE 51 Listening. (Chapter 11 Review)

Part I. Listen to the lecture about the early Olympic Games with your book closed. Then open your book and read the statements. Circle "T" for true and "F" for false.



Gate to the ancient Olympic stadium

1. The Olympic Games were established so that men and women could compete against one another.	Т	F
Greece invited other nations to the games to encourage good relationships among countries.	Т	F
3. The winning athletes were considered heroes.	Т	F

Part II. Listen again. Complete the sentences with the words you hear.

The Early Olympic Games

The Olympic Games ______ more than 2,000 years ago in Olympia, a small town in Greece. The games ______ for two purposes. One was to showcase the physical qualities and athletic performances of its young men. At that time, only Greek males ______ to compete. In fact, women

4	to watch the games, and the only spectators were F		
men. The other goal5	to encourage good relationships among Greek cities.		
People of other nationalities	6	to participate.	
The winner of each event	7	with a wreath made of olive leaves.	
Additionally, his statue	8	in Olympia for all to see.	
athletes _	10	as heroes when they	
returned to their cities because with	their victory, they _	fame and	
honor to their hometowns.			

EXERCISE 52 > Check your knowledge. (Chapter 11 Review)

Correct the errors.

interested

- 1. I am interesting in his ideas.
- 2. Two people got hurted in the accident and were took to the hospital by an ambulance.
- 3. The show was so bored that we fell asleep after an hour.
- 4. The students helped by the clear explanation that the teacher gave.
- 5. The winner of the race hasn't been announcing yet.
- 6. When and where has the car invented?
- 7. My brother and I have always been interesting in learning more about our family background.
- 8. I am not agree with you, so let's agree to disagree.
- 9. It was late, and I was getting very worry about my mother.
- 10. Many strange things were happened last night.
- 11. I didn't go to dinner with them because I had already been eaten.
- 12. In class yesterday, I was confusing. I didn't understand the lesson.
- 13. My grandmother was walking on an icy sidewalk and was fallen down.
- 14. When we were children, we are very afraid of caterpillars. Whenever we saw one of these monsters, we were run to our house before the caterpillars could attack us. I still get scare when I saw a caterpillar close to me.



EXERCISE 53 ▶ Reading, grammar, and writing. (Chapter 11)

Part I. Read the passage. The writer is describing a process. How many verbs are passive?

Do you know these words? - liquor - solid - bitter

How Chocolate Is Made

Chocolate is made from the seeds of roasted cocoa beans. After the seeds have been roasted, the inside of the seed is pressed into a liquid. This liquid is called chocolate liquor. The liquor contains fat, which is separated from the liquor. After this has been done, a solid is left. This solid, which is known as cocoa cake, is ground up and becomes unsweetened cocoa. This is a very bitter chocolate. To make it taste better, other substances such as cocoa butter and sugar are added later.



Part II. Write about a process that you know about. Maybe it's how to make something like a kite, a bookcase, a sweater, or a necklace. Try to use passive verbs where appropriate. Describe what happens first, second, third, etc.

WRITING TIP

The passive is very common (or even preferred) in scientific or technical writing (lab results, reports, etc.). The focus is not on the person, but on the details of the process or the results. The passive makes it easy to focus on this.

The present and present perfect passive are two very common tenses in this type of writing.

Some passive verbs common in writing are collected, considered, done, found, given, made, measured, seen, shown, tested, and used.

Part III. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box a form of the **be** verb for the passive
- 2. \Box the correct past participle forms for the passive
- 3. \Box passive only with intransitive verbs
- 4. \Box use of **by** only when it is important to know who performed the action
- 5. \Box correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Go to the Essential Online Resources for Self-Study: Gerunds and Infinitives 11

Noun Clauses

PRETEST: What do I already know?

CHAPTER

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct form, meaning, and punctuation and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. _____ At the hotel on the lake where we went for our summer vacation. (12-1)
- 2. ____ I don't know where does she go after work. (12-2)
- 3. _____ He didn't understand at all what I did say. (12-2)
- 4. ____ Can you ask them whether they need help or not? (12-3)
- 5. ____ Please remind me again how to turn on this machine. (12-4)
- 6. ____ I wasn't sure where do I look for the information. (12-4)
- 7. ____ It's interesting that some identical twins can have such different personalities. (12-5)
- 8. ____ That Ricardo needs to change jobs is clear. (12-5)
- 9. ____ No cell phone use during class, our teacher said. (12-6)
- 10. ____ I asked Elias what he was doing. He told me he is waiting for me. (12-7)
- 11. ____ Roberta said she must have to work late last night. (12-8)
- 12. ____ It is critical that you be here on time tomorrow. (12-9)

Incorrect sentences: 1, 2, 3, 6, 9, 10, 11

EXERCISE 1 > Warm-up. (Chart 12-1)

Check (\checkmark) all the complete sentences.

- 1. ____ Are they triplets?
- 2. ____ They look almost identical.
- 3. ____ I don't know.
- 4. _____ How old you think they are?
- 5. ____ How old are they?
- 6. ____ I don't know how old they are.
- 7. ____ how old they are



12-1 Introduction	
(a) in the park(b) on a rainy day(c) her grandparents in Turkey	Sentences contain phrases and clauses. A phrase • is a group of words. • does not contain a subject and a verb. • is not a sentence. Examples (a), (b), and (c) are phrases.
(d) He went running in the park.(e) She visited her grandparents in Turkey.	A clause is a group of words. contains a subject and a verb. Examples (d) and (e) are clauses.
(f) ^I Sue lives in Tokyo. ¹ independent clause (g) ^I Where does Sue live? ¹	Clauses can be independent or dependent. An INDEPENDENT CLAUSE • contains the main subject and verb. • is the main clause of the sentence. • may be a statement or a question. • can stand alone.
dependent clause (h) where Sue lives	 A DEPENDENT CLAUSE is not a complete sentence. cannot stand alone. must be connected to a main clause.
noun clause (i) We don't know ^I where Sue lives. ¹	 Example (i) is a complete sentence. It has a main subject (We). a main verb (know). a dependent clause (where Sue lives). The dependent clause — where Sue lives — is also a noun clause. <i>It</i> is the object of the verb know and functions like a noun in the sentence.

EXERCISE 2 Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-1)

Underline each clause in the sentences.

- 1. I couldn't hear what you said.
- 2. What did you say?
- 3. No one knows where Tom went.
- 4. Where did Tom go?
- 5. I'd like to know where Tom went.
- 6. How do you know where Tom went?

EXERCISE 3 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-1)

Add punctuation and capitalization.

- 1. Where did Sara go did she go home \rightarrow Where did Sara go? Did she go home?
- 2. I don't know where Sara went $\rightarrow I$ don't know where Sara went.
- 3. What does Alex need do you know
- 4. Do you know what Alex needs
- 5. We talked about what Alex needs

248 CHAPTER 12

- 6. What do you need did you talk to your parents about what you need
- 7. My parents know what I need

EXERCISE 4 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 12-2)

Choose the correct sentence in each.

- 1. Where does Brad live?
 - a. I'm not sure where he lives.
 - b. I'm not sure where does he live.
- 2. I'm looking for Brad.
 - a. Could you tell me where is Brad?
 - b. Could you tell me where Brad is?

12-2 Noun Clauses with Question Words

Question	Noun Clause	and the second
wh + helping + S + V verb Where does she live? What did he say? When do they go?	 wh + S + V (a) I don't know where she lives. (b) I couldn't hear what he said. (c) Do you know when they went? 	Noun clauses can begin with question words. In (a): <i>where she lives</i> is a noun clause. It is the object of the verb <i>know</i> . In a noun clause, the subject precedes the verb. NOTE: Do not use question word order in a noun clause. Helping verbs <i>does, did,</i> and <i>do</i> are used in questions but not in noun clauses.*
S V Who lives there? Who is at the door?	S V (d) I don't know who lives there. (e) I wonder who is at the door.	In (d) and (e): The word order is the same in both the question and the noun clause because <i>who</i> is the subject in both.
V S Who are those men?	S V (f) I don't know who those men are.	In (f): <i>those men</i> is the subject of the question, so it is placed in front of the verb <i>be</i> in the noun clause. COMPARE: <i>Who is at the door? = who</i> is the subject of the question. <i>Who are</i> those men? = <i>those men</i> is the subject of the question, so <i>be</i> is plural.
What did she say? What will they do?	 s v (h) What she said surprised me. (i) What they will do is obvious. 	 The noun clause can come at the beginning of the sentence. In (h): <i>What she said</i> is the subject of the sentence. Notice in (i): A noun clause subject takes a singular verb (e.g., <i>is</i>).

*See Appendix Chart B-2 for more information about question words and question forms.

EXERCISE 5 Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-2)

Change each question to a noun clause.

Questions from Parents

- 1. A: How old is your friend Paul?
 - B: I don't know _____ how old he is
- 2. A: Where does he live?
 - B: I'm not sure _____



3.		When does the party start? I'll check		
4.	A:	What time are you leaving?		Confident
	B:	I need to ask my roommate		
5.	A:	Whose phone numbers are those?		
	B:	Uh, I'm not sure	·	
6.	A:	Who left the stove on?		
	B:	I wasn't the one	·	
7.	A:	Who are those people?		
	B:	I don't know		
8.	A:	What happened?		
	B:	I don't know		
9.	A:	Why did Anna break off her engagement with Thoma	as?	
	B:		is a mystery.	
10.	A:	Where did the car keys go?	5a	
	B:	I don't have any idea		
11.	A:	What are you doing in class?		
	B:	It's a little confusing. It's not clear yet		
12.	A:	Do you understand what Mom and I said?		
	B:	No, I'm sorry but		
		is still not clear.		

EXERCISE 6 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-2)

Work with a partner. Take turns making questions with noun clauses. Begin with Can you tell me.

School Questions

- 1. How is this word pronounced? <u>Can you tel | meh owth isword is pron aunced?</u>
- 2. What does this mean?
- 3. What was my grade? ______ 4. Who am I supposed to talk to? _____
- 5. When is our next assignment due?
- 6. How much time do we have for the test? _____
- 7. When do classes end for the year?
- 8. Where is our class going to meet? _____
- 9. What time does the computer lab close? _____

EXERCISE 7 Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-2)

Make questions with the given sentences. The words in parentheses are the answer to the question you make. Begin with a question word (*who*, *what*, *when*, *where*, *why*). Then change the question to a noun clause.

A Friend's Visit

1. Tom will be here (next week).	
QUESTION:When will Tom be here?	
NOUN CLAUSE: Please tell me <u>when Tom will be h</u>	ere
2. He is coming (because he wants to visit his college friend	s).
QUESTION:	
NOUN CLAUSE: Please tell me	
3. He'll be on flight (645, not flight 742).	
QUESTION:	
NOUN CLAUSE: Could you tell me	
4. (Jim Hunter) is going to meet him at the airport.	
QUESTION:	
Noun Clause: Do you know	
5. Jim Hunter is (his former college roommate).	
QUESTION:	
NOUN CLAUSE: Please tell me	
6. He lives (on Riverside Road near the airport).	
QUESTION:	
Noun Clause: I'd like to know	
7. Tom is (in Chicago) right now.	
QUESTION:	
Noun Clause: Please tell me	
8. He is there (for a conference).	
QUESTION:	
Noun Clause: Do you know	
9. He works for (a technology company).	
QUESTION:	
NOUN CLAUSE: Could you tell me	
10. He has worked for them (for ten years).	
QUESTION:	
Noun Clause: Do vou know	

IE

EXERCISE 8 ▶ Let's talk. (Chart 12-2)

Work with a partner. Take turns asking questions and responding with **I** don't know OR **I** wonder Use the names of your classmates.

Example: Where is (____)?

PARTNER A: Where is Marco?

PARTNER B: I don't know where Marco is. OR I wonder where Marco is.

Partner A	PARTNER B
1. Where does () live?	1. How long has () been married?
2. What country is () from?	2. Why are we doing this exercise?
3. How long has () been living here?	3. Who is looking at their phone?
4. Where are you going to eat lunch/dinner?	4. What is () phone number?
5. Where is () favorite restaurant?	5. Where did () go after class yesterday?
6. What is () favorite color?	6. Why is () smiling?
7. What kind of watch does () have?	7. How often does () go to the library?
8. Whose book is that?	8. Why was () absent yesterday?
9. How far is it to the airport from here?	9. How much did that book cost?

EXERCISE 9 Let's talk. (Chart 12-2)

Underline the noun clauses. Are these sentences true for you? Circle yes or no. Discuss your answers.

1. What my family thinks of me is very important to me.	yes	no
2. I always pay attention to what other people think of me.	yes	no
3. Where we live is exciting.	yes	no
4. How we eat is healthy.	yes	no
5. I think how most celebrities behave is admirable.	yes	no
6. I usually don't believe what I read in advertisements.	yes	no

EXERCISE 10 Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-2)

Complete each sentence with the words in parentheses. Use any appropriate verb tense. Some of the completions contain noun clauses, and some are questions.

1. A: Where (Ruth, go) ______ di dRuth go ? She's not in her room.

B: I don't know. Ask her friend Tina	She might know where (Ruth, go)	Ruth went
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------

- 2. A: Oops! I made a mistake. Where (*my eraser, be*) _____? Didn't I lend it to you?
 - B: I don't have it. Ask Sally where (*it*, *be*) ______. I think I saw her using it.
- 3. A: The door isn't locked! Why (Franco, lock, not) ______ it before he left?*

Usual: Why didn't you call me? (with did + not contracted) Very formal: Why did you not call me?

^{*}Word order in negative questions:

- 4. A: Mr. Lee is a recent immigrant, isn't he? How long (*he*, *be*) ______ this country?
 - B: I have no idea, but I'll be seeing Mr. Lee this afternoon. Would you like me to ask him how long (*he*, *be*) ______ here?
- 5. A: Which road (we, be supposed) ______ to take? It's not on the GPS.
 - B: I've never been here before. I don't know which road (we, be supposed)

_____ to take.

EXERCISE 11 > Let's talk: interview. (Chart 12-2)

Interview your classmates. Begin with **Do you know** followed by a question word (**who, what**, **when**, **where**, **how many**, **how long**, **how far**). If no one in the class knows the answer to a question, research the answer. Share any information you get with the rest of the class.

Trivia

Example: the shortest month of the year

SPEAKER A: Do you know *what* the shortest month of the year is? SPEAKER B: Yes. It's February. OR No, I don't know what the shortest month is.

- 1. the number of minutes in 24 hours
- 2. the winner of the Nobel Peace Prize last year
- 3. the place (country) Buddha was born
- 4. the distance from the earth to the sun
- 5. the year the first man walked on the moon
- 6. the time it takes for the moon to rotate around the earth

EXERCISE 12 > Warm-up. (Chart 12-3)

Underline the noun clauses. What words are added when a yes/no question is changed to a noun clause?

- QUESTION: Has the mail arrived?
- NOUN CLAUSE: I wonder if the mail has arrived.
 - I wonder whether the mail has arrived.
 - I wonder whether or not the mail has arrived.
 - I wonder whether the mail has arrived or not.

I wonder if the mail has arrived or not.

12-3 Noun Clauses with Whether or If Yes /No Question Noun Clause Will she come? (a) I don't know whether she will come. When a yes/no question is changed to a noun I don't know if she will come. clause, whether or if is used to introduce the noun clause. Does he need help? (b) I wonder whether he needs help. I wonder if he needs help. NOTE: Whether is more common in writing and if is more common in speaking. (c) I wonder whether or not she will come. In (c), (d), and (e): Notice the patterns when (d) I wonder whether she will come or not. or not is used. (e) I wonder if she will come or not. (f) Whether she comes or not is unimportant In (f): The noun clause can be in the subject position with whether. to me.



EXERCISE 13 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-3)

Complete the sentences by changing the questions to noun clauses.

At the Office

Let me know if ...

- 1. Is the financial report ready?
- 2. Will it be ready tomorrow?
- 3. Does the copy machine need paper?
- 4. Is someone waiting for me?
- 5. Do we need anything for the meeting?
- 6. Are you going to be there?

Please check whether ...

- 7. Did they get my message?
- 8. Is the copy machine working?
- 9. Is there any paper left?
- 10. Is this information correct?
- 11. Did the fax come in?
- 12. Are we going to have Monday off?

EXERCISE 14 → Let's talk. (Chart 12-3)

Work with a partner. Take turns asking questions and restating them with *I wonder*.

Example:

PARTNER A: Does Anna need any help?

PARTNER B: I wonder whether/if Anna needs any help.

Partner A	Partner B
1. Where is Tom?	1. What causes earthquakes?
2. When is he coming?	2. When was the first book written?
3. Is he having car trouble?	3. Why did dinosaurs become extinct?
4. How long should we wait for him?	4. Is there life on other planets?
5. Did anyone call him?	5. How did life begin?
6. Did he forget?	6. Will people live on the moon someday?

EXERCISE 15 > Let's talk: interview. (Chart 12-3)

Interview students in your class. Ask each one a different question. Begin with *Can/Could you tell me*. Share a few of your answers with the class.

1. Have you ever won a prize? What? \rightarrow Can/Could you tell me if you have ever won a prize? What did you win?

- 2. Have you ever played a joke on someone? Describe it.
- 3. Have you ever stayed up all night? Why?
- 4. Have you ever felt embarrassed? Why?
- 5. Have you ever been in an earthquake? Where? When?
- 6. Do you have a talent like singing or dancing (or something else)? What?
- 7. Are you enjoying this interview? Why or why not?

EXERCISE 16 \blacktriangleright Let's talk: pairwork. (Charts 12-1 \rightarrow 12-3)

Work with a partner to create short conversations. Partner A asks a question. Partner B answers the question beginning with the words in *italics*.

Example:When does the next bus come?I don't know ...PARTNER A (book open):When does the next bus come?PARTNER B (book closed):I don't know when the next bus comes.

SITUATION 1: You're at a tourist center.

Let's ask ...

- 1. Where is the bus station?
- 2. How much does the city bus cost?
- 3. Is there a bike rack on the bus?
- 4. Is this bus schedule correct?

We need to figure out ...

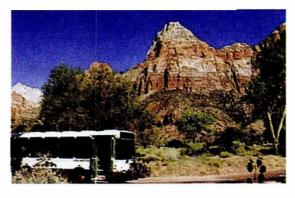
- 5. How far is it from here to town?
- 6. How much does it cost to take a bus from here to downtown?
- 7. Is there free Wi-Fi anywhere?

Change roles.

SITUATION 2: You're late for work.

I don't know ...

- 8. Where did I leave my keys?
- 9. Are my keys in my bag?
- 10. Where is my shoe?
- 11. What did I do with my briefcase?



SITUATION 3: You have a new neighbor. I'll find out ...

- 12. Is he single or married?
- 13. What does he do?
- 14. Where does he work?
- 15. Would he like to come to dinner?

EXERCISE 17 \blacktriangleright Let's talk. (Charts 12-1 \rightarrow 12-3)

Work in small groups. What would you say in each situation? Use noun clauses.

Example: Someone asks you about the time the mail comes. You're not sure. Possible answers: \rightarrow I'm not sure what time the mail comes. \rightarrow I don't know when the mail is supposed to be here. (Etc.)

- 1. You see a restaurant. You can't tell if it's open yet. You ask a man standing outside.
- 2. You were absent yesterday. You want to know about homework. You ask another student.
- 3. Someone asks you the date. You don't know, but you tell them you'll find out.
- 4. Someone asks you about the weather tomorrow. Is it supposed to be sunny? You haven't heard.
- 5. You're at a clothing store. You're buying a coat and want to know about the return policy. How many days do you have to return it? You ask a salesperson.
- 6. Your friend asks you if you want to go to a movie or watch one at home. Both sound good to you. You tell your friend you don't care which you do.
- 7. You are planning a hiking trip with a friend. This friend wants to bring his dog and asks you if it is OK. It doesn't matter to you.
- 8. You have a late fee on your bill. You want to know why. You call the company and ask.



EXERCISE 18 Warm-up. (Chart 12-4)

Complete the second sentence of each pair with *to get* or *to do*. Is the meaning in each pair the same or different?

- 1. a. Susan doesn't know what she should do.
 - b. Susan doesn't know what _____
- 2. a. She needs to figure out how she will get home.
 - b. She needs to figure out how _____ home.

12-4 Question Words Followed by Infinitives

- (a) I don't know what I should do.
- (b) I don't know what to do.
- (c) Pam can't decide whether she should go or stay home.
- (d) Pam can't decide whether to go or (to) stay home.
- (e) Please tell me how I can get to the bus station.
- (f) Please tell me how to get to the bus station.
- (g) Jim told us where we could find it.
- (h) Jim told us where to find it.

Question words (when, where, how, who, whom, whose, what, which, and whether) may be followed by an infinitive.

What should I do?

I don't have any money

for the bus. How am I going to get home?

Each pair of sentences in the examples has the same meaning.

Notice that the meaning expressed by the infinitive is either **should** or **can/could**.

irLanguage.com

EXERCISE 19 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-4)

Make sentences with the same meaning by using infinitives.

- 1. Sally told me when I should come. \rightarrow Sally told me when to come.
- 2. The plumber told me how I could fix the leak in the sink.
- 3. Please tell me where I should meet you.
- 4. Robert had a long excuse for being late for their date, but Sandy didn't know whether she should believe him or not.
- 5. Jim found two shirts he liked, but he wasn't sure which one he should buy.
- 6. I've done everything I can think of to help Andy get his life turned around. I don't know what else I can do.

EXERCISE 20 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-4)

Complete the sentences with your own words. Use infinitives.

1.	A: I can't decide what to we	ar	to the reception.
	B: How about your green suit?		
2.	A: Do you know how		
	B: No, but I'd like to learn.		
3.	I don't know what		my mom for her birthday. I can't decide
	whether		or
4.	Before you leave on your trip, read this to	our book.	It tells you where
	a	ind what _	cheaply.

EXERCISE 21 > Warm-up. (Chart 12-5)

Check (\checkmark) the grammatically correct sentences.

- 1. \checkmark We know that the planets revolve around the sun.
- 2. ____ Centuries ago, people weren't aware that the planets revolved around the sun.
- 3. ____ That the planets revolve around the sun is now a well-known fact.
- 4. _____ Is clear that the planets revolve around the sun.

Verb + That-Clause	e			
(a) think that Bob will(b) think Bob will com		In (a): <i>that Bob will come</i> is a noun clause. It is used as the object of the verb <i>think</i> . The word <i>that</i> is usually omitted in speaking, as in (b). It is usually included in formal writing.		
		See the list below for verbs commonly followed by a that-clause		
agree that believe that decide that discover that explain that	feel that find out that forget that hear that hope that	know that learn that notice that promise that read that	remember that say that tell someone that think that understand that	
Person + Be + Adj	ective + That-Clause	and and this is a	a surde set diversion of the	
(c) Jan is happy (that)	Bob called.		follow certain adjectives, such as ubject refers to a person (or persons)	
I'm afraid that* I'm amazed that I'm angry that I'm aware that	Al is certain that Al is confident that Al is disappointed that Al is glad that	We're <i>happy</i> that We're <i>pleased</i> that We're <i>proud</i> that We're <i>relieved</i> that	Jan is sorry that Jan is sure that Jan is surprised that Jan is worried that	
It + Be + Adjective	e + That-Clause	an to and any perman	e note chante necesiane	
(d) It is clear (that) Ann	n likes her new job .	<i>Th</i> at-clauses commonly begin with <i>it</i> + <i>be</i> , as in (follow adjectives in sentences that (d). See the list below.	
It's amazing that It's clear that It's good that It's important that	It's <i>interesting</i> that It's <i>likely</i> that It's <i>lucky</i> that It's <i>nice</i> that	It's obvious that It's possible that It's strange that It's surprising that	It's true that It's undeniable that It's well known that It's wonderful that	
That-Clause Used	as a Subject			
(e) That Ann likes her new job is clear.		It is possible but uncommon for <i>that</i> -clauses to be used as the subject of a sentence, as in (e). The word <i>that</i> is not omitted when the <i>that</i> -clause is used as a subject.		
 (f) The fact (that) Ann likes her new job is clear. (g) It is a fact (that) Ann likes her new job. 		More often, a <i>that</i> -clause in the subject position begins with <i>the fact that</i> , as in (f), or is introduced by <i>it is a fact</i> , as in (g).		

* To be afraid has two possible meanings:

(1) It can express fear: I'm afraid of dogs. I'm afraid that his dog will bite me.

(2) It often expresses a meaning similar to "to be sorry": I'm afraid you have the wrong number.



EXERCISE 22 > Let's talk. (Chart 12-5)

Work in pairs, small groups, or as a class. Answer with that-clauses.

- a. What have you recently heard on the news?
 b. What have you recently found out on social media?
- 2. a. What do scientists know for sure?b. What have scientists recently discovered?
- 3. a. What do parents hope for their children?b. What should parents promise their children?
- 4. a. What do many teenagers think?b. What do many adults believe?

EXERCISE 23 > Let's talk: interview. (Chart 12-5)

Interview your classmates. Ask each one a different question. Their answers should follow this pattern: I'm + adjective + that-clause.

Example: What is something in your life that you're glad about? \rightarrow I'm glad that my family is supportive of me.

- 1. What is something that disappointed you in the past?
- 2. What is something that annoys you?
- 3. What is something about your friends that pleases you?
- 4. What is something about nature that amazes you?
- 5. What is something about another culture's traditions that surprises you?
- 6. What is something that you are afraid will happen in the future?
- 7. What is something about your future that you are sure of?

EXERCISE 24 Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-5)

Make noun clauses beginning with *It* and any appropriate word(s) in the box. Make another sentence with the same meaning by using a *that*-clause as the subject.

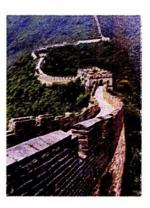
apparent	a pity	surprising	unfair
clear	a shame	too bad	unfortunate
a fact	strange	true	a well-known fact
obvious			

- 1. The world is round.
 - \rightarrow It is a fact that the world is round.
 - \rightarrow That the world is round is a fact.
- 2. Tim hasn't been able to make any friends.
- 3. The earth revolves around the sun.
- 4. Exercise can reduce heart disease.
- 5. Drug abuse can ruin one's health.
- 6. Some women do not earn equal pay for equal work.
- 7. Irene, who is an excellent student, failed her entrance examination.
- 8. English is the principal language of business throughout much of the world.

EXERCISE 25 ► Game. (Chart 12-5)

Work in teams. Agree or disagree with the statements. If you think the statement is true, begin with *It's a fact that*. If you think the statement is false, begin with *It isn't true that*. If you're not sure, guess. Choose one person to write your team's statements. The team with the most correct statements wins.

- 1. <u>It's a fact that</u> most spiders have eight eyes.
- 2. <u>It isn't true that</u> some spiders have twelve legs.
- 3. _____ more men than women are colorblind.
- 4. _____ 25% of the human body is water.
- 5. _____ people's main source of vitamin D is fruit.
- 6. ______ a substance called chlorophyll makes plant leaves green.
- 7. ______ the World Wide Web went online in 2000.
- 8. ______ elephants have the longest pregnancy of
- any land animal.
- 9. _____ the first wheels were made out of stone.
- 10. _____ a diamond is the hardest substance
 - found in nature.
- 11. _____ the Great Wall of China took more than 1,000 years to build.



EXERCISE 26 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-5)

Restate the sentences. Begin with The fact that.

- 1. It's understandable that you feel frustrated. \rightarrow The fact that you feel frustrated is understandable.
- 2. It's undeniable that traffic is getting worse every year.
- 3. It's unfortunate that the city has no funds for the project.
- 4. It's obvious that the two leaders don't respect each other.
- 5. It's a miracle that there were no injuries from the car accident.

EXERCISE 27 > Warm-up. (Chart 12-6)

Look at the quoted speech below. Circle the quotation marks. Is the punctuation inside or outside the quotation marks? In item 3, what do you notice about the punctuation?



- 1. "Watch out!" Mrs. Brooks said.
- 2. "Are you OK?" she asked.
- 3. "You look like you're going to fall off that ladder," she said.

12-6 Quoted Speech

Quoted speech refers to reproducing words exactly as they were originally spoken or written.* Quotation marks (*...? are used.**

Quoting One Sentence	SEA SEAR MARK SALARA SALAR
(a) She said, "My brother is a student."	In (a): Use a comma after she said . Capitalize the first word of the quoted sentence. Put the final quotation marks outside the period at the end of the sentence.
(b) "My brother is a student," she said.	In (b): Use a comma, not a period, at the end of the quoted sentence when it precedes she said .
(c) "My brother," she said, "is a student."	In (c): If the quoted sentence is divided by she said , use a comma after the first part of the quote. Do not capitalize the first word after she said .
Quoting More Than One Sentence	>
(d) "My brother is a student. He is attending university," she said.	a In (d): Quotation marks are placed at the beginning and end of the complete quote. Notice: There are no quotation marks after <i>student</i> .
(e) "My brother is a student," she said. "He is attending a university."	In (e): Since <i>she said</i> comes between two quoted sentences, the second sentence begins with quotation marks and a capital letter.
Quoting a Question or an Exclamat	ion
(f) She asked, "When will you be here?"	In (f): The question mark is inside the closing quotation marks since it is part of the quotation.
(g) "When will you be here?" she asked.	In (g): Since a question mark is used, no comma is used before she asked .
(h) She said, "Watch out!"	In (h): The exclamation point is inside the closing quotation marks.
(i) "My brother is a student," said Anna."My brother," said Anna, "is a student."	In (i): The noun subject (<i>Anna</i>) follows <i>said</i> . A noun subject often follows the verb when the subject and verb come in the middle or at the end of a quoted sentence.
	NOTE: A pronoun subject almost always precedes the verb. <i>"My brother is a student,"</i> she said . VERY RARE: <i>"My brother is a student,"</i> said she .
(j) "Let's leave," whispered Dave.	Say and ask are the most commonly used quote verbs.
 (k) "Please help me," <i>begged</i> the homeless m (1) "Well," Jack <i>began</i>, "it's a long story." 	

*Quoted speech is also called "direct speech." Reported speech (discussed in Chart 12-7) is also called "indirect speech."

**In British English, quotation marks are called "inverted commas" and can consist of either double marks (") or a single mark ('): She said, 'My brother is a student'.

EXERCISE 28 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-6)

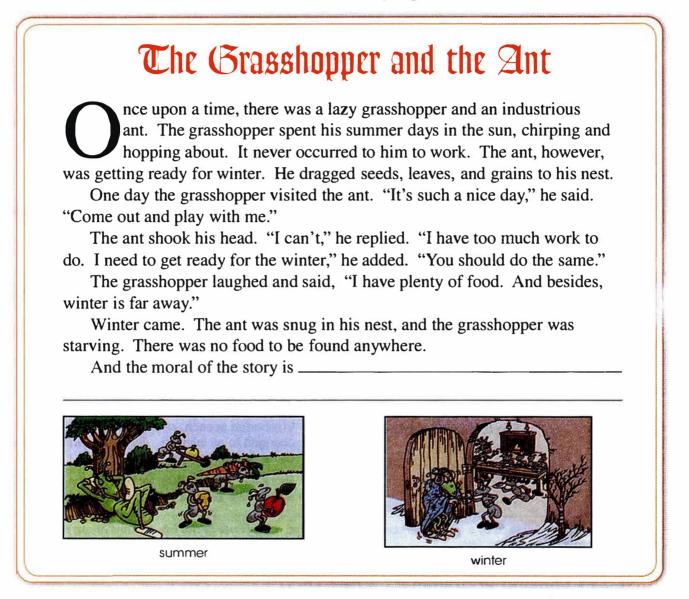
Add punctuation and capitalization.

- 1. Henry said there is a phone call for you
- 2. There is a phone call for you he said
- 3. There is said Henry a phone call for you

- 4. There is a phone call for you it's your sister said Henry
- 5. There is a phone call for you he said it's your sister
- 6. I asked him where is the phone
- 7. Where is the phone she asked

EXERCISE 29 ▶ Reading and writing. (Chart 12-6)

Part I. Read the fable. (Fables are stories that teach a lesson.) Then work with a partner and look at the punctuation in each quotation. Explain why some sentences have commas and some have periods. Write the lesson or moral at the end of the story together.



Part II. Write a fable that is well known in your country. Use quoted speech. Read your fable to a partner or small group.

EXERCISE 30 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 12-7)

Look at the words in blue. Do you know why two verbs are present and one is past?

WEATHER REPORTER: "A strong storm is coming."

- a. She just said that a strong storm is coming.
- b. She has said that a strong storm is coming.
- c. She said yesterday that a strong storm was coming.

Noun Clauses 261



12-7 Reported Speech

Quoted speech uses a person's exact words, and it is set off by quotation marks. Reported speech uses a noun clause to report what someone has said. No quotation marks are used. NOTE: This chart presents general guidelines to follow. You may encounter variations.

	Quoted Speec	h Reported Speech	Continu bas galburd 4.43 an UX
(a)	"The world is round	." → She said (that) the world <i>is</i> round.	The present tense is used when the reported sentence deals with a general truth, as in (a). <i>That</i> is optional; it is more common in writing than speaking.
(b)	"I work at night."	→ He says he works at night. He has said that he works at night. He will say that he works at night.	When the reporting verb is simple present, present perfect, or future, the verb in the noun clause does not change.
(c) (d) (e) (f) (g)		 → He said he worked at night. → He said he was working. → He said he worked/had worked. → He said he had worked. → He said he had worked. 	If the reporting verb (e.g., said) is simple past, the verb in the noun clause will <i>usually</i> be in a past form. Here are some general guidelines: simple present \rightarrow simple past present continuous \rightarrow past continuous simple past \rightarrow no change or past perfect present perfect \rightarrow past perfect \rightarrow no change
(h)		ng: acher just say? I didn't hear him. ts us to read Chapter 6.	In spoken English, if the speaker is reporting something immediately or soon after it was said, no change is made in the noun clause verb.
(i)	assignments?	ass yesterday. Did Mr. Jones give any e wanted us to read Chapter 6.	
(j)	"Leave."	→ She told me to leave.	In reported speech, an imperative sentence is changed to an infinitive. <i>Tell</i> is used instead of <i>say</i> as the reporting verb.* See Chart 14-4, p. 308, for other verbs followed by an infinitive that are used to report speech.

*Note: Tell is immediately followed by a (pro)noun object, but say is not: He told me he was late. He said he was late. Also possible: He said to me he was late.

EXERCISE 31 Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-7)

Change the quoted speech to indirect speech.

Overheard in the Elevator

- 1. LARRY: "Jason and Liz are engaged."
 - a. Larry says _____ Jason and Liz are engaged
 - b. Larry has said ______
 - c. Larry said _____

- 2. TEACHING ASSISTANT: "Not many in the class have a passing grade."
 - a. The teaching assistant said ______
 - b. The teaching assistant says _____
 - c. The teaching assistant will say _____
- 3. SOMEONE: "There are 1,440 minutes in a day."
 - a. Someone said ______
 - b. Someone says _____

EXERCISE 32 > Let's talk. (Chart 12-7)

Work with a partner. Take turns completing the sentences with noun clauses.

A Restaurant

- 1. "Your order is ready," said the waiter. \rightarrow The waiter said our order was ready.
- 2. "I'm having the special," Mustafa said.
- 3. "We went there for our anniversary," my parents said.
- 4. "I went to school with the chef," my dad said.
- 5. I talked to Noor yesterday. She said, "I'm going to join you for lunch."
- 6. I just talked to Noor. She said, "I'm going to join you for lunch."
- 7. Mustafa said, "I have never tasted such a delicious dessert."
- 8. A customer said, "There is a mistake on our bill."

EXERCISE 33 Looking at grammar. (Charts 12-3 and 12-7)

Change the quoted speech to reported speech.

At a Meeting

- 1. Talal asked Leo, "Do you want to begin?" -> Talal asked Leo if/whether he wanted to begin.
- 2. Maria asked us, "Have you seen my notes?"
- 3. Oscar asked me, "What are you talking about?"
- 4. "Does the decision need to be made today?" asked David.
- 5. Lillian asked, "Is everyone sure this is the right decision?"
- 6. Ricardo asked me, "Is what you are saying true?"

EXERCISE 34 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-7)

Complete the sentences with *said* or *told*.

ATV News Station

- 1. The owner ______ that he wanted a more interesting newscast.
- 2. He _____ the TV ratings were dropping.
- 3. He _____ the director needed to work hard to improve the ratings
- 4. The director _____ him that she felt the newscast needed more investigative reporting.
- 5. A reporter ______ he had just finished a report on government corruption.
- 6. She _____ him to do a longer series on the topic.



EXERCISE 35 ► Warm-up. (Chart 12-8)

Complete the description of Alicia and George's conversation.



Alicia said she ______ find her glasses and that she ______ leave. George told her that they were on her head.

12-8	Reported	Speech: Modal Ver	bs in Noun Clauses
	n go." ay go."	 → She said she could go. → She said she may/might go. 	The following modal and phrasal modal verbs* change when the reporting verb is in the past:
(c) "I mu	ust go."	\rightarrow She said she <i>had to go</i> .	can> could
(d) "I ha	ve to go."	\rightarrow She said she <i>had to go</i> .	may -→ may/might
(e) "I wil	l go."	→ She said she would go.	must 😁 had to
. ,	going to go."	→ She said she was going to go	have to \rightarrow had to
	r going to go.	· She said she was going to go	· will → would
			am/is/are going to> was/were going to
(g) "I <u>sh</u>	ould go."	→ She said she should go.	The following modals do not change when the reporting
(h) "I ou	i <mark>ght</mark> to go."	\rightarrow She said she ought to go.	verb is in the past:
(i) "I <i>mi</i>	ght go."	→ She said she <i>might go</i> .	should ought to might

*See Chart 9-1, p. 162, for an explanation of modal and phrasal modal verbs.

EXERCISE 36 ▶ Let's talk. (Chart 12-8)

Students A and B will have a short conversation. Your teacher will ask other students about it.

Example:

STUDENT A: What time can you go?

STUDENT B: Two-thirty.

TEACHER: What did Manuel (Student A) want to know?

STUDENT C: He wanted to know what time he could go.

TEACHER: What did Helen (Student B) say?

STUDENT D: She told him that he could go at two-thirty.

1. STUDENT A: Can you speak Arabic?

Student B: ____.

TEACHER: What did (Student A) ask?

What did (Student B) say?

2.	Student B:	Where will you be tomorrow at three o'clock? What did (<i>Student A</i>) ask? What did (<i>Student B</i>) say?	
3.		Will you be on time for your next class?	
		I may	
	I EACHER:	What did (Student A) ask? What did (Student B) say?	
4.	STUDENT A:	What might happen in the future?	
	Student B:	·	
	TEACHER:	What did (Student A) want to know? What did (Student B) say?	
5.	STUDENT A:	What should we study after Chapter 12 of this book?	
	Student B:	·	
	TEACHER:	What did (Student A) want to know?	
		What did (Student B) tell (Student A)?	

EXERCISE 37 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 12-7 and 12-8)

Complete the conversations with a past form of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. A: The test is scheduled for Monday.
 - B: Really? I heard it (schedule) ______ for Tuesday.
- 2. A: Mikhail can't come tonight.
 - B: Are you sure? I heard he (can) ______ come tonight.
- 3. A: It's raining outside.
 - B: Really? I thought it (snow) _____.
- 4. A: Tony has to get a passport.
 - B: Are you sure? I heard he (has) ______ to get a visa.
- 5. A: Marita hasn't applied for a job yet.
 - B: That's not what I heard. I heard she (*apply*) ______ for work at her uncle's company.
- 6. A: Ms. Alvarez is going to retire.
 - B: Really? I thought she (*continue*) ______ in her sales position for another year.

EXERCISE 38 > Listening. (Charts 12-7 and 12-8)

Listen to the sentences. Complete them using past verb forms to report the speech that you hear.

- 1. The speaker said that she <u>wasn't going</u> to the personnel meeting because she <u>had to</u> finish a report.
- 2. The speaker said that he _____ Marta any money because his

wallet ______ in his coat pocket back at home.

3.	The speaker said that someone	e in the room	very strong perfume
	and it	her a headache.	P.
4.	The speaker said that he		_ Emma at the coffee shop at 9:00.
	He said he	_ not to be late.	
5.	The speaker said she		looking for a new job and asked her
	friend what he	she	
6.	The speaker said that they		late for the concert
	because his wife	a busir	ness function after work.

EXERCISE 39 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 12-7 and 12-8)

Change quoted speech to reported speech. Study the example carefully and use the same pattern: *said that* ... *and that*.

- "My father is a businessman. My mother is an engineer."
 He said that ______ his father was a businessman and that his mother was an engineer.
- "I'm excited about my new job. I've found a nice apartment."
 I got an email from my sister yesterday. She said ______
- "Highway 66 will be closed for two months. Commuters should seek alternate routes." The newspaper said ______
- "Every obstacle is a steppingstone to success. You should view problems in your life as opportunities to prove yourself." My father often told me



EXERCISE 40 \blacktriangleright Writing. (Charts 12-1 \rightarrow 12-8)

Read each conversation and write a report about it. Your report should include an accurate idea of the speaker's words, but it doesn't have to use the exact words.

Example: JACK: I can't go to the game next week. TOM: Really? Why not? JACK: I don't have enough money for a ticket. Possible written reports:

- → Jack told Tom that he couldn't go to the game next week because he didn't have enough money for a ticket.
- → When Tom asked Jack why he couldn't go to the game next week, Jack said he didn't have enough money for a ticket.
- → Jack said he couldn't go to the game next week. When Tom asked him why, Jack replied that he didn't have enough money for a ticket.
 - 1. ALEX: What are you doing? LEA: I'm drawing a picture.
 - 2. ASAKO: Do you want to go to a movie Sunday night? MARTA: I'd like to, but I have to study.
 - JOHNNY: How old are you, Mrs. Robinson?
 MRS. ROBINSON: It's not polite to ask people their age.
 JOHNNY: How much money do you make?
 MRS. ROBINSON: That's impolite too.

EXERCISE 41 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 12-9)

Choose the correct verb in each sentence.

- 1. It's important that we be / are on time to our own wedding!
- 2. My brother insists that he speak / speaks at our wedding dinner.

12	-9 The Subjun			
 (a) The teacher <i>demands</i> that we <i>be</i> on time. (b) I <i>insisted</i> that he <i>pay</i> me the money. (c) I <i>recommended</i> that she <i>not go</i> to the concert. (d) It is <i>important</i> that they <i>be told</i> the truth. 		<i>importance or urgency. I</i> simple form of a verb. It future forms; it is neither verb is used in <i>that</i> -claus expressions listed at the In (a): be is a subjunctive In (b): pay (not pays, not in its simple form, even the Negative: not + simple form	Sentences with subjunctive verbs generally stress importance or urgency. A subjunctive verb uses the simple form of a verb. It does not have present, past, or future forms; it is neither singular nor plural. A subjunctive verb is used in <i>that</i> -clauses with the verbs and expressions listed at the bottom of this chart. In (a): be is a subjunctive verb; its subject is we . In (b): pay (not pays, not paid) is a subjunctive verb; it is in its simple form, even though its subject (he) is singular. Negative: not + simple form, as in (c). Passive: simple form of be + past participle, as in (d).	
(e) I suggested/recommended that she see a doctor.(f) I suggested/recommended that she should see a doctor.			fter suggest and recommend .*	
Co	mmon verbs and expres	ssions followed by the sub	junctive in a noun clause	
	advise (that) ask (that) demand (that) insist (that)	propose (that) recommend (that) request (that) suggest (that)	it is essential (that) it is imperative (that) it is important (that)	it is critical (that) it is necessary (that) it is vital (that)

*The subjunctive is more common in American English than British English. In British English, *should* + *simple form* is more usual than the subjunctive: *The teacher insists that we should be on time*.

EXERCISE 42 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-9)

Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

In a Courtroom

- 1. The court clerk has advised that everyone (*stand up*) <u>stand up</u> when the judge enters the room.
- It is essential that people (*turn off*) ______ their cell phones.
- 3. It is important that everyone (*dress*) ______ appropriately for court.
- The clerk has asked that the witness (*tell*) ______
 the truth and nothing but the truth.



- 5. The jury has asked that the judge (*explain*) ______ the instructions one more time.
- 6. The judge insisted that everyone (be) _____ quiet when the verdict was read.

EXERCISE 43 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-9)

Choose the correct verb. Some are active and some are passive.

Naming a Baby

- 1. The hospital requested that the parents provide / be provided a name for the birth certificate.
- 2. The grandparents insisted that the baby give / be given a traditional name.
- 3. A sibling asked that the parents choose / be chosen a popular name.
- 4. A cousin suggested that the baby name / be named after a great-grandmother.
- 5. The parents requested that they allow / be allowed to choose a name without any outside help.

EXERCISE 44 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-9)

Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb. Use the words in the box. Some are active and some are passive. NOTE: *share* is used twice.

lock share show up turn off use wear

Work Rules

- 1. It is important that everyone ______ for work on time.
- 2. It is critical that everyone ______ an ID badge while at work.
- 3. It is vital that employees not ______ computer passwords with other employees.
- 4. It is vital that computer passwords not ______ by employees.
- 5. It is important that the heat ______ in offices at the end of the day.
- 6. It is imperative that the last person out of the office ______ the door.
- Management has requested that employees not ______ social media for personal purposes during work hours.



EXERCISE 45 ► Check your knowledge. (Chapter 12 Review) Correct the errors.

1. Tell the taxi driver where do you want to go.

- 2. My roommate came into the room and asked me why aren't you in class? I said I am waiting for a telephone call from my family.
- 3. It was my first day at the university, and I am on my way to my first class. I wondered who else will be in the class. What the teacher would be like?
- 4. My professor asked me that what did I intend to do after I graduate?
- 5. What does a patient tell a doctor it is confidential.
- 6. What my friend and I did it was our secret. We didn't even tell our parents what did we do.
- 7. The doctor asked that I felt OK. I told him that I don't feel well.
- 8. I asked him what kind of movies does he like, he said me, I like romantic movies.
- 9. Is true you almost drowned? my friend asked me. Yes, I said. I'm really glad to be alive. It was really frightening.
- 10. It is a fact that I almost drowned makes me very careful about water safety when I go swimming.
- 11. I didn't know where am I supposed to get off the bus, so I asked the driver where is the science museum. She tell me the name of the street. She said she will tell me when should I get off the bus.
- 12. My mother did not live with us. When other children asked me where was my mother, I told them she is going to come to visit me very soon.
- 13. When I asked the taxi driver to drive faster, he said I will drive faster if you pay me more. At that time I didn't care how much would it cost, so I told him to go as fast as he can.
- 14. My parents told me is essential to know English if I want to study at an American university.

EXERCISE 46 Reading and writing. (Chapter 12 Review)

Part I. Read the passage. <u>Underline</u> the three noun clauses. Which one has the subjunctive?

Plagiarism

Simon is researching the topic of cell phone radiation for a term paper. He has found extensive information on the Internet. One paragraph in particular gives easy-to-understand information about radiation transmission. Simon is pleased that the information is very clear and pastes it into his paper. However, he changes the font so that it matches the rest of his paper.

What Simon has just done is commit plagiarism — the copying of someone else's work without citing the source. Think of it as the stealing of ideas. In the Internet age, it is very easy to copy and paste information into a paper. Colleges and universities have strict policies regarding plagiarism. In some cases, schools may fail or expel a student for plagiarism.

Generally plagiarism is explained in the student handbook. Many schools have "honor codes" that students agree to follow. It is essential that every student know the school policy regarding plagiarism.





Part II. Research information about the plagiarism policy at your school. If your school doesn't have a policy, choose a university in an English-speaking country to research. Write a paragraph summarizing the information. Use at least one noun clause with the subjunctive in your paragraph.

EXERCISE 47 ► Reading and writing. (Chapter 12)

Part I. Read the paragraph from a U.S. government website.*

Cell Phones and the Brain

Scientists are looking into a possible link between cell phone use and certain types of tumors. One type is called an acoustic neuroma ("ah-COOS-tik nur-OH-ma"). This type of tumor grows on the nerve that connects the ear to the brain. It doesn't cause cancer, but it may lead to other health problems, like hearing loss. Another type scientists are looking into is called a glioma ("glee-OH-ma"). This is a tumor found in the brain or central nervous system of the body.



*Source: http://www.cdc.gov/nceh/radiation/cell_phones._FAQ.html

Part II. Now read two paraphrases of the paragraph. One way to avoid plagiarism is to paraphrase information — to express an author's ideas in your own words. What differences do you see between the two paraphrases? Which paraphrase seems most appropriate to you? Consider the following questions and discuss your opinions with your classmates:

- 1. In which paraphrase have the ideas been put into the writer's own words, without copying the sentence structure or the vocabulary of the original?
- 2. Which paraphrase uses synonyms for key words, while keeping a sentence structure similar to the original?

Paraphrase 1

Scientists are not sure if cell phones cause tumors, but they are looking at two types: an acoustic neuroma and a glioma. The first tumor doesn't cause cancer, but it can cause hearing problems. The second, a glioma, grows in the brain or central nervous system.

Paraphrase 2

Researchers are investigating a potential connection between cell phone usage and different kinds of tumors. One kind is named an acoustic neuroma. This kind of tumor is on the nerve between the ear and the brain. It's not the cause of cancer, but it may be responsible for other health issues, like deafness. Another kind researchers are investigating is a glioma. This is in the brain or central nervous system of the human body.

In the second case, the writer has supplied synonyms for key words, but the sentence structure is the same. It is too similar to the original and is therefore not acceptable.

Part III. Find a paragraph on a topic you are interested in and paraphrase it. Use at least one noun clause in your writing.

WRITING TIP

A helpful strategy for paraphrasing is to read a passage several times and take notes. Then try not to look at your notes when you write so that you can express the information in your own words. When you are finished, compare your paraphrase with your notes to make sure you have covered everything.

Part IV. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box all sentences contain a subject and a verb
- 2. \Box use of one or more noun clauses in your paragraph
- 3. \Box use of a singular subject when the noun clause begins the sentence
- 4. \Box correct word order in noun clauses (statement word order)
- 5. \Box correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Go to the Essential Online Resources for Self-Study: Gerunds and Infinitives 12

CHAPTER 133 Adjective Clauses

PRETEST: What do I already know?

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct sentence structure and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. _____ I enjoyed listening to the tour guide that took us around the city. (13-1)
- 2. ____ The gift is for you that is on the coffee table. (13-1)
- 3. _____ A movie a friend recommended it turned out to be very entertaining. (13-2)
- 4. ____ There is the professor from whom I received the award. (13-3)
- 5. ____ I spoke with a couple who his son created a popular social media app. (13-4)
- 6. ____ Each hotel room has a safe which you can keep your valuables. (13-5)
- 7. _____ I'll never forget the moment when I first met your dad. (13-6)
- 8. ____ Anyone wants to volunteer is welcome to come. (13-7)
- 9. ____ Is everything your lawyer says true? (13-7)
- 10. _____ Indonesia, that consists of thousands of islands, is the fourth most populated country in the world. (13-8)
- 11. ____ In my chemistry study group, there are eight students, two of whom are repeating the class. (13-9)
- 12. ____ The apartment building has ten floors and no elevator, which it will be a challenge for me. (13-10)

Incorrect sentences: 2, 3, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12

EXERCISE 1 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 13-1)

The sentences are all correct. The words in blue are all pronouns. What nouns do they refer to? How does the noun affect the choice of the pronoun?

- 1. a. A ring floated past a diver. She was exploring some undersea rocks.
 - b. A ring floated past a diver who was exploring some undersea rocks.
 - c. A ring floated past a diver that was exploring some undersea rocks.
- 2. a. The diver saw a ring. It was sinking to the bottom of the sea.b. The diver saw a ring that was sinking to the bottom of the sea.
 - c. The diver saw a ring which was sinking to the bottom of the sea.



272 CHAPTER 13

13-1 Adjective Clause Pronouns U	Jsed as the Subject
I thanked the woman She helped me. ↓ a) I thanked the woman b) I thanked the woman that helped me. The book is mine. It is on the table. ↓ c) The book that is on the table is mine. d) The book which is on the table is mine.	In (a): I thanked the woman = a main clause who helped me = an adjective clause* An adjective clause modifies a noun. In (a): the adjective clause modifies woman. In (a): who is the subject of the adjective clause. In (b): that is the subject of the adjective clause. Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning. In speaking, who and that are both commonly used as subject pronouns to describe people. Who is more common in writing. Examples (c) and (d) have the same meaning. In contemporary American English, that is preferred to which.** In British English, that and which are used interchangeably. SUMMARY: who = used for people that = used for both people and things which = used for things
 (e) CORRECT: The book that is on the table is mine. (f) INCORRECT: The book is mine that is on the table. 	An adjective clause closely follows the noun it modifies.

*See Chapter 12 for information about clauses.

** Which must be used in nonrestrictive clauses in both American and British English. See Chart 13-8.

EXERCISE 2 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-1)

Choose <u>all</u> the possible completions for each sentence. Do not add commas or capital letters.

Identity Theft

- 1. I read a scary article _____ detailed how easy it is for someone to steal your ID.
 - a. who (b.) that c. it d. \emptyset
- 2. People _____ own a smartphone have a higher rate of identify theft. a. who b. that c. which d. Ø
- 3. The article mentioned one thief _____ enjoys the challenge of hacking. He does it for fun.
 a. who
 b. that
 c. he
 d. Ø
- 4. A fact _____ surprised me is that online thieves are rarely caught.
 a. who
 b. that
 c. it
 d. Ø

EXERCISE 3 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-1)

Combine the two sentences with who or that. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

On a Subway

- 1. I know the girl. She is sleeping. $\rightarrow I$ know the girl $\begin{cases} who \\ that \end{cases}$ is sleeping.
- 2. The guy is in my math class. He is talking loudly on his phone.

- 3. The passenger is from Argentina. He is sitting next to me.
- 4. The students are from Turkey. They are standing behind us.
- 5. We are going on a route. It is very crowded in the mornings.
- 6. The train often breaks down. We are on it.

EXERCISE 4 Let's talk. (Chart 13-1)

Make true sentences by using a word or phrase from each column. Use who or that.

I like to spend time with I don't like to spend time with	friends classmates co-workers adults people	work hard. like a lot of rules. exercise every day. are smarter than me. tell lies. are quiet. talk a lot. talk about themselves a lot. like to relax. are serious. tell a lot of jokes.
--	---	--

EXERCISE 5 > Listening. (Chart 13-1)

Part I. When *who* is contracted with an auxiliary verb, the contraction is often hard to hear. Listen to the following sentences. What is the full, uncontracted form of the *italicized* verb?

- 1. He has a friend who'll help him. (full form = who will)
- 2. He has a friend who's helping him.
- 3. He has a friend who's helped him.
- 4. He has friends who're helping him.

- 5. He has friends who've helped him.
- 6. He has a friend who'd helped him.
- 7. He has a friend *who'd* like to help him.
- 8. He has a friend who's been helping him.

Part II. Complete the sentences with the verbs you hear, but write the full, uncontracted form of each verb.

Example: You will hear: I work with a man who's lived in 20 different countries.

You will write: I work with a man who <u>has lived</u> in 20 different countries.

- 1. We know a person who ______ great for the job.
- 2. We know a person who ______ to apply for the job.
- 3. That's the man who ______ to our department.
- 4. I know of three people who _______ to transfer to another location.
- 5. I'd like to talk to the people who ______ to move.
- 6. There are two people at this company who ______ here all their adult lives.
- 7. The manager who ______ from the company quit.

EXERCISE 6 Game. (Chart 13-1)

Work in teams. Make sentences using **who** or **that**. One team member can write them down. The team that finishes first with the most correct answers wins.



At the Dentist

Example: 1. A dentist is a person who/that treats problems with teeth.

- 1. A dentist is a person <u>e</u>.
- 2. A dental hygienist is a person _____.
- 3. A cavity is a part of the tooth _____.
- 4. A filling is a material _____.
- 5. Novocain is a drug _____.
- 6. A crown is an artificial covering _____.
- 7. Braces are a device _____.
- 8. Orthodontists are dentists _____.
- 9. Pediatric dentists are dentists _____.

- a. is decayed
- b. straightens teeth
- c. is put into a cavity
- d. treat children
- \checkmark e. weats problems with teeth
 - f. put braces on teeth
 - g. cleans teeth
 - h. is put around a tooth
 - i. numbs the tooth area so the patient doesn't feel pain

EXERCISE 7 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 13-2)

Work with a partner. Read the passage and complete the sentences using the correct verb forms.

William has been a stay-at-home dad for the last seven years, but now both children are in school, and he's going back to work. He's looking for a job that will still allow him to spend time with his children. What kind of job do you think he is looking for?

He is looking for a job that ... OR He is not looking for a job that ...

- 1. leave him free on weekends
- 2. require him to work on weekends
- 3. include a lot of long-distance travel
- 4. have a long commute
- 5. be close to home
- 6. have flexible hours



13-2 Adjective Clause Pronouns Used as the Object of a Verb

The man was Mr. Jones. I saw <i>him</i> . ↓	Notice in the examples: The adjective clause P pronouns are placed at the beginning of the clause.
 (a) The man who(m) / saw was Mr. Jones. (b) The man that / saw was Mr. Jones. (c) The man Ø / saw was Mr. Jones. 	In (a): <i>who</i> is usually used instead of <i>whom</i> , especially in speaking. <i>Whom</i> is generally used only in very formal English.
The movie wasn't very good. We saw <i>it</i> last night. ↓	In (c) and (e): An object pronoun is often omitted (Ø) from an adjective clause. (A subject pronoun, however, may not be omitted.)
(d) The moviethatwe saw last nightwasn't very good.(e) The movieØwe saw last nightwasn't very good.(f) The moviewhichwe saw last nightwasn't very good.	As an object pronoun for people, <i>that</i> is more common than <i>who</i> , but Ø is the most common in speaking and writing.
	To describe things, <i>that</i> and \emptyset are the most common in speaking. In writing, <i>that</i> is the most common, and \emptyset is rare.
	SUMMARY: who(m) = used for people that = used for both people and things which = used for things (common in British English but not in contemporary American English)
(g) INCORRECT: The man who(m) I saw him was Mr. Jones. The man that I saw him was Mr. Jones. The man I saw him was Mr. Jones.	In (g): The pronoun <i>him</i> must be removed. It is unnecessary because $who(m)$, that, or \emptyset functions as the object of the verb saw .

EXERCISE 8 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-2)

Decide if the word in blue is a subject or object pronoun.

Online Reviews

1. Did you read the online reviews that were written by fake customers?	S	0
2. Every review that I read gave the product five stars.	S	0
3. All the writers that posted this week were paid to write a positive review.	S	0
4. The reviewers that gave five stars used similar vocabulary and sentence structure.	S	0
5. I've decided not to buy products that this particular company makes.	S	0

EXERCISE 9 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-2)

Choose <u>all</u> the possible completions for each sentence. Do not add commas or capital letters.

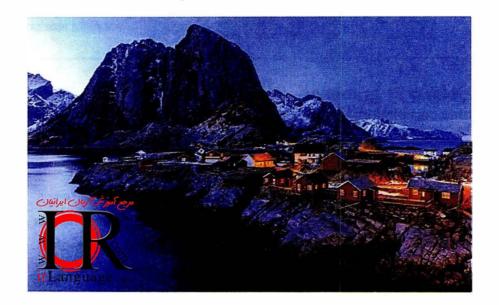
Your Trip

- 1. Tell me about the people _____ you met when you were in Norway.(a) who(b) that(c. they(d) whom(e) Ø
- 2. Was the hotel _____ you found on the Internet a nice play to stay?
 a. who
 b. that
 c. it
 d. whom
 e. Ø

276 CHAPTER 13



- 3. Did you see your Norwegian friend _____ you met in college?
 a. who
 b. that
 c. he
 d. whom
 e. Ø
- 4. Tell me about the other cities _____ you went to.
 a. who
 b. that
 c. they
 d. whom
 e. Ø
- 5. Have you downloaded all the pictures _____ you took yet?
 a. who
 b. that
 c. they
 d. whom
 e. Ø
- 6. Did you find the Norwegian phrases _____ you had learned before you left helpful?
 a. who
 b. that
 c. they
 d. whom
 e. Ø
- 7. I'd like to know more about your cousins _____ you visited in the fishing village. a. who b. that c. they d. whom e. Ø



EXERCISE 10 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-2)

Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause. Give <u>all</u> the possible patterns, orally or in writing. Use *who, that*, or \emptyset .

Recommendations

- 1. The book was good. You suggested I read it. \rightarrow The book that / Ø you suggested I read was good.
- 2. I bought the TV. A consumer guide rated it highly.
- 3. The doctor was very helpful. You advised me to see him.
- 4. The tour guide recommended a restaurant. His cousin owns it.
- 5. I didn't like the plumber. My friend told me to call him.

EXERCISE 11 > Warm-up. (Chart 13-3)

Compare the <u>underlined</u> adjective clause in sentence a. with the one in sentence b. What differences do you notice? NOTE: Both sentences are correct.

- 1. a. I think Lee is a person who you can have fun with.
 - b. Do you think Lee is a person with whom you can have fun?
- 2. a. The art school which Lori applied to is very demanding.
 - b. Do you know the name of the art school to which Lori applied?

13-3 Adjective Clause Pronouns Used as the Object of a Preposition

	She is the I told you	e woman. <i>about her.</i> ↓			In very formal English, the preposition comes at the beginning of the adjective clause, as in (a) and (e). Usually, however, in everyday usage, the
(a)	She is the woman	about whom	I told you.		preposition comes after the subject and verb of
(b)	She is the woman	who(m)	I told you abou	<i>t</i> .	the adjective clause, as in the other examples.
(C)	She is the woman	that	I told you abou	t	
(d)	She is the woman	Ø	I told you abou	<i>t</i> .	NOTE: If the preposition comes at the beginning of the adjective clause, only whom or which may
	The music was g We listened <i>to it</i>				be used. A preposition is never immediately followed by <i>that</i> or <i>who</i> .
	Ļ				INCORRECT: She is the woman about who
(e)	The music to whic	h we listened	d last night	was good.	l told you.
(f) (g) (h)	The musicthatThe musicØThe musicwhich	we listened we listened we listened	d to last night	was good. was good. was good.	INCORRECT: The music to that we listened last night was good.

EXERCISE 12 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-3)

Choose all the possible completions for each sentence. Which one seems the most formal?

- 1. The scholarship _____ requires an essay.
 - a. that they are applying for
 - b. they are applying for
 - c. they are applying
 - d. they are applying for it
 - e. for which they are applying

- 2. The counselor <u>had sample essays</u>.
 - a. who they spoke to
 - b. that they spoke to
 - c. who they spoke to her
 - d. to whom they spoke
 - e. to who they spoke
 - f. they spoke to

EXERCISE 13 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-3)

Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause. Give <u>all</u> the possible patterns, orally or in writing.

- 1. The man is standing over there. I was telling you about him.
- 2. I must thank the people. I got a present from them.
- 3. The meeting was interesting. Omar went to it.

EXERCISE 14 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Charts 13-1 → 13-3)

Give all the possible completions for each sentence. Use who, that, or Ø.

A Party

- 1. a. Did I tell you about the party <u>that $/\emptyset$ </u> I went to last night?
 - b. Did I tell you about the party <u>that</u> lasted until early morning?
- 2. a. I want to tell you about a woman ______ I met at the party.
 - b. I want to tell you about the woman ______ hosted the party.

*Ø cannot be used for the subject position.

3. a. She works for a company ______ is hiring. She told me to apply.

- b. She said the company ______ she works for is excellent.
- 4. a. A man ______ I was dancing with stepped on my toes.
 - b. The man ______ stepped on my toes also tripped and fell down.
- 5. a. My boyfriend wasn't at the party. He attended an event ______ was raising money for an animal shelter.
 - b. We should donate to the animal shelter ______ he is supporting.

EXERCISE 15 ► Check your knowledge. (Charts 13-1 → 13-3)

Correct the errors in the adjective clauses.

- 1. In our village, there were many people didn't have much money.
- 2. I enjoyed the book that you told me to read it.
- 3. I still remember the man who he taught me to play the guitar when I was a boy.
- 4. I showed my father a picture of the car I am going to buy it as soon as I save enough money.
- 5. The man about who I was talking about walked into the room. I hope he didn't hear me.
- 6. The people appear in the play are amateur actors.
- 7. I don't like to spend time with people which loses their temper easily.
- 8. In one corner of the marketplace, an elderly man who was playing a violin.
- 9. People who works in the hunger program they estimate that 45,000 people worldwide die from starvation and malnutrition-related diseases every single day of the year.

EXERCISE 16 ► Let's talk: pairwork. (Charts 13-1 → 13-3)

Work with a partner. Take turns making statements that end in adjective clauses. Use words from each column and *who*, *that*, or \emptyset . Try to make the sentences true for you.

On Airplanes

Example: I enjoy people who like to have fun.

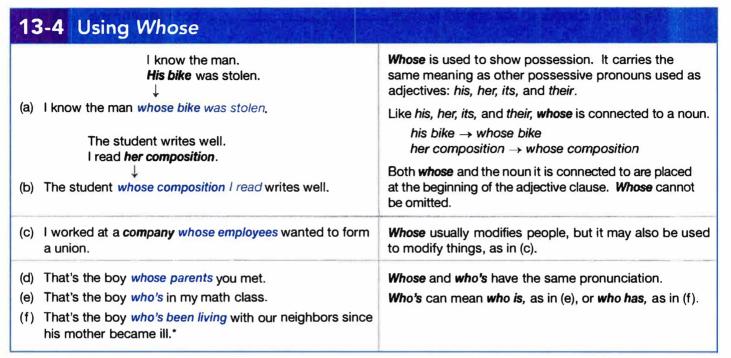
I enjoy I dislike I like to sit next to I like to talk to I don't like to talk to	flights people friends passengers pilots movies books	are scary. have subtitles. have had interesting experiences. are short. are long. are long-winded.* make me think. like to have fun. are sleeping. want to know more about me. are talkative. are busy doing other things.
---	---	---

*long-winded = boring because they talk too much

EXERCISE 17 • Warm-up. (Chart 13-4)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that are grammatically correct.

- 1. ____ I have a friend. His purpose in life is to help others.
- 2. ____ I have a friend whose purpose in life is to help others.
- 3. _____ I have a friend who his purpose in life is to help others.
- 4. _____ I have a friend that his purpose in life is to help others.



*When **has** is a helping verb in the present perfect, it is usually contracted with **who** in speaking and sometimes in informal writing, as in (f).

When has is a main verb, it is NOT contracted with who: I know a man who has a cook.

EXERCISE 18 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-4)

Change the words in blue to a clause with whose.

1.	A co-worker drives an old taxi to work.		
	Her parents own a taxi company.		
	\downarrow		
A co-worker	own a taxi company drives an old taxi to work.		
2.	The workers got a bonus.		
	Their department had the most sales.		
The workers	had the most sales got a bonus.		
3.	The hospital is temporarily closed.		
	Its health-care workers are on strike.		
	\downarrow		
The hospital	is temporarily closed.		



EXERCISE 19 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-4)

Complete the sentences with *who* or *whose*.

Acquaintances

- 1. a. I know a doctor ______ last name is Doctor.
 - b. I know a doctor ______ lives on a sailboat.
- 2. a. The professor ______ teaches art history is excellent.
 - b. The professor ______ course I almost dropped is excellent.
- 3. a. I apologized to the man ______ coffee I spilled.
 - b. I made friends with that man ______ is now in my math class.

EXERCISE 20 > Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 13-4)

Work with a partner. Imagine you are in a room full of people. You and your partner are speaking. Together, take turns identifying various people in the room. Begin with *There is*.

- 1. That man's wife is your teacher. \rightarrow PARTNER A: There is the man whose wife is my teacher.
- 2. That woman's husband is a football player. → PARTNER B: There is the woman whose husband is a football player.
- 3. That girl's mother is a surgeon.
- 4. That person's picture was in the newspaper.
- 5. That woman's car was stolen.
- 6. You found that woman's keys.
- 7. You are in that teacher's class.
- 8. You read that author's book.

EXERCISE 21 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-4)

Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause with whose or who.

College Orientation Day

- 1. We were taken on a tour by a student. Her major is popular culture. → We were taken on a tour by a student whose major is popular culture.
- 2. I have been assigned a roommate. His parents teach at this school.
- 3. The people seem nice. They live on my dorm floor.
- 4. I have a professor. She won a prestigious award.
- 5. I met the man. His wife is the president of the college.

► EXERCISE 22 ► Listening. (Chart 13-4)

Choose the words you hear: who's or whose.

Example: You will hear: The man who's standing over there is Mr. Smith.

You will choose: who's whose

1. who's	whose	5. who's	whose
2. who's	whose	6. who's	whose
3. who's	whose	7. who's	whose
4. who's	whose	8. who's	whose

282 CHAPTER 13

EXERCISE 23 Listening. (Chart 13-4)

Listen to the sentences in normal, contracted speech. You will hear: whose or who's (meaning who is or who has). Choose the correct meaning.

Example: You will hear: I know a woman who's a taxi driver.

Yo	ou will choo	se: whose	who is who has		
1. whose	who is	who has	5. whose	who is	who has
2. whose	who is	who has	6. whose	who is	who has
3. whose	who is	who has	7. whose	who is	who has
4. whose	who is	who has	8. whose	who is	who has

EXERCISE 24 → Warm-up. (Chart 13-5)

All of these sentences have the same meaning, and all of them are grammatically correct. The adjective clauses are in blue. What differences do you notice?

- 1. The town where I grew up is very small.
- 2. The town in which I grew up is very small.
- 3. The town which I grew up in is very small.
- 4. The town that I grew up in is very small.
- 5. The town I grew up in is very small.

13-5 Using Where in Adjective Clauses

	The building is very old. He lives <i>there</i> (<i>in that building</i>).		
The building	where	he lives	is very old.
The building The building	in which which	he lives he lives in	is very old. is very old.

that

Ø

Where is used in an adjective clause to modify a place (*city, country, room, house, etc.*).

If where is used, as in (a), a preposition is NOT included in the adjective clause.

If *where* is not used, the preposition must be included, as in (b). *In which* is more common in academic writing.

EXERCISE 25 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-5)

he lives in

he lives in

Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

Hiding Places

The building

The building

(a)

(b)

1. That is the special book. My daughter puts her money there (in that book).

is very old.

is very old.

- \rightarrow That is the special book where my daughter puts her money.
- \rightarrow That is the special book in which my daughter puts her money.
- → That is the special book which/that/Ø my daughter puts her money in.
- 2. This is the mattress. My grandmother hid some money there (under the mattress).
- 3. That is the drawer. Johnny keeps a supply of candy there (in the drawer).





4. Here is the safe. My mom locks up her jewelry there (in that safe).





EXERCISE 26 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-5)

Study the examples. Note how the sentences are combined with the words in blue. Then complete the sentences with *where*, *which*, or *in which*.

 Examples:
 The city is beautiful. I was born there.

 The city
 where

 I was born is beautiful.

 The city
 in which

 I was born is beautiful.

 The city is beautiful.

 It is next to my hometown.

The city ______ is next to my hometown is beautiful.

- 1. The house is very old. We want to buy it.
 - a. The house ______ we want to buy is very old.

The house is very old. We lived there.

- b. The house ______ we lived is very old.
- c. The house ______ we lived is very old.
- 2. The town is a nice place to visit. I grew up there.
 - a. The town _____ I grew up is a nice place to visit.
 - b. The town _____ I grew up is a nice place to visit.

The town is a nice place to visit. It is near us.

c. The town ______ is near us is a nice place to visit.

- 3. The room is empty. It is in the basement.
 - a. The room ______ is in the basement is empty.

The room is unheated. I sleep there.

- b. The room _____ I sleep is unheated.
- c. The room ______ I sleep is unheated.
- 4. The park is next to the shopping center. It has a nice soccer field.
 - a. The park ______ has a nice soccer field is next to the shopping center.

The park is now a shopping center. I met your dad there.

- b. The park ______ I met your dad is now a shopping center.
- c. The park ______ I met your dad is now a shopping center.

EXERCISE 27 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 13-1 \rightarrow 13-5)

Complete the sentences with *who*, *that*, or *where*.

Euphemisms

- A euphemism ("you-fuh-mism") is a word or phrase _____ makes something sound more pleasant.
- 2. For example, a "used" car is a car _____ has been "pre-owned." "Used" doesn't sound appealing to buyers.
- 3. A "landfill" is a place ______ people take their garbage. It used to be called a "dump."
- 4. A person ______ picks up your garbage is a "sanitation engineer."
- 5. "Pass away" is a phrase ______ sounds more gentle and indirect than "die."
- 6. People ______ are sick are "under the weather."
- 7. A guard ______ works at a jail is known as a "corrections officer."
- 8. The place _____ prisoners stay is a "correctional facility."
- 9. An employee ______ is fired is "let go."

EXERCISE 28 > Warm-up. (Chart 13-6)

All of these sentences have the same meaning, and all of them are grammatically correct. The adjective clauses are in blue. What differences do you notice?

- 1. I clearly remember the day when I rode a bike for the first time.
- 2. I clearly remember the day on which I rode a bike for the first time.
- 3. I clearly remember the day that I rode a bike for the first time.
- 4. I clearly remember the day I rode a bike for the first time.

13-6 Using When in Adjective Clauses

		orget the day. Then (on that day).	When is used in an adjective clause to modify a noun of time (year, day, time, century, etc.).
(a) I'll never forget the day	when	I met you.	The use of a preposition in an adjective clause that
(b) I'll never forget the day	on which	I met you.	modifies a noun of time is somewhat different from that
(c) I'll never forget the day			in other adjective clauses: a preposition + <i>which</i> is used, as in (b). Otherwise, there is no preposition. The use of
(d) I'll never forget the day	Ø	I met you.	a preposition is very formal.

EXERCISE 29 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-6)

My Kuwaiti Cousins

Part I. Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- 1. My cousins from Kuwait will come _____ Monday.
- 2. Their plane arrives _____ 7:05.
- 3. I last saw them _____ 2010.
- 4. They asked to visit _____ July.

284 CHAPTER 13

Part II. Combine the two sentences using when and which.

- 1. Monday is the day. My cousins from Kuwait will come then.
 - \rightarrow Monday is the day when my cousins from Kuwait will come.
 - \rightarrow Monday is the day on which my cousins from Kuwait will come.
- 2. 7:05 is the time. Their plane arrives then.
- 3. 2010 is the year. I last saw them then.
- 4. July is the month. The weather is usually the hottest then.

EXERCISE 30 ► Looking at grammar. (Charts 13-5 and 13-6)

Combine the two sentences. Use where or when to introduce an adjective clause.

Town Memories

- 1. That is the building. The fire began there. \rightarrow That is the place where the fire began
- 2. I remember the day. The fire began then. \rightarrow *I remember the day when the fire began.*
- 3. This used to be a movie theater. I was young then.
- 4. We liked that restaurant. You could get a good meal for a great price.
- 5. The bakery is no longer there. They made the best chocolate cake.
- 6. There was a time. There were no stoplights then.
- 7. The house is now an office building. I was born there.

EXERCISE 31 ▶ Let's talk: interview. (Charts 13-1 → 13-6)

For each question, interview two classmates. Encourage them to use adjective clauses in their responses. Share a few of their answers with the class.

Example:

What kind of **food** don't you like? \rightarrow *I* don't like **food** that is too sugary.

- 1. What kind of people do you like to spend time with?
- 2. What kind of **people** do you prefer to avoid?
- 3. What kind of cities do you like to visit?
- 4. What kind of teachers do you learn best from?
- 5. What kind of place would you like to live in?
- 6. What time of day do you feel most energetic?

EXERCISE 32 ► Listening. (Charts 13-1 → 13-6)

Listen to the sentences. Choose the correct meanings for each sentence.

Example: You will hear: The nurse who gave the medicine to the patients seemed confused. You will choose: a. The patients were confused.

(b) The patients received medicine from the nurse.

c. The nurse was confused.

- 1. a. A man gave an interview.
 - b. The man is the speaker's friend.
 - c. The speaker gave an interview.
- 2. a. Two people were killed in an accident.
 - b. Two people blocked all lanes of the highway for two hours.
 - c. An accident blocked all lanes of the highway for two hours.

- 3. a. The speaker lives in a large city.
 - b. The speaker was born in a small town.
 - c. The speaker was born in a large city.
- 4. a. The music teacher gives music lessons.
 - b. The music teacher is a rock star.
 - c. The speaker took music lessons.
- 5. a. The speaker got a phone from his parents.
 - b. The phone takes excellent pictures.
 - c. The speaker wants to get a phone that takes excellent pictures.
- 6. a. The speaker often invites the neighbor to dinner.
 - b. The neighbor often visits at dinnertime.
 - c. The speaker visits the neighbor at dinnertime.

EXERCISE 33 ► Grammar and writing. (Charts 13-1 → 13-6)

On a separate piece of paper, combine the sentences into a paragraph using adjective clauses.

Robert Ballard is an oceanographer.

He made headlines in 1985.

Ballard led a team.

They discovered the remains of the *Titanic*.

The *Titanic* was an "unsinkable" passenger ship.

It has rested on the floor of the Atlantic Ocean since 1912.

It had struck an iceberg in 1912.

After Ballard finished his exploration of the ship, he left a memorial plaque.

It honored all those who died on that terrible night.



EXERCISE 34 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 13-7)

<u>Underline</u> each adjective clause. Draw an arrow to the word it modifies.

- A: Management needs someone at the top who understands our jobs.
 B: You can say that again!*
- 2. A: We're the ones who seem to know everything.
 - B: I couldn't agree more!
- 3. A: Everything they want to do slows us down and costs more.B: You said it!



^{*}All of the responses are ways to express strong agreement.

13-7 Using Adjective Clauses to Modify Pronouns

(a) (b) (c)	There is someone I want you to meet. Everything he said was pure nonsense. Anybody who wants to come is welcome.	Adjective clauses can modify indefinite pronouns (e.g., <i>someone, everybody</i>). Object pronouns (e.g., <i>who(m), that, which</i>) are usually omitted in the adjective clause, as in (a) and (b).
(d) (e)	Paula was the only one I knew at the party. Scholarships are available for those who need financial assistance.	Adjective clauses can modify the one(s) and those .*
(f)	INCORRECT: 1 who am a student at this school come from a country in Asia.	Adjective clauses are almost never used to modify personal pronouns. Native English speakers would not say or write the sentence in (f).
(g)	It is I who am responsible.	Example (g) is possible, but very formal and uncommon.
(h)	He who laughs last laughs best.	Example (h) is a well-known saying in which he is used as an indefinite pronoun (meaning "anyone" or "any person").

*An adjective clause with which can also be used to modify the demonstrative pronoun that: We sometimes fear that which we do not understand. The bread my mother makes is much better than that which you can buy at a store.

EXERCISE 35 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-7)

Complete the sentences with adjective clauses.

Help

1. Ask your mom. She's the one <u>who can help you</u> .
2. I have a problem. There is something
3. This problem is harder than the ones
4. Those should stay after clas
5. I'm sorry, but I'm powerless to do anything. There's nothing more
6. Could I talk to someone else? I've tried to explain my situation, but I don't think you heard
anything
7. I did everything, but it didn't work
We need to find someone
8. You are the only one

EXERCISE 36 \blacktriangleright Let's talk. (Charts 13-1 \rightarrow 13-7)

Work with a partner or in small groups. Complete this sentence: *The ideal ... is one ...*. Use a word in the box and finish it with your own words. Use **who** or **that**.

Examples: The ideal friend is one who(m) you can always trust. The ideal job is one that has flexible hours.

friend	father	spouse	doctor
student	mother	job	city

EXERCISE 37 > Warm-up. (Chart 13-8)

Listen to your teacher read the sentences aloud. Both are correct. Notice the use of pauses. Then answer the questions for both sentences.

- 1. I just found out that Lara Johnson, who speaks Russian fluently, has applied for the job at the Russian embassy.
- 2. That's not the job for you. Only people who speak Russian fluently will be considered for the job at the Russian embassy.
 - Which adjective clause can be omitted with no change in the meaning of the noun it modifies?
 - What do you notice about the use of commas?

13-8 Punctuating Adjective Clauses

General guidelines for the punctuation of adjective clauses:

- (1) DO NOT USE COMMAS IF the adjective clause is necessary to identify the noun it modifies.*
- (2) USE COMMAS IF the adjective clause simply gives additional information and is not necessary to identify the noun it modifies.**

 (a) The professor who teaches Chemistry 101 is an excellent lecturer. (b) Professor Wilson, who teaches Chemistry 101, is an excellent lecturer. 	 In (a): No commas are used. The adjective clause is necessary to identify which professor is meant. In (b): Commas are used. The adjective clause is not necessary to identify Professor Wilson. We already know who he is: he has a name. The adjective clause simply gives additional information.
 (c) Hawaii, which consists of eight principal islands, is a favorite vacation spot. (d) Mrs. Smith, who is a retired teacher, does volunteer work at the hospital. 	GUIDELINE: Use commas, as in (b), (c), and (d), if an adjective clause modifies a proper noun. (A proper noun begins with a capital letter.) NOTE: A comma reflects a pause in speech.
(e) The man $\begin{cases} who(m) \\ that \\ \oslash \end{cases}$ met teaches chemistry. (f) Mr. Lee, whom I met yesterday, teaches chemistry.	 In (e): If no commas are used, any possible pronoun may be used in the adjective clause. Object pronouns may be omitted. In (f): When commas are necessary, the pronoun <i>that</i> may not be used (only <i>who, whom, which, whose, where</i>, and <i>when</i> may be used), and object pronouns cannot be omitted. INCORRECT: Mr. Lee, that I met yesterday, teaches chemistry.
 COMPARE THE MEANING: (g) We took some children on a picnic. <i>The children, who wanted to play soccer,</i> ran to an open field as soon as we arrived at the park. (h) We took some children on a picnic. <i>The children who wanted to play soccer</i> ran to an open field as soon as we arrived at the park. The others played a different game. 	 In (g): The use of commas means that <i>all</i> of the children wanted to play soccer and <i>all</i> of the children ran to an open field. The adjective clause is used only to give additional information about the children. In (h): The lack of commas means that <i>only some</i> of the children wanted to play soccer. The adjective clause is used to identify which children ran to the open field.

*Adjective clauses that do not require commas are called essential or restrictive or identifying.

**Adjective clauses that require commas are called nonessential or nonrestrictive or nonidentifying.

NOTE: Nonessential adjective clauses are more common in writing than in speaking.

EXERCISE 38 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-8)

Read each sentence, first with the adjective clause and then again without it. How does the meaning change? Does the adjective clause identify the noun? If it does not identify the noun, add commas.

- 1. Mercury which is the nearest planet to the sun is also the smallest planet in our solar system.
- 2. Research has shown that children who watch violent video games may become more aggressive.
- 3. People who live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones.
- 4. In a children's story, Little Red Riding Hood who went out one day to visit her grandmother found a wolf in her grandmother's bed.



⑦ EXERCISE 39 ▶ Grammar and listening. (Chart 13-8)

Work with a partner. Read the sentences aloud. Decide if the information in blue is necessary or simply provides additional information. If it is additional, add commas. Then listen to the sentences and correct your answers. Remember, pauses indicate commas.

- 1. a. Vegetables which are orange have a lot of vitamin A. (necessary: no commas)
 - b. Vegetables, which come in many shapes and colors, have lots of vitamins. (additional information: commas)
- 2. a. Did you hear about the man who rowed a boat across the Atlantic Ocean?
 - b. My uncle who loves boating rows his boat across the lake near his house nearly every day.
- 3. a. Rice which is grown in many countries is a staple food throughout much of the world.
 - b. The rice which we had for dinner last night was very good.
- 4. a. The newspaper article was about a man who died two weeks ago of a rare tropical disease.
 - b. The obituary said that Paul O'Grady who died two weeks ago of a sudden heart attack was a kind and loving man.
- 5. a. Tea which is a common drink throughout the world is made by pouring boiling water onto the dried leaves of certain plants.
 - b. Tea which is made from herbs is called herbal tea.
- 6. a. Toys which contain lead paint are unsafe for children.
 - b. Lead which can be found in paint and plastics is known to cause brain damage in children.

EXERCISE 40 Pronunciation and grammar. (Chart 13-8)

Work with a partner. Read the given sentence aloud. Choose the correct meaning.

- 1. The teacher thanked the students, who had given her some flowers.
 - a. The teacher thanked only some of the students.
 - (b.) The teacher thanked *all* of the students.
- 2. The teacher thanked the students who had given her some flowers.
 - (a.) The teacher thanked only some of the students.
 - b. The teacher thanked *all* of the students.
- 3. There was a terrible flood. The villagers who had received a warning of the flood escaped to safety. a. *Only some* of the villagers had been warned; only some escaped.
 - b. All of the villagers had been warned; all escaped.
- 4. There was a terrible flood. The villagers, who had received a warning of the impending flood, escaped to safety.
 - a. Only some of the villagers had been warned; only some escaped.
 - b. All of the villagers had been warned; all escaped.
- 5. Natasha reached down and picked up the grammar book, which was lying upside down on the floor. a. There was *only one* grammar book near Natasha.
 - b. There was more than one grammar book near Natasha.
- 6. Natasha reached down and picked up the grammar book which was lying upside down on the floor.
 - a. There was only one grammar book near Natasha.
 - b. There was more than one grammar book near Natasha.

EXERCISE 41 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-8)

Add commas where necessary. Read the sentences aloud, paying attention to pauses.

- 1. a. We enjoyed the city where we spent our honeymoon.
 - b. We enjoyed Mexico City where we spent our vacation.
- 2. a. One of the most useful materials in the world is glass which is made mainly from sand, soda, and lime.
 - b. The glass which is used in windows is different from the glass which is used in eyeglasses.
- 3. a. You don't need to take heavy clothes when you go to Bangkok which has one of the highest average temperatures of any city in the world.
 - b. Bangkok where my father was born is known as the Venice of the East.
- 4. a. Mr. Trang whose son won the spelling contest is very proud of his son's achievement.
 - b. The man whose daughter won the science contest is also very pleased and proud.
- 5. a. I watched some beekeepers collect honey. They told me that beekeepers who wear protective clothing can avoid most bee stings.
 - b. A person who doesn't wear protective clothing can get hundreds of bee stings within a minute.



Listen to the sentences. Choose the correct meaning for each sentence.

- 1. a. She threw away all of the apples.
 - b. She threw away only the rotten apples.

- 2. a. She threw away all of the apples. b. She threw away only the rotten apples.
- 3. a. Some of the students were excused from class early. b. All of the students were excused from class early.
- 4. a. Some of the students were excused from class early. b. All of the students were excused from class early.

EXERCISE 43 \blacktriangleright Reading and grammar. (Charts 13-1 \rightarrow 13-8)

Part I. Answer these questions. Then read the web article. Note the adjective clauses in blue.

- 1. Do you have a computer?
- 2. Do you know the name of its operating system?



*quick and dirty = something that is done quickly or hastily

Part II. Complete the sentences with information from the article. Use adjective clauses in your completions.

- 1. Tim Paterson was the person who ______
- 2. Seattle Computer was the company that _____
- 3. The abbreviation for the program was QDOS, which _____
- 4. IBM was a company that _____
- 5. Microsoft, which _____
- 6. Microsoft acquired rights to a program that _____



Do you know these words?

EXERCISE 44 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 13-9)

Choose the correct meaning (a. or b.) for each sentence.

- The couple has 13 children, only a few of whom live at home.
 Ten children live at home.
 A few of the couple's children live at home.
- 2. Victoria bought a dozen dresses, most of which she later returned to the store.
 - a. Victoria returned a dozen dresses. b. Victoria kept a few of the dresses.

13-9 Using Expressions of Quantity	in Adjective Clauses
 In my class there are 20 students. <i>Most of them</i> are from Asia. (a) In my class there are 20 students, <i>most of whom</i> are from Asia. (b) He gave several reasons, <i>only a few of which</i> were valid. (c) The teachers discussed Jim, <i>one of whose problems</i> was poor study habits. 	An adjective clause may contain an expression of quantity with of: some of, many of, most of, none of, two of, half of, both of, etc. The expression of quantity precedes the pronoun. Only whom, which, and whose are used in this pattern. This pattern is more common in writing than speaking. Commas are used.

EXERCISE 45 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-9)

Combine the two sentences in each item. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

At the Mall

- 1. The mall has 200 stores. Many of them are having sales this weekend. → The mall has 200 stores, many of which are having sales this weekend.
- 2. I went to a few sales. Only one of them had good discounts.
- 3. There are many clothing stores. The majority of them are for women and teenage girls.
- 4. I tried on five dresses. I liked two of them.
- 5. The movie theater is showing four movies. None sound good.
- 6. There are several ethnic restaurants in the food court. All of them have reasonable prices.
- 7. There are two cafés side by side. Both of them serve excellent coffee.

EXERCISE 46 Grammar and writing. (Chart 13-9)

Complete the sentences with your own words. Use adjective clauses.

About Me

- I have several friends, two of <u>whom grew up with me.</u>
 I own three ______, one of _______
- 2. I own three _____, one of _____
- 3. I have many ______, all of ______
- 4. I bought two ______, neither of _____
- 5. I am taking ______ courses, one of _____
- 6. This term I had to buy _____ books, most of _____
- 7. For this class I need _____, some of _____

292 CHAPTER 13





EXERCISE 47 > Warm-up. (Chart 13-10)

What does which refer to in each sentence?



- 1. The soccer team worked very hard to win, which made their coach very proud.
- 2. Some of the athletes attended practice during vacation, which pleased their coach.

13-10 Using Which to Modify a Whole Sentence			
(a) Tom was late. <i>That</i> surprised me.(b) Tom was late, <i>which surprised me</i>.	The pronouns <i>that</i> and <i>this</i> can refer to the idea of a whole sentence which comes before. In (a): The word <i>that</i> refers to the whole sentence <i>Tom was late</i> .		
(c) The elevator is out of order. <i>This</i> is too bad.(d) The elevator is out of order, <i>which is too bad</i>.	Similarly, an adjective clause with <i>which</i> may modify the idea of a whole sentence. In (b): The word <i>which</i> refers to the whole sentence <i>Tom was late</i> .		
	Using <i>which</i> to modify a whole sentence is informal and occurs most frequently in spoken English. This structure is generally not appropriate in formal writing. Whenever it is written, however, it is preceded by a comma to reflect a pause in speech.		

EXERCISE 48 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-10)

Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

Sonya's Challenges

- 1. Sonya lost her job. That wasn't surprising. → Sonya lost her job, which wasn't surprising.
- 2. She usually came to work late. That upset her boss.
- 3. So her boss fired her. That made her angry.
- 4. She hadn't saved any money. That was unfortunate.
- 5. So she had to borrow some money from me. I didn't like that.
- 6. She has found a new job. That is lucky.
- 7. So she has repaid the money she borrowed from me. I appreciate that.
- 8. She has promised herself to be on time to work every day. That is a good idea.

EXERCISE 49 ► Looking at grammar. (Charts 13-1 -> 13-10)

Combine sentences a. and b. Use b. as an adjective clause. Use formal written English. Punctuate carefully.

- 1. a. An antecedent is a word.
 - b. A pronoun refers to this word. \rightarrow An antecedent is a word to which a pronoun refers.
- 2. a. The blue whale is considered the largest animal that has ever lived.b. It can grow to 100 feet and 150 tons.
- 3. a. The plane was met by a crowd of 300 people.
 - b. Some of them had been waiting for more than four hours.
- 4. a. In this paper, I will describe the basic process.
 - b. Raw cotton becomes cotton thread by this process.

- 5. a. The researchers are doing case studies of people to determine the importance of heredity health and longevity.
 - b. These people's families have a history of high blood pressure and heart disease.
- 6. a. At the end of this month, scientists at the institute will conclude their AIDS research.
 - b. The results of this research will be published within six months.
- 7. a. According to many education officials, "math phobia" (that is, a fear of mathematics) is a widespread problem.
 - b. A solution to this problem can and must be found.
- 8. a. The art museum hopes to hire a new administrator.b. Under this person's direction, it will be able to purchase significant pieces of art.
- 9. a. The giant anteater licks up ants for its dinner.
- b. Its tongue is longer than 30 centimeters (12 inches).
- 10. a. The anteater's tongue is sticky.
 - b. It can go in and out of its mouth 160 times a minute.

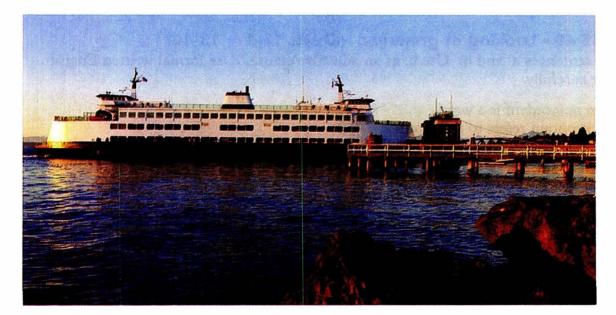


EXERCISE 50 \blacktriangleright Reading and grammar. (Charts 13-1 \rightarrow 13-10)

Read about Ellen and her commute to work. Underline what the words in blue refer to.

Ellen's Commute

Ellen commutes to work by ferry, which (1) means she takes a boat from the island where she lives to the city where (2) she works. She leaves her house at 6:00, which (3) is earlier than she'd like but necessary because the ferry ride takes 30 minutes. Ellen needs 20 minutes to drive to the parking lot where (4) she leaves her car and boards the ferry. Once she's on the other side, she catches a bus that (5) takes her to her office. Traffic is usually heavy at that hour, so she's on the bus for another 30 minutes. On the bus, she usually reads reports that (6) she was too tired to finish the night before. The bus drops her off a few blocks from her office. Sometimes she stops at an espresso stand and picks up coffee for her co-workers, for which (7) they reimburse her later. By the time she gets to her office, she has been commuting for an hour and a half, which (8) she wishes she didn't have to do but isn't going to change because she enjoys her life on the island so much.



EXERCISE 51 > Warm-up. (Chart 13-11)

Look at the words in blue. What differences do you notice between each pair of sentences? NOTE: Sentences a. and b. have the same meaning.

- a. I talked to the people who were sitting beside me at the ball game.
 b. I talked to the people sitting beside me at the ball game.
- 2. a. The notebooks that are on my desk are mine.b. The notebooks on my desk are mine.
- 3. a. I read an article about Gregor Mendel, who is known as the father of genetics.b. I read an article about Gregor Mendel, known as the father of genetics.

13-11 Reducing Adjective Clauses to Adjective Phrases

CLAUSE: A clause is a group of related words that contains a subject and a verb. PHRASE: A phrase is a group of related words that does not contain a subject and a verb.

(a) CLAUSE:(b) PHRASE:(c) CLAUSE:(d) PHRASE:	The girl <i>who is sitting next to me</i> is Mai. The girl <i>sitting next to me</i> is Mai. The girl <i>(whom) I saw</i> was Mai. (<i>none</i>)	 An adjective phrase is a reduction of an adjective clause. It modifies a noun. It does not contain a subject and verb. Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning. Only adjective clauses that have a subject pronoun – <i>who, that,</i> or <i>which</i> – can be reduced to modifying adjective phrases. The adjective clause in (c) cannot be reduced to an adjective phrase.
 (e) CLAUSE: PHRASE: (f) CLAUSE: PHRASE: (g) CLAUSE: PHRASE: 	 The man who is talking to John is from Korea. The man Ø Ø talking to John is from Korea. The ideas that are presented in this book are good. The ideas Ø Ø presented in this book are good. Ann is the woman that is responsible for the error. Ann is the woman Ø Ø responsible for the error. 	There are two ways in which an adjective clause is changed to an adjective phrase. 1. if the adjective clause contains the <i>be</i> form of a verb, omit the subject pronoun and the <i>be</i> form, as in (e), (f), and (g).*
 (h) CLAUSE: PHRASE: (i) CLAUSE: PHRASE: 	English has an alphabet <i>that consists of 26 letters</i> . English has an alphabet Ø consisting of 26 letters. Anyone who wants to come with us is welcome. Anyone Ø wanting to come with us is welcome.	2. If there is no be form of a verb in the adjective clause, it is sometimes possible to omit the subject pronoun and change the verb to its <i>-ing</i> form, as in (h) and (i).
	which is the capital of France, is an exciting city.	If the adjective clause requires commas, as in (j), the adjective phrase also requires commas, as in (k). An adjective phrase in which a noun follows another noun, as in (k), is called an <i>appositive</i> .

*If an adjective clause that contains be + a single adjective is changed, the adjective is moved to its normal position in front of the noun it modifies.

CLAUSE:Fruit that is fresh tastes better than old, soft, mushy fruit.CORRECT PHRASE:Fresh fruit tastes better than old, soft, mushy fruit.INCORRECT PHRASE:Fruit fresh tastes better than old, soft, mushy fruit.

EXERCISE 52 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-11)

Change the adjective clauses to adjective phrases.



Many famous people did not enjoy immediate success in their early lives:

- 1. Abraham Lincoln, who was one of the truly great presidents of the United States, ran for public office 26 times and lost 23 of the elections.
- 2. Walt Disney, who was the creator of Mickey Mouse and the founder of his own movie production company, once was fired by a newspaper editor because he had no good ideas.
- 3. Thomas Edison, who was the inventor of the light bulb and the phonograph, was believed by his teachers to be too stupid to learn.
- 4. Albert Einstein, who was one of the greatest scientists of all time, performed badly in almost all of his high school courses and failed his first college entrance exam.

EXERCISE 53 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-11)

Change the adjective phrases to adjective clauses.

A Class Trip

- 1. Our biology class is going to Montreal to see the Biodome, a dome-like structure housing five ecosystems.
 - → Our class is going to Montreal to see the Biodome, which is a dome-like structure that/which houses five ecosystems.
- 2. Ecosystems are biological communities containing living and non-living things found in one particular environment.
- 3. The ecosystems being studied in our class include a tropical rain forest and Antarctic islands.
- 4. An optional trip to the Montreal Insectarium, considered North America's leading museum of insects, is also being offered.
- 5. Students not wanting to see insects can spend more time at the Biodome.



tropical rain forest

► EXERCISE 54 ► Listening. (Chart 13-11)

Listen to the sentences. Choose the correct meaning (a. or b.) for each sentence. In some cases, both are correct.

Example: You will hear: The experiment conducted by the students was successful.

You will choose: (a.) The students conducted an experiment.

(b) The experiment was successful.

- a. There is a fence around our house.
 b. Our house is made of wood.
- 2. a. All schoolchildren receive a good education.b. That school provides a good education.
- 3. a. The university president will give a speech.b. Dr. Stanton will give a speech.
- 4. a. There is a galaxy called the Milky Way.b. Our solar system is called the Milky Way.

EXERCISE 55 Game. (Chart 13-11)



the Milky Way

Work in teams. Complete the sentences by turning the information in the box into adjective phrases. Use commas as necessary. The team that finishes first with the most correct answers wins.

a. It is the lowest place on the earth's surface. ✓ b. It is the highest mountain in the world. c. It is the capital of Iraq. d. It is the capital of Argentina. e. It is the largest city in the Western Hemisphere. f. It is the largest city in the United States. g. It is the most populous country in Africa. h. It is the northernmost country in Latin America. i. They are sensitive instruments that measure the shaking of the ground. j. They are devices that produce a powerful beam of light. 1. Mount Everest ______, the highest mountain in the world.______ is in the Himalayas. 2. One of the largest cities in the Middle East is Baghdad ______ 3. Earthquakes are recorded on seismographs _____ 4. The Dead Sea _____ is located in the Middle East between Jordan and Israel. 5. The newspaper reported an earthquake in Buenos Aires _____ 6. Industry and medicine are continually finding new uses for lasers _____ 7. Mexico ______ lies just south of the United States. 8. The nation Nigeria ______ consists of over 250 different cultural groups even though English is the official language. 9. Both Mexico City _____ and New York City _______ face challenging futures.

EXERCISE 56 Reading and grammar. (Charts 13-2 and 13-11)

Read the passage. Find the 7 adjective clauses where who, that, or which have been omitted. Rewrite them using who, that, or which.

Do you know these words

- -genius
- unconscious
- sought - altered
- trauma

An Accidental

Jason Padgett was not much of a student. A college dropout, he worked for his father at a furniture store in Tacoma, Washington. He thought of himself as a playboy and didn't think that school was important.

In 2002, at the age of 31, Jason's life changed forever. He left a karaoke bar one night, and while he was walking home, two men attacked him. They knocked him to the ground unconscious. After treatment at a hospital, he went The next morning he woke up and home. noticed that his vision was different. He saw geometric designs in the objects he looked at. Water pouring from a faucet had crystal structures. These were details he had never seen before. He began to draw complex patterns, some taking him weeks to finish. Before his injury, Padgett had never studied beyond prealgebra. Now he saw mathematical structures everywhere.

He sought the help of a doctor, who told Padgett that he had become a math genius because of the injury. Eventually he went to Finland to meet Dr. Berit Brogaard, a specialist in brain injuries. Dr. Brogaard used a special MRI machine* to study Padgett's brain and discovered that the part of the brain used for math was more active. The injury had altered his brain to make it very specialized in math.

Padgett went back to school to study advanced math. Sometimes he knew more than his teachers. He also wrote a book, *Struck by Genius*, in which he described the trauma he went through. He said it has changed his life for the better, and he has no regrets.

*MRI = magnetic resonance imaging; a machine that uses radio waves to take pictures of organs in the body

1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	,
6.	
7.	

EXERCISE 57 Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-11)

Change the adjective clauses to adjective phrases. Change the adjective phrases to adjective clauses. **The Diamond Head Hike**

- 1. Diamond Head, a mountain near Waikiki, was formed by a volcano 300,000 years ago.
- 2. Scientists who study Diamond Head say it is no longer an active volcano.

3. Visitors can hike the Diamond Head Trail, which is located inside the volcano's crater



Diamond Head Crater

- 4. The trail leading hikers to a 360-degree view at the top is 2.25 kilometers (1.4 miles) long.
- 5. Tourists who are planning to hike to the top should bring sunscreen and water because there is no shade on the trail.
- 6. The path, which ends with 250 steps, is very steep.
- 7. At the top is an observation point, which overlooks Honolulu and the ocean.
- 8. Signs posted on the trail warn hikers not to leave the trail.
- 9. The trails can become very crowded. Some people are asking for changes that allow more access for tourists.
- 10. Many people wanting to preserve the natural habitats oppose this change.

EXERCISE 58 Looking at grammar. (Chapter 13 Review)

Combine each group of short, choppy sentences into one sentence. Use the first sentence as the independent clause and build your sentence around it. Use adjective clauses and adjective phrases where possible.

1. Chihuahua is divided into two regions.

It is the largest Mexican state.

One region is a mountainous area in the west.

The other region is a desert basin in the north and east.

Chihuahua, the largest Mexican state, is divided into two regions, a mountainous area in the

west and a desert basin in the north and east.





2.	Disney World covers a large area of land.
	It is an amusement park.
	It is located in Orlando, Florida.
	The land includes lakes, golf courses, campsites, hotels, and a wildlife preserve.



 <u>The Republic of Yemen is an ancient land.</u> It is located at the southwestern tip of the Arabian Peninsula. This land has been host to many prosperous civilizations. These civilizations include the Kingdom of Sheba and various Islamic empires.

EXERCISE 59 • Check your knowledge. (Chapter 13 Review)

Correct the errors.

- 1. Baseball is the only sport in which I am interested in it.
- 2. My favorite teacher, Mr. Chu, he was always willing to help me after class.
- 3. It is important to be polite to people who lives in the same building.
- 4. My sister has two children, who their names are Ali and Talal.
- 5. Paulo comes from Venezuela that is a Spanish-speaking country.
- 6. There are some people in the government who is trying to improve the lives of the poor.
- 7. A myth is a story expresses traditional beliefs.
- 8. There is an old legend telling among people in my country about a man lived in the seventeenth century and saved a village from destruction.
- 9. An old man was fishing next to me on the pier was mumbling to himself.
- 10. The road that we took it through the forest it was narrow and steep.
- 11. There are ten universities in Thailand, seven of them are located in Bangkok is the capital city.
- 12. At the national park, there is a path leads to a spectacular waterfall.
- 13. At the airport, I was waiting for some relatives which I had never met them before.
- 14. It is almost impossible to find two persons who their opinions are the same.
- 15. On the wall, there is a colorful poster which it consists of a group of young people who dancing.
- 16. The sixth member of our household is Pietro that is my sister's son.
- 17. Before I came here, I didn't have the opportunity to speak with people who English is their native tongue.

EXERCISE 60 • Grammar and writing. (Chapter 13)

Part I. Some writing assignments require extended definition. This type of writing asks you to explain or describe something, for example, a process, a disease, a device, or perhaps something historical. Read the following example. Underline the adjective clauses and phrases.

A cancer is a group of cells that divide and grow abnormally. In normal cell activity, new cells divide to replace old or damaged cells. With cancer, the cells grow out of control. Sometimes they spread to other places in the body. At this point, the cancer is malignant and often incurable. A cancer is named after the organ where it began. For example, a cancer beginning in the lungs is called lung cancer.

Part II. Depending on your topic, it is helpful to address one or more of the following questions when you write an extended definition. Which question(s) does the paragraph above answer?

- What are the different parts? (e.g., the human heart)
- How does it work? (e.g., a seismograph a machine to measure earthquakes)
- What happens? (e.g., a process like cell division)
- What does it look like? (e.g., an amoeba)
- What is its purpose? (e.g., a political movement)
- Is it similar to or different from anything? (e.g., a historical event)

Part III. Choose something you want to explain or describe. Write an extended definition.

WRITING TIP

Adjective clauses and phrases are useful because they can add interesting and relevant information to your writing in an efficient way. However, you want to be sure that the information is necessary or adds related information. Because adjective clauses can sound "academic" or very impressive, it may be tempting to use them too often. In the second sentence of the example paragraph, if the writer had written *In cell activity which is normal* ..., the adjective clause is forced. A simple adjective is all that is needed there.

Part IV. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. Correct pronoun in adjective clauses (*who*, *which*, *that*, *etc*.)
- 2. \Box correct use of commas in adjective clauses
- 3. \Box if reducing adjective clauses with **be**, delete **be** form and the pronoun
- 4. \Box if reducing an adjective clause without *be*, change verb to *-ing* and omit the pronoun
- 5. Correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

CHAPTER Gerunds and Infinitives,

PRETEST: What do I already know?

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct gerund and infinitive form and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. _____ Shopping during the holidays can be more expensive than at other times of the year. (14-1)
- 2. ____ I appreciated to hear the news about your family. (14-2)
- 3. ____ The professor decided don't to give a long final exam. (14-3)
- 4. ____ The team captain encouraged the players they work harder at practices. (14-4)
- 5. ____ My boyfriend loves holding snakes, but I can't stand to even look at them. (14-5)
- 6. _____Who is responsible for to clearing ice from the walkways? (14-6)
- 7. _____ I'd like to go hiking in the mountains, but I don't have the time right now. (14-7)
- 8. ____ The security guard caught the thief shoplifting a cell phone from the store. (14-8)
- 9. ____ It can be deadly driving a car and text at the same time. (14-9)
- 10. ____ Rey mentioned having some difficulty with his boss at work. (14-10)
- 11. ____ How did you manage to learn four languages fluently? (14-11)
- 12. ____ Instead of have a quiet night at home, why don't we invite a few friends over? (14-12)

Incorrect sentences: 2, 3, 4, 6, 9, 12

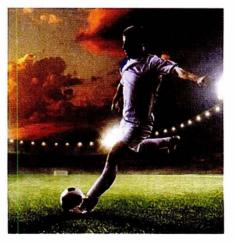
EXERCISE 1 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 14-1)

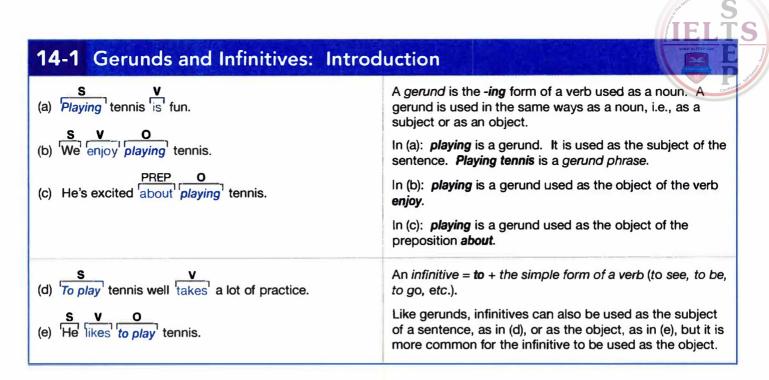
Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Give your own opinion.

baseball	golf	badminton
basketball	soccer	tennis

- 1. My friends and I like to play
- 2. I don't know much about playing
- 3. Playing _____

takes a lot of skill.





EXERCISE 2 Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-1)

Work with a partner. Compare the uses of the *-ing* form of verbs in the examples. Then check (\checkmark) the sentences that have gerunds.

Examples:

(walking = a gerund used as the subject of the sentence)
(playing = a present participle used as part of the present
progressive tense)
(surprising = a present participle used as an adjective)

Running

- 1. a. _____ Running uphill is hard work.
 - b. _____ Martin isn't running in the race today.
 - c. ____ I need new running shoes.
- 2. a. ____ I'm scheduling our team practices for the mornings.
 - b. _____ Scheduling practices for the afternoons doesn't work.
 - c. ____ Would you consider scheduling a practice in the evening?
- 3. a. ____ Drinking something with electrolytes is important after a race.
 - b. _____ Is there any drinking water nearby?

EXERCISE 3 Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-1)

Work with a partner. Compare the uses of to in the examples. Then check (\checkmark) the sentences on page 304 that have infinitives.

Examples:

Marta needs to leave early.	(to leave = an infinitive as the object)
To work without breaks is not permitted.	(to work = an infinitive as the subject)
Is Elias committed to his job?	(to = a preposition)

Co-Workers

- 1. ____ Franco is engaged to Liz.
- 2. ____ Danielle is related to the CEO's wife.
- 3. ____ To become a CEO is Danielle's goal.
- 4. _____ Viktor has volunteered to mentor new interns.
- 5. _____ Rachel hasn't been feeling well, but she can't afford to take any sick days right now.
- 6. ____ Pedro will talk to new employees about texting during meetings.
- 7. ____ Karl's goal is to speak without any nervousness.

EXERCISE 4 Warm-up. (Chart 14-2)

Complete the sentences with phrases in the box that are true for you. What do you notice about the form of the verbs in these phrases?

buying things online	talking about politics
posting on social media	watching commercials on TV
surfing the Internet	watching TV news

- 1. I enjoy _____
- 2. I don't enjoy _____
- 3. I avoid _____

14-2 Commo	n Verbs Followe	a by Gerunas	
	rund I <mark>ying</mark> tennis.	 Gerunds can be used as the objects of certain verbs. In (a): <i>enjoy</i> is followed by a gerund (<i>playing</i>). <i>Enjoy</i> is not followed by an infinitive. <i>INCORRECT:</i> I enjoy to play tennis. Common verbs that are followed by gerunds are listed below. 	
(b) Joe quit smoking.(c) Joe gave up smok	ing.	Some phrasal verbs are followed by gerunds. A <i>phrasal verb</i> consists of a verb and a particle (a small word such as a preposition) that together have a special meaning. For example in (c), <i>give up</i> means "quit." (Phrasal verbs are in parentheses below.)	
Verb + gerund			
enjoy appreciate mind	quit (give up) finish (get through) stop*	avoid postpone (put off) delay keep (keep on)	consider discuss mention suggest**

*Stop can also be followed by an infinitive of purpose. He stopped at the station (in order) to get some gas. See Charts 14-5 and 15-1, p. 335.

** Suggest can also be used with a subjunctive noun clause. See Chart 12-9. p. 267.



EXERCISE 5 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-2)

Complete the sentences with gerunds. Use the verbs in the box or any appropriate verbs.

P
be drop go have make pay read
College Plans
A: Aunt Kim, when you're done in the office, would you mind <u>reading</u> my college application essay and checking for mistakes?
B: Sure. I just need to get through the bills.
Where are you considering to college?
A: I'm still not sure. I've put off $\underline{\qquad}_4$ where to go.
B: Don't you need to decide before you do your essay?
A: No, this is part of the general application. I have to do it for any college I'm interested in.
B: It doesn't seem like you can postpone that decision much longer.
A: Here's the problem. I want to study at a big school, but my mom and dad have suggested
 to a smaller one. They said that's what they'll pay for. B: I went to a college with only about 4,000 students. I appreciated small classes. That's how I met your uncle.
 A: You were a tutor, right? He mentioned your student. B: Yes, for math. He was considering the class, but I convinced him to 9 stay. It all worked out!
EXERCISE 6 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-2) Complete the sentences with any appropriate gerunds.
Roommates
1. Would you mind <u>opening / closing</u> the door? Thanks.
2. I want to order pizza. Sierra has suggested burgers.
3. What are you considering for dinner?
4. I'm not the best roommate. Sometimes I put off the apartment
when it's my turn. I know I shouldn't. Actually, when I think about it, all of us avoid
at some point. None of us enjoy
5. Tony mentioned to a movie later tonight.
6. I have a lot of homework, but I'd still like to go out with you later on. I'll let you know when I
get through it.

7. No one will be here later. I appreciate ______ able to study in peace and quiet.

LEISE NELLE

EXERCISE 7 ▶ Let's talk. (Chart 14-2)

Work with a partner. Take turns making sentences with the given words. Use any tense and subject

- 1. mind \ turn off your phone
- 2. finish \ eat dinner
- 3. get through \ eat dinner
- 4. stop $\ rain$
- 5. keep \ work
- 6. keep on \ work

- 7. postpone \ do my work
- 8. put off $\$ do my work
- 9. delay \ leave on vacation
- 10. consider \ get a job
- 11. talk about $\ go$ to a movie
- 12. mention $\ go out of town$

⑦ EXERCISE 8 ► Listening. (Chart 14-2)

Listen to the conversations. Complete the sentence summaries with appropriate verbs.

- 1. The speakers enjoy <u>watching</u> movies on weekends.
- 2. The speakers have given up ______ for better weather.
- 3. The speakers are going to keep on _____.
- 4. The speakers are discussing ______ to a concert in the city.
- 5. The speakers have put off ______ their homework.
- 6. The speakers are going to delay ______ the office.

EXERCISE 9 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 14-3)

Check (\checkmark) the correct sentences.

- 1. a. _____We hope winning the game.
 - b. ____ We hope to win the game.
 - c. _____ We hope win the game.
- 2. a. ____ The player promised not to react to the referee's decision.
 - b. _____ The player promised not getting upset with the referee.
 - c. ____ The player promised not yell at the referee.



 (a) I hope to see you again soon. (b) He promised to be here by ten. (c) He promised not to be late. 		Some verbs are follo in (a) and (b).	Some verbs are followed immediately by an infinitive, as in (a) and (b). Negative form: <i>not</i> precedes the infinitive, as in (c).	
		Negative form: not		
Common verbs followed by inf	finitives			
Common verbs followed by inf hope to (do something)	finitives promise to	seem to	expect to	
Common verbs followed by inf hope to (do something) plan to		seem to appear to	expect to would like to	
hope to (do something)	promise to			

*Intend is usually followed by an infinitive (*I intend to go to the meeting.*) but sometimes may be followed by a gerund (*I intend going to the meeting.*) with no change in meaning.

EXERCISE 10 Let's talk: interview. (Chart 14-3)

Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering questions. Share your answers with the class.

- 1. what $\ \ u \ \ do \ \ do \ \ day?$
- 2. what \ you \ would like \ do \ this weekend?
- 3. what $\ vou \ blan \ do \ with English?$
- 5. what $\ \$ brought $\ \$ brought $\ \$ brought $\$ brought bro
- 6. what $\ \$ should students $\ \$ expect $\ \$ do?

EXERCISE 11 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-3)

Complete the sentences with your own words. In small groups or with a partner, compare your sentences.

In My Opinion

EXERCISE 12 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 14-2 and 14-3)

Complete each sentence with a gerund or an infinitive.

Small Talk

- 1. stop / talk / tell / text / turn off
 - A: How was the movie?
 - B: The movie was good, but the guy in back of us
 - kept <u>talking</u> and _____
 - A: Did you ask him _____?
 - B: Yes, but it didn't help.



- A: At our theater, the audience is required ______ their electronic devices.
- B: I expected the usher _____ him to stop, but it didn't happen.
- 2. have / help / join / lend / pay / see / talk
 - A: We're going out for dinner. Would you like ______ us?
 - B: Would you mind _____ me some money?
 - A: I thought you just got paid.
 - B: I did, but Jens told me he was broke, so I offered ______ him out. I expected him _____ me back, but now I'm not sure he's going to. I think he's avoiding

_____ to me. I saw him at the mall, and he pretended not _____ me.

A: Good luck! You seem ______ a big problem on your hands.

3. be / get / hear / take / wait

- A: Joan and David were considering ______ married in June, but they finally decided ______ until August.
- B: They're kind of an odd couple, aren't they? One minute they appear ______ happy, and the next minute they're fighting.
- A: Their parents suggested ______ a break from each other, but they didn't appreciate ______ that!

EXERCISE 13 Warm-up. (Chart 14-4)

Each sentence in blue is missing a person. Add you where appropriate.

- Why didn't you call us? We told to call us.
- Did Sami invite to the party?
 He said he was going to.
- 3. I'm not surprised you had a fender bender.

I warned to drive more slowly.



a fender bender

Verb + Object + Infinitive			
 (a) Mr. Lee told me to be here at ten o'clock. (b) The police ordered the driver to stop. (c) I was told to be here at ten o'clock. (d) The driver was ordered to stop. Some verbs are followed by a pronoun or nour and then an infinitive, as in (a) and (b). These verbs are followed immediately by an in when they are used in the passive, as in (c) and		and (b). mediately by an infinitive	
Common verbs followed by not	ın or pronoun + infinitiv	e	
tell someone to advise someone to* encourage someone to remind someone to	invite someone to permit someone to allow someone to warn someone to	require someone to order someone to force someone to ask someone to	expect someone to would like someone to want someone to need someone to
Verb + Infinitive / Verb +	Object + Infinitive		the path free sec. I
 (e) I expect to pass the test. (f) I expect Mary to pass the test. 		Some verbs have two patterns: • verb + infinitive, as in (e) • verb + object + infinitive, as in (f) COMPARE: In (e): I think I will pass the test. In (f): I think Mary will pass the test.	
Common verbs followed by infi	nitives or by objects an	d then infinitives	
ask to OR ask someone to expect to OR expect someone to need to OR need someone to	ne to wou	t to OR want someone to Id like to OR would like someo	one to

[^]A gerund is used after *advise* (active) if there is no noun or pronoun object. COMPARE: (1) He advised buying a Fiat. (2) He advised me to buy a Fiat. I was advised to buy a Fiat.

EXERCISE 14 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-4)

Complete the sentences with to leave or me to leave. In some cases, both are possible.

- 1. He told <u>me to leave</u>.
- 2. He decided ______to leave_____.
- 3. He asked <u>to leave / me to leave</u>.
- 4. He offered ______.
- 5. She wanted ______.
- 6. He agreed _____.
- 7. She would like _____.
- 8. He warned _____.
- 9. She refused _____.
- 11. She hoped ______.

 12. He permitted ______.

 13. She expected ______.

 14. He forced ______.

 15. She allowed ______.
- 16. He reminded ______.
- 17. She planned ______.

10. He promised _____

18. He pretended ______.

EXERCISE 15 Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-4)

Complete each sentence with the correct verb.

Advice and Obligations

- 1. advised / was advised
 - a. Jack ______ me to get a new apartment.
 - b. I ______ to get a new apartment.
- 2. forced / was forced
 - a. The driver ______ to stop on the highway.
 - b. The police ______ the driver to stop.
- 3. encouraged / was encouraged
 - a. I ______ to go to college.
 - b. My parents _____ me to go to college.
- 4. do not allow / are not allowed
 - a. Residents ______ to have pets.
 - b. The building rules _____ pets.
- 5. warned / was warned
 - a. Mrs. Jackson ______ her son not to touch the hot stove.
 - b. He _____ not to touch the hot stove.



EXERCISE 16 Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-4)

Summarize each statement by using the verbs in the box to introduce an infinitive phrase. In some cases, more than one verb is appropriate.

allow	expect	permit	require
ask	order	remind	tell

- 1. The professor said to Alan, "You may leave early."
 - → The professor allowed Alan to leave early. OR
 - \rightarrow Alan was allowed to leave early.
- 2. Roberto said to me, "Don't forget to take your book back to the library."
- 3. I am very relieved because the Dean of Admissions said to me, "You may register for school late."
- 4. The law says, "Every driver must have a valid driver's license."
- 5. My boss said to me, "Come to the meeting ten minutes early."

EXERCISE 17 > Let's talk: interview. (Chart 14-4)

Interview your classmates. Share some of their answers with the class.

- 1. What have you been told to do recently?
- 2. What are you often reminded to do?
- 3. What have you been asked to do recently?
- 4. What are you encouraged to do if you want to improve your English?
- 5. What is something children are warned not to do by their parents?
- 6. What is something teenagers are expected to do?
- 7. What is something parents are advised to do?
- 8. What are citizens in your country required to do?
- 9. What are citizens in your country not permitted to do?

EXERCISE 18 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 14-5)

Which pairs have basically the same meaning? Which pairs have different meanings?

- 1. a. It began to snow.
 - b. It began snowing.
- 2. a. I remembered to wear a warm jacket.b. I remembered wearing a warm jacket.
- 3. a. I forgot to bring gloves.b. I forgot bringing gloves.
- 4. a. We love to walk in the snow.b. We love walking in the snow.
- 5. a. We stopped to throw snowballs.b. We stopped throwing snowballs.



14-5 Common Verbs Followed by Either Infinitives or Gerunds

Some verbs can be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund, sometimes with no difference in meaning, as in Group A below, and sometimes with a difference in meaning, as in Group B below.

Gre	oup A: Verb	+ Infinitive of	r Gerund, with No	Difference in Meaning	
	begin start continue	like love prefer	hate can't stand can't bear	The verbs in Group A may be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund with little or no difference in meaning.	
(a) It began to rain. / It began raining.(b) I started to work. / I started working.				In (a): There is no difference between began to rain and began raining .	
(c)	It was beginning to rain.			If the main verb is progressive, an infinitive (not a gerund) is usually used, as in (c).	
Gro	oup B: Verb	+ Infinitive o	Gerund, with a D	ifference in Meaning	
	remember forget	regret try	stop	The verbs in Group B may be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund, but the meaning is different.	
(d)	Judy always remembers to lock the door.			remember + <i>infinitive</i> = remember to perform responsibility, duty, or task, as in (d)	
(e)	Sam often forgets to lock the door.			<i>forget</i> + <i>infinitive</i> = forget to perform a responsibility, duty, or task, as in (e)	
(f)	I remember seeing the Alps for the first time. The sight was impressive.			<i>remember</i> + <i>gerund</i> = remember (recall) something that happened in the past, as in (f)	
(g)	I'll never forget seeing the Alps for the first time.			<i>forget</i> + <i>gerund</i> = forget something that happened in the past, as in (g)*	
(h)	I regret to tell you that you failed the test.			regret + <i>infinitive</i> = regret to say, to tell someone, to inform someone of some bad news, as in (h)	
(i)	I regret lending him some money. He never paid me back.			<i>regret</i> + <i>gerund</i> = regret something that happened in the past, as in (i)	
(j)	I'm trying to learn English.			try + infinitive = make an effort, as in (j)	
(k)) The room was hot. I <i>tried opening</i> the window, but that didn't help. So I <i>tried turning</i> on the fan, but I was still hot. Finally, I turned on the air conditioner.			try + gerund = experiment with a new or different approach to see if it works, as in (k)	
(1)	The students <i>stopped talking</i> when the professor entered the room. The room became quiet.			<i>stop</i> + <i>gerund</i> = stop an activity	
(m)	When Ann saw her professor in the hallway, she stopped (in order) to talk to him.			Notice that <i>stop</i> can also be followed immediately by a infinitive of purpose, as in (m): Ann stopped walking in order to talk to her professor. (See Chart 15-1, p. 335.	

* Forget followed by a gerund usually occurs in a negative sentence or in a question: e.g., I'll never forget, I can't forget, Have you ever forgotten, and Can you ever forget are often followed by a gerund phrase.

EXERCISE 19 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Charts 14-3 → 14-5)

Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

- 1. a. Maria loves (swim) _______ swimming / to swim_____ in the ocean.
 - b. Her husband likes (swim) ______ in freshwater lakes.
- 2. a. I hate (see) ______ any living being suffer.
 - b. I can't bear (watch) ______ news reports of children who are homeless.
 - c. I can't stand (read) ______ about animals that have been hurt by people.

Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 1 311

- 3. a. I'm afraid of flying. When a plane begins (move) ______ down the runway, my heart starts (race) ______.
 - b. Uh-oh! The plane is beginning (move*) ______, and my heart is starting (race) _____.
- 4. a. After a brief interruption, the professor continued (lecture) _____
 - b. Even though the bell rang, the professor kept on (*talk*) ______.
- 5. a. When I travel, I prefer** (*drive*) ______ to (*take*) ______ a plane.
 - b. I prefer (*drive*) ______ rather than (*take*) ______ a plane.
- 6. a. I'm so sorry. I regret (*inform*) ______ you that your loan application has not been approved.
 - b. I didn't listen to my father. I regret (*follow, not*) ______ his advice. He was right.
- 7. a. When my four-year-old asks the same question over and over, I try (remain)

_____ patient as I give the exact same answer each time.





b. The father tried everything, but his baby still wouldn't stop

(cry) _____. He decided to experiment.

He tried (hold) ______ him, but that

didn't help. He tried (feed)

him, but he refused the food and continued to cry. He

tried (burp) _____ him. He tried

(change) _____ his diaper. Nothing worked.



His baby wouldn't stop crying.

If the main verb is not progressive, either form is used:

Babies start to walk around age one. OR Babies start walking around age one.

**Notice the patterns with prefer:

Prefer + gerund: 1 prefer staying home to going to the concert.

Prefer + infinitive: I'd prefer to stay home rather than (to) go to the concert.

^{*}If possible, native speakers usually prefer to use an infinitive following a progressive verb instead of using two -ing verbs in a row. Usual: The baby is starting to walk. (instead of walking)

EXERCISE 20 Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-5)

Match the sentence in the left column with the meaning in the right.

- 1. _____ I remembered to turn off the lights.
- I remember playing with dolls when I was a child.
- 3. ____What do you remember doing as a teenager?
- 4. _____What did you remember to do before you left home?
- 5. ____ I forgot to pick up my sister.
- 6. ____ I forgot getting the mail.
- 7. ____ Stop driving so fast.
- 8. ____ I stopped to get gas.
- 9. ____ I stopped driving to work because of the high cost of gas.

→ EXERCISE 21 ► Listening. (Chart 14-5)

Listen to each sentence and choose the sentence with the same meaning.

- a. Joan thought about her phone call with her husband.
 b. Joan didn't forget to call her husband.
- 2. a. Rita was thinking about the times she went to the farmers' market with her grandmother.b. Rita didn't forget to go to the farmers' market with her grandmother.
- 3. a. Roger got a cigarette and began to smoke.b. Roger quit smoking.
- 4. a. Mr. and Mrs. Olson finished eating.b. Mr. and Mrs. Olson got something to eat before the movie.
- 5. a. The speaker is sorry about something he did.
 - b. The speaker is delivering some bad news.

EXERCISE 22 Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-5)

Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

- 1. a. I remember (visit) ______ my great-grandparents when I was very young.
 - b. What do you remember (do) ______ before you leave for class every day?
 - c. We almost had a fire. Eric didn't remember (*turn*) ______ off the oven before he went to bed.
 - d. What do you remember (do) ______ when you were a child?
 - e. Did you remember (*lock*) ______ the front door when you left?
 - f. Uh-oh. I don't remember (*lock*) ______ it. I'd better go back and check.

- a. I stopped one activity to do another.
- b. What is your memory of that time?
- c. I did something, but I forgot that I did it.
- d. I quit the activity. I don't do it anymore.
- e. I didn't remember to do something.
- f. I have a memory of the event.
- g. What didn't you forget?
- h. Don't continue.
- i. I didn't forget.

www.ieltstep.com

Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 1 313



- 2. a. Don't forget (do) ______ your homework tonight.
 - b. What did Evan forget (do) ______ before he went to bed?
 - c. I won't ever forget (watch) ______ our team score the winning goal in the last

seconds of the championship game.

- 3. a. I want to tell Jeanne to stop (talk) ______ so much.
 - b. I stopped on the way home (get) ______ some groceries.
 - c. I stopped (*drink*) ______ coffee at night because it was keeping me awake.

EXERCISE 23 \blacktriangleright Let's talk. (Charts 14-1 \rightarrow 14-5)

Thomas wanted to build a birdhouse for his wife, Eleni. After several hours, she found him like this. Make sentences about the situation. Use the verbs in the box. Work in pairs or small groups.

A Birdhouse Failure



advise	finish	keep on	put off	remind
consider	forgot	look forward to	regret	stop
encourage	intend	offer	remember	suggest

EXERCISE 24 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 14-1 \rightarrow 14-5)

Complete each sentence by restating the given idea.

- 1. Don't be late for the meeting.
 - a. Nadia reminded _____me not to be late for the meeting _____.
 - b. Nadia told ______
 - c. Nadia warned _____
- 2. Do you need help? I can carry the suitcases.
 - a. I volunteered ______
 - b. I offered ______

- 3. I have an idea. Let's quit our jobs and open our own business.
 - a. We discussed _____
 - b. I suggested _____
- 4. I wanted to pay with a check, but the taxi driver only took cash.
 - a. The taxi driver refused ______
 - b. The taxi driver told _____

5. The teacher asked a question. I didn't want to answer, so I didn't look at her.

- a. I avoided _____
- b. I decided ______

6. At my last doctor's appointment, the doctor said, "Don't smoke. It causes cancer."

- a. The doctor advised ______
- b. The doctor reminded _____
- c. The doctor warned ______.
- 7. I worked all day on my paper.
 - a. I spent the day _____
 - b. I spent most of my time _____
 - c. I spent several hours _____

8. Sam likes to talk to his friends in class. The teacher asks him to stop, but he doesn't.

- a. He keeps ______
- b. He keeps on ______
- c. He continues ______
- 9. Roberto bought his wife an anniversary present. He didn't forget this time.
 - a. He remembered ______
 - b. He didn't forget _____



EXERCISE 25 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 14-6)

Each phrase in blue contains a preposition. What do you notice about the form of the verb that follows each preposition?

- 1. Sonya is excited about moving to a new city.
- 2. You'd better have a good excuse for being late.
- 3. I'm looking forward to going on vacation soon.

 (a) We talked <i>about going</i> to Iceland (b) Sue is in charge <i>of organizing</i> th 		A gerund is frequently preposition.	used as the object of a
(c) I'm interested in learning more a		ж. Эк	
 (d) I'm used to sleeping with the win (e) I'm accustomed to sleeping* with (f) I look forward to going home nex 	the window open.	In (d) through (f): to is infinitive form, so a ge	a preposition, not part of an rund follows.
(g) We <i>talked about not going</i> to the decided we should go.	meeting, but finally	NEGATIVE FORM: not pre	cedes a gerund.
Common preposition combination be excited** be worried complain dream talk think apologize blame someone forgive someone have an excuse have a reason be responsible thank someone	keep someone prevent someone prohibit someone stop someone be interested believe participate succeed approve be accused be afraid** be capable	irom doing it cou ins be ing it in a be be loc ob be	tired} of /from doing it unt ist on doing it accustomed addition committed devoted ok forward ject opposed used

*Possible in British English: I'm accustomed to sleep with the window open.

**Be afraid, be excited, and be proud can also be used with an infinitive. See Chart 15-2, page 337.

EXERCISE 26 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-6)

Complete each sentence with a preposition and a form of **go**.

A Canceled Trip

- 1. We thought <u>about goi ng</u> to the beach for vacation.
- 2. We talked ______ there.
- 3. We were interested ______ there.
- 4. The kids were excited ______ there.
- 5. They were looking forward ______ there.
- 6. Heavy rain prevented us ______ there.
- 7. A windstorm kept us ______ there.
- 8. So we dreamed ______ there next year.



www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 27 Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-6)

Complete each sentence with a preposition and a form of the verb in parentheses.

On an Airplane Flight

- 1. Two children are excited (*take*) <u>about taki</u> their first flight.
- 2. They have been looking forward (be) ______ above the clouds.
- 3. A first-time flyer is worried (*fly*) ______ in stormy weather.
- 4. One passenger is blaming another passenger (spill) ______ his coffee.
- 5. A man is complaining (*have*) ______ an aisle seat rather than a window seat.
- 6. The pilot was late, but he had an excuse (be) _____ late.
- 7. The co-pilot will be responsible (*fly*) ______ the plane.
- 8. A flight attendant is prohibiting a man (stand) ______ near the cockpit door.

At a Police Station

- 9. A teenager has been accused (steal) ______ a purse.
- 10. An elderly woman said he was responsible (take) ______ it.
- 11. The police are blaming him (do) ______ it.
- 12. The teenager said he was trying to prevent someone else (take) ______ it.
- He is upset. The police are listening to the woman instead (*listen*) _______ to his version of the story.
- 14. He has not yet succeeded (convince) ______ the police of his innocence.

EXERCISE 28 > Let's talk. (Chart 14-6)

Work with a partner. Take turns answering the questions on page 318 in complete sentences. Use prepositions followed by gerunds in your answers.

Example:

PARTNER A: People in some countries have their biggest meal at lunch. Are you used to doing that?

PARTNER B: Yes, I'm used to having my biggest meal at lunch. OR No, I'm not used to having my biggest meal at lunch.



Partner A	PARTNER B
 Your neighbor helped you carry heavy boxes. Did you thank him/her? 	1. Someone broke the window. Do you know who was responsible?
2. You're going to visit friends in another town this weekend. Are you looking forward to	2. The weather is hot/cold. What does that prevent you from doing?
that?3. You didn't come to class on time yesterday.	3. The advanced students have a lot of homework. Do they complain?
Did you have a good excuse?4. You're living in a cold/warm climate. Are you accustomed to that?	4. Your wallet was missing after your friend visited. Do you blame him?
5. You didn't study grammar last night. What did you do instead?	5. A customer interrupted you while you were talking to the store manager. Did she apologize?
6. The students in the class did role-plays. Did all of them participate?	6. You studied last weekend. What did you do in addition?
7. You're going to a deserted island for vacation. Are you excited?	7. Your friend was rude. Did she apologize?

EXERCISE 29 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-6)

Complete each sentence with an appropriate preposition and the -ing form of the given verb.

At Work

- 1. Alice is interested (get) ______ in getting _____ a promotion.
- 2. You are capable (*do*) ______ better work.
- 3. I'm accustomed (get) ______ to work before everyone else.
- 4. Thank you (give) ______ me an office with windows.
- 5. Donna insists (take) ______ the stairs instead of the elevator to the top floor.
- 6. Our company believes (be) ______ honest at all times with customers.
- 7. You should take advantage (work) ______ with so many experts here.
- 8. Lexi had a good reason (come, not) ______ to work yesterday.
- 9. Everyone participated (find) ______ a new administrative assistant.
- 10. I apologized (come) ______ late to the meeting.
- 11. Larry isn't used (wear) ______ a suit and tie

every day.



12. In addition (work)	_ full-time, Spiro is going to night school.
13. I stopped the printer (make)	
14. Would you object my (leave)	early today?
15. Who was opposed to (have)	employees move offices?
16. Are you committed (do)	whatever it takes to be successful at
this company?	
17. Who is responsible (run)	the office while you are away?
18. Employees are prohibited (use)	the company email system for
personal use.	

► EXERCISE 30 > Listening. (Chart 14-6)

Listen to each conversation. Summarize it by completing each sentence with a preposition and a gerund phrase.

1.	The man apologized for being late		
2.	The woman succeeded		
3.	Both speakers are complaining		
4.	The man thanked his friend		
5.	The man didn't have an excuse		
6.	The woman isn't used		
7.	7. The flu kept the man		
	*		

EXERCISE 31 ▶ Let's talk. (Chart 14-6)

By + a gerund or gerund phrase expresses how something is done. Answer the questions with by + a gerund or gerund phrase to express how something is done. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

How ... ?

- 1. How do you turn off a cell phone? \rightarrow By pushing a button.
- 2. How can students improve their listening comprehension?
- 3. How do people satisfy their hunger?
- 4. How do people quench their thirst?
- 5. How did you find out what quench means?
- 6. What are some ways employees get in trouble with their manager?
- 7. How do dogs show they are happy?
- 8. How do cats show they are happy?
- 9. In a restaurant, how do you catch the server's attention?
- 10. How do you greet a friend you haven't seen in a long time? A family member?
- 11. How do you remove a blue ink stain from a white shirt?

EXERCISE 32 Let's talk: interview. (Chart 14-6)

Interview your classmates about the different ways people express emotions. Answers can include descriptions of facial expressions, actions, what people say, etc. Try to use by + gerund in your answers. Share some of the most interesting answers with the class.

Example: excitement

SPEAKER A: How do people show excitement at a sports event?

SPEAKER B: People show excitement at a sports event by clapping their hands, jumping up and down, and yelling.

- 1. happiness
- 3. anger
- 5. confusion

- 2. sadness
- 4. frustration
- 6. disagreement

EXERCISE 33 Reading and speaking. (Chart 14-6) Part I. Read the passage. What do you notice about the forms

in **bold**?

The Awkward Gift

Have you ever received a gift that left you at a loss for words? Perhaps it was an item of clothing a distant aunt chose for you, a souvenir a traveler brought back, or some knick-knack that a friend

thought was cute. Moments like these can be a little awkward. But with a few generic comments, you can skillfully cover your discomfort. Here are some responses that can be useful when you open your present:

- Wow, what an interesting design!
- Oh, I've never seen one of these before. Where did you find it?
- It's so colorful. The artist/designer/creator must have spent a lot of time on it.
- It looks so warm/soft/comfortable.

The giver might respond by saying, "I'm glad you like it." You can finish the exchange with:

- Thank you for giving me
- Thank you for thinking of me.
- Thanks for remembering it was my birthday (or other special day).
- I appreciate your* thinking of me.
- It was very kind of you to think of me.

Speak enthusiastically — with a smile — and you have gracefully accepted the gift.

*In formal English, the possessive form adjective your is necessary. You may be used in informal speech.

- awkward

- souvenir

- gracefully

- knick-knack - discomfort

- loss for words





7. agreement

Do you know these words?

8. surprise

Part II. Work with a partner. Partner A will give a gift to Partner B. You can choose one of the items pictured as a gift, or something you have in your bag or backpack. Complete the conversation. Then practice it and perform it for the class. Remember, you can look at your notes before you speak. When you speak, look at your partner.

A: I have a gift for you. (Pretend to give a wrapped gift to your partner.)

- B: Should I open it now?
- A: Yes, please. I can't wait to see your reaction!

(Partner B pretends to open it.)

B: _	
	6 B
A: _	
_	
B: _	
A: _	

EXERCISE 34 > Warm-up. (Chart 14-7)

Complete the sentences by circling all the activities that are true for you. All the choices end in *-ing*. What do you notice about the verbs in blue?

- 1. Last week I went shopping running biking dancing.
- 2. I like to go hiking swimming camping sightseeing.
- 3. I've never gone fishing bowling skiing skydiving.



14-7 Go + Gerund (a) Did you go shopping? (b) We went fishing yesterday. Go + gerund Go is followed by a gerund in certain idiomatic expressions to express, for the most part, recreational activities.

go biking	go dancing	a go running	go skiing
go birdwatching	go fishing*	go sailing	go skydiving
go boating	go hiking	go shopping	go sledding
go bowling	go hunting	go sightseeing	go snorkeling
go camping	go jogging	go skating	go swimming
go canoeing / kayaking	go mountain climbing	go skateboarding	go window shopping

*Also, in British English: go angling.

EXERCISE 35 ► Let's talk. (Chart 14-7)

Answer the questions about the activities in Chart 14-7. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. Which activities have you done? When? Briefly describe your experiences.
- 2. Which activities do you like to do?
- 3. Which activities do you never want to do?
- 4. Which activities have you not done but would like to do?

EXERCISE 36 ▶ Reading. (Chart 14-7)

Read the description of Ron's day and complete the sentences with a form of go and a verb.

Ron's Busy Saturday

Ron is an active individual. On his days off, he likes to do several activities in one day. His friends can't keep up with him. Last Saturday, for example, he woke up early and went to the lake with his canoe. He finds early mornings on the lake very calm and relaxing. He brought a fishing rod with him so he could catch something for dinner. He saw some friends getting their sailboat ready and thought about joining them but decided instead to take a swim. By that time, it was only noon!

After lunch, he got on his bike and rode in the hills behind his town. Then he cooked a fish that



he had caught for dinner, and it was delicious. Later some friends called to invite him out, so he finished the day by going to a dance with them.

- 1. Early Saturday morning, Ron <u>went canoeing on the lake</u>.
- 2. He brought a fishing rod so he could _____.
- 3. He saw some friends on a sailboat but didn't ______ with them.
- 4. He ______ instead.
- 5. After lunch, he ______.
- 6. He finished the day by ______ with some of his friends.

EXERCISE 37 > Let's talk. (Charts 14-2 and 14-7)

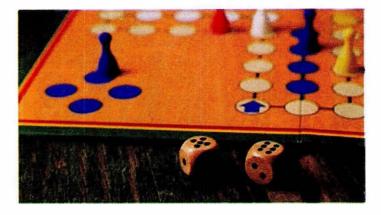
Work with a partner. Take turns giving your opinion about the following activities.

Example: I (enjoy, don't enjoy) \ go \ shop \ for clothes PARTNER A: I don't enjoy going shopping for clothes. How about you? PARTNER B: No, I don't enjoy it either. OR Actually, I enjoy it.

- 1. I (go, never go) \ dance \ on weekends
- 2. I (like to go, don't like to go) \ bowl
- 3. Go \ hunt \ (sounds, doesn't sound) \ like fun to me



- 4. I (sometimes postpone, never postpone) \ do \ my homework
- 5. I (really appreciate, don't appreciate) \ get \ a lot of emails every day
- 6. I (am considering, am not considering) \look \ for a new place to live
- 7. I (used to go, never went) \ fish \ as a child
- 8. I (go, never go) $\log \int$ for exercise
- 9. I (enjoy, don't enjoy) \ play \ board games



EXERCISE 38 > Warm-up. (Chart 14-8)

Agree or disagree with these statements. What do you notice about the verbs in blue?

1. It's easy to have fun shopping at a mall.	yes	no
2. I have a hard time spending my free time indoors.	yes	no
3. Teenagers spend a lot of time doing important things.	yes	no
4. People waste a lot of money buying unnecessary things.	yes	no

 a) We had fun We had a good time b) I had trouble I had difficulty I had a hard time I had a difficult time finding his house. 	-ing forms follow certain special expressions: have fun/a good time + -ing have trouble/difficulty + -ing have a hard time/a difficult time + -ing
(c) Sam spends most of his time studying.(d) I waste a lot of time watching TV.	<pre>spend + expression of time or money + -ing waste + expression of time or money + -ing</pre>
 (e) She sat at her desk doing homework. (f) I stood there wondering what to do next. (g) He is lying in bed reading a book. 	sit + expression of place + -ing stand + expression of place + -ing lie + expression of place + -ing
 (h) When I walked into my office, I <i>found George using</i> my telephone. (i) When I walked into my office, I <i>caught a thief looking</i> through my desk drawers. 	<pre>find + (pro)noun + -ing catch + (pro)noun + -ing In (h) and (i): Both find and catch mean "discover." Catch often expresses anger or displeasure.</pre>

EXERCISE 39 Looking at grammar. (Charts 14-2, 14-3, 14-6, and 14-8) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.





A Gem in the City

I had no idea Central Park was so big and had so much to offer! When I was in New York, I spent a day (explore) ______ it, and I didn't even begin to see all of it. The weather was quite hot, and I enjoyed (walk) ______ around the park in the shade. I _____ to the music for a found a concert, and I sat on the grass (listen) _____ 2 while. I noticed there were a lot of people lying on the ground (relax) _____ (read) ______, or (sleep) ______. It was so peaceful that I found myself (get) ______ sleepy too. I came across a lake for children to fish in, and many parents stood nearby (watch) ______ their kids catch and release fish. People told me about another lake that had rowboats for rent. I thought about _____ that, but I had difficulty (find) _____ (do) _____ _ the 10 boathouse. At the end of the day, I needed (go) ______ back to my hotel, but I had a hard time (*leave*) ______. I definitely plan (*go*) ______ back.

EXERCISE 40 Grammar and speaking. (Chart 14-8)

Complete the sentences about yourself with appropriate *-ing* verbs. Compare your statements with a classmate's.

About Me

1.	Sometimes I have trouble
2.	On weekends, I have fun
3.	In the evenings, I spend my time
4.	In the mornings, I stand in front of the mirror
5.	At school, I sit in class
6.	Sometimes in class I find myself

324 CHAPTER 14

- 7. Sometimes in the middle of the night, I lie in bed ______
- 8. I am/am not a decisive person. I have a/an easy/hard time _____
- 9. You will never catch me _____

⑦ EXERCISE 41 ► Listening. (Chart 14-8)

Listen to the sentences. Complete the sentences, orally or in writing, using *-ing* verbs.

- 1. The speaker has trouble _____
- 2. The speaker caught his son ______

3. The speaker stands at the kitchen counter in the mornings ______.

- 4. The speaker has a hard time _____
- 5. The speaker wasted two hours _____
- 6. The speaker had a good time ______
- 7. The speaker found Tom ______
- 8. The speaker spent an hour ______

EXERCISE 42 ► Warm-up. (Chart 14-9)

All of the sentences are grammatically correct. What differences do you notice in their structure? Do you agree or disagree with the statements? Why or why not?

- 1. Speaking a second language without an accent is nearly impossible for adult language learners.
- 2. To speak a second language without an accent is nearly impossible for adult language learners.
- 3. It is nearly impossible for adult language learners to speak a second language without an accent.

(a) It is difficult to learn a	second language.	Often an infinitive phrase is used with <i>it</i> as the subject of a sentence. The word <i>it</i> refers to and has the same meaning as the infinitive phrase at the end of the sentence. In (a): <i>It</i> means "to learn a second language."
(b) Learning a second lan	guage is difficult.	A gerund phrase is frequently used as the subject of a sentence, as in (b).
(C) To learn a second lang	uage is difficult.	An infinitive can also be used as the subject of a sentence, as in (c), but far more commonly an infinitive phrase is used with <i>it</i> , as in (a).
Learning a second lan	ildren to learn a second language. guage is easy for young children. guage is easy for young children.	The phrase for (someone) may be used to specify exactly who the speaker is talking about, as in (d).

EXERCISE 43 Grammar and speaking. (Chart 14-9)

Work with a partner. Imagine a parent giving advice to a teenager. Make sentences beginning with *it*. Use a form of the given phrase followed by an infinitive phrase for each sentence.

Parent to Teenager

- 1. be dangerous
 - \rightarrow It's dangerous to ride a skateboard without wearing a helmet.
- 2. be important
- 3. not be easy
- 4. be silly
- 5. be smart
- 6. not cost much money
- 7. be necessary
- 8. take time

EXERCISE 44 Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-9)

Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Include a person and any other additional information. Make true statements.

be on time	learn English	take advanced math courses
have a visa	speak Spanish	use gerunds and infinitives correctly

- 1. It is/isn't possible for ...
 - \rightarrow It isn't possible for me to be on time for class when traffic is heavy.
- 2. It is/isn't easy for ...
- 3. It is/isn't important for ...
- 4. It is/isn't essential for ...
- 5. It's a good idea for ...
- 6. It is/isn't difficult for ...

EXERCISE 45 Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 14-9)

Work with a partner. Partner A begins the sentence. Partner B completes it with an infinitive phrase. Partner A restates the sentence using a gerund phrase as the subject. Take turns.

Example:

PARTNER A: It's fun ... PARTNER B: ... to ride a horse. PARTNER A: Riding a horse is fun.

Partner A	PARTNER B
1. It's dangerous	1. It's wrong
2. It's easy	2. It takes a lot of time
3. It's a good idea	3. It's impolite
4. It's important	4. Is it difficult ?



14-10 Reference List of Verbs Followed by Infinitives

Verbs with a bullet (•) can also be followed by gerunds. See Chart 14-11.

Verbs Followed Immediately by an Infinitive

1.	agree	They agreed to help us.	25.	learn	He learned to play the piano.
2.	appear	She appears to be tired.	26.	like•	I like to go to the movies.
3.	arrange	I'll arrange to meet you at the airport.	27.	love•	l love to go to operas.
4.	ask	He asked to come with us.	28.	manage	She managed to finish her work early.
5.	beg	He begged to come with us.	29.	mean	I didn't mean to hurt your feelings.
6.	begin•	It began to rain.	30.	need	I need to have your opinion.
7.	can't afford	I can't afford to buy it.	31.	offer	They offered to help us.
8.	can't bear∙	I can't bear to wait in long lines.	32.	plan	I'm planning to have a party.
9.	can't stand•	I can't stand to wait in long lines.	33.	prefer•	Ann prefers to walk to work.
10.	can't wait	We can't wait to see you.	34.	prepare	We prepared to welcome them.
11.	care	I don't care to see that show.	35.	pretend	He pretends not to understand.
12.	claim	She claims to know a famous movie	36.	promise	I promise not to be late.
		star.	37.	refuse	I refuse to believe his story.
13.	consent	She finally consented to marry him.	38.	regret•	I regret to tell you that you failed.
14.	continue	He continued to speak.	39.	remember•	I remembered to lock the door.
15.	decide	I have decided to leave on Monday.	40.	seem	That cat seems to be friendly.
16.	demand	I demand to know who is	41.	start•	It started to rain.
		responsible.	42.	stop	Let's stop to get a snack.
	deserve	She deserves to win the prize.	43.	struggle	I struggled to stay awake.
18.	expect	l expect to enter graduate school in	44.	swear	She swore to tell the truth.
10	C . 1	the fall.	45.	tend	He tends to talk too much.
19.	fail	She failed to return the book to the library on time.	46.	threaten	She threatened to tell my parents.
20.	forget•	I forgot to mail the letter.	47.	try∙	I'm trying to learn English.
	hate	I hate to make silly mistakes.	48.	volunteer	He volunteered to help us.
	hesitate	Don't hesitate to ask for my help.	49.	wait	I'll wait to hear from you.
	hope	Jack hopes to arrive next week.	50.	want	want to tell you something.
	intend	He intends to be a firefighter.	51.	wish	She wishes to come with us.

Verbs Followed by a (Pro)noun + an Infinitive

1.	advise•	She advised me to wait until tomorrow.	15.	invite	Harry invited the Johnsons to come to his party.
2.	allow	She allowed me to use her car.	16.	need	We needed Chris to help us figure
3.	ask	asked John to help us.			out the solution.
4.	beg	They begged us to come.	17.	order	The judge ordered me to pay a fine.
5.	cause	Her laziness caused her to fail.	18.	permit	Hepermitted the children to stay
6.	challenge	She challenged me to race her to			up late.
	0	the corner.	19.	persuade	I persuaded him to come for a visit.
7.	convince	I couldn't convince him to accept	20.	remind	She reminded me to lock the door.
		our help.	21.	require	Our teacher requires us to be
8.	dare	He dared me to do better than he			on time.
		had done.	22.	teach	My brother taught me to swim.
9.	encourage	He encouraged me to try again.	23.	tell	The doctor told me to take these
10.	expect	expect you to be on time.			pills.
11.	forbid	forbid you to tell him.	24.	urge	I urged her to apply for the job.
12.	force	They forced him to tell the truth.	25.	want	I want you to be happy.
13.	hire	She hired a boy to mow the lawn.	26.	warn	I warned you not to drive too fast.
14.	instruct	He instructed them to be careful.			

14-11 Reference List of Verbs Followed by Gerunds

Verbs with a bullet (•) can also be followed by infinitives. See Chart 14-10.

Dunct		by mininuves. See Onart 14-10.
1.	admit	He admitted stealing the money.
2.	advise●	She advised waiting until tomorrow.
3.	anticipate	I anticipate having a good time on vacation.
4.	appreciate	I appreciated hearing from them.
5.	avoid	He avoided answering my question.
6.	begin∙	It began raining.
7.	can't bear•	I can't bear waiting in long lines.
8.	can't help	I can't help worrying about it.
9.	can't imagine	I can't imagine having no friends.
10.	can't stand•	I can't stand waiting in long lines.
11.	complete	I finally completed writing my term paper.
12.	consider	I will consider going with you.
13.	continue	He continued speaking.
14.	delay	He delayed leaving for school.
15.	deny	She denied committing the crime.
16.	discuss	They discussed opening a new business.
17.	dislike	I dislike driving long distances.
18.	enjoy	We enjoyed visiting them.
19.	finish	She finished studying about ten.
20.	forget•	I'll never forget visiting Napoleon's tomb.
21.	hate•	I hate making silly mistakes.
22.	imagine	I imagined getting a scholarship, and I did.
23.	keep	I keep hoping he will come.
24.	like•	l like going to movies.
25.	love•	l love going to operas.
26.	mention	She mentioned going to a movie.
27.	mind	Would you mind helping me with this?
28.	miss	I miss being with my family.
29.	postpone	Let's postpone leaving until tomorrow.
30.	practice	The athlete practiced throwing the ball.
31.	prefer●	Ann prefers walking to driving to work.
32.	quit	He quit trying to solve the problem.
33.	recall	I don't recall meeting him before.
34.	recollect	I don't recollect meeting him before.
35.	recommend	She recommended seeing the show.
36.	regret•	I regret telling him my secret.
37.	remember•	I can remember meeting him when I was a child.
38.	resent	I resent her interfering in my business.
39.	resist	I couldn't resist eating the dessert.
40.	risk	She risks losing all of her money.
41.	start•	It started raining.
42.	stop	She stopped going to classes when she got sick.
43.	suggest	She suggested going to a movie.
44.	tolerate	She won't tolerate cheating during an examination.
45.	try∙	I tried changing the light bulb, but the lamp still didn't work.
46.	understand	I don't understand his leaving school.
47.	urge	The official urged using caution.

www.ieltstep.com

14-12 Reference List of Preposition Combinations Followed by Gerunds

Preposition Combinations + Gerunds

	sposition combin	actoris i Geranas			confide
1.	apologize for	He apologized for forgetting his wife's birthday.	14.	look forward to	I'm looking forward to going home.
2.	approve of	The company manager approved of hiring me.	15.	object to	The voters objected to increasing taxes.
3.	blame someone for	She blamed him for stealing her phone.	16.	participate in	The entire staff participated in welcoming students on the
4.	complain about / of	She complained about working too hard.	17.	prevent someone from	first day. Will the medicine <i>prevent me</i>
5.	count on	I'm counting on going with you.			from getting sick?
6.	dream about / of	He dreamed about / of flying an airplane	18.	prohibit someone from	The police prohibited them from leaving.
7.	forgive someone for	She forgave him for lying.	19.	stop someone from	Security stopped a passenger
8.	have a reason for	He had a reason for being			from getting on the subway.
9.	have an excuse for	absent. Did you have an excuse for	20.	succeed in	He succeeded in getting the job.
	in addition to	leaving early? In addition to studying, I have	21.	take advantage of	I'm taking advantage of having a free day tomorrow.
		to work this weekend.	22.	take care of	She took care of filling out the paperwork.
	insist on	I insist on coming with you.	23	talk about / of	He talked about / of feeling
12.	instead of	Instead of sitting there, why don't you help us?			homesick.
13.	keep someone from	Can a special pillow keep you		thank someone for	They thanked him for coming.
		from snoring?	25.	think about / of	She thought about quitting her job.
Pre	eposition Combin	nations with Be + Gerunds			revolution and the
	be accused of be accustomed to	He was accused of stealing. She is accustomed to working	9.	be interested in	am interested in learning more about your country.
	be afraid of	hard. My kids are afraid of being	10.	be opposed to	He is opposed to going to war.
		alone.	11.	be proud of	She was proud of knowing
4. 1	be capable of	She is capable of memorizing long lists of words.	12	be responsible for	the answer.
5. I	be committed to	Dr. Pak is committed to improving			Who is responsible for repairing the roads?
6. 1	be devoted to	medical care in rural areas. They are devoted to helping	13.	be tired of / from	He was tired of running. He was tired from running.*
		the poor.	14.	be used to	She is used to working
7.	be excited about	She is excited about starting college.	15.	be worried about	weekends. The driver was worried about
8. 1	be guilty of	He was guilty of lying to the judge.			getting a traffic ticket.

*He was tired of running. = He doesn't want to run anymore.

He was tired from running. = He was tired because of running.

EXERCISE 46 \blacktriangleright Let's talk: pairwork. (Charts 14-10 \rightarrow 14-12)

Work with a partner. Complete the sentences with **doing it** or **to do it**. Partner A gives the prompt for the first group of ten. Then change roles where indicated. Check Charts 14-10 to 14-12 for the correct verb form if necessary.

Example: I promise

PARTNER A (book open): I promise ... PARTNER B (book closed): ... to do it.

- 1. We plan ...
- 2. I can't afford ...
- 3. She didn't allow me ...
- 4. I don't care ...
- 5. Please remind me ...
- 6. I am considering ...
- 7. Our director postponed ...
- 8. He persuaded me ...
- 9. I don't mind ...
- 10. Everyone avoided ...

Change roles.

- 11. I refused ...
- 12. I hope ...
- 13. She convinced me ...
- 14. He mentioned ...
- 15. She complained about ...
- 16. I encouraged him ...
- 17. I warned him not ...
- 18. We prepared ...
- 19. I don't recall ...
- 20. Who is responsible for ...?

Change roles.

- 21. He resented ...
- 22. When will you finish ...?
- 23. Did you practice ...?
- 24. She agreed ...
- 25. He was guilty of ...

- 26. Stop ...
- 27. I didn't force him ...
- 28. I couldn't resist ...
- 29. Somehow, the cat managed ...
- 30. Did the little boy admit ...?

Change roles.

- 31. He denied ...
- 32. I didn't mean ...
- 33. She swore ...
- 34. I volunteered ...
- 35. He suggested ...
- 36. He advised me ...
- 37. He struggled ...
- 38. I don't want to risk ...
- 39. Do you recommend ...?
- 40. I miss ...

Change roles.

- 41. I can't imagine ...
- 42. She threatened ...
- 43. He seems to dislike ...
- 44. The children begged ...
- 45. She challenged me ...
- 46. Did he deny ... ?
- 47. She taught me ...
- 48. Do you anticipate ...?
- 49. They are opposed to ...
- 50. I'll arrange ...

EXERCISE 47 \blacktriangleright Game. (Charts 14-10 \rightarrow 14-12)

Work in teams. Your teacher will begin a sentence by using any of the verbs in Charts 14-10 to 14-12. Complete the sentence with *to do it* or *doing it*, or with your own words. Each correct answer gets one point.

Example:

TEACHER: I reminded Mario ... STUDENT A: ... to do it. or ... to be on time. TEACHER: Yes. One point!

EXERCISE 48 Looking at grammar. (Chapter 14 Review)

Work in pairs. Choose all the correct sentences. Explain why each incorrect sentence is wrong

- 1. a. Text while you are driving is dangerous.
 - (b.) It is dangerous to text while you are driving.
 - c. Texting while you are driving is dangerous.
- 2. a. We hope visiting them soon.
 - b. We hope to visit them soon.
 - c. We hope you to visit them soon.
- 3. a. Jay suggested going to the movies.
 - b. Jay suggested that we go to the movies.
 - c. Jay suggested me to go the movies.
- 4. a. Convincing me to take time off it is easy.
 - b. It's easy to convince me to take time off.
 - c. Convincing me to take time off is easy.
- 5. a. To run and playing on the beach are two things my kids love to do.
 - b. Running and playing on the beach are two things my kids love to do.
 - c. Run and play on the beach are two things my kids love to do.
- 6. a. My grandmother couldn't stand to touch cat fur.
 - b. My grandmother couldn't stand to touching cat fur.
 - c. My grandmother couldn't stand touching cat fur.
- 7. a. Roger spends two hours commuting to work.
 - b. Roger spends two hours commute to work.
 - c. Roger spends two hours for commuting to work.

EXERCISE 49 • Check your knowledge. (Chapter 14 Review)

Correct the errors.

- 1. I don't mind to have a roommate.
- 2. Is hard for me understand people who speak very fast.
- 3. Learning about another country it is very interesting.
- 4. I tried very hard to don't make any mistakes.
- 5. Find an English tutor wasn't difficult.
- 6. All of us needed to went to the ticket office before the game yesterday.
- 7. I'm looking forward to go to swimming in the ocean.
- 8. Ski in the Alps it was a big thrill for me.
- 9. Don't keep to be asking me the same questions over and over.
- 10. During a fire drill, everyone is required leaving the building.
- 11. I don't enjoy to play card games. I prefer to spend my time for read or watch movies.
- 12. When I entered the room, I found my young son stand on the kitchen table.
- 13. Instead of work, Katie was lying on her bed think about her fiancé.

EXERCISE 50 Reading, grammar, and writing. (Chapter 14)

Part I. Read the thank-you note written after a job interview. Then read the tips that follow.

Dear Mr. Lopez,

Thank you for giving me the opportunity to interview with you. I enjoyed learning more about your business and having the chance to tell you about my skills and experience. Also, it was interesting to find out that you and my uncle went to school together.

As we discussed, I have an associate's degree in automotive technology and two years of on-the-job experience. Combined with my strong work ethic, I believe this background has prepared me well to be an entry-level mechanic with ABC Automotive.

I am excited to be considered for this position. If you have any further questions, please call or email me. I look forward to hearing from you.

Sincerely,

Gina DeVries

Gina DeVries

Although there are various ways to write a thank-you note after a job interview, notice the following important points:

- The writer begins by thanking the interviewer and telling him that she enjoyed the experience.
- In the second paragraph, she restates her skills and experience. She adds that she would be a good person for the specific job.
- In the final paragraph, she expresses enthusiasm for the position. She asks the interviewer to contact her if he has any further questions.
- A common way to end this type of letter is to write I look forward to hearing from you.
- Sincerely, Best regards, or Kind regards are polite ways to close.

You might be wondering if the letter should be sent by regular mail or if it can be emailed. It really depends on the culture of the company. For many companies, such as those with a tech or science focus, email is the norm. Also, if the decision is being made quickly, regular mail may be too slow. One rule of thumb is to communicate in the same way as you did previously. If everything has been online, for example, there's a good chance that an email will be preferred.

The thank-you letter is a nice touch. It shows that you are respectful and interested in the position. It may help the interviewer remember you better, especially if you can mention something specific that you talked about. Just be sure that you have someone check it for grammar and spelling! You want to make a good impression.

Part II. Write whether a gerund or infinitive follows each item in the sample letter.

- 1. Thank you for ______
- 2. enjoyed _____
- 3. am excited _____
- 4. look forward to _____

332 CHAPTER 14

Part III. Choose one of the following options:

- 1. Write a thank-you letter to follow up on a job interview that you have had.
- 2. Write a thank-you letter for the following situation:
 - Henry Sanson interviewed with Ms. Azizi for the position of hotel assistant manager. He has a recent degree in hotel management and one year's experience as a front desk clerk.

WRITING TIP

Thank-you notes, whether for business or otherwise, often have these key phrases:

- thank you for + gerund
- be interested in + gerund
- enjoy + gerund
- look forward to + gerund
- appreciate your taking the time + infinitive
- have the opportunity/chance + infinitive

When you use these words, be sure to check that you have the correct gerund or infinitive form after them.

Part IV. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box correct use of gerunds
- 2. \Box correct use of infinitives
- 3. \Box singular verb when a gerund is the subject
- 4. \Box correct preposition if one is required
- 5. \Box correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 2

PRETEST: What do I already know?

CHAPTER

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct gerund and infinitive form and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. _____Yasmin is returning home for to complete her medical studies. (15-1)
- 2. ____ I was sorry to hear that Mila and Pablo are moving away from here. (15-2)
- 3. ____Your little puppy seems very eager to pleasing. (15-2)
- 4. ____ The baby isn't enough tired to sleep right now. (15-3)
- 5. _____ It's easy to be fool by Jordan's charm. (15-4)
- 6. ____ Marcus mentioned having lost a large sum of money. (15-5)
- 7. ____ I was happy to have been invited to the surprise party. (15-5)
- 8. ____ The car is really dirty. It needs to be wash. (15-6)
- 9. ____ The walls in our apartment are paper thin, and I could hear my roommate snoring loudly. (15-7)
- 10. ____ Could you help me to carry the groceries inside? There are several bags. (15-8)
- 11. _____ Rafael lets his young children to stay up past midnight on weekends. (15-8)
- 12. ____ Diana makes her kids clean their rooms once a week. (15-9)
- 13. ____ I appreciate your helping me with the plans for the party. (15-10)

II '01 '8 '5 '7 'E 'I :soureures: 1' 3' 4' 2' 8' 10' II

EXERCISE 1 > Warm-up. (Chart 15-1)

Which sentences answer the question "Why"?

- 1. The baby came to the hospital last week.
- 2. She has come to the hospital to get special treatment.
- 3. The doctor wore a clown nose to cheer up his patients.
- 4. The doctor will check the teddy bear first.
- 5. The doctor is going to check the teddy bear's heart to relax the baby.



15-1 Infinitive of Purpose: In Or	rder To
(a) He came here <i>in order to study</i> English.(b) He came here <i>to study</i> English.	<i>In order to</i> is used to express <i>purpose</i> . It answers the question "Why?" <i>In order</i> is often omitted, as in (b).
 (c) INCORRECT: He came here for studying English. (d) INCORRECT: He came here for to study English. (e) INCORRECT: He came here for study English. 	To express purpose, use (in order) to, not for, with a verb.*
(f) I went to the store <i>for</i> some bread.(g) I went to the store <i>to buy</i> some bread.	<i>For</i> can be used to express purpose, but it is a preposition and is followed by a noun object, as in (f).

*Exception: The phrase be used for expresses the typical or general purpose of a thing. In this case, the preposition for is followed by a gerund: A saw is used for cutting wood. Also possible: A saw is used to cut wood.

However, to talk about a particular thing and a particular situation, be used + an infinitive is generally used: A chain saw was used to cut (NOT for cutting) down the old oak tree.

EXERCISE 2 Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-1)

Complete the sentences with to or for.

Isabella spent a month in Miami. She went there ...

- 1. <u>to</u> see her cousins.
- 2. _______ a vacation.
- 3. _____ business.
- 4. _____ meet with company executives.
- 5. _____ discuss long-term plans for the company.
- 6. ______ spend time with her parents.
- 7. _____ a visit with childhood friends.

EXERCISE 3 Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-1)

Complete each sentence with an item from the right column.

Why?

- 1. Gina went to the grocery store for ____.
- 2. Gina went to the grocery store to _____.
- 3. My father swims every day to _____.
- 4. My mother runs every day for _____.
- 5. I went to the doctor for _____.
- 6. I made a doctor's appointment to _____.
- 7. I went to an ATM to _____.
- 8. I stopped at an ATM for _____.

- a. cash
- b. her health
- c. get a prescription
- d. food
- e. make a deposit
- f. pick up something for dinner
- g. stay in shape
- h. a prescription



EXERCISE 4 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-1)

Add *in order* wherever possible. If nothing should be added, write Ø.

- 1. a. Lydia went to the dentist ______ to get some relief from her toothache.
 - b. She doesn't go often _____ to get checkups.
 - c. She's not enthusiastic about going _____ to the dentist.
 - d. She's very sensitive ______ to pain, and she's allergic ______ to Novocain.
 - e. She also works long hours ______ to support her family and doesn't have time for medical appointments.
- a. Joe made cookies ______ to take a dessert to the party.
 - b. He decorated them ______ to impress his girlfriend.
 - c. He likes ______ to bake when he has free time.
 - d. He cooks ______ to relax after a stressful day at work.
 - e. His father was a pastry chef and taught him how

_____ to bake.



EXERCISE 5 ▶ Let's talk: interview. (Chart 15-1)

Ask two classmates each question. Share some of their responses with the class.

What are two reasons why some people ...

- 1. go to Hawaii for vacation?
- 2. exercise?
- 3. cheat on exams?
- 4. meditate?
- 5. tell white lies?*
- 6. become actors?

EXERCISE 6 Warm-up. (Chart 15-2)

Look at the adjectives in blue. What do you notice about the words that come before and after them?

- 1. Eva was sorry to hear that the used car she liked had been sold.
- 2. She is certain to find another soon.
- 3. She was happy to find a helpful dealer.
- 4. Her friend Kevin had a different experience. He was upset to learn that the salesperson hadn't given him all the facts.
- 5. He is unlikely to buy a car from this dealer.



^{*}white lies = lies that aren't considered serious, e.g., telling a friend her dress looks nice when you don't think it does

We were sorry to I was surprised to	near the bad news. see Ted at the meeting.	Certain adjectives ca (a) and (b).	an be immediately fol	lowed by infinitives, as in
,			ectives describe a per adjectives describe a	son (or persons), not a a person's feelings or
common adjectives	followed by infinitives			
glad to (do it) happy to pleased to* delighted to content to relieved to lucky to fortunate to excited to	sorry to* sad to* upset to* disappointed to* embarrassed to proud to ashamed to	ready to prepared to anxious to eager to willing to motivated to determined to	careful to hesitant to reluctant to afraid to certain to likely to unlikely to	surprised to* amazed to* astonished to* shocked to* stunned to*

*The expressions with asterisks are usually followed by infinitive phrases with verbs such as see, learn, discover, find out, hear.

EXERCISE 7 > Let's talk. (Chart 15-2)

Work in small groups. Complete the sentences with adjectives from Chart 15-2 that make sense. Discuss your answers.

SITUATION 1: Mr. Wah was offered an excellent job in another country. He sees advantages and disadvantages to moving.

He i	s		
1.	sad to / prepared to / reluctant to	leave his country.	
2.		move away from his elderly	200
	parents.		
3.		take his wife and children	
	away from family and friends.		
4.		_ try a new job.	
5.		learn a new language.	
SITU	JATION 2: There have been a lot of nighttime burgla	ries in the town of Viewmont.	
The	residents have been		
6.		leave their homes overnight.	
7.		lock their doors and window	s at night.
8.		-	
	watch for strangers on the streets.		
9.			SI Ha
	have weekly meetings with the police for updates on t	heir progress.	
10.		hear	
	that the police suspect neighborhood residents.		

EXERCISE 8 > Writing or speaking. (Chart 15-2)

Complete the sentences using the expressions listed in Chart 15-2 and your own words. Use infinitive phrases in your completions.



- 1. Nicole always speeds on the expressway. She's ...
 - \rightarrow She's certain to get stopped by the police.
 - \rightarrow She's likely to get a ticket.
- 2. I've worked hard all day long. Enough! I'm ...
- 3. Next month, I'm going to a family reunion the first one in 25 years. I'm very much looking forward to it. I'm ...
- 4. Some children grow up in unhappy homes. My family, however, has always been loving and supportive. I'm ...
- 5. Ivan's run out of money again, but he doesn't want anyone to know his situation. He needs money desperately, but he's ...
- 6. Rosalyn wants to become an astronaut. That has been her dream since she was a little girl. She has been working hard toward her goal and is ...
- 7. Our neighbors had extra tickets to the baseball game, so they invited us to go with them. Since both of us love baseball, we were ...
- 8. My sister-in-law recently told me what my brother is up to these days. I couldn't believe my ears! I was ...

EXERCISE 9 > Let's talk: interview. (Chart 15-2)

Make questions using the words in parentheses. Ask two classmates each question. Share some of their answers with the class.

- 1. What are children sometimes (afraid \ do)?
- 2. When you're tired in the evening, what are you (content \ do)?
- 3. What should drivers be (careful \ do) in traffic?
- 4. If one of your friends has a problem, what are you (willing $\ \ do$)?
- 5. What are people who don't speak English well (reluctant \ do)?
- 6. What are you (determined \ do) before you are too old?
- 7. What are things some students are (motivated $\ do$)?
- 8. Can you tell me something you were (shocked \ find out)?
- 9. Can you tell me something you were (sad \ hear)?
- 10. What are you (eager $\$ do) in the near future?

EXERCISE 10 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 15-3)

Complete the sentences with too, to, and enough.

- MARIA: Will these chilies work for your recipe?
- ALBERTO: They are too spicy. I don't want to cook with them.
- RICARDO: They are spicy enough. I'll cook with them.
 - 1. Alberto says they are ______ spicy

_____ cook with.

2. Ricardo says they are spicy _____

_____ cook with.



15-3 Using Infinitives with Too and	
COMPARE: (a) That box is <i>too heavy</i> for Bob to lift. (b) That box is <i>very heavy</i> , but Bob can lift it.	Too can be followed by an infinitive, as in (a). In the speaker's mind, the use of too implies a negative result. In (a): too heavy = It is <i>impossible</i> for Bob to lift that box. In (b): very heavy = It is <i>possible but difficult</i> for Bob to lift that box.
 (c) I am strong enough to lift that box. I can lift it. (d) I have enough strength to lift that box. (e) I have strength enough to lift that box. 	 <i>Enough</i> can also be followed by an infinitive. Note the following: <i>Enough</i> follows the adjective, as in (c). Usually <i>enough</i> precedes a noun, as in (d). In formal English, it may follow a noun, as in (e).

EXERCISE 11 Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-3)

Complete the sentences with too or enough.

- 1. a. It's ______ stormy to go outside. I'll work inside today.
 - b. The weather is severe ______ to keep emergency workers indoors.
- 2. a. Your room needs to be cleaned. You are old ______ to do it yourself.
 - b. Please do it now. It's _____ messy to wait another day.
- 3. a. The conversation occurred ______ long ago to remember any specific details.
 - b. It was long ______ ago to make the details seem unimportant.
- 4. a. It's ______ expensive to fly home on the weekend. We'll need to leave on a weekday.
 - b. Jason has money ______ to fly anywhere in the world.
- 5. a. Rebecca's cold is really contagious. She has sense ______ to stay home.
 - b. She has ______ sense to not expose others to her cold.
- 6. a. When I injure my back, it's often _____ painful to sleep at night.
 - b. George's back injury was painful ______ to keep him in bed for a week.

EXERCISE 12 ▶ Let's talk. (Chart 15-3)

Answer the questions. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

Your Thoughts?

- 1. What is your backpack/bag big enough to hold? What is it too small to hold?
- 2. What do you have enough time to do after class today? Are you too busy to do something you'd like to do or should do?
- 3. Is there enough space in this classroom for 100 people? Or is it too small to hold that many people? How many people is this room big enough to hold comfortably?
- 4. Do you think it is very important to practice your English? Do you get enough practice? In your opinion, how much practice is enough?
- 5. Is it very difficult or too difficult to learn English articles (a, an, the)?
- 6. Think of a scientist you have learned about. What was he or she smart enough to do?



EXERCISE 13 ► Listening. (Chart 15-3)

Choose the sentence that has the same meaning as the sentence you hear.

Example: You will hear: I didn't fill your cup full enough. You will choose: a. You need more. b. You have enough.

- a. He's old enough to drive.
 b. He shouldn't drive.
- 2. a. She is too young to stay home alone.b. She stays home alone sometimes.
- 3. a. The test results are excellent.b. I'm not sure about the test results.
- 4. a. The room needs to be bigger.b. The room size is OK.
- 5. a. You will have enough time.b. You will need more time.
- 6. a. I want to eat them.b. I don't want to eat them.

EXERCISE 14 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 15-4)

Choose the correct form of the passive verbs. Reminder: A passive verb has a form of **be** and a past participle, e.g., the patient was seen by a specialist.

- 1. The patient was hoping to be given / being given a good diagnosis.
- 2. He was worried about to be diagnosed / being diagnosed with cancer.
- 3. The patient appreciated to be seen / being seen by a specialist.
- 4. It was important for him to be seen / being seen by a specialist.

15 1 Descive Infinitives and Comunday Breeset

13-4 Passive infinitives and	Gerdinus. Present
(a) I didn't expect to be asked to his party.	PASSIVE INFINITIVE: to be + past participle
	In (a): to be asked is a passive infinitive.
	The understood by-phrase is by him: I didn't expect to be asked to his party (by him).
(b) I appreciated being asked to his party.	PASSIVE GERUND: being + past participle
	In (b): <i>being asked</i> is a passive gerund.
	The understood by-phrase is by him: I appreciated being asked to his party (by him).

EXERCISE 15 Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-4)

Complete the sentences with the passive form of *invite*.

Ann's Party

1. Sam would like <u>to be invited</u> to Ann's party.

340 CHAPTER 15



- 2. Mara also hopes ______.
- 3. Maria has no doubts. She expects ______ to it.
- 4. Omar is looking forward to ______ too.
- 5. I would enjoy ______ to it, but I probably won't be.
- 6. Everyone I know wants ______ to Ann's party.



EXERCISE 16 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-4)

Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

Complaints

- 1. I don't enjoy (*laugh*) <u>being laughed</u> at by other people.
- 2. Ryan lied again. Unfortunately, it's easy (fool) <u>to be foo bd</u> by his lies.

3. It's not unusual for teenagers to complain about not (understand) _____

_____ by their parents.

- 4. Your compositions are not supposed (*handwrite*) ______. They're supposed to (*type*) ______.
- 5. Dr. Davis is upset. She doesn't want (*call*) ______ at home unless there is an emergency.
- 7. Lars is hoping (*elect*) _______ to the city council, but he's not qualified at all.
- 8. My sister is a helicopter parent.* Her kids need (*give*) _______ _____ more independence.



*a helicopter parent = an overprotective or overinvolved parent



EXERCISE 17 Reading and listening. (Chart 15-4)

First, read the paragraph and try to complete the sentences using the words in the box. Then listen to the paragraph and check your answers.

to be understood	to solve	to read
able to read	using	being

An Issue in Health Care: Illiteracy

According to some estimates, well over half of the people in
the world are functionally illiterate. This means that they are
unable to perform everyday tasks because they can't read,
understand, and respond appropriately to information. One
of the problems this creates in health care is that millions of
people are not directions on
medicine bottles or packages. Imagine a parent with a sick child
and being unable the directions on a medicine bottle. We all know
that it is important for medical directions
is pictures. Many medical professionals are working today
problem by pictures to convey health-care information.

EXERCISE 18 > Let's talk. (Chart 15-4)

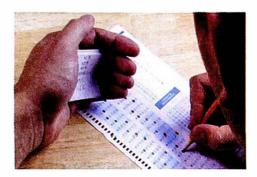
Agree or disagree with the following statements and give reasons. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. I appreciate being given advice by my family and friends.
- 2. I always expect to be told the absolute and complete truth by everyone at all times.
- 3. I would like to be invited to an event where there are a lot of famous people.

EXERCISE 19 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 15-5)

Look at the sentences. All are correct. Which forms are you most familiar with? What differences do you see between "b." and "c."?

- 1. a. Liam denied that he cheated on the test.
 - b. Liam denied cheating on the test.
 - c. Liam denied having cheated on the test.
- 2. a. He was surprised that he was caught by the teacher.
 - b. He was surprised to be caught by the teacher.
 - c. He was surprised to have been caught by the teacher.





15	-5	Past Forms o	f Infinitives and G	erunds: Active and Passive	
SIMF	PLE	PAST ACTIVE	PAST PASSIVE	Past infinitives and gerunds use a form of	
to te tellir		to have told having told	to have been told having been told	have + past participle.	
• •			his wife about his job	PAST INFINITIVE: to have + past participle	
	promotion.			The event expressed in past phrases happened before the time of the main verb.	
				The meaning in (a): It appeared that Tim had told his wife about his job promotion.	
(b) Tim's wife was happy to have been told immediately about his job promotion.		ave been told immediately	PAST PASSIVE INFINITIVE: to have been + past participle The meaning in (b): Tim's wife was happy that she had been told immediately about his job promotion.		
	He mentioned <i>having told</i> his wife immediately about his job promotion.		his wife immediately about	PAST GERUND: <i>having + past participle</i> The meaning in (c): He mentioned that he had told his wife immediately about his job promotion.	
• •	She appreciated <i>having been told</i> immediately about his job promotion.		en told immediately about	PAST PASSIVE GERUND: <i>having been</i> + <i>past participle</i> The meaning in (d): She appreciated that she had been told immediately about his job promotion.	
	e) Tim mentioned <i>telling</i> his wife. Tim mentioned <i>having told</i> his wife.			Use of the past infinitive or gerund emphasizes that something occurred in the past, prior to another event.	
(f) She was happy to be told. She was happy to have been told.		en told.	In practice, however, there is little difference in meaning between the simple and past forms, as in (e) and (f).		

EXERCISE 20 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-5)

Rewrite the sentences with the appropriate past infinitive or gerund phrase.

- 1. It seems that Thomas has received some upsetting news. \rightarrow Thomas seems to have received some upsetting news.
- 2. The workers mentioned that they lost the contract. \rightarrow The workers mentioned having lost the contract.
- 3. Mr. and Mrs. Sanchez regret that they missed your wedding.
- 4. It appears that Nicholas has gotten a new job.
- 5. The mechanic admitted that he had overcharged for repairs.
- 6. Mariah claims that she has met several celebrities.

EXERCISE 21 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-5)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

- 1. I'm not sure I've ever met Billy Williams. (meet)
 - a. I don't remember that I <u>met</u> him.
 - b. I don't recall having <u>met</u> him.
 - c. I don't recall _____ him.
 - d. I don't remember ______ him.
 - e. I don't remember having _____ him.

www.ieltstep.com

- 2. Ben was in the army during the war. He was caught by the enemy, but he was able to escap (survive)
 - a. He was lucky to ______ the war.
 - b. He was lucky to have ______ the war.
 - c. He was fortunate to ______ the war.
 - d. He told us about having ______ the war.
 - e. He told us about ______ the war.
 - f. It was fortunate that he ______ the war.

EXERCISE 22 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 15-4 and 15-5)

Work with a partner. Choose the correct verbs. Several sentences have more than one correct answer. Discuss your answers.

- 1. Carlos looks great! He appears _____ some weight.
 - a. losing
 - b. to have lost
 - c. to losing
- 2. I don't like _____ by friends.
 - a. being lied to
 - b. lying to
 - c. to lie to
- 3. Mr. Gow mentioned _____ in an accident as a child.
 - a. being injured
 - b. having been injured
 - c. injured
- 4. I was expecting _____ to the party, but I wasn't.
 - a. being invited
 - b. to be invited
 - c. to have been invited
- 5. My husband talked of _____ by his parents.
 - a. being misunderstood
 - b. having been misunderstood
 - c. misunderstood
- 6. The employees were happy _____
 Mr. Larson as their next president.
 a. to choose
 - b. to have chosen
 - c. to have been chosen

- 7. Mr. Larson was happy _____ as the next company president.
 - a. to choose
 - b. to be chosen
 - c. to have been chosen

EXERCISE 23 > Warm-up. (Chart 15-6)

Make statements that are true for you. Use the same noun to complete each sentence. Do the sentences have the same or different meanings?

- 1. I need to clean my ______
- 2. My _____ needs cleaning.
- 3. My ______ needs to be cleaned.
- 344 CHAPTER 15

15-6 Using Gerunds or Passive Infinitives Following Need

(a) I need to paint my house.	Usually an infinitive follows need , as in (a) and (b).	
(b) John <i>needs to be told</i> the truth.		
(c) My house needs painting.(d) My house needs to be painted.	In certain circumstances, a gerund may follow <i>need</i> , as in (c). In this case, the gerund carries a passive meaning. Usually the situations involve fixing or improving something.	
	Examples (c) and (d) have the same meaning.	

EXERCISE 24 Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-6)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Some verbs are active, and some are passive.

Farm Chores

- The tractor is broken. I need (*fix*) _______ to *fix*_______ it. The tractor needs (*fix*) _______fixing/to be fixed _______.
 The horses are hungry. They need (*feed*) ________.
 Their stalls are dirty. We need (*clean*) _______ them.
 The hens have laid eggs. You need (*gather*) ________ then hens have laid eggs. You need (*gather*) ________
- 5. The dog's been digging in the mud. He needs (wash) _____
- 6. The vegetable garden is dry. It needs (*water*) ______.
- 7. The apples on the tree are ripe. We need (*pick*) ______ them.
- 8. There is a hole in the fence. The fence needs (repair) _____.

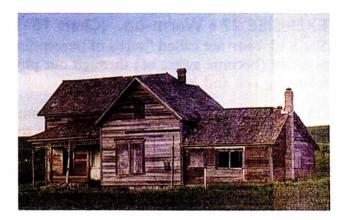
EXERCISE 25 Let's talk. (Chart 15-6)

Lawrence and Kara have been looking for a house. They've found one on a beautiful piece of land — shown in the photo — but it needs a lot of work. What needs doing or needs to be done? Make sentences using the words in the box or other appropriate vocabulary. Work in pairs or small groups.

A Fixer Upper

fix	paint	replace
foundation	porch	roof
front steps	rebuild	siding*
	repair	windows

Example: The windows need to be replaced. OR The windows need replacing.



*siding = material, often wood, that goes around the outside of the house

www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 26 Reading and speaking. (Chapter 14 and Charts $15 \cdot 1 \rightarrow 15 \cdot 6$)

Read the blog entry by author Stacy Hagen and answer the questions.

BlueBookBlog Multitasking

Doing homework, checking text messages, group chatting — these are common activities, but are we capable of doing all of them at the same time and doing them well? According to research, it is impossible to multitask successfully. We either do the tasks more slowly, or we make mistakes. And with each additional task, the mistakes multiply. We make fewer mistakes with one task, more with two, and even more with three.

Our brain functions better when it stays focused on one task. This is why it is more efficient to do things in batches. We have a particular routine or mindset when we pay bills or answer emails, and these routines are different. So we want to pay all our bills or answer all our emails at one time before we move on to something else.

There is a related technique from organizational psychology that can help us stay on task. It is called "OHIO," which stands for "only handle it once." The idea is that once we



start a single task like deleting photos from a phone, we should stay with it. We don't put some photos aside to make decisions about later. The result is that instead of looking at something multiple times, we deal with it only once.

Think about what tasks you have that need to be done for school, work, or at home. Maybe there is something that you have started many times but haven't ever finished. You might want to give the OHIO technique a try to see how it works for you.

- 1. What types of activities are you likely to multitask?
- 2. Is multitasking an effective approach for you?
- 3. Have you tried to do things in batches in order to be more efficient?
- 4. Do you have difficulty completing tasks you have started? Do you have any that still need to be finished?
- 5. Is OHIO a technique that could be helpful to you?

EXERCISE 27 > Warm-up. (Chart 15-7)

See and hear are called "verbs of perception." In other words, they express things that we can perceive (become aware of) through our physical senses. What do you notice about the verb forms following see and hear?

- 1. a. CORRECT: I saw Mr. Reed give something to the boss.
 - b. CORRECT: I saw Mr. Reed giving something to the boss.
 - c. INCORRECT: I saw Mr. Reed to give something to the boss.
- 2. a. CORRECT: I heard Mr. Reed say something to the boss.
 - b. CORRECT: I heard Mr. Reed saying something to the boss.
 - c. INCORRECT: I heard Mr. Reed to say something to the boss.

1	15-7 Using Verbs of Perception					
(a (b (c (d) I heard the rain fall on the roof.	Certain verbs of perception are followed by either the simple form* or the -ing form** of a verb. Examples (a) and (b) have essentially the same meaning, except that the -ing form emphasizes the idea of "while." In (b): I saw my friend while she was running down the street.				
(e) When I walked into the apartment, I heard my roommate <i>singing</i> in the shower.	Sometimes (not always) there is a clear difference between using the simple form or the <i>-ing</i> form.				
(f) I <i>heard</i> a famous opera star <i>sing</i> at the concert last night.	The use of the <i>-ing</i> form gives the idea that an activity is already in progress when it is perceived, as in (e): The singing was in progress when I first heard it.				

In (f): I heard the singing from beginning to end. It was not in progress when I first heard it. Verbs of perception followed by the simple form or the -ing form see look at hear feel smell notice observe listen to watch

*The simple form of a verb = the infinitive form without to. INCORRECT: I saw my friend to run down the street. ** The -ing form is the present participle of the verb.

EXERCISE 28 Let's talk. (Chart 15-7)

Work in small groups. Describe what is going on.

- 1. Ask a classmate to stand up and sit back down. What did you just see him/her do?
- 2. Close your eyes. What do you hear happening right now?
- 3. Ask a classmate to go to the board and write something. As he/she does this, describe what you see and hear him/her doing.
- 4. If possible, find a hotel webcam on the Internet for a vacation spot. What do you see happening?

EXERCISE 29 Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-7)

Complete the sentences with any appropriate verbs. Both the simple form and the -ing form are possible with little or no difference in meaning.

An Earthquake

- 1. As I stood in the grocery store, I felt the ground ______ shake / shaking _____
- 2. I heard someone _____ "earthquake."
- _____ off shelves. 3. I saw cans of food _____
- _____ outside. 4. I watched customers in the store _____
- 5. I listened to people ______ the size of the earthquake.
- 6. I observed store staff _____ people outside.

EXERCISE 30 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-7)

Read each situation. Complete the sentence below it with the verb form that seems better to you. Remember that the *-ing* form gives the idea that an activity is in progress when it is perceived.

SITUATION 1: I smell smoke. Something must be burning.

Do you smell something <u>burning</u>? I do.

SITUATION 2: The front door slammed. I got up to see if someone had come in.

When I heard the front door ______, I got up to see if someone had come in.

SITUATION 3: Uncle Ben is in the bedroom. He is snoring.

I know Uncle Ben is in the bedroom because I can hear him _____

SITUATION 4: When I walked past the park, some children were playing softball.

When I walked past the park, I saw some children ______ softball.

SITUATION 5: It was graduation day in the auditorium. When the school principal called my name, I walked to the front of the room.

When I heard the school principal ______ my name, I walked to the front of the auditorium to receive my diploma.

SITUATION 6: I glanced out the window. Adam was walking toward the house. I was surprised.

I was surprised when I saw Adam ______ toward the house.

SITUATION 7: Someone is calling for help in the distance. I suddenly hear that.

Listen! Do you hear someone ______ for help? I do.

EXERCISE 31 > Warm-up. (Chart 15-8)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that are grammatically correct.

- 1. _____ I'm not a morning person. My parents let me sleep late on weekends.
- 2. ____ My parents let me to sleep late on weekends.
- 3. _____ After I wake up, I help them do the chores.
- 4. _____ After I wake up, I help them to do the chores.



15-8 Using the Simple Form After Let and Help

(a) My father lets m	e drive his car.	Let is followed by the simple form of a verb, not an infinitive.
(b) I let my friend b	orrow my bike.	INCORRECT: My father lets me to drive his car.
(c) Let's go to a mo	vie.	
(d) My brother help	ed me wash my car.	Help is often followed by the simple form of a verb, as in (d).
(e) My brother help	ed me to wash my car.	Although less common, an infinitive is also possible, as in (e).
		Both (d) and (e) are correct.

EXERCISE 32 Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-8)

Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

At Breakfast

- I forgot to tell you last night. My advisor is letting me (*challenge*) ______ a course. All I need to do is pass the test.
- 2. Could you help me (figure) ______ out my credit card statement before you go?
- 3. You really shouldn't let the dog (*sit*) ______ under the table.

348 CHAPTER 15

www.ieltstep.com

- 4. How's our new neighbor, Mrs. Vitale? Did you help her (move) ______ her furnite
- 5. Don't let me (forget) ______ to take my keys with me when I leave.
- 6. I need to go soon. Could you help me (*clear*) ______ the table?
- 7. You've been working so hard. Let me (cook) ______ dinner tonight.

EXERCISE 33 > Warm-up. (Chart 15-9)

Match each of Andy's statements with the correct meaning.

- a. "Weed the dandelions right now! I don't want you to leave until it's done."
- b. "You did a good job with the dandelions. I'm glad I asked you to weed."
- c. "I told my son I would double his allowance if he weeded the dandelions."
- 1. Andy got his son to weed the dandelions.
- 2. Andy made his son weed the dandelions. _____
- 3. Andy had his son weed the dandelions. _____

15-9 Using Causative Verbs: Make, Have, Get

 (a) I made my brother carry my suitcase. (b) I had my brother carry my suitcase. (c) I got my brother to carry my suitcase. Simple form: X makes Y do something. Simple form: X has Y do something. 	 Make, have, and get can be used to express the idea that "X' causes "Y" to do something. When they are used as causat verbs, their meanings are similar but not identical. In (a): My brother had no choice. I insisted that he carry my suitcase. In (b): My brother carried my suitcase because I asked him to be a suitcase. 	
Infinitive: X gets Y to do something.	In (c): I managed to persuade my brother to carry my suitcase.	
Causative Make		
 (d) Mrs. Lee <i>made</i> her son <i>clean</i> his room. (e) Sad movies <i>make</i> me <i>cry</i>. 	Causative <i>make</i> is followed by the simple form of a verb, not an infinitive. <i>INCORRECT:</i> She made him to clean his room. <i>Make</i> gives the idea that "X" gives "Y" no choice. In (d): Mrs. Lee's son had no choice.	
Causative Have	and an according to the second of the	
 (f) I had the plumber repair the leak. (g) Jane had the waiter bring her some tea. 	Causative <i>have</i> is followed by the simple form of a verb, not an infinitive. <i>INCORRECT:</i> I had him to repair the leak. <i>Have</i> gives the idea that "X" requests "Y" to do something. In (f): The plumber repaired the leak because I asked him to.	
Causative Get		
 (h) The students <i>got</i> the teacher <i>to dismiss</i> class <u>early.</u> (i) Jack <i>got</i> his friends <i>to play</i> soccer with him after school. 	Causative get is followed by an infinitive. Get gives the idea that "X" persuades "Y" to do something. In (h): The students managed to persuade the teacher to let them leave early.	
Passive Causatives		
 (j) had my watch repaired (by someone). (k) got my watch repaired (by someone). 	The past participle is used after <i>have</i> and <i>get</i> to give a passive meaning. In this case, there is usually little or no difference in meaning between <i>have</i> and <i>get</i> . In (j) and (k): I caused my watch to be repaired by someone.	

www.ieltstep.com



ner furniture?

EXERCISE 34 Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-9)

Match each conversation with the correct meaning.

A CONTRACTOR OF A CONTRACTOR O

- a. ADAM: Mom, can I go out and play?
 - MRS. LEE: No, Adam, you cannot go out and play until you clean up your room. I don't know how many times I have to say this. Go clean up your room, and I mean now! ADAM: OK, OK!
- b. ADAM: Mom, can I go out and play?
 - MRS. LEE: Well, let's make a deal. First you clean up your room. Then you can go out and play. How does that sound? It needs to be cleaned before Grandma comes for a visit this evening. And if you do it now, you can stay out and play until dark. You won't have to come home early to clean your room. OK?
 ADAM: OK.
- c. ADAM: Mom, can I go out and play? MRS. LEE: Sure, but first you need to clean up your room. OK? ADAM: OK.
- 1. Mrs. Lee got Adam to clean up his room.
- 2. Mrs. Lee made Adam clean up his room.
- 3. Mrs. Lee had Adam clean up his room.

EXERCISE 35 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-9)

Choose the meaning that is closest to the meaning of the verb in blue.

1. The teacher had her class write a composition. a. gave them no choice b. persuaded them c. requested them to do this 2. Mrs. Wilson made the children wash their hands before dinner. a. gave them no choice b. persuaded them c. requested them to do this 3. Kostas got some neighborhood kids to help him clean out his garage. a. gave them no choice b. persuaded them c. requested them to do this 4. My boss made me redo my report because he wasn't satisfied with it. a. gave me no choice b. persuaded me c. requested me to do this 5. I got Rosa to lend me some lunch money. a. gave her no choice b. persuaded her c. requested her to do this 6. The police officer had the driver get out of his car. b. persuaded him a. gave him no choice c. requested him to do this EXERCISE 36 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-9)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

Tasks

- 1. Henry made his son (wash) <u>wash</u> the car before he could go outside to play.
- 2. Mrs. Crane had her house (paint) ______ painted _____.
- 3. I went to the bank to have a check (cash) _____
- 4. Tom had a bad headache yesterday, so he got his roommate (*cook*) ______ dinner for him.



Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 2 351 www.ieltstep.com

- Scott needed a suit for work. The sleeves were too long, so he had them (shorten) ______.
- 6. When my laptop stopped working, I took it to the computer store to have it (*fix*) ______.
- Benjamin was supposed to wash the windows, but he didn't want to. Somehow he got his little brother (*do*) ______ it for him.
- 8. We had our cousin (take) _____ pictures of

everyone at the wedding. We had over 500 pictures (take) _____

EXERCISE 37 ► Let's talk. (Chart 15-9)

Think about the shopping area nearest your home. What can people do there? Make sentences with can / can't + get.

At the shopping area nearest my home, people can/can't get their ...

1. car $\$ fix

2. hair \ cut

3. checks $\ cash$

- 4. laundry \ do
 - 5. passport photo \ take
- 8. clothes \dry -clean

7. shoes $\ repair$

9. money \ exchange

EXERCISE 38 ► Let's talk. (Chart 15-9)

Ask and answer the questions. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. What do children sometimes try to get their parents to do (perhaps at a toy store or grocery store)?
- 2. What do bosses sometimes make their employees do?
- 3. What does our teacher sometimes have us do?
- 4. Do teachers usually **let** their students **leave** the classroom whenever they want to? What kinds of things do teachers usually not **let** their students **do** inside a classroom?
- 5. What do your classmates (or friends) sometimes help you do?

(Change roles if working in pairs.)

- 6. What didn't your parents let you do when you were a child?
- 7. Will you let your children do those things? (Or, if you're a parent, do you let your children do those things?)
- 8. Did your parents make you do certain things when you were a child?
- 9. What do you sometimes **have** the server at a restaurant **do**?
- 10. What do you sometimes get your friends to do?



6. blood pressure \ check



EXERCISE 39 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 15-10)

Which sentence sounds more like everyday English to you? Which sounds more formal?

- 1. I appreciate your helping me.
- 2. I appreciate you helping me.

15-10 Using a Possessive to Modify a Gerund		
-	 We came to class late. Mr. Lee complained about that fact. 	In formal English, a possessive adjective (e.g., <i>our</i>) is used to modify a gerund, as in (a).
• •	FORMAL: Mr. Lee complained about our coming to class late.	In informal English, the object form of a pronoun (e.g., us) is frequently used, as in (b).
• •	NFORMAL: Mr. Lee complained about <i>us coming</i> to class ate.	
• •	FORMAL: Mr. Lee complained about Mary's coming to class late.	In formal English, a possessive noun (e.g., <i>Mary's</i>) is used to modify a gerund.
• •	NFORMAL: Mr. Lee complained about Mary coming to class late.	As in (d), the possessive form is often not used in informal English.

EXERCISE 40 Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-10)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the pronoun in parentheses.

Before the Wedding

- 1. (*I*) a. FORMAL: My parents don't understand ______ wanting a small wedding.
 - b. INFORMAL: My parents don't understand ______ wanting a small wedding.
- 2. (she) a. FORMAL: My mom has been too involved. We dislike ______ interfering in the wedding plans.
 - b. INFORMAL: We dislike ______ interfering in the wedding plans.
- 3. (we) a. FORMAL: Everyone else understands _____ planning a quiet celebration.
 - b. INFORMAL: Everyone else understands _____ planning a quiet celebration.
- 4. (they) a. FORMAL: The Ricardos are coming from out of town. I look forward to ______ coming.
 - b. INFORMAL: I look forward to _____ coming.
- 5. (you) a. FORMAL: We appreciate ______ helping us find a restaurant for the reception.
 - b. INFORMAL: We appreciate ______ helping us find a restaurant for the reception.
- 6. (*he*) a. FORMAL: Wait! Uncle Harry doesn't like Aunt Ethel. I insist on ______ being at a different table.
 - b. INFORMAL: I insist on _____ being at a different table.



EXERCISE 41 Looking at grammar. (Chapters 14 and 15 Review) Choose the correct completions.

EXERCISE 41 ► Looking at grammar. (Chapters 14 and 15 Review) Choose the correct completions.
1. My cousins helped me into my new apartment.(a) move(b) to move(c. moving(d. being moved
 2. It was a hot day, and the work was hard. I could feel sweat down my back. a. run b. to run c. running d. ran
 3. He's an amazing soccer player! Did you see him that goal? a. make b. to make c. makes d. made
 4. We spent the entire class period about the revolution. a. talk b. to talk c. talking d. being talked
 5. Fifty people applied for the sales job, so Maleek was fortunate for an interview. a. chosen b. being chosen c. to choose d. to be chosen
 6. If you hear any news, I want immediately. a. told b. being told c. to be told d. telling
 7. Victor stood in line to buy a movie ticket. a. wait b. waits c. waiting d. waited
 8 telling Roberto about the party was a mistake. a. We b. My c. I d. Ø
 9. I was getting sleepy, so I had my friend the car. a. drive b. being driven c. to be driven d. to drive
10. The witness to the murder wanted her name kept secret. She asked not in the newspaper.a. identifyb. being identifiedc. to be identifiedd. to identify
EXERCISE 42 • Looking at grammar. (Chapters 14 and 15 Review) Complete each sentence with an appropriate form of the verb in parentheses.
 My teenagers enjoy (allow) <u>being allowed</u> to stay up later in the summer. Leouldn't get to sloop lost night so for a long time Livet law in had (think)
 I couldn't get to sleep last night, so for a long time I just lay in bed (<i>think</i>)
3. Jacob's at an awkward age. He's old enough (<i>have</i>) adult problems but
too young (know) how (handle) them. 4. I don't anticipate (have) any difficulties (adjust)
to a different culture when I go abroad.
5. I was tired, so I just watched my friends (<i>play</i>) volleyball instead of (<i>join</i>) them.
6. Emily stopped her car (let) a cat (run) across the street.
7. I'm tired. I wouldn't mind just (<i>stay</i>) home tonight and (<i>get</i>) to bed early.

8	I don't like (force)	(leave)	the living room (state)
0.		ver my roommate decides (<i>have</i>)	
9.		Ron and Maureen (join)	-ofidence. ³
	tonight, OK?		
10.	Do you know that your co-v	vorkers complain about your (come).	late to
	work and (leave)	early?	
11.	Fish don't use their teeth for	(chew) The	y use them for (grab)
	, (ho	<i>ld</i>), or (<i>tear</i>)	Most
	fish (swallow)	their prey whole.	
12.	I can't seem (get)	rid of the cockroaches in my a	partment. Every night I
	see them (run)	all over my kitchen counter	s. It drives me crazy. I'm
	considering (have)	the whole apartment (s	pray) by a
	pest control expert.		
1.		y for the Steinbergs	
		to their work. They want to spend me	-
		r than being tied up on the highway d	
2.	ask / cough / feel / get / go / sn	eeze	
	Last week I was sick with th	e flu. It made me a	wful. I didn't have
	enough energy	out of bed. I just lay there. Whe	n my father heard me
	and	, he opened	my bedroom door to see if I
	needed anything. It was kin	d of him, but	there wasn't anything he could
	do to make the flu	away.	
	ERCISE 44 > Check your rect the errors.	knowledge. (Chapter 15 Revie	·w)
1.	to I went to the library for stud	ly last night.	
		ughing. She has a great sense of hu	mor.

- 3. The teacher opened the window for letting some fresh air into the room.
- 4. You shouldn't let children playing with matches.
- 5. I traveled to Osaka for to visit my sister.

- 6. My parents made me to promise contact them once a week.
- 7. I asked my roommate to let me borrowed his sleeping bag for my camping trip.
- 8. I heard a car door to open and closing.
- 9. I had my friend to lend me his car.
- 10. I've finally gathered enough information for beginning writing my research paper.
- 11. My parents want that I marry soon.
- 12. Lilly deserves to be tell the truth about what happened last night.
- 13. I went to the pharmacy for having my prescription to be filled.
- 14. Stop telling me what to do! Let me to make up my own mind.
- 15. Victoria didn't like her school photo, so she had it taking again.
- 16. Look at the kitchen windows. They really need to washing. Will you do it?
- 17. I saw Omar sitting on a park bench look at the ground. The blank expression on his face made me to worry about him.

EXERCISE 45 • Reading and writing. (Chapter 15)

Part I. Read the passage. <u>Underline</u> the gerunds and infinitives. How many gerunds begin sentences? How many infinitives?

Why Do Onions Make Us Cry?

Cutting onions is no fun! Most people end up in tears, and the reason is quite simple. Onions contain a gas: sulfur. When an onion is cut, a very fine spray of sulfur is released into the air. It is an understatement to say that our eyes don't enjoy coming into contact with it. They immediately react by trying to wash the sulfur away with tears.

There are a few remedies that may be helpful to you, though not foolproof. Washing an onion with water can help to keep the sulfur away from your eyes. Refrigerating it weakens its strength. Some people find safety goggles effective. You might look foolish when you put them on, but there's a good chance they will keep you from crying. If you enjoy cooking, it's hard to avoid onions, but one of these simple solutions may be of help.

Part II. Think about an everyday problem that needs a remedy. Describe the problem and provide one or more solutions. Use one of the suggestions below or choose your own. Be sure to include some gerunds and infinitives.

- stopping the itch in a mosquito bite
- removing a stain from fabric
- · removing something sticky from a surface
- soothing a sore throat
- soothing a sunburn

- Do you know these words?
- understatement
- remedies
- foolproof





WRITING TIP

Using a gerund as the subject of a sentence rather than an infinitive is more common. In the passage about onions, *cutting onions* or *washing an onion* is preferable to the infinitive forms: to cut or to wash.

ida à suites d'and

However, if you want to express the idea of *in order to*, use an infinitive: To cut an onion, use a sharp knife. The meaning is "In order to cut an onion, use a sharp knife."

Part III. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box correct use of gerunds with the required verbs
- 2. \Box correct use of infinitives with the required verbs
- 3. \Box correct use of infinitives with the required adjectives
- 4. \Box correct use of a gerund if followed by a preposition
- 5. \Box singular verb when a gerund is the subject
- 6. Correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

CHAPTER Coordinating Conjunctions

PRETEST: What do I already know?

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct word choice and word forms, subject-verb agreement, and punctuation. Write "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make the necessary corrections.

- 1. _____ By obeying the speed limit, we can save energy, lives, and it costs us less. (16-1)
- 2. ____ My home offers me a feeling of security, warm, and love. (16-1)
- 3. ____ On my vacation, I lost a suitcase, broke my glasses, and I missed my flight home. (16-1)
- 4. ____ My sister brother-in-law, and I wanted to see a movie. The three of us went to the theater, but the line was too long. (16-2)
- 5. _____ I appreciate your help, I was feeling overwhelmed by all the work I had to do. (16-3)
- 6. ____ I refused Alicia's help, she became very angry and shouted at me. (16-3)
- 7. ____ Either the sales clerk or the manager have your refund. (16-4)
- 8. _____ Both the bride and the groom were late for their wedding. (16-4)

Incorrect sentences: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EXERCISE 1 Warm-up. (Chart 16-1)

Identify the parts of speech of the words in blue. Are they nouns, verbs, adjectives, or adverbs? What words connect them?

A Birthday Adventure



1. We hiked to a waterfall and a bridge.

- 2. The bridge was extremely high and scary.
- 3. I felt shaky but excited when I got on it.
- 4. The bridge rocked and swayed.
- 5. I tried not to hurry or to look down.

16-1 Parallel Structure

One use of a conjunction is to connect words or phrases that have the same grammatical function in a sentence. This use of conjunctions is called "parallel structure." The conjunctions used in this pattern are *and*, *but*, *or*, and *nor*. These words are called "coordinating conjunctions."

 (a) Steve and his friend are coming to dinner. (b) Susan raised her hand and snapped her fingers. (c) He is waving his arms and (is) shouting at us. 	 In (a): noun + and + noun In (b): verb + and + verb In (c): verb + and + verb (The second auxiliary may be omitted if it is the same as the first auxiliary.)
(d) These shoes are old but comfortable.(e) He wants to watch TV or (to) listen to some music.	In (d): <i>adjective</i> + <i>but</i> + adjective In (e): <i>infinitive</i> + <i>or</i> + <i>infinitive</i> (The second <i>to</i> is usually omitted.)

EXERCISE 2 Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-1)

Choose all the words that are parallel with the given words.

1. to watch	hearing	to listen	saw	to decide	having thought
2. beautiful	friendly	nice	honest	happily	goodness
3. texting	contacted	to type	chatting	email	sending
4. rapidly	difficult	fast	good	slowly	wild

EXERCISE 3 Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-1)

Choose the correct completions.

My Roommate

1. My roommate, Kate, is fri	endly and <u> </u>	
a. helpful	(b.) kind	c. kindness
2. Friendliness and are	admirable qualities in a ro	oommate.
a. kind	b. kindness	c. kindly
3. We are opposites. She like	es to be busy and	
a. actively	b. activity	c. active
4. I'm a quieter type. I prefe	r to stay home or tin	ne with a few friends.
a. spending	b. spend	c. to spending
5. Kate studies by listening to	o music and at the se	me time
	o music and at the se	anne unne.
a. sing	b. singing	c. sings
	b. singing	
a. sing6. I sit at the library and	b. singing	
a. sing6. I sit at the library and	 b. singing in silence. b. working 	c. sings c. worked
a. sing6. I sit at the library anda. work	 b. singing in silence. b. working We're both very neat and 	c. sings c. worked
 a. sing 6. I sit at the library and a. work 7. We get along well, though 	 b. singing in silence. b. working We're both very neat and b. tidily 	 c. sings c. worked c. have tidiness

EXERCISE 4 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-1)

Complete each sentence with one word that gives the same idea as the words in parentheses.

Road Rage

- 1. The driver ran a stop sign and <u>sped</u> down the street. (he was driving at a high speed)
- 2. A pedestrian was shocked and ______ that she was almost hit in the crosswalk. (*her feelings were upset*)
- 3. A police officer stopped him, but the driver spoke impatiently and _

(his words were rude)

4. He got out of his car and walked toward the officer. He was tall and _

(has a lot of strength)

5. Another police officer arrived and ______ him into custody. (*she took*)

EXERCISE 5 > Warm-up. (Chart 16-2)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that are correctly punctuated with commas.

- 1. ____ Oranges, and lemons are high in vitamin C. (not correct)
- 2. \checkmark Oranges and lemons are high in vitamin C.
- 3. ____ Oranges, lemons, and broccoli are high in vitamin C.
- 4. ____ Oranges, lemons and broccoli are high in vitamin C.
- 5. ____ Oranges lemons and broccoli are high in vitamin C.
- 6. ____ Oranges, lemons, and broccoli, are high in vitamin C.



16-2 Parallel Structure: Using Commas

 (a) Steve and Joe are in class. (b) INCORRECT PUNCTUATION: Steve, and Joe are in class. 	No commas are used when <i>and</i> connects two parts of a parallel structure, as in (a).
 (c) Steve, Joe and Rita are in class. (d) Steve, Joe, and Rita are in class. (e) Steve, Joe, Rita, Jan and Kim are in class. (f) Steve, Joe, Rita, Jan, and Kim are in class. 	When <i>and</i> connects three or more parts of a parallel structure, a comma is used between the first items in the series. A comma may also be used before <i>and</i> , as in (d) and (f). The use of this comma is optional (i.e., the writer can choose).*

*The purpose of punctuation is to make writing clear for readers. This chart and others in this chapter describe the usual use of commas in parallel structures. Sometimes commas are required according to convention (i.e., the expected use by educated language users). Sometimes use of commas is a stylistic choice made by the experienced writer.

EXERCISE 6 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-2)

Add commas as necessary.

At a Hotel

- 1. The room includes a king-sized bed, a desk (optional comma), and a balcony.
- 2. The price of the room includes Wi-Fi buffet breakfast and use of the exercise room.
- 3. The price of the room includes Wi-Fi and buffet breakfast.
- 4. We got an adjoining room for our son his wife and their daughter.
- 5. Our son's wife and daughter met us at the rooftop pool.
- 6. My wife called room service asked about vegetarian options and ordered a meal.
- 7. We searched for an on-demand movie with action adventure and suspense.
- 8. We enjoy action and adventure films.
- 9. The front-desk clerk the bellhop the concierge and the housekeeping staff were very attentive and courteous.

EXERCISE 7 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Charts 16-1 and 16-2)

Parallel structure makes repeating the same words unnecessary. Cross out the words that are unnecessary. Combine the given sentences into one concise sentence. Use parallel structure.

Molly's Party

- Molly will open the door. Molly will greet her guests.
 → Molly will open the door and greet her guests.
- 2. She is opening the door. She is greeting her guests.
- 3. She is taking their coats. She is hanging them up in the closet.
- 4. Molly is kind. Molly is generous. Molly is trustworthy.
- 5. Since she is hard of hearing, please try to speak loudly. Please try to speak clearly.
- Her boyfriend has come to the party. He has come with flowers. He has come with candy. He has come with a ring.
- 7. He has knelt down in front of her. He has taken her hand. He has asked her to marry him.
- 8. Molly is calm enough to listen. Molly is calm enough to say yes.
- 9. They talked about getting married in June. Or they could get married in August.
- 10. Molly had expected a surprise. She did not expect a ring. → Molly had expected a surprise **but** not a ring
- 11. Molly was surprised. She was not shocked.
- 12. They had discussed getting married at some point. They had not discussed getting married this year.



EXERCISE 8 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 16-1 and 16-2)

First, complete the unfinished sentence in each group. Second, combine the sentences into one concise sentence that contains parallel structure.

IE

he mountain road was
dislike living in a city because of the air pollution. dislike living in a city because of the crime. dislike living in a city because of dislike living in a city because of the air pollution, awaii has a warm climate. awaii has beautiful beaches.
dislike living in a city because of the crime. dislike living in a city because of dislike living in a city because of the air pollution, awaii has a warm climate. awaii has beautiful beaches.
dislike living in a city because of the air pollution,
awaii has a warm climate. awaii has beautiful beaches.
awaii has beautiful beaches.
awaii has a warm climate, beautiful beaches,
Iary Hart would make a good president because she works effectively with others. Iary Hart would make a good president because she has a reputation for integrity. Iary Hart would make a good president because she has a reputation for independent thinking. Iary Hart would make a good president because she

EXERCISE 9 Let's talk. (Charts 16-1 and 16-2)

Work with a partner. Take turns completing each sentence. Share some of your partner's answers with the class.

1.	A good friend needs to be	and	
2.	English teachers should have these qualities: _		
	, and		
3.		, and	are three
	easy ways for me to relax at the end of the day.		
4.	In my free time, I like to	,	, and
5.	Three activities I don't enjoy are	,	, and
	······································		
6.	,,	, and	are difficult
	subjects for me.		
			Coordinating Conjunctions 361
	www.ieltste	n com	
		p.com	

EXERCISE 10 > Warm-up. (Chart 16-3)

Check (\checkmark) the three sentences with correct punctuation.

- 1. ____ Thunder clouds rolled by Flashes of lightning lit the sky.
- 2. ____ Thunder clouds rolled by, flashes of lightning lit the sky.
- 3. ____ Thunder clouds rolled by, and flashes of lightning lit the sky.
- 4. ____ Thunder clouds rolled by . And flashes of lightning lit the sky.

16-3 Punctuation for Independent Clauses; Connecting Them with And and But

(a) It was raining hard. There was a strong wind.	Example (a) contains two <i>independent clauses</i> (i.e., two complete sentences).
(b) INCORRECT PUNCTUATION: It was raining hard, there was a strong wind.	PUNCTUATION: A period,* NOT A COMMA, is used to separate two independent clauses.
(c) It was raining hard; there was a strong wind.	A semicolon may be used in place of a period. Semicolons are used between two <i>closely related</i> ideas.
 (d) It was raining hard, and there was a strong wind. (e) It was raining hard. And there was a strong wind. (f) It was raining hard and there was a strong wind. (g) It was late, but he didn't care. (h) It was late. But he didn't care. 	 And and but (coordinating conjunctions) are often used to connect two independent clauses. PUNCTUATION: Usually a comma immediately precedes the conjunction, as in (d) and (g). In informal writing, a writer might choose to begin a sentence with a conjunction, as in (e) and (h). In a very short sentence, a writer might choose to omit the comma in front of and, as in (f). (Omitting the comma in front of but is rare.)

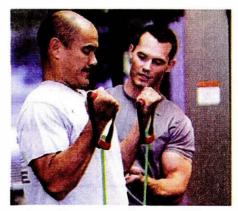
*In British English, a period is called a "full stop."

EXERCISE 11 Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-3)

Punctuate the sentences by adding commas and periods. Do not add any words. Capitalize as necessary.

Athletic Conditioning Class

- 1. Some members did push-ups some members lifted weights. → Some members did push-ups. Some members lifted weights.
- 2. Some members did push-ups and some members lifted weights.
- 3. The teacher demonstrated correct form a group of new members watched.
- 4. The teacher demonstrated correct form and a group of new members watched.
- 5. An assistant was available to help but only a few people needed him.
- 6. An assistant was available to help only a few people needed him.





EXERCISE 12 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-3)

Check (\checkmark) the correct sentences. Punctuate the incorrect ones. Do not add any words. Capitalize as necessary.

Email Excerpts

- 1. _____ I'd like to help, let me know what you need.
- 2. _____ I'll be happy to come. Thank you for inviting me.
- 3. _____ It's really hard to know what to do, we don't have much information yet.
- 4. _____ I'll pay you back. I get paid tomorrow.
- 5. _____ Let's wait to see what happens, we don't want to make a decision prematurely.

EXERCISE 13 Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-3)

Rewrite the email with correct punctuation. You may add and but.

From: J.B. Leeds To: Majda Subject: Update/Thanks

Today at 2:11 PM

Dear Majda,

Thank you for offering to drive students to the track meet. We are still hoping we can get a bus, we will know later today. The first race starts at 4:00 the boys will be leaving school around 1:15 the girls can leave at 1:30 since their race is at 4:30. We always appreciate parent volunteers, thanks again for contacting me, I will be back in touch soon.

EXERCISE 14 Reading and grammar. (Charts $16-1 \rightarrow 16-3$)

Work with a partner. Find and correct the errors with parallel structure and punctuation.

Ziplining

Ziplining began as a way to get people across impassible places like canyons and crossing rivers. But in the 1980s, Costa Rica, with its emphasis on eco-tourism, turned it into a thrilling adventure. The opportunity to soar over spectacular scenery has made ziplining one of Costa Rica's top tourist attractions.

The concept is very simple, a cable is strung across a scenic area, for example, a lush forest or fast-moving river one end of the cable is higher than the other. A harness



for the rider hangs from the cable, riders are strapped tightly into the harness. They climb to a platform, jump off, and flying through the air.

Ziplining's popularity has spread worldwide, the longest zipline is in Sun City, South Africa, where one cable is 1.2 miles (2 km) long. Average speeds are 75 miles (120 km) per hour! Not all zipline rides are as hair-raising, companies around the world strive to provide exciting and safety rides that will appeal to a variety of experience levels and age groups.



EXERCISE 15 > Warm-up. (Chart 16-4)

What do you notice about the subject-verb agreement in each pair of sentences?

- a. Either my brother or my sister is going to tutor me in science.
 b. Either my brother or my sisters are going to tutor me in science.
- 2. a. Neither my brother nor my sister is a teacher.b. Neither my brother nor my sisters are teachers.
- 3. a. Not only my brother but also my sister has a doctorate in science.
 - b. Not only my brother but also my sisters have doctorates in science.



16-4 Paired Conjunctions: Both ... And; Not Only ... But Also; Either ... Or; Neither ... Nor

(a)	Both my mother and my sister are here.	Two subjects connected by both and take a plural verb, as in (a).
(c)	Not only my mother but also my sister is here. Not only my sister but also my parents are here. Neither my mother nor my sister is here. Neither my sister nor my parents are here.	When two subjects are connected by not only but also , either or , or neither nor , the subject that is closer to the verb determines whether the verb is singular or plural. Not only but also is used for emphasis or to indicate surprise. It should be used sparingly.
(f) (g)	The research project will take both time and money. Sue saw not only a fox in the woods but also a bear.	Notice the parallel structure in the examples. The same grammatical form should follow each part of the paired conjunctions.*
(h) (i)	I'll take either chemistry or physics next quarter. That book is neither interesting nor accurate.	In (f): both + noun + and + noun In (g): not only + noun + but also + noun In (h): either + noun + or + noun In (i): neither + adjective + nor + adjective NOTE: Paired conjunctions are usually used for emphasis; they draw attention to both parts of the parallel structure.

*Paired conjunctions are also called "correlative conjunctions."

irLanguage.com

EXERCISE 16 Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-4)

Complete the sentences with *is/are*.

- 1. Both the teacher and the student <u>are</u> here.
- 2. Neither the teacher nor the student _____ here.
- 3. Not only the teacher but also the student ______ here.
- 4. Not only the teacher but also the students ______ here.
- 5. Either the students or the teacher _____ planning to come.
- 6. Either the teacher or the students _____ planning to come.
- 7. Both the students and the teachers _____ planning to come.
- 8. Both the students and the teacher _____ planning to come.

364 CHAPTER 16



EXERCISE 17 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-4)

In the News



Part I. Answer the questions with both ... and.

- 1. The homeless received food. Did they receive clothing? \rightarrow Yes. The homeless received both food and clothing.
- 2. Passengers were injured in the bus accident. Was the driver injured in the accident?
- 3. I know the government is increasing taxes. Is the government increasing spending too?
- 4. The city suffers from air pollution. Does it suffer from water pollution?

Part II. Answer the questions with not only ... but also.

- 5. I know crime is growing in the cities. Is crime growing in the suburbs? → Yes. Crime is growing not only in the cities but also in the suburbs.
- 6. I know our team lost its first game. Did it also lose its second game?
- 7. I know some tech companies need more workers. Do they need more office space too?
- 8. I know the city is building a new freeway. Is it also building a new subway too?

EXERCISE 18 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-4)

At Our Apartment Building

Part I. Answer the questions with either ... or.

- 1. The manager has my package, or Mrs. Ramirez has my package. Is that right? → Yes. Either the manager or Mrs. Ramirez has your package.
- 2. Jonas is going to take care of the neighbor's cat, or William is going to take care of the neighbor's cat. Is that right?
- 3. Your sister is driving Ms. Androv to the airport, or your brother is driving her. Right?
- 4. We can use the front stairs, or we can use the back stairs. Is that right?

Part II. Answer the questions with neither ... nor.

- 5. The mail carrier isn't friendly. Is she unfriendly? \rightarrow No. She is neither friendly nor unfriendly.
- 6. Her children don't speak English. Does her husband speak English?
- 7. They don't have an air conditioner in their apartment. Do they have a fan?
- 8. The window washers weren't fast. Were they slow?

EXERCISE 19 Listening. (Chart 16-4)

Choose the sentence (a. or b.) that has the same meaning as the sentence you hear.

Example: You will hear: Sarah is working on both a degree in biology and a degree in chemistry.
You will choose: a. Sarah is working on only one degree.
(b.) Sarah is working on two degrees.

- 1. a. Ben will call Mary and Bob.
 - b. Ben will call one of them but not both.

- 2. a. My mother and my father talked to my teacher.b. Either my mother or my father talked to my teacher.
- 3. a. Simon saw both a whale and a dolphin.b. Simon didn't see a whale, but he did see a dolphin.
- 4. a. Our neighborhood had electricity but not water.b. Our neighborhood didn't have electricity or water.
- 5. a. We will have two teachers today.
 - b. We will have one teacher today.

EXERCISE 20 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-4)

Combine each pair of sentences into one new sentence with parallel structure. Use **both** ... and; either ... or; neither ... nor.

At the Mall

- 1. I do not have my credit card. I do not have cash. \rightarrow I have neither my credit card nor cash.
- 2. You can get some shoes now, or you can look online more.
 - \rightarrow You can either get some shoes now or look online more.
- 3. Rika enjoys shopping during sales. Bettina enjoys shopping during sales.



- 4. Matt is not joining us. Taka is not joining us.
- 5. Matt is sick. Taka is sick.
- 6. This store doesn't have the size I need. That store doesn't have the size I need.
- 7. We can eat lunch here, or we can look for other restaurants.
- 8. The manager was helpful. The assistant manager was helpful.
- 9. You need your receipt for a return, or you need your credit card.
- 10. The stores close at 10:00. The food court closes at 10:00.
- 11. We can take the bus home, or we can take the subway.





Choose the correct completions. Then listen to the passage and check your answers.

Bats

What do people in your country think of bats? Are they mean and scary creatures, or are they symbols of both happiness and

(luck/ lucky?

In Western countries, many people have an unreasoned fear of bats. According to scientist Dr. Sharon Horowitz, bats are not only harm / harmless but also benefit / beneficial mammals. "When I was a child, I believed that a bat would attack me and tangle / tangled itself in my hair. Now I know better," said Dr. Horowitz.

Contrary to popular Western myths, bats do not $\frac{\text{attack}}{5}$ humans. Although a few bats may have diseases, they are not major

carriers of rabies or other frightening diseases. Bats help natural plant life by pollinating plants, spreading seeds, and to $eat / eating_{6}$ insects. If you get rid of bats that eat overripe fruit, then fruit flies can flourish and destroy / destruction the fruit industry.

According to Dr. Horowitz, bats are both gentle and $\frac{\text{train}}{8}$ pets. Not many people, however, own or train bats, and bats themselves prefer to avoid people.

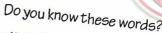
EXERCISE 22 Reading, grammar, and speaking. (Chapter 16 Review)

Part I. Read the paragraph about Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr.

Martin Luther King, Jr., was the leader of the 1960s civil rights movement in the United States that sought to end segregation and racial discrimination against African-Americans. In 1964, Dr. King became the youngest person to receive the Nobel Peace Prize. He was assassinated in 1968, but his powerful and inspiring words live on.

Part II. <u>Underline</u> the parallel structures that you find in these quotes from the speeches and writings of Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr. Discuss the ideas. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

1. "The hope of a secure and livable world lies with disciplined nonconformists who are dedicated to justice, peace, and brotherhood."



- unreasoned
- -tangle
- rabies
- pollinating
- overripe
- -flourish
- ^{- train} (a pet)





- 2. "The ultimate measure of a man is not where he stands in moments of comfort and conveniencebut where he stands at times of challenge and controversy."
- 3. "In the end, we will remember not the words of our enemies but the silence of our friends.
- 4. "Nonviolence is the answer to the crucial political and moral question of our time: the need for mankind to overcome oppression and violence without resorting to oppression and violence. Mankind must evolve for all human conflict a method which rejects revenge, aggression, and retaliation. The foundation of such a method is love."

EXERCISE 23 > Check your knowledge. (Chapter 16 Review)

Correct the errors.

- 1. Slowly and being cautious, the firefighter climbed the burned staircase.
- 2. Janice entered the room and looked around she knew no one.
- 3. Derek made many promises but he had no intention of keeping any of them.
- 4. The pioneers hoped to clear away the forest and planting crops.
- 5. When Nadia moved, she had to rent an apartment, make new friends, and to find a job.
- 6. All plants need light, to have a suitable climate, and an ample supply of water and minerals from the soil.
- 7. Both the main earthquake and subsequent aftershocks was devastating to the town.
- 8. With their sharp eyesight, fine hearing, and they have a strong sense of smell, wolves hunt mainly at night.
- 9. Not only speed but also endurance determine a runner's success in a race.

C Share

10. The ancient Egyptians had good dentists archaeologists have found mummies that had gold fillings in their teeth.



EXERCISE 24 > Writing. (Chapter 16)

Part I. Read the post from social media.

Comment



I am looking for a room in an apartment or house. I don't need a lot of space, but I would like my own bedroom and bathroom. I am a college student and am very neat, clean, and quiet. I will be studying a lot. I am allergic to smoke, so I need a non-smoking environment. I can do child care, pet-sitting, or yard work in exchange for partial rent if necessary. I am both hard-working and responsible, and I have excellent references.

() Like

Part II. Following the example in Part I, write a social media post about something you are E looking for: a place to rent, a car, a pet, etc.

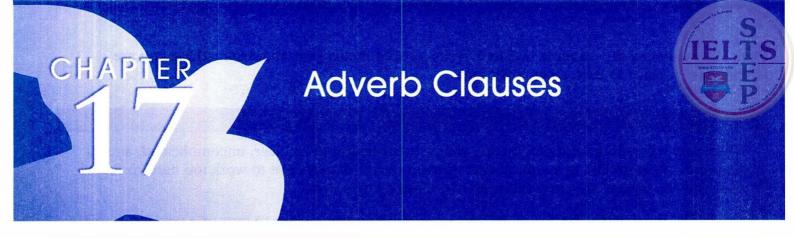
WRITING TIP

When you are writing for social media, your sentences should be clear, uncomplicated, and to the point. Readers like to scroll quickly through posts. If they have to work too hard to follow what you are saying, they may move on to someone else's post.

Emphasize the positive if you are looking for something like a place to rent or a pet, for example. People want to be assured that they will have a good roommate or that they are giving a pet to someone who will take good care of it.

Part III. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box clear, uncomplicated sentences
- 2. \Box a period, not a comma, between two complete sentences
- 3. \Box parallel structure
- 4. \Box correct subject-verb agreement with paired conjunctions, e.g., both ... and
- 5. \Box correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)



PRETEST: What do I already know?

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct form, meaning, and punctuation and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. ____ The first time I met your parents at the party for Nicholas and his girlfriend. (17-1)
- 2. ____ After the movie ended. The audience stayed in their seats for a few minutes. (17-1)
- 3. ____ Whenever Josh died, his family was very sad. (17-2)
- 4. ____ Because Rosa inherited a large amount of money from her parents, she was an only child. (17-3)
- 5. ____ Now that I graduated, I need to look for a job. (17-3)
- 6. ____ Even though the movie is very popular, I don't think the theater will be crowded. (17-4)
- 7. ____ While some people enjoy being online a lot, others do. (17-5)
- 8. _____ If anyone needs me, I'll be in my office. (17-6)
- 9. _____ Are you coming with us? If so, could you hurry? (17-7)
- 10. ____ Even if he invites me to the party, I will go. (17-8)
- 11. ____ In case you've forgotten anything, I can always send it to you. (17-9)
- 12. ____ Unless you get below 70% on the next test, you'll pass the course. (17-10)
- 13. ____ Only if Abdul's foot is better he can play in the soccer match next month. (17-11)

Incorrect sentences: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 10, 13

EXERCISE 1 > Warm-up. (Chart 17-1)

The words in blue are adverb clauses. What do you notice about their placement in the sentence and punctuation?

- 1. The fireworks display began after it got dark.
- 2. Because it was New Year's Eve, thousands of people came to watch.
- 3. Although it was very crowded, everyone had good views.
- 4. There is a show every year even if the weather is bad.



17-1 Introduction

Adverb clauses are used to show relationships between ideas. They show relationships of *time*, *cause and effect*, *contrast*, and *condition*.

(a) (b)		main clause rang, the baby woke up. up when the phone rang.		time. Exampl PUNCTUATION: When an adve a comma is u	when the phone rang is es (a) and (b) have the s erb clause precedes a m sed to separate the clau rerb clause follows, as in ed.	ame meaning. nain clause, as in (a), ses.		
(c) (d)		sleepy, he went to bed. because he was sleepy.		In (c) and (d), <i>because</i> introduces an adverb clause that shows a cause-and-effect relationship.				
 (e) INCORRECT: When we were in New York. We saw several plays. (f) INCORRECT: He went to bed. Because he was sleepy. 		Adverb clauses are dependent clauses. They cannot stand alone as a sentence in written English. They must be connected to a main (or independent) clause.*						
Su	mmary list of wo	ords used to introduce ad	verb clau	ses**				
	TIN	1E	CAUS	E AND EFFECT	CONTRAST	CONDITION		
	after before when while as as soon as since until	by the time (that) once as/so long as whenever every time (that) the first time (that) the last time (that) the next time (that)	beca now f since	that	even though although though DIRECT CONTRAST while	if unless only if whether or not even if in case		

*See Chart 12-1, p. 248, for the definition of dependent and independent clauses.

**Words that introduce adverb clauses are called "subordinating conjunctions."

EXERCISE 2 Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-1)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that are grammatically complete and contain the correct punctuation.

Annoyances

- 1. a. \checkmark The door slammed.
 - b. ____ When the door slammed.
 - c. ____ I woke up. When the door slammed.
 - d. _____ I woke up when the door slammed.
 - e. _____When the door slammed, I woke up.
 - f. ____ The door slammed. I woke up.
- 2. a. _____ After I texted you, my phone died.
 - b. ____ The last time I texted you, and you didn't answer.
 - c. ____ Every time the phone rings, and no one is there.
 - d. _____Whenever the phone rings, no one is there.
 - e. ____ As soon as we sit down to dinner, a telemarketer calls.

EXERCISE 3 Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-1)

<u>Underline</u> the adverb clauses. Add punctuation and capitalization as necessary. Do not add or delete any words.

A Snowstorm

- 1. when Adolfo came to Chicago, he planned to stay with his cousins
- 2. Adolfo planned to stay with his cousins when he came to Chicago.
- 3. As soon as the plane landed a blizzard began.
- 4. A blizzard began as soon as the plane landed.
- 5. Once the plane landed a blizzard began.
- 6. Adolfo didn't go outside the airport until it stopped.
- 7. When it stopped Adolfo went outside.
- 8. When he went outside there weren't any taxis.
- 9. He was stranded at the airport until the roads were cleared.
- 10. As soon as the roads were cleared he left the airport.

EXERCISE 4 > Looking at grammar. (Chapter 16 and Chart 17-1)

Work with a partner. Add punctuation and capitalization as necessary. Do not add or delete any words.

- Paulo is a member of a championship basketball team he is a wheelchair athlete Paulo's legs are paralyzed when he plays he moves around the basketball court in a wheelchair he has competed in many tournaments, and his team often wins.
- 2. Fritz is a golden retriever he appears to be a typical dog except he has an important job he is a service dog he has been trained to help a blind person whenever his owner needs to go downtown Fritz assists him Fritz can help him cross streets get on buses go down stairs and avoid obstacles.
- 3. Sometimes when people speak to someone who is hard of hearing they shout shouting is not necessary it is important to face the person and speak clearly people who are hard of hearing can often read lips my father is hard of hearing, but he can understand me when I look at him and say each word clearly.

EXERCISE 5 Warm-up. (Chart 17-2)

Add the word(s) in parentheses to the correct place in each sentence. Add commas and capitalization as necessary.

- 1. Oscar can't catch the meaning people speak English too fast. (when)
- 2. The teacher speaks too fast Oscar is going to ask her to slow down. (the next time)







372 CHAPTER 17

- 3. Oscar is listening to English he tries not to translate from his language. (while)
- 4. His teacher encourages students to figure out the meaning they check their dictionaries. (before)
- 5. Oscar began studying English he has wanted to speak fluently. (ever since)

after *	 (a) After she graduates, she will get a job. (b) After she (had) graduated, she got a job. A present tense, NOT a future tense, is an adverb clause of time, as in (a) and the formation of the second second		
before *	(c) I will leave before he comes.(d) I (had) left before he came.	(See Chart 3-3, p. 60, for tense usage in future time clauses.)	
when	 (e) When I arrived, he was talking on the phone. (f) When I got there, he had already left. (g) When it began to rain, I stood under a tree. (h) When I was in Chicago, I visited the museums. (i) When I see him tomorrow, I will ask him. 	when = at that time Notice the different time relationships expressed by the tenses.	
while as	 (j) While I was walking home, it began to rain. (k) As I was walking home, it began to rain. 	while, as = during that time	
by the time	 (1) By the time he arrived, we had al eady left. (m) By the time he comes, we will have already left. 	by the time = one event is completed before another event Notice the use of the past perfect and future perfect in the main clause.	
since	 (n) I haven't seen him since he left this morning. (o) I've known her ever since I was a child. Since = from that time to the present In (o): ever adds emphasis. NOTE: The present perfect is used in clause. 		
until till	(p) We stayed there <i>until</i> we finished our work.(q) We stayed there <i>till</i> we finished our work.	un til, till = to that time and then no longer (Till is used more in speaking than in writing; it is generally not used in formal English.)	
as soon as once	(r) As soon as it stops raining, we will leave.(s) Once it stops raining, we will leave.	a s soon a s , once = when one event happens, another event happens soon afterward	
as long as so long as	 (t) I will never speak to him again as long as I live. (u) I will never speak to him again so long as I live. 	a s long a s , so long a s = during all that time, from beginning to end	
whenever every time	 (v) Whenever I see her, I say hello. (w) Every time I see her, I say hello. 	whenever = every time	
the first time the last time the next time	 (x) The first time (that) I went to New York, I went to a Broadway show. (y) I saw two plays the last time (that) I went to New York. (z) The next time (that) I go to New York, I'm going to see a ballet. 	Adverb clauses can be introduced by: the the third, etc. last next etc. time (that)	

*After and before are commonly used in the following expressions:

shortly after	shortly before		
a short time after	a short time before		
a little while after	a little while before		
not long after	not long before		
soon after			

Τ

EXERCISE 6 Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-1 and 17-2)

Complete the sentences with your own words. Add brackets around the adverb clause in each sentence.

- 1. Don't worry.
 - a. I will call you [before I _______.]
 - b. I will go to bed after I _____ my homework.
 - c. I did my chores before I ______ to my friend's house.
 - d. By the time you get home, I ______ dinner for you.
- 2. Dogs and spiders scare me.
 - a. Ever since I was a child, I ______ of dogs.
 - b. One time a small dog bit me when I ______ it.
 - c. Whenever I ______ spiders, I scream.
 - d. A spider fell out of my shoe as I _____ this morning.
 - e. By the time I stopped screaming, the spider _____
- 3. You need to protect your ID.
 - a. The last time I ______ overseas, I lost my passport. The next time I

_____, I'm going to bring a photocopy of it.

- b. Whenever I ______ a password for a website, I make it very long.
- c. Ever since I ______ about identity theft, I have been very careful about sharing information online.

EXERCISE 7 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-1 and 17-2)

Combine each pair of sentences with the words in parentheses. Add commas as necessary.

On a Flight

- 1. The baggage will be loaded soon. The plane will take off. (as soon as) \rightarrow As soon as the baggage is loaded, the plane will take off.
- 2. The passengers got on the plane. The flight attendant closed the door. (after)
- 3. The passengers got on the plane. The flight attendant closed the door. (before)
- 4. Malea feels nervous. She flies. (whenever)
- 5. The plane was climbing. We hit turbulence. (while)
- 6. I was falling asleep. The pilot made an announcement. (just as^*)
- 7. I fell asleep. He finished. (as soon as)
- 8. I stood up to walk to the restroom. The flight attendant told us to fasten our seat belts. (just after)
- 9. We had to stay in our seats. The pilot turned off the seat belt sign. (until)
- 10. We had lunch. The person next to me has been talking non-stop. (since)

^{*}Just adds the idea of "immediately":

just as = at that immediate or same moment

just before = immediately before

just after = immediately after

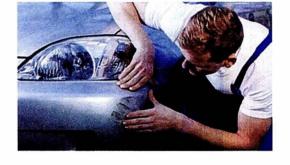
- 11. I fly. I will bring earplugs. (the next time)
- 12. I will text you. We land. (as soon as)
- 13. I get my bags. I will meet you in the passenger-loading zone. (just as soon as)
- 14. I flew this airline. My bags were lost. (the first time)
- 15. I will be happy to stretch my legs. We get off the plane. (once)
- 16. We land. We will have been on the plane for ten hours. (by the time)

EXERCISE 8 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-2)

Choose the best completion for each sentence.

- 1. As soon as Martina saw the fire, she _____ the fire department.
 - a. was telephoning c. had telephoned
 - (b) telephoned d. has telephoned
- 2. Before Jennifer won the lottery, she _____ any kind of contest.
 - a. hasn't entered c. wasn't entering
 - b. doesn't enter d. hadn't entered
- 3. Every time Prakash sees a movie made in India, he _____ homesick.
 - a. will have felt c. feels
 - b. felt d. is feeling
- 4. Since I left Venezuela six years ago, I _____ to visit friends and family several times.
 - a. return c. am returning
 - b. will have returned d. have returned
- 5. While he was washing his new car, Lawrence _____ some scratches on his front bumper.
 - a. has discovered c. is discovering
 - b. was discovering d. discovered
- 6. Yesterday while I was attending a sales meeting, Matthew _____ on the company's annual report.
 a. was working c. has worked
 - b. had been working d. works
- 7. Tony _____ to have children until his little daughter was born. After she won his heart, he decided he wanted a big family.
 - a. doesn't want c. wasn't wanting
 - b. hadn't wanted d. hasn't wanted
- 8. After the horse threw her to the ground for the third time, Jennifer picked herself up and said, "I ______ on another horse as long as I live."
 - a. never ride c. will never ride
 - b. have never ridden d. do not ride
- 9. The next time Paul _____ to New York, he will visit the Metropolitan Museum of Art's famous collection of international musical instruments.
 - a. will fly c. has flown
 - b. flies d. will have flown
- 10. Ever since Maurice arrived, he _____ quietly in the corner. Is something wrong?
 - a. sat c. had been sitting
 - b. has been sitting d. will have sat





- After Nela _____ for 20 minutes, she began to feel tired.
 a. jogging c. has been jogging
 - b. had been jogging d. has jogged
- 12. Peter, _____ since you got home from football practice?
 - a. have you eatenc. are you eatingb. will you eatd. do you eat
- 13. The last time I _____ in Athens, the weather was hot and humid.
 - a. had been c. am b. was d. will
 - d. will have been
- 14. By the time the young birds _____ the nest for good, they will have learned how to fly.a. will leavec. are leaving
 - b. will have left

EXERCISE 9 Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-1 and 17-2)

d. leave

Read the description of events. Make sentences using the words in the list.

Example: Just after

 \rightarrow Just after Judy parked her car, a thief broke into it.

- 4:00 Judy parked her car at the mall and went to buy some jeans.
- 4:03 A thief broke into her car and stole her radio.
- 4:30 Judy returned to her car.
- 4:31 Judy called the police.
- 4:35 The police arrived.
- 4:35 Judy began crying in frustration.

1. Just after	3. When	5. By the time
2. Just as	4. While	6. As soon as

EXERCISE 10 • Let's talk. (Charts 17-1 and 17-2)

Work in pairs or small groups. Complete the sentences. Each person should finish each sentence. Share a few things you learned about your classmates.

About Me

Example:

After I left class yesterday, ... \rightarrow After I left class yesterday, I met my cousin at a café.

- 1. After I leave class today, ...
- 2. Before I go to bed tonight, ...
- 3. As soon as I get up tomorrow, ...
- 4. Whenever I feel nervous, ...
- 5. The first time I came to this class, ...
- 6. Ever since I was a child, ...
- 7. As long as I live, ...
- 8. Just as I was falling asleep last night, ...





EXERCISE 11 ▶ Reading, grammar, and writing. (Charts 17-1 and 17-2) Part I. Read the passage and then complete the sentences.





Cultural Misunderstandings

Since Marco and Anya came to this country, they've had some memorable misunderstandings due to language and culture. The first time Marco met someone at a party, he was asked, "How's it going?" Marco thought that the person was asking him about leaving, and that seemed very strange.

Once, Anya walked into class, and a native speaker said, "Hi. How are you?" When Anya started to give a long answer, the speaker looked at her rather oddly. This happened several times until Anya learned she was just supposed to say something like "OK" or "Fine, thanks. And you?"

Another time, Marco was at a restaurant and wanted to get the server's attention. He snapped his fingers. The server was not pleased.

Since coming here, Marco and Anya have learned that cultural misunderstandings are a normal part of learning another language. They can be valuable and even entertaining learning experiences. Marco and Anya just smile at these misunderstandings now.

1.	The first time Marco was asked, "How's it going?"
2.	At first, every time someone asked Anya how she was,
3.	The next time Marco wants to get the server's attention at a restaurant,
4.	Since Marco and Anya have come to this country,
5.	Whenever they have a cultural misunderstanding,

Part II. Write a paragraph about a cultural misunderstanding you have had or experienced.

EXERCISE 12 Warm-up. (Chart 17-3)

Which adverb clauses give the idea of "because"?

- 1. Now that I've finished art school, I can focus on finding work as an illustrator.
- 2. Since I was young, I have been artistic.
- 3. Since I've had formal training, maybe I can illustrate books.



17-3	Using Adverb Clauses to Show	Cause and Effect
because	 (a) Because he was sleepy, he went to bed. (b) He went to bed because he was sleepy. 	An adverb clause may precede or follow the independent clause. Notice the punctuation in (a) and (b). Be sure to identify the correct cause and effect. INCORRECT: Because he went to bed, he was sleepy.
now that	 (c) Now that I've finished the semester, I'm goin to rest a few days and then take a trip. (d) Jack lost his job. Now that he's unemployed, he can't pay his bills. 	 g Now that means "because now." In (c): Now that I've finished the semester means "because the semester is now over." NOTE: Now that is used with the present, present perfect, or future tenses.
since	 (e) Since Monday is a holiday, we don't have t go to work. (f) Since you're a good cook and I'm not, you should cook the dinner. 	When since is used to mean "because," it expresses a known cause; it means "because it is a fact that" or "given that it is true that." Cause-and-effect sentences with since say , "Given the fact that X is true, Y is the result." In (e): "Given the fact that Monday is a holiday, we don't have to go to work."
	(g) Since I came here, I have met many people	NOTE: Since has two meanings. One is "because." It is also used in time clauses, as in (g). See Chart 17-2.

EXERCISE 13 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-3)

Combine each pair of sentences with the words in parentheses. Add commas as necessary.

Travel

- 1. We have a lot of frequent-flier miles. We can visit several countries. (now that) → Now that we have a lot of frequent-flier miles, we can visit several countries.
- 2. We can compare hotel prices. They are posted online. (since)
- 3. We have read the online hotel reviews. We can choose our hotel. (now that)
- 4. There is little chance we will get lost. We have GPS on our phones. (because)
- 5. People post online reviews instantly. Customer service has improved. (since)
- 6. We won't get so homesick. We can video chat with our families. (because)

EXERCISE 14 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-3)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that can be rewritten with *now that*, and then rewrite them.

My Grandmother

- 1. ____ Because my grandfather has died, my mom would like my grandmother to move in with us. Now that my grandfather has died, my mom would like my grandmother to move in with us.
- 2. ____ Because my grandmother lives alone, I visit her more often.
- 3. _____ Because my grandmother was a nurse, she took good care of her health.
- 4. _____ Because my grandparents saved for their retirement, she doesn't need to worry about finances.
- 5. _____ Because she is 90, I have asked her a few times if she should continue driving.





EXERCISE 15 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 17-4)

Which sentence expresses an unexpected result?

- 1. Because I was very tired, I went to bed early.
- 2. Even though I was very tired, I stayed up late.



17-4 Expressing Contrast (Unexpected Result): Using Even Though

(a)	Because the weather was cold, I didn't go swimming.	Because is used to express expected results.
(b)	Even though the weather was cold, <i>went</i> swimming.	Even though is used to express unexpected results.*
(c)	Because I wasn't tired, I didn't go to bed.	NOTE: Like because , even though introduces an adverb clause.
(d)	Even though I wasn't tired, I went to bed.	

*Although and though have basically the same meaning and use as even though. See Chart 19-7, p. 416, for information on the use of although and though.

EXERCISE 16 Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-4)

Choose the correct completion for each sentence.

- Because it was a dark, cloudy day, _____.
 (a.) I didn't put on my sunglasses
 b. I put on my sunglasses
- 2. Even though it was a dark, cloudy day, _____.
 a. I put on my sunglasses
 b. I didn't put on my sunglasses
- 3. Even though Mira was cold, _____.a. she wore a heavy coat outsideb. she wore a light sweater outside
- 4. Because Mira enjoys the outdoors, _____.
 a. she goes for walks rain or shine b. she doesn't go for walks in bad weather

EXERCISE 17 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-4)

Complete the sentences with *even though* or *because*.

- 1. a. Tim's in good shape physically <u>even though</u> he doesn't get much exercise.
- b. Barry's in good shape physically <u>because</u> he gets a lot of exercise.
- 2. a. _____Yoko has a job, she is able to pay her rent and feed her family.
 - b. _____ Melissa has a job, she doesn't make enough money to support her four children.
- 3. a. Joe speaks Spanish well ______ he lived in Mexico for a year.
 - b. Sherry didn't learn Spanish ______ she lived in Mexico for a year.
- - b. ______ she was rescued right away, the girl survived.

5. a. _____ the flood washed away

the bridge, the campers were able to cross the river

_____ they had a boat.

b. _____ the bridge was out

of service for several months, people had to find

alternate ways to get across the river.

EXERCISE 18 Let's talk. (Chart 17-4)

Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class. Speaker A asks the question. Speaker B answers the question beginning with **Ves/No** and followed by **Even though**.

Small Talk

Examples:

SPEAKER A: It was raining. Did you go to the zoo anyway? SPEAKER B: Yes. Even though it was raining, I went to the zoo.

SPEAKER A: You studied hard. Did you pass the test? SPEAKER B: No. Even though I studied hard, I didn't pass the test.

- 1. You stayed up all night. Did you go to work?
- 2. Your sister has a new baby. Have you met her yet?
- 3. The food was terrible. Did you eat it anyway?
- 4. You didn't study. Did you pass the test anyway?
- 5. The weather is terrible today. Did you stay home?
- 6. You fell down the stairs. Did you get hurt?
- 7. You sent in an excellent college application. Did you get accepted?
- 8. You rehearsed your speech several times. Were you nervous?

(Change roles if working in pairs.)

- 9. You told the truth, but did anyone believe you?
- 10. You bought a brand-new air conditioner. Does it work?
- 11. You changed your password. Did your account still get hacked?
- 12. You have a new cat and dog. Do you have enough pets?
- 13. Your grandfather is 100 years old. Is he still young at heart?
- 14. You didn't understand the joke. Did you laugh anyway?
- 15. Your friends gave you a surprise birthday party. Were you surprised?
- 16. You backed up your computer files. Could you find all your documents?

EXERCISE 19 Warm-up. (Chart 17-5)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that show contrast (i.e., show that "X" is the opposite of "Y").

- 1. ____ I am a vegetarian, while my husband is a meat-eater.
- 2. _____While I was buying vegetables, I remembered that we had leftovers in the fridge.
- 3. _____While many vegetarians eat eggs, I don't because they come from chickens.



17-5 Showing Direct Contrast: While While is used to show direct contrast: "this" is exactly the opposite of (a) Mary is rich, while John is poor, "that."* (b) John is poor, while Mary is rich. Examples (a), (b), (c), and (d) all have the same meaning. (c) While John is poor, Mary is rich. Note the use of the comma in (a) and (b): In using while for direct (d) While Mary is rich, John is poor. contrast, a comma is often used even if the while-clause comes second (unlike the punctuation of most other adverb clauses). COMPARE: REMINDER: While is also used in time clauses and means "during that (e) The phone rang while I was studying. time," as in (e). See Chart 17-2.

*Whereas can have the same meaning and use as while, but it occurs mostly in formal written English and occurs with considerably less frequency than while: Mary is rich, whereas John is poor.

EXERCISE 20 Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-5)

Choose the best completion for each sentence.

1.	Some people are tall, while others are a. intelligent b. thin	\sim	short large
2.	A box is square, while a. a rectangle has four sides b. my village has a town square in the center		we use envelopes for letters a circle is round
3.	While some parts of the world get an abundance of a. are warm and humid b. are cold and wet	c.	in, others get little or none get a lot
4.	In some nations the favorite beverage is coffee, wh a. I like tea b. it has caffeine	c.	in others it is tea they drink tea
5.	Some people like cream and sugar in their coffee, a. others like it black b. others drink hot coffee	c.	le milk is good in coffee too sugar can cause cavities
6.	Steve is an interesting storyteller and conversationa. is a newspaper reporterb. bores other people by talking about himself all the time	c.	t, while his brother has four children knows a lot of stories too

EXERCISE 21 Let's talk. (Chart 17-5)

Work in pairs or small groups. Contrast each pair of words using while. You may need to research the words. Share some of your answers with the class.

Example: alligators/crocodiles

- \rightarrow Alligators are found in the U.S. and China, while crocodiles are found worldwide.
- \rightarrow A crocodile has a V-shaped snout, while an alligator has a rounded snout.
- \rightarrow Alligators can live in freshwater, while crocodiles prefer salt water.
- 1. a college/a university
- 4. an immigrant/a refugee
- 2. an island/a peninsula
- 3. tap water/filtered water
- 5. the word affect/the word effect
- 6. a passport/a visa

EXERCISE 22 ► Warm-up. (Chart 17-6)

Check (\checkmark) the sentence with *if* that is grammatically correct.

- 1. _____ If I will need help, I will ask you.
- 3. ____ If I will need help, I ask you.
- 2. ____ If I need help, I will ask you.

17-6 Expressing C	onditions in A	dverb Clauses: If-Clauses
(a) If it rains tomorrow, I will take my umbrella		If-clauses (also called "adverb clauses of condition") present possible conditions. The main clause expresses RESULTS.
		In (a): POSSIBLE CONDITION = it may rain tomorrow RESULT = I will take my umbrella
		A present tense, not a future tense, is used in an <i>if</i> -clause even though the verb in the <i>if</i> -clause may refer to a future event or situation, as in (a).*
Words that introduce advert	clauses of condition	n (if-clauses)
if whether or not	even if in case	unless only if

*See Chapter 20 for uses of other verb forms in sentences with if-clauses.

EXERCISE 23 Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-6)

Make sentences with *if* using the given conditions.

Example: It may be cold tomorrow. -> If it's cold tomorrow, I'm going to stay home.

- 1. I will stay up all night.
- 2. I may be sick tomorrow.
- 3. Maybe I will wake up tomorrow and speak English fluently.
- 4. The power may be out for 24 hours.

 \rightarrow We can't go on a picnic if it's cold tomorrow.

5. The government might put a 20% tax on snack food.

EXERCISE 24 ► Reading and grammar. (Charts 17-1 → 17-6)

Underline the adverb clauses in the student handbook passage. Correct the errors in punctuation.

Forms of Address

Colleges and Universities

It's your first day of class, and you're not sure what to call your teacher. Is the first name acceptable or too informal? If you use a title, should it be *Dr.* or *Professor*?

At the college level, many teachers actually prefer to use first names, because it feels friendlier and less formal. They prefer not to have the psychological distance that a title creates.

While many teachers prefer first names some would rather use titles. *Dr.* is for someone with a Ph.D. degree. It is important to know that not all

instructors have Ph.D.'s. In that case, *Professor* is more appropriate, as long as the teacher has the following job title: *Professor, Associate Professor,* or *Assistant Professor.* Note that the last name, not first name, is used with *Dr.* and *Professor.*

Even though many graduate students teach college courses. They are not professors. One option for addressing them is *Ms.* or *Mr.* + last name. But most prefer first names, since they are still technically students.

You can always ask your teacher: "What would you like to be called?" or "How would you like to be addressed?" Teachers like to have contact with students, and knowing your teacher's preference may make it easier for you to approach him or her.

EXERCISE 25 ► Warm-up. (Chart 17-7)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that logically follow the question and are grammatically correct.

rt.

Do you have your cell phone with you?

- 1. ____ If you do, could I use it?
- 2. ____ If so, could I use it?
- 3. ____ If not, I can use someone else's.
- 4. ____ If you don't, I can use someone else's.
- 5. ____ If you are, could I use it?

17-7 Shortened If-Clauses		
 (a) Are you a student? If so / If you are, the ticket is half-price. If not / If you aren't, the ticket is full price. (b) It's a popular concert. Do you have a ticket? If so / If you do, you're lucky. If not / If you don't, you're out of luck. 	 When an <i>if</i>-clause refers to the idea in the sentence immediately before it, it is sometimes shortened. In (a): If so / If you are = If you are a student if not / If you aren't = If you aren't a student In (b): If so / If you do = If you have a ticket if not / If you don't = If you don't have a ticket 	

EXERCISE 26 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-7)

First, complete the sentences in two ways:

- a. Use *so* or *not*.
- b. Use a helping verb or main verb **be**.

Second, give the full meaning of the shortened *if*-clause.

- 1. Does Lisa want to go out to dinner with us?
 - a. If <u>50</u>, tell her to meet us at 8:00.
 - b. If she <u>does</u>, tell her to meet us at 8:00.

→ Meaning: if Lisa wants to go out to dinner with us

- 2. Are you free this weekend?
 - a. If _____, do you want to go to a movie?
 - b. If you _____, do you want to go to a movie?
- 3. Do you have a ride to the theater?
 - a. If _____, would you like to ride with us?
 - b. If you _____, would you like to ride with us?
- 4. Are you coming to the meeting?
 - a. If _____, I'll see you there.
 - b. If you _____, I'll see you there.
- 5. Did you use a spell-check on your email to me?
 - a. If ______, it didn't catch all the spelling errors.
 - b. If you _____, it didn't catch all the spelling errors.

6. We need some rice. Can you stop at the store on your way home today?

- a. If _____, I'll do it.
- b. If you _____, I'll do it.

EXERCISE 27 > Warm-up. (Chart 17-8)

Check (\checkmark) all the sentences that are true for David.

SITUATION: If David gets married, he will be happy. If he doesn't get married, he will be happy.

- 1. ____ David will be happy if he doesn't get married.
- 2. ____ If he gets married, David won't be happy.
- 3. ____ Even if David gets married, he won't be happy.
- 4. _____ Even if David doesn't get married, he will be happy.
- 5. ____ David will be happy whether or not he gets married.
- 6. ____ Whether or not David gets married, he will be happy.

17-8 Adverb Clauses of Condition: Using Whether Or Not and Even If

Whether or not irLanguage.com		
(a) I'm going to go swimming tomorrow whether or not it is cold. OR whether it is cold or not.	Whether or not expresses the idea that neither this condition nor that condition matters; the result will be the same.	
whether it is cold or not.	In (a): "If it is cold, I'm going swimming. If it is not cold, I'm going swimming. I don't care about the temperature. It doesn't matter."	
Even if	should be dealers of the standard for the best by	
I have decided to go swimming tomorrow. Even if the weather is cold, I'm going to go	Sentences with <i>even if</i> are close in meaning to those with <i>whether or not</i> .	
swimming.	<i>Even if</i> gives the idea that a particular condition does not matter. The result will not change.	

EXERCISE 28 Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-8)

Choose the sentence (a. or b.) that has the same meaning as the given sentence.

- 1. Even if I get an invitation to the reception, I'm not going to go.
 - a. I won't go to the reception without an invitation.
 - b. I don't care if I get an invitation. I'm not going.
- 2. Even if the weather improves, I won't go to the beach.
 - a. I'm going to the beach if the weather improves.
 - b. I don't care if the weather improves. I'm not going to the beach.
- 3. Whether or not you want help, I plan to be at your house at 9:00.
 - a. I'm going to help you because I think you need help.
 - b. I'm going to help you because you want me to.



- 4. I won't tell even if someone pays me.
 - a. I won't tell whether or not someone gives me money.
 - b. If someone pays me enough money, I will tell.
- 5. I have to go to work tomorrow whether I feel better or not.
 - a. Whether I go to work or not depends on how I feel.
 - b. I'm going to work tomorrow no matter how I feel.
- 6. Even if John apologizes, I won't forgive him!
 - a. John needs to apologize for me to forgive him.
 - b. I don't care if John apologizes. It doesn't matter.

EXERCISE 29 Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-8)

Use the given information to complete sentences a. and b.

SITUATION 1: Usually people need to graduate from school to get a good job. But it's different for Ed. Maybe Ed will graduate from school, and maybe he won't. It doesn't matter because he has a good job waiting for him in his father's business.

- a. Ed will get a good job whether or not ... → Ed will get a good job whether or not he graduates.
- b. Ed will get a good job even if ...
 → Ed will get a good job even if he doesn't graduate.

SITUATION 2: Cindy's uncle tells a lot of jokes. Sometimes they're funny, and sometimes they're not. It doesn't matter.

- a. Cindy laughs at the jokes whether ... or not.
- b. Cindy laughs at the jokes even if ...

SITUATION 3: Maybe you are finished with the exam, and maybe you're not. It doesn't matter. The time is up.

- a. You have to hand in your examination paper whether ... or not.
- b. You have to hand in your examination paper even if ...

SITUATION 4: Max's family doesn't have enough money to send him to college. He would like to get a scholarship, but it doesn't matter because he's saved some money to go to school and has a part-time job.

a. Max can go to school whether or not ...

b. Max can go to school even if ...

SITUATION 5: Sometimes the weather is hot, and sometimes the weather is cold. It doesn't matter. My grandfather always wears his gray sweater.

- a. My grandfather wears his gray sweater whether or not ...
- b. My grandfather always wears his gray sweater even if ...

SITUATION 6: Your approval doesn't matter to me.

- a. I'm going to marry Harry whether ... or not.
- b. I'm going to marry Harry even if ...

SITUATION 7: It might snow, or it might not. We don't want to go camping in the snow, but it doesn't matter.

- a. We're going to go camping in the mountains whether ... or not.
- b. We're going to go camping in the mountains even if ...





EXERCISE 30 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 17-9)

Choose the sentence (a. or b.) that has the same meaning as the given sentence.

If by chance you have a problem, you can reach me at this number.

- a. In case you have a problem, you can reach me at this number.
- b. When you have a problem, you can reach me at this number.

17-9 Adverb Clauses of Cor	dition: Using In Case
(a) I'll be at my uncle's house in case you (should) need to reach me.	<i>In case</i> expresses the idea that something probably won't happen, but it might. <i>In case</i> means "if by chance this should happen."
	NOTE: Using should in an adverb clause emphasizes the speaker's uncertainty that something will happen.

EXERCISE 31 Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-9)

Combine each pair of sentences. Begin your new sentence with In case.

I'm just letting you know ...

1. You probably won't need to get in touch with me, but maybe you will. If so, I'll give you my cell number.

-> In case you (should) need to get in touch with me, I'll give you my cell number.

- 2. You probably won't need to see me, but maybe you will. If so, I'll be in my office tomorrow morning around ten.
- 3. I don't think you need any more information, but maybe you do. If so, you can call me.
- 4. You probably don't have any more questions, but maybe you do. If so, ask Dr. Smith.
- 5. The dentist probably won't call, but maybe she will. If so, come get me. I'll be outside.
- 6. I hope you're happy with your present, but maybe it won't work. If not, you can return it to the store and get something else.

EXERCISE 32 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-7 \rightarrow 17-9)

Complete the sentences with your own words. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

Bad Weather

- 1. Our boss doesn't accept bad weather as an excuse for missing work. We have to go to work even if ...
- 2. The weather is getting worse. I may not be able to make it home tonight. If not, ...
- 3. The trains might not be running. I'd better ... in case ...
- 4. I may stay in town tonight. If so, ...
- 5. I packed a change of clothes today in case ...

EXERCISE 33 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 17-10)

Choose the logical completion for each sentence.

- 1. I'll be at the meeting on time if there is / isn't a lot of traffic.
- 2. I'll be at the meeting on time unless there is / isn't a lot of traffic.
- 3. My manager won't be coming unless she feels better / worse.
- 4. My manager won't be coming if she feels better / worse.



THE STATES

17-10 Adverb Clauses of Condition: Using Unless

- (a) I'll go swimming tomorrow unless it's cold.
- (b) I'll go swimming tomorrow *if it isn't cold*.

unless = if ... not

In (a): *unless it's cold* means "if it isn't cold." Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning.

EXERCISE 34 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-10)

Restate each sentence with *unless*.

FYI (For Your Information)

- If you don't buy your ticket today, you won't get one.
 → Unless you buy your ticket today, you won't get one.
- 2. You can't travel to that country if you don't have a visa.
- 3. If you don't sign up for the test by Monday, you can't take it next month.
- 4. It's difficult to return a product to that store if you don't have a receipt.
- 5. You can't get a motorcycle license if you haven't passed a special training course.
- 6. The store won't accept your credit card if you don't have ID with you.
- 7. Traffic fines increase if you don't pay them right away.

EXERCISE 35 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-10)

Complete the sentences with your own words. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

Sorry, but ...

- You can't speak to the manager unless ...
 → You can't speak to the manager unless you have an appointment.
- 2. You can't pay with a check unless ...
- 3. Some students won't be able to pass unless ...
- 4. ... unless you save more money.
- 5. Unless you spend more time with your kids, ...
- 6. Some stores will close permanently unless ...
- 7. ... unless I get a raise in salary.
- 8. I'm going to ... unless ...
- 9. Unless you ...
- 10. Interest and penalties on your bill will continue to increase unless ...
- 11. Unless ... , I won't ...

EXERCISE 36 ► Warm-up. (Chart 17-11)

Answer the questions about Scott.

SITUATION: Scott closes his bedroom window at night only if it's raining hard.

- 1. Does Scott close his bedroom window if the temperature is below freezing?
- 2. Does Scott close his bedroom window if it's windy outside?
- 3. Does Scott close his bedroom window if there's a light rain?
- 4. Does Scott close his bedroom window if there is a heavy rain?

17-11 Adverb Clauses of Condition: Using Only If

(a)	The picnic will be canceled only if it rains. If it's windy, we'll go on the picnic. If it's cold, we'll go on the picnic. If it's damp and foggy, we'll go on the picnic. If it's unbearably hot, we'll go on the picnic.	Only if expresses the idea that there is only one condition that will cause a particular result.
(b)	Only if it rains will the picnic be canceled.	When only if begins a sentence, the subject and verb of the main clause are inverted, as in (b).* This is a less common usage. No commas are used.

*Other subordinating conjunctions and prepositional phrases preceded by *only* at the beginning of a sentence require subject-verb inversion in the main clause:

Only when the teacher dismisses us can we stand and leave the room. Only after the phone rang did I realize that I had fallen asleep in my chair. Only in my hometown do I feel at ease.

EXERCISE 37 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-11)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that are true for the situation.

SITUATION: You can take Saturday off only if you work Thursday.

- 1. ____You must work Thursday if you want Saturday off.
- 2. ____You can take Saturday off if you work another day of your choice.
- 3. _____ If you work Thursday, you don't have to work Saturday.
- 4. ____You can work Thursday, but it's not a requirement if you want Saturday off.

EXERCISE 38 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-11)

Read the situations and complete the sentences. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

SITUATION 1: John must take an additional science class in order to graduate. That is the only condition under which he can graduate. If he doesn't take an additional science class, he can't graduate.

He can graduate only if ...

→ He can graduate only if he takes an additional science class.

SITUATION 2: You have to have an invitation in order to go to the party. That is the only condition under which you will be admitted. If you don't have an invitation, you can't go.

You can go to the party only if ...

SITUATION 3: You have to have a student visa in order to study here. Unless you have a student visa, you can't go to school here.

You can attend this school only if ...

- SITUATION 4: Jimmy's mother doesn't want him to chew gum, but sometimes he chews it anyway. Jimmy ... only if he's sure his mother won't find out.
- SITUATION 5: If you want to go to the movie, we'll go. If you don't want to go, we won't go. We ... only if you want to.
- SITUATION 6: The temperature has to reach 32°F / 0°C before water will freeze. Water will freeze only if ...

SITUATION 7: You must study hard. Then you will pass the exam. Only if you study hard ... SITUATION 8: You have to have a ticket. Then you can get into the soccer stadium. Only if you have a ticket ...

SITUATION 9: His parents make Joseph finish his homework before he can have screen time.

Only if Joseph finishes his homework ...

SITUATION 10: I have to get a job. Then I will have enough money to go to school.

Only if I get a job ...

EXERCISE 39 Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-10 and 17-11)

Make sentences with the same meaning as the given sentences. Use only if and unless.

An Illness

- 1. If you don't stay in bed and rest, you won't recover quickly from the virus.
 - → You will recover quickly from the virus only if you stay in bed and rest.
 → You won't recover quickly from the virus unless you stay in bed and rest.
- 2. If you don't see the doctor in person, she won't give you a prescription.
- 3. If you don't have a fever, you can go back to work.
- 4. If you don't need my help right now, I will leave for a few hours.
- 5. If you don't have a doctor's note, you can't take sick time.
- 6. If you don't call the pharmacy now, your prescription won't be ready on time.
- 7. If you don't take your medicine, you won't get well quickly.



EXERCISE 40 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-6 \rightarrow 17-11)

Combine these two sentences using the words in the list.

It may or may not rain. The party will be held indoors/outdoors.

Example: If

- → If it rains, the party will be held indoors.
 → If it doesn't rain, the party will be held outdoors.
- 1. Even if
- 2. Whether or not
- 3. In case
- 4. Unless
- 5. Only if





390 CHAPTER 17

EXERCISE 41 ► Check your knowledge. (Chapter 17 Review)

Correct the errors.

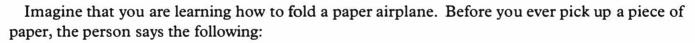
- 1. Once we will pay our bills, we'll have little money left over for the holidays.
- 2. In the case there is an emergency, call the number on this paper.
- 3. While my parents live nearby, my siblings don't.
- 4. Unless you have a doctor's note, you can take sick time from work.
- 5. If tenants will have any questions about the apartment, they need to contact the manager.
- 6. Only if you help me I will clean the apartment.
- 7. When Yusef finished medical school at the age of 21.
- 8. The last time we were at the theater on a holiday weekend.
- 9. Even I get a promotion to manager, I won't relocate to another city.
- 10. I care about you if or not you believe me.

EXERCISE 42 Reading, grammar, and writing. (Chapter 17)

Part I. Underline the words that introduce adverb clauses. What tense is used in these clauses?

How Do People Learn Best?

How do people learn best? There is not one answer since much depends on individual learning styles and needs. Over 300 years ago, however, the noted inventor Benjamin Franklin made some observations regarding learning that still hold true for a great many learners today: "Tell me and I forget. Teach me and I remember. Involve me and I learn."



- Take a piece of paper.
- Fold it in half.
- Open the paper.
- Look at the crease in the middle.
- Now take one corner and fold it down along the crease.

All of the information is presented verbally. How well are you going to learn how to fold a paper airplane so long as the instructor continues in this manner?

Now imagine that your instructor is standing before you with paper and gives the directions while she folds the paper herself. Will this help you more?

Finally, imagine that both you and your instructor have paper. Every time she gives you instructions, both you and she fold your own papers.

Of the three methods, which one will be the most effective in helping you learn how to fold a paper airplane?

It's interesting to think about Benjamin Franklin's quote in relation to learning English. How do you learn English best? Is "being told" effective for you? What about "being taught"? How about "being involved"?





Part II. Think about your experiences learning English vocabulary and complete the sentences with your own words. Punctuate carefully.

- 1. I remember new words best when _____
 - 2. I often forget the meanings of new words unless _____
- 3. Even if I _____

4. I ______ only if _____

5. If students want to increase their vocabulary, _____

6. If teachers want to help their class learn new vocabulary, they _____

7. Although ______

8. When I am involved in my learning, I feel _____

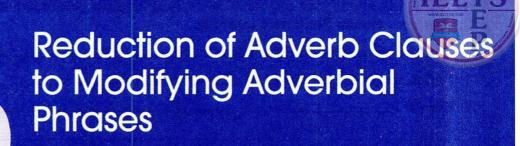
Part III. Write one or more paragraphs about how you learn best. Use the questions in the reading and your statements in Part II to help you develop your ideas. You can also include what does not work for you. Organize the points you want to make and support them with examples.

WRITING TIP

Remember that adverb clauses do not always need to come at the beginning of a sentence. In fact, it can become boring if the writer always puts them in the same place. Try to vary your writing by changing the position of the adverb clauses, putting some at the beginning and some later in your sentences.

Part IV. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box a comma at the end of an adverb clause when it begins a sentence
- 2. \Box a period, not a comma, between two complete sentences
- 3. \Box correct meaning of adverb clauses
- 4. \Box the use of *even though* or *even if* instead of *even*
- 5. \Box when only if begins a sentence, inversion of the subject and verb in the main clause
- 6. \Box placement of adverb clauses: not all at the beginning of sentences
- 7. □ correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)



PRETEST: What do I already know?

CHAPTER

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct sentence structure and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. ____ While checking text messages at the bus stop, Janice dropped her phone in a mud puddle. (18-1)
- 2. ____ Before accepting the job, the company offered Joseph additional vacation days. (18-1)
- 3. _____ After having completed two years of medical training, Marisa was ready to begin life as a paramedic. (18-2)
- 4. _____ Since came to this country, I have experienced some interesting cultural traditions. (18-2)
- 5. _____ Sitting outdoors in the sun, Jenn realized she had forgotten to put on sunscreen. (18-3)
- 6. _____While hotel guests were checking in, they were told about holiday specials. (18-3)
- 7. ____ Not have spent much time with her grandparents when she was younger, Lauren was happy about their summer visit. (18-4)
- 8. ____ Needed the package by the weekend, Barry paid for express delivery. (18-4)
- 9. ____ Upon hearing about the promotion of her assistant, Nela sat down at her desk in surprise. (18-5)
- 10. _____ On learning about genetics and eye color, Sofia began looking more closely at the eye color of her friends and their parents. (18-5)

Incorrect semtences: 2, 4, 7, 8

EXERCISE 1 > Warm-up. (Charts 18-1 and 18-2)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that are grammatically correct.

- 1. _____ While riding the elevator, Zac heard a strange noise.
- 2. ____While Zac was riding the elevator, it suddenly stopped.
- 3. _____While riding the elevator, it suddenly stopped.
- 4. ____ While ride the elevator, it suddenly stopped.



18-1 Introduction

(a)	Adverb clause:	While I was walking to class, I ran into an old friend.	In Chapter 13, we discussed changing adjective clauses to modifying phrases. (See Chart 13-11,
(b)	Modifying phrase:	While walking to class, I ran into an old friend.	p. 295.) Some adverb clauses may also be changed to modifying phrases, and the ways in which the changes are made are the same:
(c)	Adverb clause:	Before I left for work, ate breakfast.	 If there is a be form of the verb, omit the subject of the dependent clause and be verb, as in (b).
(d)	Modifying phrase:	Before leaving for work, I ate breakfast.	 OR If there is no be form of a verb, omit the subject and change the verb to <i>-ing</i>, as in (d).
(e)	Change possible:	While I was sitting in class, I fell asleep. While sitting in class, I fell asleep.	An adverb clause can be changed to a modifying phrase only when the subject of the adverb clause and the subject of the main clause are the same.
(f)	Change possible:	While Ann was sitting in class, she fell asleep. (clause) While sitting in class, Ann fell asleep.	A modifying adverbial phrase that is the reduction of an adverb clause modifies the subject of the main clause.
(g)	No change possible:	While the teacher was lecturing to the class, I fell asleep.*	No reduction (i.e., change) is possible if the subjects of the adverb clause and the main clause are different, as in (g).
(h)	INCORRECT:	While watching TV last night, the phone rang.	In (h): <i>While watching</i> is called a "dangling modifier" or a "dangling participle," i.e., a modifier that is incorrectly "hanging alone" without an appropriate noun or pronoun subject to modify.

* While lecturing to the class, I fell asleep means "While I was lecturing to the class, I fell asleep."

EXERCISE 2 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 18-1)

Choose the correct sentence in each pair.

- 1. a. While sitting at my computer, the fire alarm went off.
 - b. While sitting at my computer, I heard the fire alarm go off.
- 2. a. While standing on the top floor of the building, the crowd below looked like ants.b. While standing on the top floor of the building and looking down, Patrick suddenly felt dizzy.
- 3. a. Before getting up, Mary likes to lie in her warm bed and plan her day.b. Before getting up, Mary's alarm clock went off three times by accident.
- 4. a. While working on his new novel, William found himself telling the story of his childhood.b. After finishing his novel, many of William's childhood friends contacted him.
- 5. a. After standing in line for hours to buy tickets, the manager told us the concert was sold out.b. After standing in line for hours to buy tickets, we were told the concert was sold out.
- 6. a. Before turning in your essay, it is important to check the grammar and spelling.b. Before you turn in your essay, it is important to check the grammar and spelling.

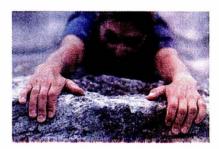
18	8-2 CI	hanging Time Clauses to Mo	difying Adverbial Phrases
(a)	Clause:	Since Maria came to this country, she has made many friends.	Adverb clauses beginning with <i>after</i> , <i>before</i> , <i>when</i> ,* <i>while</i> , and <i>since</i> can be changed to modifying adverbial phrases.
(b)	Phrase:	Since coming to this country, Maria has made many friends.	
(c)	Clause:	When Tyrell cooks, he uses a lot of spices.	
(d)	Phrase:	When cooking, Tyrell uses a lot of spices.	
(e)	Clause:	After he (had) finished his homework, Peter went to bed.	In (e): There is no difference in meaning between After he finished and After he had finished. (See Chart 2-8, p. 44.)
(f)	Phrase:	After finishing his homework, Peter went to bed.	In (f) and (g): There is no difference in meaning between After finishing and After having finished.
(g)	Phrase:	After having finished his homework, Peter went to bed.	
(h)	Phrase:	Peter went to bed after finishing his homework.	The modifying adverbial phrase may follow the main clause, as in (h).

*When can also mean "upon." If it has this meaning, it cannot be reduced to a phrase. See Chart 18-5.

EXERCISE 3 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 18-1 and 18-2)

<u>Underline</u> the subject of the adverb clause and the subject of the main clause in each sentence. Change the adverb clauses to modifying adverbial phrases if possible.

- a. While Joe was driving to school yesterday, <u>he</u> had an accident.
 → While driving to school yesterday, Joe had an accident.
 - b. While Joe was talking to his insurance company, the police arrived. (no change)
- 2. a. Before I came to class, I stopped in a café for a cup of coffee.
 - b. Before the students came to class, they met at a café for lunch.
- 3. a. Since Alberto moved here, he has been taking business classes.b. Since Alberto opened his new business, his family hasn't seen much of him.
- 4. a. Omar's wife drove Omar to his downtown office after he (had) finished breakfast.b. Omar walked up ten flights of stairs to his office after he (had) entered the building.
- 5. a. When the waiter took my order, I forgot to order a beverage.b. When I order coffee, I always ask for extra cream and sugar.
- 6. a. You should always read a contract carefully before you sign your name.b. Before I signed my name, I had a lawyer look over the contract.
- 7. a. After Karl had been climbing for several hours, his muscles began to ache.
 - b. After Karl slipped and lost his footing, he held onto the ledge with all his strength.



EXERCISE 4 • Let's talk: interview. (Chart 18-2)

Ask two classmates each question. Ask them to answer in complete sentences. Share some of their answers with the class.

What do you do ...

- 1. before going to bed?
- 2. after waking up?
- 3. after arriving at school?
- 4. while sitting in class?
- 5. before leaving school for the day?
- 6. while preparing for a difficult exam?

EXERCISE 5 > Warm-up. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)

Read the sentences and answer the questions.

- 1. Hiking through the woods yesterday, Alan saw a bear. QUESTION: Who was hiking through the woods?
- 2. Walking through the woods, a bear spotted Alan. QUESTION: Who was walking through the woods?



18-3 Expressing the Idea of "During the Same Time" in Modifying Adverbial Phrases

- (a) *While I was walking* down the street, *I* ran into an old friend.
- (b) While walking down the street, I ran into an old friend.
- (c) *Walking* down the street, *I* ran into an old friend.

Sometimes *while* is omitted, but the *-ing* phrase at the beginning of the sentence gives the same meaning (i.e., "during the same time").

Examples (a), (b), and (c) have the same meaning.

18	-4 Expressing Cause and Effect in	Modifying Adverbial Phrases
(a)	Because she needed some money to buy a book, Sue went to a cash machine.	Often an -ing phrase at the beginning of a sentence gives the meaning of "because."
(b)	<i>Needing</i> some money to buy a book, <i>Sue</i> went to a cash machine.	Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning.
(c)	Because he lacked the necessary qualifications, he was not considered for the job.	Because is not included in a modifying phrase. It is omitted, but the resulting phrase expresses a cause-and-effect relationship, as in (b) and (d).
(d)	Lacking the necessary qualifications, he was not considered for the job.	
(e)	Having seen that movie before, I don't want to go again.	Having + past participle gives the meaning not only of
(f)	Having seen that movie before, I didn't want to go again.	"because" but also of "before."
(g)	Because he is a doctor, Oskar often gets calls in the middle of the night.	A form of be in the adverb clause may be changed to being . The use of being makes the cause-and-effect
(h)	<i>Being</i> a doctor, Oskar often gets calls in the middle of the night.	relationship clear. Examples (i), (j), and (k) have the same meaning.
(i)	Because she was unable to afford a car, she bought a bike.	
(j)	Being unable to afford a car, she bought a bike.	
(k)	Unable to afford a car, she bought a bike.	

Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases 395

EXERCISE 6 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)

<u>Underline</u> the modifying adverbial phrases. Which ones have the meaning of "because"? Which ones have the meaning of "while"? Do some of the sentences give the idea of both?

- a. Driving to my grandparents' house last night, I saw a young woman who was selling flowers. I stopped so that I could buy some for my grandmother. <u>while</u>
 - b. Being a young widow with three children, my grandmother had no choice but to go to work.
- a. Sitting on the airplane and watching the clouds pass beneath me, I let my thoughts wander to the new experiences that were in store for me during the next two years of living abroad.
 - b. Tapping her fingers loudly on the way table in front of her, the woman next to me talked about her fear of flying.
- 3. a. Having guessed at the answers for most of the test, I did not expect to get a high score.

b. Realizing that I didn't know much, I began to panic.

- 4. a. Walking down the icy steps without using the handrail, Elena slipped and fell.
 - b. Having broken her arm in the fall, Elena had to learn to write with her left hand.

EXERCISE 7 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 18-4)

Change the adverb clauses to modifying adverbial phrases.

- 1. Because David didn't want to hurt her feelings, he ate his girlfriend's salty soup.
 - \rightarrow Not wanting to hurt her feelings, David ate his girlfriend's salty soup.
- 2. Because his girlfriend hadn't tasted the soup, she didn't realize how bad it was.
- 3. Because David thinks that honesty can be hurtful, he doesn't tell her how he really feels.
- 4. Because David is a better cook, he does most of the cooking for them.

EXERCISE 8 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 18-2 \rightarrow 18-4)

Choose all the possible answers for each sentence.

- 1. Before _____ to you, I had never understood that formula.

 a. talked
 b, talking

 c. I talked
- 2. After _____ the chapter four times, I finally understood the author's theory.
 a. I read b. read c. reading





- 3. Since _____ his bachelor's degree, he has had three jobs, each one better than the last.a. he completed b. completing c. completed
- 4. _____ across Canada, I could not help being impressed by the great differences in terrain.
 a. Traveling
 b. While I was traveling
 c. While traveling

IFI

- 5. _____ national fame, the union leader had been an electrician in a small town.
 - a. Before gaining b. He had gained c. Before he gained
- 6. _____ in an airplane before, the little girl was surprised and a little frightened when her ears popped.
 - a. Had never flown b. Having never flown c. Because she had never flown
- 7. Before _____ vice president of marketing and sales, Peter McKay worked as a sales representative.
 - a. became b. becoming c. he became
- 8. _____ the cool evening breeze and listening to the sounds of nature, we lost track of time.
 - a. Because enjoying b. Enjoying c. We were enjoying
- 9. _____ to spend any more money this month, Jim decided against going to a café for lunch. He took a sandwich to work instead.
 - a. Not wanting b. Because he didn't want c. Because not wanting

EXERCISE 9 Looking at grammar. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)

Where possible, combine each pair of sentences by making a modifying phrase out of the first sentence.

A Visit Home

- 1. a. I am a college student. My family doesn't see me so often now. (no change)
 - b. I am a freshman in college. I spend most weekends in my dorm room doing homework. → Being a freshman in college, I spend most weekends in my dorm room doing homework.
- 2. a. My younger siblings had made a "Welcome Home" sign. They were excited to see me.b. The kids were excited. I offered to play with them right away.
- 3. a. My mom lives a long distance from her job. She has to leave early every morning.b. My mom spends four hours a day commuting. Her job needs to change.
- 4. a. I heard that my cousin was in the hospital. I called my aunt to find out how she was doing.b. We decided to visit my cousin. A nurse told us she was resting.
- 5. a. My brother was picking blackberries in the garden. A bee stung him.
 - b. My brother didn't want to yell. He began taking deep breaths.
- 6. a. I recognized my neighbor, but I had forgotten his name. I just smiled and said, "Hi."b. He remembered my name as well as my girlfriend's. I felt pretty embarrassed.
- 7. a. My little sister was convinced she couldn't learn math. I helped her with some lessons.b. I was convinced that she had the ability. I encouraged her to keep trying and not give up.

EXERCISE 10 > Game. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)

Work in teams. Make sentences by combining the ideas in each column. Use the idea on the left as a modifying adverbial phrase. Show logical relationships. The first group to combine all the ideas proceeding of the winner.

Example: 1. They give birth only every five years.
→ Giving birth only every five years, female elephants do not have many offspring.

- 1. They give birth only every five years.
- 2. She has done very well in her studies.
- 3. She was born two months early.
- 4. He had done everything he could for the patient.
- 5. She had never eaten Thai food before.
- 6. He had no one to turn to for help.
- 7. They are extremely hard and nearly indestructible.
- 8. They are able to crawl into very small places.

- a. Marta didn't know what to expect when she went to the restaurant for dinner.
- b. Mice can hide in almost any part of a house.
- c. Sayid was forced to work out the problem by himself.
- d. The doctor left to attend other people.
- e. Nancy expects to be hired by a top company after graduation.
- f. Diamonds are used extensively in industry to cut other hard minerals.
- ✓ g. Female elephants do not have many offspring.
 - h. Monique needed special care for the first few weeks of her life.

EXERCISE 11 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 18-1 \rightarrow 18-4)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that are grammatically correct. Rewrite the incorrect sentences.

Out and About

- After leaving the theater, Tom's car wouldn't start, so we had to take a taxi home.
 → After we left the theater, Tom's car wouldn't start, so we had to take a taxi home.
 → After leaving the theater, we discovered that Tom's car wouldn't start, so we took a taxi home.
- 2. ____ After leaving work late, we stopped at a coffee shop for a late-night snack.
- 3. _____ While walking across the street at a busy intersection, a truck nearly hit me.
- 4. ____ Not wanting to miss the last bus, I yelled for it to wait as I ran along the sidewalk.
- 5. _____ After arriving at a picnic with my cousins, it began to rain quite hard.
- 6. _____While waiting for my husband at the mall, a friend from high school called out my name.
- 7. _____When asked for directions by a pair of tourists, I stopped to help them.
- 8. _____ Being from out of town, two streets that had the exact same name confused visitors.
- 9. ____ Hearing the siren, drivers pulled over and stopped to let the ambulance pass.
- 10. _____ Honking the horn, the ambulance driver carefully entered each intersection.

www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 12 ▶ Reading and grammar. (Charts 18-1 → 18-4)

Read the blog entry by author Stacy Hagen. <u>Underline</u> each modifying adverbial phrase and change it to an adverbial clause.

BlueBookBlog Learning Strategies

There is a lot of interesting research that addresses how students can become more successful learners. In this blog, I'd like to highlight a few strategies for you to think about. While reading them, ask yourself if these strategies would be helpful to you.

- 1. Space your practice: When deciding whether to cram for a test or spread the review out over several days or weeks, you will benefit more by doing the latter, according to researchers. Cramming is very popular with students, but one problem is that it takes more energy to stay focused as the hours pass by. This energy is better used for learning. More important, cramming uses short-term memory. When you space out the practice over time, you activate your long-term memory and learn the material more deeply.
- 2. Take a test: Before beginning to learn new material, test your existing knowledge. For example, take a pretest like the one that opens each chapter of this book. You may get all the answers wrong, but interestingly enough, this doesn't matter. Many scientists believe that pretests help prepare the brain to take in new information. One theory is that our thinking somehow adjusts so that we better know what to look for when learning new material.

You can also benefit from self-testing. There are many ways to do this, but here are a few common ones. After reading a passage, try to recall the key points from memory. Or, make your own practice questions to answer. Another helpful technique is to quiz yourself frequently with flashcards that you create. These types of self-quizzing force you to use your long-term memory and help you remember better.

3. Handwrite, rather than type, your notes. A study at Princeton and UCLA found that students who wrote out their lecture notes were better able to understand concepts and retain information than students who used a laptop. When writing out notes in longhand, students have to think more. They can't write every single word, so they have to comprehend and summarize as they write. With typing, it can become more of an automatic task, and all the words can be included without students' really thinking about them.

EXERCISE 13 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 18-5)

Which sentences have the same meaning?

- 1. When Sharon heard the news of her friend's death, she began to cry.
- 2. Upon hearing the news of her friend's death, Sharon began to cry.
- 3. On hearing the news of her friend's death, Sharon began to cry.

18	18-5 Using Upon + -ing in Modifying Adverbial Phrases			
(a) (b)	<i>Upon reaching</i> the age of 18, I can get my driver's license. <i>When I reach</i> the age of 18, I can get my driver's license.	Modifying adverbial phrases beginning with <i>upon</i> + <i>-ing</i> can have the same meaning as adverb clauses introduced by <i>when</i> . Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning.		
(c)	On reaching the age of 18, I can get my driver's license.	Upon can be shortened to on . Examples (a), (b), and (c) all have the same meaning.		

Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases 399

www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 14 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 18-5)

Make sentences using *upon* + -*ing* where possible.

- a. When Carl saw his wife cross the marathon finish line, he broke into a big smile.
 → Upon seeing his wife cross the marathon finish line, Carl broke into a big smile.
 - b. When Tina crossed the marathon finish line, she collapsed in exhaustion.
- 2. a. When I looked in my wallet, I saw I didn't have enough money to pay my restaurant bill.b. Sam found that the waiter had made a math error when he brought the bill.
- 3. a. When you finish the examination, bring your paper to the front of the room.b. When I finished the exam, I decided to check all my answers again.
- 4. a. When the kids heard the good news, they jumped up and down with joy.
 - b. The kids couldn't contain their excitement when their mom announced the news.

EXERCISE 15 Looking at grammar. (Chapter 18 Review)

Change the adverb clause in each sentence to a modifying adverbial phrase if possible. Change punctuation, capitalization, and word order as necessary.

1. a. After it spends some time in a cocoon, a caterpillar will emerge as a butterfly.

 \rightarrow After spending some time in a cocoon, a caterpillar will emerge as a butterfly.

- b. When the butterfly emerged from the cocoon, the children became very quiet. (no change)
- 2. a. When we entered the room for the exam, we showed the teacher our ID. \rightarrow Upon entering the room for the exam, we showed the teacher our ID.
 - b. Because I was unprepared for the test, I didn't do well. → Being unprepared for the test, I didn't do well. OR Unprepared for the test, I didn't do well.
- 3. a. Jane's family has only received a few text messages since she arrived in Kenya two weeks ago.b. Before Jane left on her trip, she worked two jobs to earn enough money for a three-week stay.
- 4. a. My parents reluctantly agreed to let me attend the concert after they talked it over.b. Because I hadn't checked if I had my ticket with me, I arrived at the concert empty-handed.
- 5. a. Because the forest area is so dry this summer, it is prohibited to light campfires.b. Because the forest campsites are very popular, they are often all taken by mid-morning.
- 6. a. After we had to wait for more than half an hour, we were finally seated at the restaurant.
 - b. When I discovered that I had left my wallet in the car, I told my friends to order without me while I went to get it.

EXERCISE 16 Let's talk. (Chapter 18 Review)

Work in small groups. Imagine your friend is traveling to a foreign country and has never been abroad before. Give advice by making several suggestions for each item.

Advice Before Going Abroad

- 1. Before leaving on your trip, ...
 - \rightarrow you'll need to get a visa.
 - \rightarrow you should find out if you need immunizations.
- → give a friend or family member your itinerary.
 → don't forget to have someone pick up your mail.





- 2. Upon arriving at the airport, ...
- 3. After getting to your destination, ...
- 4. When talking with the local people, ...
- 5. While visiting tourist sites, ...
- 6. Before leaving for home, ...
- 7. In general, when traveling to a foreign country, ...



Listen to each conversation. Choose the sentence that has the same meaning.

Example: You will hear: A: William, don't forget to pick up some groceries after work. B: Oh yeah, thanks. That's the first thing I'll do when I leave the office.

> You will choose: (a) After leaving work, William will stop at the grocery store. b. Before leaving work, William will pick up some groceries.

- 1. a. Fearing people will laugh at her if she plays the piano, Rose doesn't want to play at the family gathering.
 - b. Knowing she plays beautifully, Rose is happy to play the piano at the family gathering.
- 2. a. Not wanting to upset him, Jan isn't going to talk to Thomas this afternoon.
 - b. Hoping to change Thomas's work behavior, Jan is going to talk to him this afternoon.
- 3. a. Upon finding her wedding ring, Susan hid it in a box.
 - b. On finding her wedding ring, Susan felt relieved.
- 4. a. Never having voted in an election, Sam is taking it very seriously.
 - b. Having done a lot of research before choosing a candidate, Sam voted in the presidential election

EXERCISE 18 Reading and grammar. (Chapter 18 Review)

Modifying adverbial phrases are useful when summarizing information. First, read the passage about the invention of the telephone. It has no modifying adverbial phrases. Then read the summary on the next page and <u>underline</u> the modifying adverbial phrases. How do these phrases allow the ideas to be expressed more briefly yet still clearly?

The First Telephone

Alexander Graham Bell, a teacher of the deaf in Boston, invented the first telephone. One day in 1875, while he was running a test on his latest attempt to create a machine that could carry voices, he accidentally spilled acid on his coat. Naturally, he called for his assistant, Thomas A. Watson, who was in another room. Bell said, "Mr. Watson, come here. I want you." When he heard words coming from the machine, Watson immediately realized that their experiments had at last been successful. He rushed excitedly into the other room to tell Bell that he had heard his words over the machine.

After he successfully tested the new machine again and again, Bell confidently announced his

invention to the world. For the most part, scientists appreciated his accomplishment, but the general public did not understand the revolutionary nature of Bell's invention. Most people believed the telephone was a toy with little practical application, and they paid little attention to Bell's announcement.







Summary

A small accident helped Alexandar Graham Bell with his invention of the telephone. While running a test to create a machine for voices, Bell spilled acid on his coat. He called to Mr. Watson, his assistant, who was in a different room. Watson heard Bell's words coming out of their new machine. Upon realizing what had happened, Watson and Bell knew that the invention was successful. Bell told the world about his discovery after testing the machine multiple times. Scientists understood the value of his work, but the general public, believing the phone was more of a toy, paid little attention to his announcement.

EXERCISE 19 Reading and writing. (Chapter 18)

Part I. Read the passage.

The **QWERTY** Keyboard

The letters on an English keyboard have a rather strange placement. If you look at the first row of letters on the keyboard shown, you'll notice that Q-W-E-R-T-Y are the first six letters. At first glance, this design doesn't seem to make a lot of sense, but it turns out there is a logical reason for it.

A man named Christopher Sholes, the inventor of the typewriter, came up with this keyboard in the 1860s. He wanted to create a logical design. Sholes first placed the letters in alphabetical order on



his typewriter. He put two rows from A to Z on the keyboard. But Sholes found there was a problem. The letters were on typebars — also called keys — and some of these keys crashed into one another. This happened when letters that often occur together in words, like "s" and "l," were near each other on the keyboard. The keys hit each other and got stuck, and the typist had to stop and pull them apart.

Sholes tried to figure out a way to keep the keys from hitting one another. He made a list of letters commonly used together in English, like "s" and "l," or "q" and "u." He then rearranged these letters so they would be on opposite sides of the keyboard. If you look at a keyboard, "q" is on the left side and "u" is on the right side. He put the keys that were most likely to be hit in succession on opposite sides of the keyboard. This keyboard became known as QWERTY.

When we use computers, we don't have to worry about keys crashing into one another, so QWERTY is not necessarily the fastest and most efficient keyboard. People have come up with alternative keyboard patterns, but so far, none has gained much popularity. Since it has survived since the 1860s, QWERTY has demonstrated its longevity. It does not appear that it is going to be replaced any time soon by a faster, more efficient keyboard.

*
10
·)

Part II. Write a summary of the passage. You can use the summary in Exercise 17 as a model.* You may want to work in groups or with a partner first to list the essential information. Include at least three modifying adverbial phrases in your writing.

WRITING TIP

Good writers avoid wordiness; they edit until they have only the necessary words to express their ideas. The use of modifying adverbial phrases is one way to make writing more concise. Since sentence variety is important, however, it is important not to reduce every possible sentence to a modifying adverbial phrase. A mix of both reduced and non-reduced sentences is more interesting.

Part III. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box only essential information in the summary
- 2. \Box use of modifying adverbial phrases in some sentences
- 3. □ subjects of the adverb clause and the main clause are the same when modifying adverbial phrases are used
- 4. \Box subjects omitted in modifying phrases
- 5. \Box a comma used when modifying phrase is first in sentence
- 6. \Box correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

*See Chapter 10, Exercise 53, p. 214, for more information on how to write a summary.

Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases 403

Connectives That Express Cause and Effect, Contrast, and Condition

PRETEST: What do I already know?

CHAPTER

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct connecting words and punctuation. Write "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. ____ The clinic received complaints about its care, so it began sending out surveys to its patients. (19-1)
- 2. ____ Because of the roof was leaking, the living room had water on the floor. (19-2)
- 3. ____ The restaurant offers delicious Indian food. Consequently, there is often a line out the door. (19-3)
- 4. ____ Because most large grocery stores have delis we have been cooking less. (19-4)
- 5. ____ Liza got a raise at work; therefore, she celebrated with her husband. (19-4)
- 6. ____ The waiter was such helpful that I tipped him extra. (19-5)
- 7. ____ The color of your shirt is so bright that I need to put on my sunglasses! (19-5)
- 8. _____ Jill exercises at 5:00 A.M. every day so that she can fit it into her day. (19-6)
- 9. ____ The weather was sunny and warm. Nevertheless, we went to the beach. (19-7)
- 10. ____ Despite that Andreas is a hard worker, he can't seem to keep a job for more than a few months. (19-7)
- 11. ____ Malea is loud and funny; her twin sister, on the other hand, is quiet and reserved. (19-8)
- 12. ____We need to hurry. Otherwise, we'll catch our plane. (19-9)

Incorrect sentences: 2, 4, 6, 9, 10, 12

EXERCISE 1 Warm-up. (Chart 19-1)

<u>Underline</u> the connecting words.

- 1. Even though Tracey is afraid of heights, she decided to take a ride in a hot-air balloon.
- 2. Tracey was afraid to go by herself, so she invited a friend.
- 3. The balloon traveled over mountains; consequently, the passengers had stunning views.



19-1 Introduction

Connectives can express cause/effect, contrast, and condition. They can be adverb-clause words, transitions, conjunctions, or prepositions. In Chapter 17 you studied adverb-clause words to express these ideas. In this chapter you will also look at transitions, conjunctions, and prepositions.

(a) <i>Because</i> Julian felt sick, he left work early.(b) <i>Even though</i> Julian is afraid of doctors, he decided to make an appointment.	The connectives in (a) and (b) are adverb-clause words.
(c) Julian had a rash and fever. <i>Consequently</i>, the doctor ran tests.(d) The doctor ran tests. <i>However</i>, she found nothing serious.	The connectives in (c) and (d) are transitions.
(e) Julian wasn't seriously ill, <i>but</i> his doctor told him to rest anyway.(f) Julian wasn't well, <i>so</i> his doctor told him to rest.	The connectives in (e) and (f) are conjunctions.
(g) <i>Due to</i> his illness, Julian missed several days of work.(h) He stayed home from work <i>because of</i> his illness.	The connectives in (g) and (h) are prepositions.

	Adverb-Claus	se Words	Transitions	Conjunctions	Prepositions
CAUSE AND EFFECT	because since now that	so (that)	therefore consequently	so	because of due to
CONTRAST	even though although though	while	however nevertheless nonetheless on the other hand	but (anyway) yet (still)	despite in spite of
CONDITION	if unless only if even if whether or not	in case	otherwise	or (else)	

EXERCISE 2 • Reading and grammar. (Chart 19-1)

Read the passage and <u>underline</u> the connecting words from Chart 19-1.



A Distracted Driver

Even though Richard was driving the speed limit, he had an accident. The weather was clear; nevertheless, he glanced briefly at a text message. He took his eyes off the road just long enough to lose control and drive over the edge of the road. Fortunately, his car landed upright. Although he wasn't seriously hurt, he was quite shaken up.

This is Richard's second accident this year, so he knows his insurance rates will go up. Now that he's had two accidents, he's upset with himself. However, he knows his wife will be even more upset. He's not looking forward to telling her.

EXERCISE 3 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 19-2)

Which sentences express the same meaning as the situation and result?

SITUATION: Monday was a holiday. RESULT: All schools were closed.

- 1. All schools were closed on Monday because it was a holiday.
- 2. Because of the holiday, all schools were closed on Monday.
- 3. Due to the holiday, all schools were closed on Monday.
- 4. Due to the fact that it was a holiday, all schools were closed on Monday.
- 5. Because all schools were closed on Monday, it was a holiday.

19-2 Using Because Of and Due To (a) Because the weather was cold, we stayed home. Because introduces an adverb clause; it is followed by a subject and a verb, as in (a). (b) Because of the cold weather, we stayed home. Because of and due to are phrasal prepositions: they are followed by a noun object, as in (b) and (c). (c) Due to the cold weather, we stayed home. (d) Due to the fact that the weather was cold, we stayed home. Sometimes (usually in more formal writing) due to is followed by a noun clause introduced by the fact that. (e) We stayed home because of the cold weather. Like adverb clauses, these phrases can also We stayed home due to the cold weather. follow the main clause, as in (e). We stayed home due to the fact that the weather was cold.

EXERCISE 4 Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-3 and 19-2)

Identify the cause and effect in each pair of sentences. Write "C" for cause and "E" for effect. Then combine the sentences with *because*.

Accomplishments

E

C

- 1. Jon quit smoking. Jon has breathing problems. → Because Jon has breathing problems, he quit smoking.
- 2. Martina feels homesick. Martina moved to a new town.
- 3. Vivian worked very hard. Vivian won a scholarship.
- 4. Viktor has lost weight. Viktor reduced his sugar intake.
- 5. Sanae increased her department's profits. Sanae was promoted to manager.

EXERCISE 5 Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-3 and 19-2)

Choose all the correct sentences.

- 1. a. My cell phone doesn't work because the battery is dead.
 - b. Because my cell phone doesn't work, the battery is dead.
 - c. Because the battery is dead, my cell phone doesn't work.
 - d. The battery is dead because my cell phone doesn't work.

- 2. a. Because Pat doesn't want to return to the Yukon to live, the winters are too severe.
 - b. Pat doesn't want to return to the Yukon to live because the winters are too severe.
 - c. Because the winters are too severe, Pat doesn't want to return to the Yukon to live.
 - d. The winters are too severe because Pat doesn't want to return to the Yukon to live.

EXERCISE 6 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-3 and 19-2)

Complete the sentences with because or because of/due to.

Problems

- 1. We postponed our trip ______ the bad driving conditions.
- 2. Sue's eyes were red ______ she had been swimming in a chlorinated pool.
- 3. We can't visit the museum tomorrow ______ it isn't open.
- 4. _____ heavy fog at the airport, our plane was delayed for several hours.
- 5. ______ the elevator was broken, we had to walk up six flights of stairs.
- 6. Jim had to stop jogging _____ his sprained ankle.

EXERCISE 7 Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-2)

Complete the sentences with the ideas in parentheses.

News Reports

- 1. (*The traffic was heavy*.) Due to <u>heavy traffic</u>, alternate routes are advised into the city.
- 2. (Students have the flu.) Many schools in the district have high absentee rates because of
- 3. (There are loud noises at the beach.) Police are investigating reports of illegal fireworks because of
- 4. (Circumstances are beyond their control.) Due to ______ all City Hall offices are closed today.
- 5. (*The donors are generous.*) Due to ______, the foods banks have enough food for the holidays.









EXERCISE 8 > Warm-up. (Chart 19-3)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that logically complete the idea of the given sentence.

Nadia likes fresh vegetables.

- 1. _____ Therefore, she has a vegetable garden in her yard.
- 2. ____ As a result, she doesn't grow her own vegetables.
- 3. ____ Therefore, she buys canned vegetables at the store.
- 4. _____ As a result, she buys produce from local farmers.
- 5. _____ She eats a lot of frozen vegetables, therefore.
- 6. ____ Consequently, she eats produce from her garden.



19-3 Cause and Effect: Using Therefore, Consequently, and So

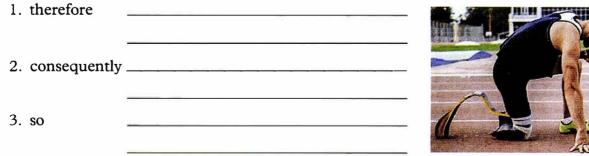
 (a) Al failed the test because he didn't study. (b) Al didn't study. <i>Therefore</i>, he failed the test. (c) Al didn't study. <i>Consequently</i>, he failed the test. 	 Examples (a), (b), and (c) have the same meaning. <i>Therefore</i> and <i>consequently</i> mean "as a result." In grammar, they are called <i>transitions</i> (or <i>conjunctive adverbs</i>). Transitions connect the ideas between two sentences. They are used most commonly in formal written English and rarely in spoken English. 	
 (d) Al didn't study. <i>Therefore</i>, he failed the test. (e) Al didn't study. He, <i>therefore</i>, failed the test. (f) Al didn't study. He failed the test, <i>therefore</i>. POSITIONS OF A TRANSITION: <i>transition</i> + S + V (+ rest of sentence) S + <i>transition</i> + V (+ rest of sentence) S + V (+ rest of sentence) + <i>transition</i> 	A transition occurs in the second of two related sentences. Notice the patterns and punctuation in the examples. A period (NOT a comma) is used at the end of the first sentence.* The transition has several positions in the second sentence. It is separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.	
(g) Al didn't study, so he failed the test.	 In (g): So is used as a conjunction between two independent clauses. It has the same meaning as therefore. So is common in both formal written and spoken English. A comma usually precedes so when it connects two sentences, as in (g). 	

*A semicolon is also possible in this situation: Al didn't study; therefore, he failed the test. See the footnote to Chart 19-4.

EXERCISE 9 Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-3)

Rewrite the sentence with the given words. Punctuate carefully.

The runner can compete in races because he wears a special blade attached at his knee.





EXERCISE 10 Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-3, 19-2, and 19-3)

Punctuate the sentences. Add capital letters as necessary. NOTE: Two sentences need no changes.

- 1. *adverb clause:* Because it was cold she wore a coat.
- 2. *adverb clause:* She wore a coat because it was cold.
- 3. prepositional phrase: Because of the cold weather she wore a coat.
- 4. *prepositional phrase:* She wore a coat because of the cold weather.
- 5. *transition:* The weather was cold therefore she wore a coat.
- 6. *transition:* The weather was cold she wore a coat therefore.
- 7. conjunction: The weather was cold so she wore a coat.

EXERCISE 11 Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-3, 19-2, and 19-3)

Punctuate the sentences. Add capital letters as necessary.

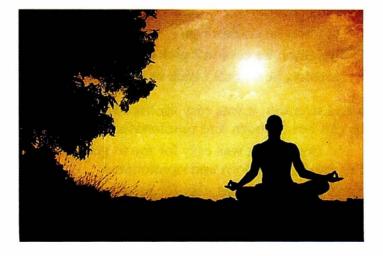
A Storm

- 1. Freezing rain fell on the city it was unsafe to walk outside because of slippery streets and falling branches.
- 2. Due to improvements in weather forecasting people knew about the storm well in advance.
- 3. The storm damaged the power lines consequently the town was without electricity.
- 4. Due to the snowstorm only two students came to class the teacher therefore canceled the class.

EXERCISE 12 Warm-up. (Chart 19-4)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that have the correct punctuation.

- 1. _____ Some doctors recommend yoga for their patients. Because it can lower stress.
- 2. ____ Because yoga can lower stress some doctors recommend it for their patients.
- 3. ____Yoga can lower stress. Some doctors, therefore, recommend it for their patients.
- 4. _____Yoga can lower stress, so some doctors recommend it for their patients.



Connectives That Express Cause and Effect, Contrast, and Condition 409





www.ieltstep.com

17-4 Juinin	nary of Patterns and Punctuation	
ADVERB CLAUSES	 (a) <i>Because it was hot</i>, we went swimming. (b) We went swimming <i>because it was hot</i>. 	An adverb clause may precede or follow an independent clause. PUNCTUATION: A comma is used if the adverb clause comes first.
PREPOSITIONS	 (c) Because of the hot weather, we went swimming. (d) We went swimming because of the hot weather. 	A <i>preposition</i> is followed by a noun object, not by a subject and verb. PUNCTUATION: A comma is usually used if the prepositional phrase precedes the subject and verb of the independent clause.
TRANSITIONS	 (e) It was hot. Therefore, we went swimming. (f) It was hot. We, therefore, went swimming. (g) It was hot. We went swimming, therefore. (h) It was hot; therefore, we went swimming. 	A <i>transition</i> is used with the second sentence of a pair. It shows the relationship of the second idea to the first idea. A transition is movable within the second sentence. PUNCTUATION: A semicolon (;) may be used in place of a period, as in (h).*
		NOTE: A period is used between the two independent clauses in (e)–(g); a comma is not possible. Commas are usually used to set the transition off from the rest of the sentence.
CONJUNCTIONS	(i) It was hot, so we went swimming	A conjunction comes between two independent clauses. PUNCTUATION: Usually a comma is used immediately in front of a conjunction.

* In general, a semicolon can be used instead of a period between any two sentences that are closely related in meaning: *Peanuts are not nuts; they are beans.* Notice that a small letter, NOT a capital letter, immediately follows a semicolon.

EXERCISE 13 Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-3 and 19-4)

Choose all the correct sentences.

- 1. a. It is important to wear a hat on cold days, since we lose 60% of our body heat through our head.
 - b. Since we lose about 60% of our body heat through our head, it is important to wear a hat on cold days.
 - c. It is important to wear a hat on cold days since we lose about 60% of our body heat through our head.
- 2. a. Bill's car wouldn't start; therefore, he couldn't pick us up after the concert.
 - b. Bill's car wouldn't start. Therefore, he couldn't pick us up after the concert.
 - c. Bill's car wouldn't start, therefore, he couldn't pick us up after the concert.
- 3. a. When I was in my teens and twenties, it was easy for me to get into an argument with my father because both of us can be stubborn and opinionated.
 - b. When I was in my teens and twenties, it was easy for me to get into an argument with my father. Because both of us can be stubborn and opinionated.
 - c. When I was in my teens and twenties, it was easy for me to get into an argument with my father, because both of us can be stubborn and opinionated.

- 4. a. Robert got some new business software that didn't work; so he emailed the software compare for technical support.
 - b. Robert got some new business software that didn't work, so he emailed the software company for technical support.
 - c. Robert got some new business software that didn't work so he emailed the software company for technical support.

EXERCISE 14 Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-3 and 19-4)

Combine the sentences using the given words. Discuss correct punctuation.

We postponed our trip. The weather was bad.

Example: because → We postponed our trip because the weather was bad. → Because the weather was bad, we postponed our trip.

1. therefore	3. so	5. consequently
2. since	4. because of	6. due to the fact that

EXERCISE 15 Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-2 and 19-4)

Combine each pair of ideas with the words in parentheses.

Did you know ... ?

- 1. A camel can go completely without water for eight to ten days. It is an ideal animal for desert areas. (*due to the fact that*)
- 2. A tomato is classified as a fruit, but most people consider it a vegetable. It is often eaten in salads along with lettuce, onions, cucumbers, and other vegetables. (*since*)



- 3. There is a consumer demand for ivory. Many African elephants are being slaughtered ruthlessly. Many people who care about saving these animals from extinction refuse to buy any item made from ivory. (*due to, consequently*)
- 4. Most 15th-century Europeans believed the world was flat and that a ship could conceivably sail off the end of the earth. Many sailors of the time refused to venture forth with explorers into unknown waters. (*because*)

EXERCISE 16 ► Warm-up. (Chart 19-5)

Create humorous sayings by matching a phrase on the left with one on the right.

- 1. It's such a hot day that I could _____
- 2. I'm so hungry that I could _____
- 3. He is such a rich man that he _____
- 4. She is so sick that she _____
- a. buys a new boat when one gets wet.
- b. needs two beds.
- c. eat a horse.
- d. fry an egg on the sidewalk.



www.ieltstep.com

19-5 Other Ways of Expressing Cause and Effect: Such ... That and So ... That

 (a) Because the weather was nice, we went to the zoo. (b) It was such nice weather that we went to the zoo. (c) The weather was so nice that we went to the zoo. 	Examples (a), (b), and (c) have the same meaning.
 (d) It was such good coffee that I had another cup. (e) It was such a foggy day that we couldn't see the road. 	Such that encloses a modified noun: such + adjective + noun + that
 (f) The coffee is so hot that I can't drink it. (g) I'm so hungry that I could eat a horse. (h) She speaks so fast that I can't understand her. (i) He walked so quickly that I couldn't keep up with him. 	So that encloses an adjective or adverb: so + $\begin{cases} adjective \\ or \\ adverb \end{cases}$ + that
 (j) She made so many mistakes that she failed the exam. (k) He has so few friends that he is always lonely. (l) She has so much money that she can buy whatever she wants. (m) He had so little trouble with the test that he left 20 minutes early. 	So that is used with many, few, much, and little.
 (n) It was such a good book (that) I couldn't put it down. (o) I was so hungry (that) I didn't wait for dinner to eat something. 	Sometimes, primarily in speaking, <i>that</i> is omitted.

EXERCISE 17 Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-5)

Complete the sentences with **so** or **such**.

- 1. a. It was <u>such</u> an enjoyable party that no one wanted to leave.
 - b. The party was <u>50</u> enjoyable that no one wanted to leave.
 - c. We had ______ much fun that no one wanted to leave.
- 2. a. Leta is ______ afraid of flying that she traveled by train across Canada.
 - b. She was gone for ______ a long time that she got homesick.
 - c. People on the train were ______ kind that she will always remember them.
- 3. a. My elderly aunt has ______ few friends that I am beginning to worry about her.
 - b. She's not poor, but she spends _____ little money that I'm not sure she's eating right.
 - c. I've wanted to visit _____ many times, but she always says no.
- 4. a. The movie was ______ scary that none of us could sleep last night.
 - b. We were ______ scared that we held hands when we walked home.
 - c. I was afraid of having _____ bad dreams that I didn't sleep well for a week.

EXERCISE 18 Let's talk. (Chart 19-5)

Work in small groups. Take turns making sentences using **so/such** ... **that**. Try to exaggerate your answers. Share your favorite sentences with the class.

Example: I'm hungry. In fact, I'm $\dots \rightarrow$ I'm so hungry (that) I could eat a horse.

412 CHAPTER 19

Exaggerations

- 1. I'm really tired. In fact, I'm
- 2. I didn't expect it! I was really surprised. In fact, I was ...
- 3. I took a very slow bus to town. In fact, it was ...
- 4. We watched a very exciting movie. In fact, it was ...
- 5. The weather was really, really hot. In fact, it was ...
- 6. My wallet fell out of my pocket and I lost a lot of money. In fact, I lost ...
- 7. I ordered an expensive meal at a restaurant. The server brought a small plate with a tiny amount of food to my table. In fact, it was ...
- 8. I saw a shark while I was swimming in the ocean. I was frightened. In fact, I was ...



EXERCISE 19 Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-5)

Make new sentences using so or such by combining each sentence on the left with the appropriate sentence on the right. Make all necessary changes.

Example: 1. There are many pine cones on that tree.

 \rightarrow There are so many pine cones on that tree that it is impossible to count them.



a pine cone

- 1. There are many pine cones on that tree.
- 2. The radio was too loud.
- 3. Olga did poor work.
- 4. The food was too hot.
- 5. The wind was strong.
- 6. The tornado struck with great force.
- 7. Few students showed up for class.
- 8. Charles used too much paper when he wrote his report.

- a. It burned my tongue.
- b. She was fired from her job.
- c. It blew my hat off my head.
- d. The teacher postponed the test.
- \checkmark e. It is impossible to count them.
 - f. It lifted cars off the ground.
 - g. I couldn't hear what Michael was saying.
 - h. The printer ran out of ink.



EXERCISE 20 ► Warm-up. (Chart 19-6)

Check (\checkmark) the sentences that correctly complete the given sentence.

Kay got a new job so that ...

- 1. _____ she could be closer to home.
- 2. _____ she is very excited.
- 3. _____ her husband is taking her out to dinner to celebrate.
- 4. _____ she could earn more money.

19-6 Expressing Purpose: Using So That			
 (a) I turned off the TV in order to enable my roommate to study in peace and quiet. (b) I turned off the TV so (that) my roommate could study in peace and quiet. So That + Can or Could 	<i>In order to</i> expresses <i>purpose</i> . (See Chart 15-1, p. 335.) In (a): I turned off the TV for a purpose. The purpose was to make it possible for my roommate to study in peace and quiet. Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning.		
 (c) I'm going to cash a check so that I can buy my textbooks. (d) I cashed a check so that I could buy my textbooks. 	 So that also expresses purpose.* It expresses the same meaning as <i>in order to</i>. The word <i>that</i> is often omitted, especially in speaking. So that is often used instead of <i>in order to</i> when the idea of ability is being expressed. Can is used in the adverb clause for a present/future meaning. In (c): so that I can buy = in order to be able to buy Could is used after so that in past sentences, as in (d).** 		
So That + Will / Would or Simple Present	services of board of an apple of the service		
 (e) I'll take my umbrella so that I won't get wet. (f) Yesterday I took my umbrella so that I wouldn't get wet. (g) I'll take my umbrella so that I don't get wet. 	 In (e): so that I won't get wet = in order to make sure that I won't get wet Would is used in past sentences, as in (f). In (g): It is sometimes possible to use the simple present after so that in place of will; the simple present expresses a future meaning. 		

*NOTE: In order that has the same meaning as so that but is less commonly used.

Example: I turned off the TV in order that my roommate could study in peace and quiet.

Both so that and in order that introduce adverb clauses. It is unusual but possible to put these adverb clauses at the beginning of a sentence: So that my roommate could study in peace and quiet, I turned off the TV.

**Also possible but less common: the use of may or might in place of can or could (e.g., I cashed a check so that I might buy my textbooks.).

EXERCISE 21 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-6)

Combine the sentences by using so (that).

- 1. a. Please turn down your music. I want to be able to get to sleep. \rightarrow Please turn down your music so (that) I can get to sleep.
 - b. My wife turned down her music. I wanted to be able to get to sleep.
 - -> My wife turned down her music so (that) I could get to sleep.

- 2. a. Put the milk in the refrigerator. We want to make sure it won't/doesn't spoil. \rightarrow Put the milk in the refrigerator so (that) it won't/doesn't spoil.
 - b. I put the milk in the refrigerator. I wanted to make sure it didn't spoil. \rightarrow I put the milk in the refrigerator so (that) it wouldn't spoil.
- 3. a. Please be quiet. I want to be able to hear what Sharon is saying.
 - b. I asked the children to be quiet. I wanted to be able to hear what Sharon was saying.
- 4. a. I'm going to go to a cash machine. I want to make sure that I have enough money to go to the store.
 - b. I went to a cash machine yesterday. I wanted to make sure that I had enough money to go to the store.
- 5. a. Ann and Larry have a six-year-old child. Tonight they're going to hire a babysitter. They want to be able to go out with some friends.
 - b. Last week Ann and Larry hired a babysitter. They wanted to be able to go to a dinner party at the home of Larry's boss.
- 6. a. Yesterday I put the meat in the oven at 5:00. I wanted it to be ready to eat by 6:30.
 - b. Be sure to put the meat in the oven at 5:00. You want to be sure that it will be (OR is) ready to eat by 6:30.
- 7. a. I'm going to leave the party early. I want to be able to get a good night's sleep tonight.
 - b. I'm not going to look at any messages on my phone or computer before I go to sleep. I want to be sure that my mind is free of distractions.
- 8. a. Tommy pretended to be sick. He wanted to stay home from school.
 - b. He held a thermometer under hot water. He wanted it to show a high temperature.

EXERCISE 22 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 19-4 and 19-6)

Add *that* to the sentence if **so** means *in order that*. If **so** means *therefore*, add a comma. Needs

- that
- 1. I need to borrow some money so Λ I can pay my rent.
- 2. I didn't have enough money for the movie, so I asked my friend to buy my ticket.
- 3. I need a visa so I can travel overseas.
- 4. I needed a visa so I went to the embassy to apply for one.
- 5. Marta is trying to improve her English so she can become a tour guide.
- 6. Olga wants to improve her English so she has hired a tutor.
- 7. Tarek borrowed money from his parents so he could start his own business.
- 8. I turned off my phone so I can concentrate on my paperwork.





EXERCISE 23 ► Warm-up. (Chart 19-7)

Usually when someone breaks an arm, he/she goes to a doctor. That is expected behavior. Answer the same question about expected behavior for each statement. Circle yes or no.

	EXPECTED B	BEHAVIOR?
1. Ron broke his arm, but he didn't go to the doctor.	yes	no
2. Joe went to the doctor because he broke his arm.	yes	no
3. Sue broke her arm, so she went to the doctor.	yes	no
4. Amy broke her arm; nevertheless, she didn't go to the doctor.	yes	no
5. Despite having a broken arm, Rick didn't go to the doctor.	yes	no
6. Jeff broke his arm; therefore, he went to the doctor.	yes	no

19-7 Showing Contrast (Unexpected Result)

All of these sentences have the same meaning. The idea of cold weather is contrasted with the idea of going swimming. Usually if the weather is cold, one does not go swimming, so going swimming in cold weather is an "unexpected result." It is surprising that the speaker went swimming in cold weather.

ADVERB CLAUSES	even though although though	 (a) Even though it was cold, I went swimming. (b) Although it was cold, I went swimming. (c) Though it was cold, I went swimming.* 	
CONJUNCTIONS	but anyway but still yet still	 (d) It was cold, <i>but</i> I went swimming (<i>anyway</i>). (e) It was cold, <i>but</i> I (<i>still</i>) went swimming. (f) It was cold, <i>yet</i> I (<i>still</i>) went swimming. 	
TRANSITIONS	nevertheless nonetheless however still	 (g) It was cold. <i>Nevertheless</i>, I went swimming. (h) It was cold; <i>nonetheless</i>, I went swimming. (i) It was cold. <i>However</i>, I (<i>still</i>) went swimming. 	
PREPOSITIONS	despite in spite of despite the fact that in spite of the fact that	 (j) I went swimming <i>despite</i> the cold weather. (k) I went swimming <i>in spite of</i> the cold weather. (l) I went swimming <i>despite the fact that</i> the weather was cold. (m) I went swimming <i>in spite of the fact that</i> the weather was cold. 	

* Another way to show contrast is to put though at the end of the sentence: It was cold. I went swimming, though. The meaning is similar to but (e.g., It was cold, but I went swimming.); however, though is softer. This usage is very common in spoken English.

EXERCISE 24 ► Looking at grammar. (Charts 19-3 and 19-7)

Complete the sentences with *inside* or *outside* to make logical statements.

- 1. It rained, but we had our wedding ______ anyway.
- 2. It rained, so we had our wedding _____.
- 3. It rained; nevertheless, we had our wedding _____.
- 4. Though it rained, we had our wedding _____.
- 5. Even though it rained, we had our wedding _____.
- 6. Although it rained, we had our wedding _____
- 7. Despite the fact that it rained, we had our wedding ______
- 8. It rained; therefore, we had our wedding ______.



416 CHAPTER 19

www.ieltstep.com

EXERCISE 25 Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-7)

Complete the sentences with was or wasn't to make logical statements.

- 1. Hans had worked a 24-hour shift; nevertheless, he ______ wide-awake.
- 2. Though he had worked a 24-hour shift, he ______ sleepy.
- 3. Even though he had worked a 24-hour shift, he ______ wide-awake.
- 4. Hans ______ wide-awake although he had worked a 24-hour shift.
- 5. He had worked a 24-hour shift, yet he _____ wide-awake.
- 6. Despite the fact that he had worked a 24-hour shift, Hans ______ sleepy.
- 7. In spite of working a 24-hour shift, Hans ______ wide-awake.

EXERCISE 26 Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-7)

Part I. Complete the sentences with *but, even though*, or *nevertheless*. Notice the use of punctuation and capitalization.

- 1. a. Bob ate a large dinner. _____, he is still hungry.
 - b. Bob ate a large dinner, ______ he is still hungry.
 - c. Bob is still hungry ______ he ate a large dinner.
- 2. a. I had a lot of studying to do, _____ I went to a movie anyway.
 - b. I had a lot of studying to do. _____, I went to a movie.
 - c. _____ I had a lot of studying to do, I went to a movie.
- 3. a. I finished all of my work ______ I was very sleepy.
 - b. I was very sleepy, ______ I finished all of my work anyway.
 - c. I was very sleepy. ______, I finished all of my work.
- Part II. Complete the sentences with yet, although, or however.
 - 4. a. I washed my hands. _____, they still looked dirty.
 - b. I washed my hands, ______ they still looked dirty.
 - c. _____ I washed my hands, they still looked dirty.
 - 5. a. Diana didn't know how to swim, ______ she jumped into the pool.
 - b. _____ Diana didn't know how to swim, she jumped into the pool.
 - c. Diana didn't know how to swim. _____, she jumped into the pool.

EXERCISE 27 Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-7)

Add commas, periods, and capital letters as necessary. Do not add, omit, or change any words.

- 1. a. Anna's father gave her some good advice nevertheless she did not follow it. \rightarrow Anna's father gave her some good advice. Nevertheless, she did not follow it.
 - b. Anna's father gave her some good advice though she didn't follow it.
 - c. Even though Anna's father gave her some good advice she didn't follow it.
 - d. Anna's father gave her some good advice she did not follow it however.

- 2. a. Thomas has been broke* for months I offered him some money he refused it.
 - b. Thomas refused the money although he has been broke for months.
 - c. Thomas has been broke for months nevertheless he refused the money that I offered hin
 - d. Thomas has been broke for months yet he still refused the money that I offered him.

EXERCISE 28 Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-7)

Work in pairs or small groups. Combine the sentences using the given words. Discuss correct punctuation. Use the negative if necessary to make a logical statement.

His grades were low. He was admitted to the university.

- 1. even though 3.
 - 3. yet ... still
- 5. despite

6. despite the fact that

- 2. but ... anyway
- 4. nonetheless
- EXERCISE 29 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 19-8)

Read the question and the answers. Which answers express "direct contrast," i.e., the idea that "this" is the opposite of "that"?

What is the difference between hurricanes and tornadoes?

- 1. Hurricanes develop over warm oceans while tornadoes form over land.
- 2. Hurricanes develop while they are traveling over warm ocean water.
- 3. Hurricanes develop over warm oceans, but tornadoes form over land.
- 4. Hurricanes develop over warm oceans; however, tornadoes form over land.
- 5. Hurricanes develop over warm oceans; on the other hand, tornadoes form over land.



a hurricane

19-8 Showing Direct Contrast

All of the sentences have the same meaning: "This" is the opposite of "that."

ADVERB CLAUSES	while	(a) Mary is rich, while John is poor.*
		(b) John is poor, while Mary is rich.
CONJUNCTIONS	but	(c) Mary is rich, but John is poor.
		(d) John is poor, but Mary is rich.
TRANSITIONS	however	(e) Mary is rich; however, John is poor.
		(f) John is poor; Mary is rich, however.
	on the other hand	(g) Mary is rich. John, on the other hand, is poor.
		(h) John is poor. Mary, on the other hand, is rich.

*Sometimes a comma precedes a *while*-clause that shows direct contrast. A comma helps clarify that *while* is being used to express contrast rather than time. The use of a comma in this instance is a stylistic choice by the writer.

*be broke = have no money

EXERCISE 30 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-8)

For each sentence, make two sentences with the same meaning using *however* and *on the other hand*. Punctuate carefully. Write your sentences on a separate piece of paper.

- 1. My grandfather is quite active, while my grandmother is often in bed.
- 2. While my grandmother has a sunny personality, my grandfather is more negative.
- 3. Elderly people in my country usually live with their children, but the elderly in the United States often live by themselves.

EXERCISE 31 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-8)

Complete the sentences with your own words.

Customs

- 1. In some countries, people greet each other by shaking hands, while in other countries ... people kiss one another on the cheek.
- 2. In the United States, people drive on the right-hand side of the road while people in ...
- 3. While in Japan people must take off their shoes before entering a house, in some countries ...
- 4. In some cultures, it is considered impolite to look directly at another person, while in others ...

EXERCISE 32 > Speaking or writing. (Chart 19-8)

Extroverts and Introverts

Part I. Read the information below about extroverts and introverts. Make several sentences with the words in the lists either orally or in writing using the words **but**, however, on the other hand, or while.

Examples:

 \rightarrow Extroverts like to talk more than listen, while introverts like to listen more than talk.

→ Introverts like to listen more than talk. Extroverts, however, like to talk more than listen.



Extroverts ...

like to be the center of attention. like to talk more than listen. enjoy meeting people. prefer being active. like to work in groups. don't always think before speaking. don't mind noise. like crowds. are energized by being with others.



Introverts ...

are uncomfortable being the center of attention. like to listen more than talk. are reserved when meeting people. like to spend time alone. don't like to work in groups. think carefully before speaking. prefer the quiet. avoid crowds. can find it tiring to spend time with others.

Part II. Are you an extrovert or introvert? Compare yourself to someone you know who is different from you. Make several sentences.

EXERCISE 33 ▶ Let's talk. (Chart 19-8)

Think of two different countries you are familiar with. How are they different? Use *while*, *however*, *on the other hand*, and *but*. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

1. size

- 5. economic system
- 2. population
- 6. educational system
 7. role of women
- food
 time of meals
- 8. language

EXERCISE 34 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 19-9)

Choose the logical verb for each sentence: can or can't.

SITUATION: Daniel needs coffee every morning. It wakes him up.

- 1. If Daniel drinks coffee in the morning, he can / can't wake up quickly.
- 2. Unless Daniel drinks coffee in the morning, he can / can't wake up quickly.
- 3. Daniel needs coffee every morning; otherwise, he can / can't wake up quickly.
- 4. Daniel needs coffee in the morning, or else he can / can't wake up quickly.

19-9 Expressing Conditions: Using Otherwise and Or (Else)

ADVERB CLAUSES	 (a) If I don't eat breakfast, I get hungry. (b) You'll be late if you don't hurry. (c) You'll get wet unless you take your umbrella. 	<i>If</i> and <i>unless</i> state conditions that produce certain results. (See Charts 17-6 and 17-10, pp. 382 and 387.)
TRANSITIONS	 (d) I always eat breakfast. <i>Otherwise</i>, I get hungry during class. (e) You'd better hurry. <i>Otherwise</i>, you'll be late. (f) Take your umbrella. <i>Otherwise</i>, you'll get wet. 	Otherwise expresses the idea "if the opposite is true, then there will be a certain result." In (d): otherwise = if I don't eat breakfast
CONJUNCTIONS	 (g) I always eat breakfast, <i>or (else)</i> I get hungry during class. (h) You'd better hurry, <i>or (else)</i> you'll be late. (i) Take your umbrella, <i>or (else)</i> you'll get wet. 	<i>Or else</i> and otherwise have the same meaning.

EXERCISE 35 Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-9)

Make sentences with the same meaning as the given sentence. Use otherwise.

Chores

- 1. If I don't clean the fridge, my roommate will start complaining about how messy I am.
 - → I need to / should / had better / have to / clean the fridge. Otherwise, my roommate will start complaining about how messy I am.
- 2. If I don't wash my clothes tonight, I won't have any clean clothes to wear tomorrow.
- 3. If we don't start cooking dinner now, it won't be ready in time.
- 4. I won't be able to sleep unless I change my sheets.

- y different? Use while, oups, or as a class.
- 9. cost of education
- 10. medical care
- 11. public transportation
- 12. dating customs





SIEL TS EEL TS EEL TS EEL TS

- 5. Only if you help me get ready for the party will I have one.*
- 6. Unless we clear the snow from the walkway, people could slip and fall.
- 7. I'll get everything done only if I begin as soon as I get home.
- 8. If you don't start soon, the weekend will be over!

EXERCISE 36 Looking at grammar. (Chapter 19 Review)

Using the two ideas of "to study" and "to pass or fail the exam," complete the sentences. Punctuate and capitalize as necessary.

1.	Because I did not study _, I failed the exam.
2.	I failed the exam because
3.	Although I studied
4.	I did not study therefore
5.	I did not study however
6.	I studied nevertheless
7.	Even though I did not study
8.	I did not study so
9.	Since I did not study
10.	If I study for the exam
11.	Unless I study for the exam
12.	I must study otherwise
13.	Even if I study
14.	I did not study consequently
15.	I did not study nonetheless
16.	I will probably fail the exam whether
17.	Only if I study
18.	I studied hard yet
19.	You'd better study or else

EXERCISE 37 > Listening. (Chapter 19 Review)

Listen to each sentence and choose the logical completion.

Example:You will hear:I was exhausted when I got home, but ...You will choose: (a)I didn't take a nap.b. I took a nap.

- 1. a. my back gets sore.b. my back doesn't get sore.
- 2. a. my old one works fine. b. my old one doesn't work.

^{*}Notice that the subject and verb in the main clause are inverted because the sentence begins with Only if. See Chart 17-11, p. 388.

- 3. a. I hurry.
- 4. a. I hurried.
- 5. a. our offices are hot.
- 6. a. the noise bothers me.
- 7. a. I fell asleep during dinner.

- b. I don't hurry.
- b. I didn't hurry.
- b. our offices aren't hot.
- b. the noise doesn't bother me.
- b. I didn't fall asleep during dinner.

EXERCISE 38 Game. (Chapter 19 Review)

Work in teams. Combine these two ideas using the words below the example. The time is now, so use present and future tenses. The team with the most correct sentences wins.

to go (or not to go) to the beach \ hot, cold, nice weather

Example: because

- → **Because** the weather is cold, we aren't going to go to the beach. → We're going to go to the beach **because** the weather is hot.
- 1. so ... that
- 2. so
- 3. nevertheless
- 4. despite
- 5. now that
- 6. once
- 7. although

- 8. because of
- 9. consequently 10. as soon as
- 11. such ... that
- 12. since
- 13. but ... anyway
- 14. unless

- 15. therefore
- 16. only if
- 17. nonetheless
- 18. in spite of
- 19. even if
- 20. yet ... still
- 21. whether ... or not



EXERCISE 39 Grammar, reading, and listening. (Chapter 19 Review)

Complete the lecture with the words in the box. Then listen and check your answers. One word is used two times.

however	if	therefore
so that	while	since

Why We Yawn

Have you ever noticed that when a person near you yawns, you may start yawning too? This is called contagious yawning. *Contagious* in this sense means that the behavior spreads: in the case of yawning, when one person yawns, it can cause others to do the same thing.



422 CHAPTER 19

There are various theories about why people yawn. One popular idea is that yawning brings more oxygen into the brain ______ people will wake up. Is that what you have thought? _______, in 2007, researchers at a university in New York came up with a new idea: yawning helps cool the brain. When people's brains are warm, they yawn more frequently; yawning brings cooler air into the body and, _______, cools the brain. This is important because cooler brains work better than warmer ones.

This may also help explain why yawning is contagious. People are more awake when their brains are cooler; _______, contagious yawning helps people be more alert. As people evolved, this was important in times of danger. ______ they yawned, they could have been $\frac{5}{5}$

 $_{6}$ it can be annoying to have a person yawn when you are talking, perhaps you can tell yourself that he or she actually wants to stay awake, not go to sleep.

EXERCISE 40 > Check your knowledge. (Chapter 19 Review)

Correct the errors

- 1. The hotel had a mistake on its website. The price was very low so that many people wanted rooms.
- 2. Due to medical care costs a lot in the U.S., people need to have insurance.
- 3. The dorm room I was assigned to has a broken heater, therefore, I have complained to the office.
- 4. Because Jamal's visa has expired, he waited too long to renew it.
- 5. Jenn had surprisingly low test scores. However, the college she chose didn't admit her.
- 6. Despite the weather is freezing today, I'm going to take a run in the park.
- 7. It was such a hard test no one finished on time.
- 8. We should leave now, otherwise, we will get stuck in traffic.
- 9. The electric bill was months overdue; nevertheless, the power company turned off the power to the home.
- 10. Please talk more quietly so that we could hear the speaker.
- 11. You should apply for a scholarship soon unless you don't want to miss the deadline.
- 12. Since you should change your password, many people know it.
- 13. My parents bought a house in our neighborhood so that they are going to be closer to their grandchildren.

EXERCISE 41 ▶ Reading, grammar, and writing. (Chapter 19)

Part I. Read the passage comparing optimists and pessimists.

Optimists vs. Pessimists

How do you see the glass in the picture? Is it half empty or half full? People who say it is half empty are called pessimists, while people who say it is half full are called optimists. In simple terms, optimists see the best in the world, while pessimists see the worst.

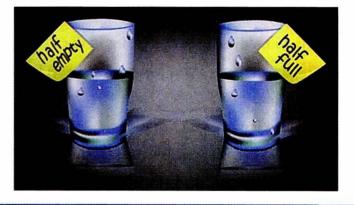
One of the clearest ways to see the differences between the two is to look at the way optimists and pessimists explain events. When something bad happens, optimists tend to see the event as a single occurrence that does not affect other areas of their lives.

For example, Sarah is an optimistic person. When she gets a low grade on a test, she will say something like this to herself: "Oh well, that was one test I didn't do well on. I wasn't feeling well that day. I have another test in a few weeks. I'll do better on that one."

Pessimists, on the other hand, will feel that an event is just one of a string of bad events that affects their lives, and somehow they are the cause of it. Let's take a look at Susan. She is a pessimist. When she gets a low grade on a test, she might say: "I failed again. I never do well on tests. I'm stupid. Why even try?" And when something does go well for Susan, she may say: "I was just lucky that time." She doesn't expect to do well again. While optimists don't see themselves as failures, pessimists do.

Research has shown that optimism can be a learned trait and that, despite their upbringing, people can train themselves to respond to events in more positive terms. For example, Paul has

a tendency to react negatively to events. The first thing he has to do is become conscious of that behavior. Once he identifies his reaction, he can reframe his thoughts in more positive terms, as Sarah did when she failed the test. As Paul begins to do more of this, he forms new patterns of responses, and over time these responses become more automatic. Gradually he can develop a more positive outlook on life.



Part II. Complete the sentences with information from the passage.

- 1. Optimists think positively about life, while ...
- 2. An optimist may do poorly on a test; nevertheless, ...
- 3. Things sometimes go well for a pessimist; however, ...
- 4. Pessimists see themselves as failures; on the other hand, ...
- 5. Optimists see the best in the world; therefore, ...
- 6. Optimists see the best in the world; however, ...
- 7. Although people may have been raised as pessimists, ...
- 8. Optimism can be a learned trait; consequently, ...
- 9. If a pessimist wants to change how he reacts, ...

424 CHAPTER 19

Part III. Are you an optimist, a pessimist, or a combination of both? Write about your personality, and provide some specific examples that support your ideas. Use connecting words from this chapter.

WRITING TIP

Reread the passage "Optimists vs. Pessimists." Note that there is a variety of longer and shorter sentences.

It is important to remember to vary your own sentence style to make your writing more interesting. Good writers use a combination of shorter and longer, more complex sentences. For example, you can use a transition word with a period to create a shorter sentence, but a semicolon to create a longer one.

While it is desirable to use sentence connectors, make sure that not all of your sentences become long and elaborate. Too many connecting words can make your writing seem repetitious. And remember that not all sentences need connecting words!

Part IV. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box a period, not a comma, between two complete sentences
- 2. \Box correct meanings of transition words
- 3. \Box correct use of adjective and nouns with *so* and *such*:
 - so + adjective + that such + noun + that
- 4. \Box use of nouns after *because of* and *due to*
- 5. \Box use of nouns after *despite* and *in spite of*
- 6. \Box correct punctuation (period or semicolon) with transition words
- 7. \Box sentence variety by using a combination of shorter and longer sentences
- 8. \Box correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)

Conditional Sentences and Wishes

PRETEST: What do I already know?

CHAPTER

Write "C" if a sentence has the correct verb forms and "I" for incorrect. Check your answers below. After you complete each chart listed, make any necessary corrections.

- 1. _____ If I had more money right now, I will lend you some. (20-1)
- 2. ____ If the lake freezes, neighborhood teens like to skate on it. (20-2)
- 3. ____ If the plane should take off late, we'll miss our connecting flight. (20-2)
- 4. ____ I would apply for a scholarship if I was you. (20-3)
- 5. ____ School would be easy for me if I have your memory. (20-3)
- 6. _____ If I had taken more math classes, I could have gotten a better job. (20-4)
- 7. ____ If we had been thinking, we would have picked up your package at the post office on our way home. (20-5)
- 8. _____ If our team had won the game last night, the town would be celebrating today. (20-6)
- 9. <u>Had the police known the reason for the decision, would it have made a difference?</u> (20-7)
- 10. ____ The subway was late. Otherwise, I am here an hour ago. (20-8)
- 11. ____ Lawrence wishes he had chosen a more interesting college major. (20-9)
- 12. ____ I wish you will stop complaining. (20-10)

Incorrect sentences: 1, 4, 5, 10, 12

EXERCISE 1 • Warm-up. (Chart 20-1)

Which sentence represents a real or true situation? Which sentence represents an unreal or impossible situation?

- 1. If I lived underwater, I would see colorful marine life every day.
- 2. If I am vacationing in the Caribbean, I like to explore coral reefs.



20-1 Overview of Basic Verb Forms Used in Conditional Sentences

Conditional sentences express the idea of *if* ..., *then* ... These sentences can talk about real situations – facts, regularly occurring events, etc. – and unreal situations – imaginary or impossible ones.

Situation	If-Clause	Result Clause	Examples
REAL IN THE PRESENT	simple present	simple form of the verb	If I have enough time, I watch TV every evening.
REAL IN THE FUTURE		will + simple form	If I have enough time, I will watch TV later on tonight.
UNREAL IN THE PRESENT / FUTURE	simple past	would + simple form	If I <i>had</i> enough time, I <i>would watch</i> TV now or later on.
UNREAL IN THE PAST	past perfect	would have + past participle	If I had had enough time, I would have watched TV yesterday.

EXERCISE 2 Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-1)

Write "R" next to the sentences that express a real condition and "U" next to the sentences that express an unreal condition.

- 1. _____ If I have time on weekends, I volunteer at an animal shelter.
- 2. ____ If I have time, I will volunteer next weekend.
- 3. _____ If I had time, I would volunteer next weekend.
- 4. _____ If I had had time, I would have volunteered last weekend.



EXERCISE 3 Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-1)

Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

would do will do would have done

- 1. Rita believes in hard work and wants her children to work hard. She always tells them, "If you work hard every day, you ______ well."
- 2. Scott is smart, but he doesn't work very hard. As a result, he is not good at his job. His co-workers often tell him, "If you worked hard every day, you ______ well."
- 3. Mark planned to study hard for a test yesterday, but some friends called, and he decided to go out with them. He didn't study at all, and he didn't do well on his test the next day. His teacher told him, "If you had studied yesterday, you ______ well on the test."

EXERCISE 4 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 20-2)

Which sentence expresses a habitual meaning? Which sentence or sentences express a future meaning

- 1. If the baby wakes up in the middle of the night, she'll cry.
- 2. If the baby wakes up in the middle of the night, she cries.
- 3. Should the baby wake up in the middle of the night, she'll cry.

20-2 Expressing Real Conditions in the Present or Future				
(b) (c) \ (d) \	If I <i>don't eat</i> breakfast, I always <i>get</i> hungry during class. If I <i>don't eat</i> breakfast tomorrow morning, I <i>will</i> <i>get</i> hungry during class. Water <i>freezes</i> if the temperature <i>reaches</i> 32°F/0°C. Water <i>will freeze</i> if the temperature <i>reaches</i> 32°F/0°C.	 In conditional sentences that express real or true, factual ideas in the present/future, the <i>simple present</i> (not the simple future) is used in the <i>if</i>-clause. The result clause has various possible verb forms. A result-clause verb can be: the <i>simple present</i>, to express a habitual activity or situation, as in (a). the <i>simple future</i>, to express a particular activity or situation in the future, as in (b). the <i>simple present</i> or the <i>simple future</i>, to express an established, predictable fact or general truth, as in (c) and (d). 		
	If it <i>rains</i> , we should stay home. If it <i>rains</i> , I <i>might decid</i> e to stay home. If it <i>rains</i> , we can't go. If it <i>rains</i> , we're going to stay home.	The result clause can also include <i>modals</i> and <i>phrasal modals</i> such as should , might , can , be going to , as in (e).*		
	If anyone <i>calls</i> , please <i>take</i> a message. If anyone <i>should call</i> , please take a message.	An imperative verb can be used in the result clause, as in (f). Sometimes should is used in an <i>if</i> -clause, as in (g). It indicates a little more uncertainty than the use of the simple present, but basically the meaning of examples (f) and (g) is the same.		

*See Chart 9-1, p. 162, for a list of modals and phrasal modals.

EXERCISE 5 Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-2)

Decide if each sentence expresses a habitual or future meaning.

1. a. If it rains, the streets get wet.	habitual	future
b. If it rains, the streets will get wet.	habitual	future
2. a. If it should rain, we'll take the bus	habitual	future
b. If it rains, we take the bus.	habitual	future
3. a. If the meetings run late, I leave early.	habitual	future
b. Should the meetings run late, I will leave early.	habitual	future

EXERCISE 6 Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-2)

Choose the correct verb for the result clauses. In some cases, both answers are correct.

- 1. If there is a bike race, the road is / will be closed.
- 2. If I find out the answer, I will let / let you know.
- 3. If you run up a hill, your heart beats / will beat fast.
- 4. If I have extra time, I tutor / am going to tutor students in math.



428 CHAPTER 20

- 5. If it should rain tomorrow, we might change / will change our plans.
- 6. If my cell phone battery goes dead, I will recharge / am recharging it.

EXERCISE 7 > Let's talk. (Chart 20-2)

Read the three superstitions. Do you agree? Then answer the questions with if to express other common superstitions. Work in pairs, groups, or as a class.

Superstitions

- If I cross my fingers, it will bring good luck.
- If I open an umbrella indoors, bad luck will "rain" down on me.
- If I have an itchy palm, I may get or lose money soon.
- 1. Friday the 13th is an unlucky day in many cultures. What may happen on Friday the 13th?
- 2. Many hotels don't have a 13th floor. Why do you think this is? What do people think will happen?
- 3. What happens if you walk under a ladder?
- 4. What happens if you find the end of a rainbow?
- 5. What happens if you see a black cat?
- 6. What happens if you step on a crack in the sidewalk?
- 7. What happens if you find a four-leaf clover?



lf + pronoun can be difficult to hear at the beginning of sentences because these words are generally unstressed. Additionally, *if* at the beginning of a sentence is often reduced to /f/. Listen to the sentences spoken in casual, relaxed English. Complete the sentences with the non-reduced forms of the words you hear.

Example: You will hear: If I hear anything, I'll tell you.

You will write: <u>If I hear</u> anything, I'll tell you.

1. _____ too fast, please tell me.

2. _____ married, everyone will be shocked.

- 3. _____OK, I'll ask for some advice.
- 4. _____ to quit, I hope he lets us know soon.
- 5. _____, we'll need to try something else.
- 6. _____harder, I'm sure she'll succeed.

7	_ the job, I'll call you right away.
---	--------------------------------------

EXERCISE 9 > Warm-up. (Chart 20-3)

Choose the correct completions.

- 1. If Tom were a teacher, he would teach law.
 - a. Tom is / isn't a teacher.
 - b. Tom teaches / doesn't teach law.
- 2. If he had enough money for tuition, he would be in graduate school.
 - a. He has / doesn't have enough money.
 - b. He is / isn't in graduate school.

20-3 Unreal (Contrary to Fact) in the Present or Future

 (a) If I <i>taught</i> this class, I <i>wouldn't give</i> tests. (b) If he <i>were</i> here right now, he <i>would help</i> us. (c) If I <i>were</i> you, I <i>would accept</i> their invitation. 	 In (a): Actually, I don't teach this class. In (b): Actually, he is not here right now. In (c): Actually, I am not you. NOTE: Were is used for both singular and plural subjects. Was (with I, he, she, it) is sometimes used in very informal speech: If I was you, I'd accept their invitation.
COMPARE: (d) If I had enough money, I <i>would buy</i> a car. (e) If I had enough money, I <i>could buy</i> a car.	 In (d): The speaker wants a car but doesn't have enough money. <i>Would</i> expresses desired or predictable results. In (e): The speaker is expressing one possible result. <i>could</i> = would be able to; <i>could</i> expresses possible options.

EXERCISE 10 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-2 and 20-3)

Decide if each sentence expresses a real or unreal idea.

1. a. If I had more money, I would buy a new car.	real	unreal
b. If I have enough money, I will buy a car	real	unreal
2. a. If the shirts are on sale, I will get a few.	real	unreal
b. If the shirt were on sale, I would get a few.	real	unreal
3. a. If you were a teacher, you could help me.	real	unreal
b. If you are a teacher, you can help me.	real	unreal

EXERCISE 11 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-3)

Choose the correct completions by looking at the pictures. Then make sentences with the given words.







1. Grandpa (is)/ isn't allergic to flowers.

<u>If Grandpa weren't allergic to flowers, he would bring Grandma flowers more often.</u> (if \ Grandpa \ be \ allergic to flowers \ he \ bring \ Grandma flowers more often)

2. Your roommates spend / don't spend a lot of time shopping.

(If $\ by \ spend \ so much time shopping \ by \ save \ a lot of money)$

3. The boy likes / doesn't like peas.

(If $\ boy \ boy$

EXERCISE 12 Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-2 and 20-3)

Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. a. If I have enough apples, I (*bake*) _______ an apple pie this afternoon.
 - b. If I had enough apples, I (bake) <u>would bake / could bake</u> an apple pie.
- 2. a. I will fix your bike if I (*have*) ______ the right screwdriver.
 - b. I would fix your bike if I (*have*) ______ the right screwdriver.
- 3. a. I (go) ______ to a movie tonight if I don't have any homework to do.
 - b. I (go) ______ to a movie tonight if I didn't have any homework to do.
- 4. a. I turn off my phone when I (be) ______ in meetings.
 - b. I would turn on my phone if I (be, not) ______ in a meeting right now.

EXERCISE 13 > Let's talk: interview. (Chart 20-3)

Interview your classmates. Share some of the most interesting answers with the class.

- 1. If you had the choice of any job in the world, what would it be?
- 2. If someone famous invited you to dinner, who would you want it to be?
- 3. If you were in an accident and had to lose one of your five senses*, which one would it be?
- 4. If you saw someone shoplift something at a jewelry store, what would you do?
- 5. If you were given a million dollars, what would you do with it?
- 6. If you knew you only had a week to live, what would you do?
- 7. If someone were following you on the street at night, what would you do?
- 8. If you found out that you were going to be the parent of septuplets**, what would you do?
- 9. If you were lost on a desert island with only three items, what three items would they be?
- 10. If you spoke five languages fluently, which ones would they be?

EXERCISE 14 Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-2 and 20-3)

Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

Science and Nature

- 1. Oil floats on water. If you pour oil on water, it (float) ______.
- 2. If there (*be*) ______ no trees on earth, there (*be*, *not*) ______

_____ enough oxygen. Life as we know it (exist, not) ______

- 3. If you boil water, it (*disappear*) ______ into the atmosphere as vapor.
- 4. Many animals hibernate in the winter. One reason is because of food. If animals (hibernate, not)

_____, they (need) ______ to find food at a

time when food is scarce.

^{*}five senses = sight, hearing, feel, touch, smell

^{**}septuplets = seven babies born at the same time

and opposable thumbs, the machines we use in everyday life (have to)

_____ be constructed very differently. We

(be, not) ______ able to turn knobs, push small

buttons, or hold tools and utensils securely.

EXERCISE 15 > Warm-up. (Chart 20-4)

Choose the correct time word.

1. If Ann were available, she would help us.nowyesterday2. If Ann had been available, she would have helped us.nowyesterday

20-4 Unreal (Contrary to Fact) in the Past (a) If you had told me about the problem, I would In (a): Actually, you did not tell me about it. have helped you. In (b): Actually, they did not study. Therefore, they failed the (b) If they had studied, they would have passed the exam. exam. In (c): Actually, I slipped on the stairs. I broke my arm. (c) If I hadn't slipped on the stairs, I wouldn't have NOTE: The auxiliary verbs are often reduced in speech. "If you'd broken my arm. told me, I would've helped you (or I-duv helped you)."* COMPARE: In (d): would expresses a desired or predictable result. (d) If I had had enough money, I would have In (e): could expresses a possible option. bought a car. could have bought = would have been able to buy (e) If I had had enough money, I could have bought a car.

*In casual, informal speech, some native speakers sometimes use *would have* in an *if*-clause: If you would've told me about the problem, I would've helped you. This verb form usage is generally considered to be grammatically incorrect in standard English, but it occurs fairly commonly.

EXERCISE 16 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-4)

Write the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Then complete the sentence with a phrase from the right.

- If Reya had (go) ______ to the hospital, she <u>d</u>.
- If Tim hadn't (*lose*) _____ his passport, he _____.
- If you hadn't (*stay*) _____ out all night, you _____.
- 4. If you had (*help*) ______ us move, we _____.
- 5. If the waiter had (*be*) ______ friendlier, I _____.
- 6. If we had (*have*) _____ chains in the car, we ____.

- a. wouldn't have slept all day
- b. would have left a bigger tip
- c. would have finished already
- d. would have gotten better more quickly
- e. wouldn't have gotten stuck in the snow
- f. wouldn't have missed the flight home



tire chains



EXERCISE 17 • Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-4)

Complete the sentences with past conditionals.

Getting Lost

- 1. If the map on my phone (be, not) <u>hadn't been</u> wrong, we (get, not) <u>wou ldrit</u> <u>have gotten</u> lost.
- 2. If you (follow) _____ my directions, we (spend, not) _____

_____ the last two hours driving around.

3. If I (be, not) ______ so tired, I (pay) _____

closer attention.

- 4. If we (rent) ______ a car with GPS, we (find) ______
- ______ the hotel by now.
- 5. If you (*listen*) ______ to me, we (*drive*, *not*) ______
- _____ around in circles.
- 6. If we (*take*) ______ the train, we (*be*) _____

there an hour ago.

EXERCISE 18 > Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 20-4)

Work with a partner. Take turns making statements with If I had known.

Example: I didn't know it was your birthday. If I had known it was your birthday, I would have brought you a gift.

Partner A	PARTNER B
1. I didn't know your dad was in the hospital.	1. I didn't know you were sick for a month.
2. I didn't know you broke your arm and needed help.	2. I didn't know you were broke and couldn't pay your bills.
3. I didn't know you had a graduation party and invited me.	3. I didn't know someone stole your bike and you had trouble getting to school.
4. I didn't know you were allergic to nuts. I put them in the salad.	4. I didn't know you had free tickets to the soccer game and you wanted me to go.

EXERCISE 19 ► Listening. (Chart 20-4)

1.

In conditional sentences, /h/ is often dropped in the auxiliary verbs *have* and *had*. *Would have* can sound like "would-a" or "would-uv." Listen to the sentences spoken in casual, relaxed English. Complete the sentences with the non-reduced forms of the words you hear.

SITUATION: Jon told several good friends a lie, and they recently found out. Here are their reactions:

Example: You will hear: If he had been truthful, he wouldn't have lost my trust.

You will write: _______If he had been ______ truthful, _____he wouldn't have lost ______ my trust.

______ the truth sooner, ______ differently.

2. ______ him, ______ so foolish.

Conditional Sentences and Wishes 433

		IELTS
3	me what a great guy Jon was,	www.ietstep.com
	him so easily.	P
4	another person,	so shocked.
5	,	more respect for him.

EXERCISE 20 > Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-3 and 20-4)

Answer the questions.

- 1. If I had gone to the movie with you, I would have enjoyed it.
 - a. Did I go with you? ______
 - b. Did I enjoy the movie? ______
 - c. Is the meaning present or past? _____past____
- 2. If I had brought my ID, I could have gotten a student discount.
 - a. Did I bring my ID? _____
 - b. Did I get a discount? _____
 - c. Is the meaning present or past? _____
- 3. If Dad had his ID, he would get a senior citizen discount.
 - a. Does he have his ID? _____
 - b. Is he going to get a discount? _____
 - c. Is the meaning present or past? _____
- 4. If I felt better, I would go to work.
 - a. Do I feel better? _____
 - b. Am I going to work? _____
 - c. Is the meaning present or past? _____
- 5. If I didn't have any friends, I would be lonely.
 - a. Am I lonely? _____
 - b. Do I have friends? _____
 - c. Is the meaning present or past? _____
- 6. Jackson would have made it to class on time this morning if the bus hadn't been late.
 - a. Was the bus late? _____
 - b. Did Jackson make it to class on time? _____
 - c. Is the meaning present or past? _____
- 7. If I had more time, I would stay longer and talk.
 - a. Do I have more time? _____
 - b. Will I stay longer? _____
 - c. Is the meaning present or past? ______

434 CHAPTER 20

EXERCISE 21 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-4)

<u>Underline</u> the clause that expresses a condition. Write "R" if the condition is a real condition. Write "U" if the condition is unreal. Then decide if the sentence refers to present/future or past time.

1. a. \underline{R} If the weather is warm, we'll eat outdoors.	present/future	past
b. \underline{U} If the weather were warm, we would eat outdoors.	present/future	past
c If the weather had been warm, we would have eaten outdoors.	present/future	past
2. a If I had more money, I would work less.	present/future	past
b If I had had more money, I would have worked less.	present/future	past
3. a If I don't have to work, I can visit you.	present/future	past
b If I hadn't had to work, I could have visited you.	present/future	past
c If I didn't have to work, I could visit you.	present/future	past

EXERCISE 22 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-4)

Draw a line to each correct completion.

 a. If I have enough money, b. If I had enough money, c. If I had had enough money, 	I would have bought it. I will buy it. I would buy it.
2. a. If they arrive early,b. If they arrived early,c. If they had arrived early,	they would call. they would have called. they will call.
3. a. If he had needed help,b. If he needs help,c. If he needed help,	he will ask. he would have asked. he would ask.
4. a. I would buy the coatb. I would have bought the coatc. I will buy the coat	if it had fit. if it fit. if it fits.
5. a. We will stop byb. We would have stopped byc. We would stop by	if we had extra time. if we had had extra time. if we have extra time.

EXERCISE 23 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-4)

Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. a. If I (*have*) ______ time, I will go with you.
 - b. If I (*have*) ______ time, I would go with you.
 - c. If I (*have*) ______ time, I would have gone with you.
- 2. a. If the weather were nice today, we (go) ______ to the zoo.
 - b. If the weather had been nice yesterday, we (go) ______ to the zoo.
 - c. If the weather is nice tomorrow, we (go) ______ to the zoo.

3. a. 1	Linda wasn't at home yesterday. If she (<i>be</i>) at home yesterday, E
]	I (visit) her.
b.]	If Sally (be) at home tomorrow, I (visit) her.
	Jim isn't home right now. If he (be) at home right now, I (visit) him.
	ISE 24 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-4) te the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.
onver	resations
1. A:	You should tell your father exactly what happened. If I (be)
B:	you, I (<i>tell</i>) him the truth as soon as possible. You're right. I'll do it.
2. A:	If I (have) my camera with me yesterday, I
	(take) a picture of Alex standing on his head.
B:	He's good at yoga. He can do a lot of different poses.
3. A:	I'm almost ready to plant my garden. I have a lot of seeds. Maybe
	I have more than I need. If I (have) more seeds than I need, I
	(give) some to my neighbor.
B:	She would really appreciate it.
4. A:	George has only two pairs of socks. If he (have) more than two pairs of
	socks, he (have to, not) wash his socks so often.
B:	I'm not sure that he washes them that often!
5 A·	Since I broke my foot, I haven't been able to clean my apartment.
	Why didn't you say something? I (come) over and
D.	(<i>help</i>) you if you (<i>tell</i>) me.
A٠	I know you (come) right away if I (call)
	you, but I didn't want to bother you.
B:	It wouldn't have been a bother. What are friends for?
0. A:	It's been a long drought. It hasn't rained for over a month. If it (rain, not)
p.	(<i>die</i>), many people (<i>go</i>) hungry this coming winter. I'm very worried about our water supply.
	Shhh! Your father is taking a nap. Uh-oh. You woke him up.
B:	Sorry. If I (realize) he was sleeping, I (make, not)

IELTS
8. A: What (we, use) to look at ourselves when we comb our hair if
we (have, not) mirrors?
B: It would be very strange to live without mirrors.
EXERCISE 25 \blacktriangleright Listening. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-4) Listen to the statements and answer the questions.
Example: You will hear: If Bob had asked me to keep the news about his marriage a secret, I wouldn't have told anybody. I know how to keep a secret.
You will answer: a. Did I tell anybody the news? <u>yes</u>
b. Did Bob ask me to keep it a secret? <u>no</u>
1. a. Am I going to go to the art museum?
b. Do I have enough time?
2. a. Did Mrs. Jones receive immediate medical attention?
b. Did she die?
3. a. Am I a carpenter?
b. Do I want to build my own house?
c. Am I going to build my own house?
4. a. Was the hotel built to withstand an earthquake?
b. Did the hotel collapse?
EXERCISE 26 Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-4) <i>If</i> -clauses can be shortened by the use of an auxiliary verb. Study the examples and then complete the sentences.
Examples: Ella isn't patient, but if she were , she would be a better teacher. I don't live in the city, but if I did , I wouldn't need to take the subway to work. I didn't go to bed early last night, but if I had , I would have gotten up earlier.
1. I don't have a pen, but if I <u>did</u> , I would lend it to you.
2. He is busy right now, but if he <u>weren't</u> , he would help us.
3. I didn't vote in the election, but if I <u>had</u> , I would have voted for Senator Todd.
4. I don't have enough money, but if I, I would buy that book.
5. The weather is cold today, but if it, I'd go swimming.
6. She didn't come, but if she, she would have met my brother.
7. Helium is lighter than air. If it, a helium
blimp wouldn't float upward.
8. I'm not a good cook, but if I, I would
make all of my own meals.
9. He didn't go to a doctor, but if he, the cut
on his hand wouldn't have gotten infected.

Conditional Sentences and Wishes 437

10. I always pay my bills. If I _____, I'd get in a lot of trouble.

11. I called my husband to tell him I would be late. If I _____, he would have gotten worried about me.

EXERCISE 27 ▶ Warm-up. (Chart 20-5)

Read the statements and answer the questions.

OLGA: If I hadn't been painting my apartment, I would have gone to a movie with my friends. YOKO: If I weren't painting my apartment, I would go to a movie with my friends.



- 1. Who is busy painting her apartment now?
- 2. Who was busy painting her apartment earlier?

20-5 Using Progressive Verb Forms in Conditional Sentences Notice the use of progressive verb forms in these examples. Even in conditional sentences, progressive verb forms are used in progressive situations. (a) Real Situation: It is raining right now, so I will not go for a walk. (b) Conditional Statement: If it were not raining right now, I would go for a walk. (c) Real Situation: It was raining yesterday afternoon, so I did not go for a walk. (d) Conditional Statement: If it had not been raining, I would have gone for a walk.

EXERCISE 28 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-5)

Make conditional sentences.

- 1. a. I'm working. If I <u>werten't</u> working, I would be at home.
 - b. I'm not working. If I ______ working, I wouldn't be at home.
- a. Fortunately, the copy machine was working. If it ______ working, we wouldn't have finished our presentation.
 - b. The copy machine wasn't working. If it ______ working, we

finished our presentation.

3. a. The elevators weren't working. If they ______ working, I

_____ walked up to the top floor.

b. The elevators were working. If they ______ working, I

_____ walked up to the top floor.

EXERCISE 29 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-5)

Change the statements to conditional sentences.

- 1. You weren't listening, so you didn't understand the directions. But ... \rightarrow if you had been listening, you would have understood the directions.
- 2. You aren't wearing a coat, so you're cold. But ...
- 3. Joe got a ticket because he was driving too fast. But ...
- 4. I'm enjoying myself, so I won't leave. But ...
- 5. You were sleeping, so I didn't tell you the news as soon as I heard it. But ...

EXERCISE 30 Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-5)

Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Make conditional statements.

1. It's snowing. We can't go to the park.

If it (snow) ______, we could go to the park.

- It wasn't snowing. We went to the park.
 If it (snow) <u>had been snowing</u>, we wouldn't have gone to the park.
- 3. Elena just got out of the shower. She's drying her hair with a hair dryer, so she can't hear the doorbell.

If Elena (*dry*) ______ her hair, she could hear the doorbell.

4. Elena was waiting for a package to come, but as it happened, she was drying her hair when it arrived, and she couldn't hear the doorbell.

If Elena (*dry*) ______ her hair when the package arrived, she could have heard the doorbell.

- Max is at a party at his friend's apartment, but he's not having any fun. He wants to leave. Max wouldn't want to leave early if he (*have*) _____ fun.
- 6. My sister was reading a text message while she was driving and wasn't paying enough attention to traffic. When the car in front of her stopped, she rear-ended it.
 If my sister (*read*) ______ a text message, she wouldn't have rear-ended the car in front of her.
- Simon is vacuuming the car. When he vacuums, he can't hear his phone.

If Simon (*vacuum*) ______ the car, he could hear his phone ring.





Conditional Sentences and Wishes 439

EXERCISE 31 > Warm-up. (Chart 20-6)

Choose the correct time words.

- 1. If I had done my homework now / earlier, I would know the answers now / earlier.
- 2. Anita wouldn't be sick now / earlier if she had followed the doctor's orders now / earlier.

20-6 Using "Mixed Time" in Conditional Sentences

Frequently the time in the *if*-clause and the time in the result clause are different: one clause may be in the present and the other in the past. Notice that past and present times are mixed in these sentences.

		past	present	
(a)	Real Situation:		eral hours ago, so I am hungry now.	
		past	present	
(b)	Conditional Statement:	If I had eaten breakfast sev	reral hours ago, I would not be hungry	now.
		present	past	
(c)	Real Situation:	He is not a good student.	He did not study for the test yesterday	
		present	past	
(d)	Conditional Statement:	If he were a good student,	he would have studied for the test yes	terday.

EXERCISE 32 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-6)

Choose the correct time frames for each sentence.

- 1. If I hadn't eaten so much at dinner now / earlier, I would feel better now / earlier.
- 2. Lynn would be in Egypt now / earlier if she had renewed her passport now / earlier.
- 3. Professor Azeri would be happier now / earlier in the semester if she had been given a different teaching assignment now / earlier in the semester.
- 4. Had you told me the truth now / in the past, I would trust you more now / in the past.
- 5. If you were a more organized person now / yesterday, you wouldn't have misplaced your keys, glasses, and phone now / an hour ago.
- 6. If my mom weren't in bed with the flu today / yesterday, she would have come shopping with us now / this morning.
- 7. You wouldn't be paying a fine right now / yesterday if you had returned the library book now / yesterday.

EXERCISE 33 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-6)

Put one line under the present clause. Put two lines under the past clause. Then restate the sentences as conditional statements.

1. I'm hungry now because I didn't eat dinner earlier.

→ If I'd eaten dinner earlier, I wouldn't be hungry now.

- 2. The room is full of flies because you left the door open.
- 3. You are tired this morning because you didn't go to bed at a reasonable hour last night.
- 4. I didn't finish my report yesterday, so I can't begin a new project today.
- 5. I'm not you, so I didn't tell him the truth.
- 6. I don't know anything about plumbing, so I didn't fix the leak in the sink myself.

440 CHAPTER 20

EXERCISE 34 \blacktriangleright Reading and grammar. (Chart 20-4 \rightarrow 20-6)

Read the passage. Then choose the correct completions in the sentences that follow.

Why Did Dinosaurs Become Extinct?

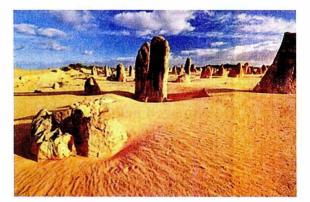
There are several scientific theories as to why dinosaurs became extinct. One theory has to do with asteroids. Asteroids are rocky objects that orbit the sun. According to this theory, an asteroid collided with the earth millions of years ago, causing disastrous changes in the earth's climate, such as tsunamis, high winds, and dust in the atmosphere that blocked the sun. As a result, dinosaurs could no longer survive. Some scientists believe that if this asteroid had not collided with the earth, dinosaurs would not have become extinct.

- 1. According to one theory, if an asteroid had collided / hadn't collided with the earth, several disastrous changes in the earth's climate would not have taken place.
- 2. If an asteroid had hit / hadn't hit the earth, there wouldn't have been catastrophic changes in the earth's climate.
- 3. If dust had blocked / hadn't blocked the sun, the earth would have been warmer.
- 4. If an asteroid had collided / hadn't collided with the earth, dinosaurs might still exist.
- 5. If dinosaurs had survived / hadn't survived, the earth would be a very different place.

EXERCISE 35 > Warm-up. (Chart 20-7)

Check (\checkmark) <u>all</u> the correct sentences.

- 1. a. _____ Were I more adventurous, I would hike in the Australian Outback.
 - b. _____ If I were more adventurous, I would hike in the Australian Outback.
- 2. a. _____ If my friends had known about my trip, they would have told me to go there.
 - b. _____ Had my friends known about my trip, they would have told me to go there.
- 3. a. _____ Should anyone ask, I'll be gone for another month.



Pinnacles Desert, Australian Outback

b. _____ If anyone should ask, I'll be gone for another month.

20-7 Omitting If

ACCALLED AND A DECK AND A DECK AND A DECK AND A DECK		
 (a) Were I you, I wouldn't do that. (b) Had I known, I would have told you. (c) Should anyone call, please take a message. 	With were, had (past perfect), and should, sometimes if is omitted, and the subject and verb are inverted. In (a): Were I you = if I were you In (b): Had I known = if I had known In (c): Should anyone call = if anyone should call	

Conditional Sentences and Wishes 441

EXERCISE 36 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-7)

Make sentences with the same meaning by omitting *if*.

FYI (For Your Information)

- If you should need more money, I'll lend it to you.
 → Should you need more money, I'll lend it to you.
- 2. If I were you, I would let someone know where you'll be.
- 3. If I were your teacher, I would insist you do more careful work.
- 4. If I should change my mind, I'll let you know.
- 5. She would have gotten the job if she had been better prepared.
- 6. It's just my opinion, but I think your boss is awful. If I had a choice, I would look for another job.
- 7. I'll be out of the office until June 12th. If you should need to reach me, I'll be at our company headquarters in Seoul.
- 8. If I had known what would happen, I would have done things differently.

EXERCISE 37 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-3 \rightarrow 20-7)

Work with a partner. Choose <u>all</u> the sentences that best express the meaning of the given sentence.

- 1. If I hadn't been driving so fast, I wouldn't have gotten a speeding ticket.
 - a. I get a lot of speeding tickets.
 - (b.) I was driving too fast.
 - c. I like to drive fast.
 - d. I was given a ticket.
- 2. Should you need help, I'll be in the room next door.
 - a. I'll be helping others in the room.
 - b. I'm available to help you.
 - c. You shouldn't ask me for help.
 - d. Do you need help from me?
- 3. Had you told us sooner, we could have helped you.
 - a. We're glad you told us.
 - b. We were happy that we helped you.
 - c. We needed to know earlier.
 - d. We didn't help you.
- 4. If there had been a faster way to get to the theater, I would have taken it.
 - a. I took the fastest way to the theater.
 - b. I didn't take the fastest way.
 - c. The theater was too far away.
 - d. I took several different routes.

- 5. Should you have questions, give me a call on my cell.
 - a. I'm available by cell phone.
 - b. Did you have questions?
 - c. Call me soon.
 - d. Call me if you have questions.
- 6. Had anyone warned us about the situation, we would have stayed home.
 - a. We stayed home.
 - b. We didn't stay home.
 - c. No one warned us.
 - d. Someone warned us.
- 7. Were we rich, we would live in a house overlooking the ocean.
 - a. Are we rich?
 - b. Rich people live in houses overlooking the ocean.
 - c. We aren't rich.
 - d. We don't live in a house overlooking the ocean.

EXERCISE 38 ► Warm-up. (Chart 20-8)

Read the paragraph. Check (\checkmark) the sentences that are true.

One night a fire started in Janet's apartment. A blanket on the sofa got too close to an electric heater. Janet was in a deep sleep and wasn't aware of the fire. Fortunately, her neighbors saw smoke coming out of the window and threw rocks at her bedroom window to wake her up. Janet was very grateful that she hadn't been killed or injured in the fire.



- 1. _____ Janet would have kept sleeping, but the neighbors woke her up.
- 2. _____ Janet would have awakened without her neighbors' help.
- 3. _____ Janet was awakened by her neighbors; otherwise, she wouldn't have woken up.

20-8 Implied Conditions	
 (a) I would have gone with you, but I had to study. (b) I never would have succeeded without your help. 	Often the <i>if</i> -clause is implied, not stated. Conditional verbs are still used in the result clause. In (a): the implied condition = <i>if I hadn't had to study</i> In (b): the implied condition = <i>if you hadn't helped me</i>
(c) She ran; otherwise, she would have missed her bus.	Conditional verbs are frequently used following otherwise . In (c), the implied <i>if</i> -clause = <i>if she had not run</i>

EXERCISE 39 ▶ Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-8)

Identify the implied conditions by making sentences using *if*-clauses.

Thank goodness!

- 1. My phone would have died, but Gina had a charger. \rightarrow My phone would have died if Gina hadn't had a charger.
- I couldn't have paid my school tuition without your loan.
 → I couldn't have paid my school tuition if you hadn't loaned me money.
- 3. The fire would have spread quickly, but the fire trucks weren't far away.
- 4. I stepped on the brakes. Otherwise, I would have hit the little girl on the bike.
- 5. I couldn't have finished my project on time without your help.
- 6. My noisy party guests quieted down. Otherwise, the neighbors would have called the police.
- 7. I would have missed my flight, but my friend called and woke me up.

EXERCISE 40 ► Listening. (Chart 20-8)

Choose the statement that is true for each situation. In some cases both answers are correct.

Example: You will hear: I canceled your dentist appointment for Tuesday. Otherwise, you would have had two appointments in one day.

You will choose: a. I thought you needed two appointments. (b) I didn't think you wanted two appointments.

- a. If I had had your number, I would have called.
 b. I didn't have your number; otherwise, I would have called.
- 2. a. If my parents hadn't helped me, I wouldn't have gone to college.b. If I hadn't gone to college, my parents wouldn't have helped me.

	* * S
3.	 a. I picked up your clothes. b. I wasn't able to pick up your clothes.
4.	a. If someone had told us about the party, we would have come.b. We came to the party even though you didn't tell us about it.
5.	a. If I'd had your advice, I would have known what to do. b. Because of your advice, I knew what to do.
	RCISE 41 \blacktriangleright Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-8) plete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Some of the verbs are passive.
AW	alk Around Town
1.	If I could speak better Japanese, I (try) to have a conversation
	with the group of people over there.
2.	See that apartment building? We are going to move into it June 1st if it (finish)
	by then.
3.	The rent was very reasonable. Otherwise, I (try) to find an
	apartment that was already finished.
4.	Thanks for waiting for me. I (be) here sooner, but I had car trouble.
5.	It's too bad that Nadia can't join us. If she (work, not) all
	the time, we would see her more often.
6.	Had I known we were going to walk so far, I (wear) more
	comfortable shoes.
7.	A: It's so hot out. It feels suffocating.
	B: I know. If there (be) only a breeze, it (be, not)
	quite so bad.
8.	A: What would you be doing right now if you (be, not) here?
	B: I (<i>pay</i>) bills.
9.	If I (turn on, not) my phone just before you called, I would have
	missed this chance to be with you.
10.	I can't remember if your birthday is this week or next week. Sorry — I have such a bad memory that
	I (forget) my head if it (be, not)
	attached to my body.
11.	I try to walk every day. A day without exercise (<i>be</i>)
	unthinkable for me.
12.	A: Want to ride the Ferris wheel?
	B: No way! I have a fear of heights. I (ride, not)
	it if you paid me a
	million dollars!

444	CHAPTER	20
-----	---------	----

EXERCISE 42 \blacktriangleright Let's talk. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-8)

Explain what you would do in these circumstances. Work in pairs or small groups.

Suppose ...

Example:

SPEAKER A (book open): Suppose you find a wallet with money in it in a classroom. What would you do?

SPEAKER B (book closed): I would turn it in to the lost-and-found office.

- 1. You are at a party. A man starts talking to you, but he is speaking so fast that you can't catch what he is saying. What would you do?
- 2. Ricardo went to a friend's house for dinner. His friend served a dish that he can't stand/doesn't like at all. What if you were Ricardo?
- 3. Suppose you went to a cash machine. The amount you got was double what you asked for. What would you do?
- 4. John was cheating during an exam. Suppose you were the teacher and you saw him. What would you have done?
- 5. Suppose there were a fire in this building right now. What would you do?
- 6. Suppose there were a fire in your room or apartment or house. You had time to save only one thing. What would you save?
- 7. Imagine that one night you were driving your car down a deserted street. You were all alone. In an attempt to avoid a dog in the road, you swerved and hit a parked car. No one saw you. What would you do?

EXERCISE 43 ► Warm-up. (Chart 20-9)

Which sentences are true for you? What do you notice about the words in blue?

1. I wish I were someplace else right now.yes no2. I wish I had learned English when I was a child.yes no

20-9 Wishes About the Present and Past

Wish is used when the speaker wants reality to be different, to be exactly the opposite, but it isn't.

	"True" Statement	Verb Form Following Wish	Wish can be followed by a noun
A WISH ABOUT THE PRESENT	 (a) I <i>don't know</i> French. (b) It <i>is raining</i> right now. (c) I <i>can't speak</i> Japanese. 	I wish (that) I knew French. I wish it weren't raining right now. I wish I could speak Japanese.	clause (see Chart 12-5, p. 257). Past verb forms, similar to those in conditional sentences, are used in the noun clause. To make a wish about the present, a past verb form is used, as in (a)–(c).
A WISH ABOUT THE PAST	(d) John <i>didn't come</i>.(e) Mary <i>couldn't come</i>.	I wish John had come.* I wish Mary could have come.	In (d), the past perfect (<i>had come</i>) is used to make a wish about the past.
. ,	d come. (It's not possible. I ca come. (It's a possibility. Mayb		Note the difference between <i>wish</i> and <i>hope</i> . <i>Wish</i> is used for unreal, contrary-to-fact situations. <i>Hope</i> is used for real or possible situations.

* You may hear I wish Josh would have come. This is incorrect in formal English.

EXERCISE 44 ► Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-9)

Complete the sentences with an appropriate verb form. You may need to add not.

- 1. Our classroom doesn't have any windows. I wish our classroom <u>had</u> windows.
- 2. The sun isn't shining. I wish the sun _____ right now.
- 3. I didn't go shopping. I wish I ______ shopping.
- 4. I don't know how to dance. I wish I _____ how to dance.
- 5. It's cold today. I'm not wearing a coat. I wish I ______ a coat.
- 6. I don't have enough money to buy that book. I wish I ______ enough money.
- 7. You can't meet my parents. I wish you ______ them, but they're out of town.
- 8. Khalid didn't come to the meeting. I wish he ______ to the meeting.
- 9. I'm not lying on a sunny beach. I wish I ______ on a sunny beach.
- 10. Ingrid forgot to get Ernesto's new phone number. She wishes she _____
 - _____ to get his phone number.
- 11. I didn't eat breakfast before I came to class. I wasn't hungry, but now I am. I wish I
 ______ breakfast.
- Pedro stayed up really late last night. Today he's having trouble staying awake at work.
 He wishes he _______ stayed up really late last night.

EXERCISE 45 > Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-9)

Complete the sentences with an appropriate auxiliary verb.

- 1. I'm not at home, but I wish I ______ were
- 2. I don't know her, but I wish I ______ did_____.
- 3. I can't sing well, but I wish I ______.
- 4. I didn't go, but I wish I <u>had</u>.
- 5. I don't have a bike, but I wish I _____.
- 6. I didn't read that book, but I wish I _____
- 7. I want to go, but I can't. I wish I _____
- 8. The city won't add more parks, but I wish it _____
- 9. He isn't old enough to drive a car, but he wishes he _____.
- 10. They didn't go to the movie, but they wish they _____.
- 11. I don't have a driver's license, but I wish I _____.
- 12. I'm not living by myself, but I wish I _____.
- 13. I have roommates, but I wish I _____.
- 14. You can't come with us, but I wish you _____.
- 15. He didn't buy a ticket to the game, but he wishes he _____.





EXERCISE 46 Reading and grammar. (Charts $20-1 \rightarrow 20-9$)

Part I. Read the blog entry by author Stacy Hagen.



Do you know these words? - wander - brain scan - nap

- pop into

If you were trying to write a research paper for a class and couldn't come up with any ideas, what would you do? Would you keep working away or would you stop for a while? Interestingly, research points to stopping so that your mind can wander. Instead of continuing to focus on a task, the best thing to do is to leave the task for a while and do something else that frees up your thinking.

Surprisingly, if we stop concentrating on something, we actually become more creative. Researchers have found by looking at brain scans that our minds are very active during the daydreaming stage. By not focusing on a problem, we are able to look at it in new ways when we come back to it. As our minds wander, they often find the solution.

The company 3M has known this for decades. Since 1948, they have had the 15% rule: 15% of employees' time can be spent on a hobby or project of their choice. On top of that, they are encouraged to take walks, breaks, naps — whatever their minds need to help unlock their creativity.

A Stanford University study found that walking outdoors increased creativity by an average of 60%. I decided to give this a try and was amazed at how quickly I became "unstuck." Possibilities and answers really did pop into my head. To be honest, I was surprised at how effective this was. And, it's not just walking that has helped. Sometimes all I need to do is leave my computer and start another task that lets me daydream — something as simple as getting a snack.

I wish I had known this during my college days. I'm sure it would have helped me be a more efficient and productive student. I certainly know I would have been calmer and more relaxed when I got stuck.

Part II. Identify the time frame of the ideas in the phrases (*now* or *past*). Decide if they express real or unreal conditions.

	NOW/PAST	REAL/UNREAL
1. If you were trying to write a research paper for a class and	now	unreal
couldn't come up with any ideas,		
2 would you keep working away?		
3 would you stop for a while?		
4. If we stop concentrating on something,		
5. It would have helped me		
6. I would have been calmer and more relaxed		

Part III. Think about challenges you have when you do homework. What slows you down? Do you ever get stuck? What helps you get unstuck? Would the techniques in this blog work for you if you tried them? Why or why not? Discuss the questions with a partner or in small groups.

EXERCISE 47 > Warm-up. (Chart 20-10)

Check (\checkmark) all the correct sentences.

- 1. ____ I wish I were going to visit you next week. 3. ____ I wish I could visit you next week.
- 2. ____ I wish I visited you next week.
- 4. ____ I wish I would visit you next week.

20-10 Wishes About the Future; U	se of Wish + Would
 (a) He <i>isn't going to be</i> here next week. I wish he were going to be here next week. (b) She can't come tomorrow. I wish she could come tomorrow. (c) She won't tell you. I wish she would tell you. (d) I wish I could go with you. 	 Wishes about the future can be expressed with <i>were going to, could</i>, or <i>would</i>. The speaker wants the situation to be the opposite of what it will be. <i>Could</i>, not <i>would</i>, is used when the speaker is making a wish with <i>I</i>, as in (d). <i>INCORRECT</i>: I wish I would go with you.
(e) It is raining. I wish it would stop.	Wish + would can be used when the speaker wants an action or event to change, as in (e). Note that it cannot be used for situations.INCORRECT:I wish you would know the answer.
(f) I wish you would leave now.	<i>Wish</i> + <i>would</i> can also be used to make a strong request, as in (f).

EXERCISE 48 Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-10)

Make future wishes.

- 1. I can't go with you tomorrow, but I wish I _____ could go
- 2. My friend won't ever lend me his car. I wish he _____ me his car for my date tomorrow night.
- 3. Mrs. Takasawa isn't coming to dinner with us tonight. I wish she _____ to dinner with us.
- 4. The teacher is going to give an exam tomorrow. I wish he ______ us an exam tomorrow.
- 5. Jon won't tell me about his plans, but I wish he _____ me something.
- 6. It probably won't happen, but I wish it ______.

EXERCISE 49 ► Let's talk. (Charts 20-9 and 20-10)

Work with a partner or in small groups. Read the given information. Then answer the questions with wish + would.

Example:

- Том: Why are you pacing back and forth?
- I'm waiting to hear from Sam. I want him to call me. I need to talk to him right now. SUE: We had an argument. I need to make sure everything's OK.
 - (a) What does Sue want to happen? → She wishes Sam would call her.
 - (b) What else does Sue wish?
 - → She wishes she could talk to Sam right now. She probably wishes she and Sam hadn't had an argument.

448 CHAPTER 20

- 1. ANNA: Can't you come to the concert? Please change your mind. I'd really like you to come: YOKO: Thanks for the invitation, but I don't see how I can change my work schedule.
 - (a) What does Anna want Yoko to do?
 - (b) What else does Anna wish?
- 2. Helen is a neat and orderly person. Judy, her roommate, is messy. Judy never picks up after herself. She leaves dirty dishes in the sink. She drops her clothes all over the apartment. She never makes her bed. Helen nags Judy to pick up after herself.
 - (a) What does Helen want Judy to do?
 - (b) What does Judy probably wish?



EXERCISE 50 Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-9 and 20-10)

Make wishes using the verbs in the box.

be	become come have to I need tell wear
1.	I need nine hours of sleep. I wish I <u>didn't need</u> so much sleep. I could get so much more done in a day.
2.	Alice doesn't like her job as a nurse. She wishes she a nurse. She
3.	wishes she a doctor. We had a good time in the mountains over vacation. I wish you with us.
4.	I know that something's bothering you. I wish you me what it is.
5	Maybe I can help. A: I wish I work today.
٦.	B: So do I. I wish it a holiday.

- 6. A: My feet are killing me! I wish I ______ shoes.
 - B: Yeah, me too. I didn't know we were going to be walking on rocks.

EXERCISE 51 > Let's talk: interview. (Charts 20-9 and 20-10)

Ask two classmates each question. Share some of their answers with the class.

- 1. What is something you can't do but you wish you could do?
- 2. Where do you wish you were right now? What do you wish you were doing?
- 3. What is something you don't have but wish you had?
- 4. What is something that didn't happen yesterday but that you wish had happened?
- 5. What is something you don't know but wish you knew?
- 6. What is something you have to do but wish you didn't have to do?
- 7. What is something you were unable to do yesterday but you wish you could have done?
- 8. What is something that has never happened in your life but that you wish would happen?
- 9. What do you wish were different about this city/town?
- 10. What is something in your life that you wish could be different?



EXERCISE 52 ► Check your knowledge. (Chapter 20 Review)

Correct the errors.

- 1. If I had know more about it, I would have had better advice for you.
- 2. If were I you, I would spend more time outdoors.
- 3. Should my manager needs to reach me, I'll be at the bank and post office.
- 4. Anyone should ask for me, tell them I'm not available.
- 5. If you continue to drive so fast, I would get out of the car.
- 6. She wishes she went to the doctor when she first had symptoms.
- 7. If it were not snow outside, we could walk to the mall.
- 8. I would have done things differently were I received the correct information.
- 9. They hurried; otherwise, they wouldn't have missed their train.
- 10. The team never will have won the game yesterday without your help.
- 11. I hope I could meet with you tomorrow.
- 12. We're really late. I wish you hurry.
- 13. If I had brought a lunch to work, I wouldn't have been hungry now.
- 14. I wish I would ask more questions when we reviewed for the exam yesterday.

EXERCISE 53 Reading and writing. (Chapter 20)

Part I. Read the passage. Which words are used to introduce hypothetical situations? <u>Underline</u> them.

A Life Without Pain

Can you imagine a world where people felt no pain? At first it sounds appealing. You wouldn't know the agonizing suffering that comes from pain. If you had a throbbing headache or toothache, you wouldn't even feel it. But you also wouldn't know to check if the headache or toothache indicated something more serious. Or if you had a different condition, like a broken bone, you wouldn't necessarily know that it needed to be treated.

Some people are born with an inability to feel pain. However, rather than being a positive condition, it causes untold problems. If people can't feel pain, they don't know if they are hurt. For parents of young children, this is a nightmare. How would a child know about the dangers of a hot stove or broken glass? A burn wouldn't be painful and a cut wouldn't hurt.

Parents of these children have to continually watch for injuries. Normal activities like going to the playground aren't at all normal. Suppose a child fell from the top of a slide. He or she might find this fun and try to do it again, risking further injury.

Pain turns out to be lifesaving; it helps us to know if something is wrong and requires treatment. Without it, we would go through life hurting ourselves, possibly with deadly outcomes.



Do you know these words? - appealing - throbbing - agonizing - untold - suffering - outcomes



WRITING TIP

As you have learned, sentence variety (changing the length and structure of your sentences) makes your writing more interesting. Remember that always using *if* to express hypothetical situations can become repetitious. As you saw in the reading passage, there are other words and expressions you can use to introduce hypothetical situations: *without, suppose, imagine, how would*.

Or, as you have learned in Chart 20-7, you can sometimes omit if and invert the subject and verb.

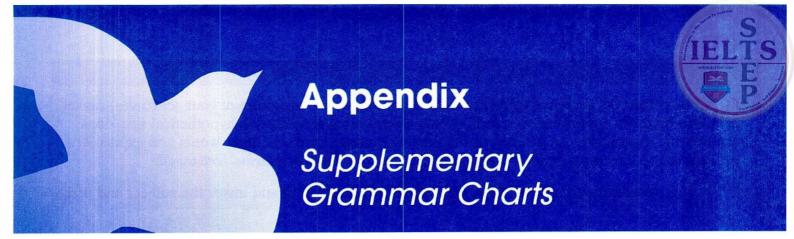
Part II. Look at the following topics. Brainstorm ideas with your classmates. Then choose one and write about it. Use conditionals in your writing.

What would life be like without ...

- a sense of smell?
- the need for sleep?
- the sun?
- trees?
- schools/education?
- the Internet?
- a cell phone?
- social media?

Part III. Edit your writing. Check for the following:

- 1. \Box use of conditional sentences
- 2. \Box use of correct verbs with conditional sentences
- 3. \Box sentence variety by not always using *if*
- 4. □ correct spelling (use a dictionary or spell-check)



UNITA: Basic Grammar Terminology

A-1 Subjects, Verbs, and	Objects
(a) S V (noun) (verb)	Almost all English sentences contain a subject (S) and a verb (V). The verb may or may not be followed by an object (O).
(b) The baby cried. (noun) (verb)	VERBS: Verbs that are not followed by an object, as in (a) and (b), are called "intransitive verbs." Common intransitive verbs: <i>agree, arrive, come, cry, exist, go, happen, live, occur, rain, rise, sleep, stay.</i>
(c) The student (noun) v o (noun) v o needs a o pen. (noun)	Verbs that are followed by an object, as in (c) and (d), are called "transitive verbs."
(d) My <i>friend enjoyed</i> the <i>party</i> . (noun) (verb) (noun)	Common transitive verbs: <i>build, cut, find, like, make, need, send, use, want.</i> Some verbs can be either intransitive or transitive. Intransitive: <i>A student studies.</i> Transitive: <i>A student studies books.</i>
	SUBJECTS AND OBJECTS: The subjects and objects of verbs are nouns (or pronouns).
	Examples of nouns: person, place, thing, John, Asia, pen, information, appearance, amusement.

A-2 Adjectives	
 (a) Ann is an <i>intelligent</i> student. (adjective) (noun) (b) The <i>hungry</i> child ate fruit. (adjective) (noun) 	Adjectives describe nouns. In grammar, we say that adjectives modify nouns. The word <i>modify</i> means "change a little." Adjectives give a little different meaning to a noun: <i>intelligent student, lazy student, good student.</i> Examples of adjectives: <i>young, old, rich, beautiful, brown, French, modern.</i>
(c) I saw some <i>beautiful</i> pictures. INCORRECT: beautiful s pictures	An adjective is neither singular nor plural. A final -s is never added to an adjective.

					IELTS	
A-3 Adver	bs					
(a) He walks qui (adv	i <mark>ckly</mark> . verb)	Adverbs modify verbs. Often they answer the question "How?" In (a): <i>How does he walk?</i> Answer: <i>Quickly</i> .				
(b) She opened t	he door <i>quietly</i> . (adverb)	Adverbs are often formed by adding -ly to an adjective. Adjective: <i>quick</i> Adverb: <i>quick</i>				
(c) I am extreme (adverb	e ly happy.) (adjective)	Adverbs are also used to modify adjectives, i.e., to give information about adjectives, as in (c).				
(d) Ann will come	(adverb)	Adverbs are also used to express time or frequency. Examples: tomorrow, today, yesterday, soon, never, usually, always, yet.				
(f) Ann <i>is always</i> (g) Ann <i>has alwa</i>	comes on time.	 have usual positions come in front as in (e); follow be (sim come betwee 	occur in the middle o s; they of simple present and ple present and simp n a helping verb and a sentence adverb com	l simple past verbs le past), as in (f); a main verb, as in (g	(except b e), g).	
Common midser	ntence adverbs					
ever always	usually often frequently	generally sometimes occasionally	seldom rarely hardly ever	never not ever	already finally just probably	

Common prepos	sitions				
about	at	beyond	into	since	up
above	before	by	like	through	upon
across	behind	despite	near	throughout	with
after	below	down	of	till	within
against	beneath	during	off	to	without
along	beside	for	on	toward(s)	
among	besides	from	out	under	
around	between	in	over	until	
 (a) The student studies in the library. (noun) (b) We enjoyed the party at your house. (noun) 		phrase object of PREP house.	An important element of English sentences is the prepositional phrase. It consists of a preposition (PREP) and its object (o). The object of a preposition is a noun or pronoun. In (a): <i>in the library</i> is a prepositional phrase.		
 We went to the zoo in the afternoon. (Place) (Time) In the afternoon, we went to the zoo. 			In (c): In most English sentences, "place" comes before "time." In (d): Sometimes a prepositional phrase comes at the beginnin of a sentence.		

A-5 Preposition Combinations with Adjectives and Verbs

- Δ be absent from be accused of be accustomed to be acquainted with be addicted to be afraid of agree with be angry at, with be annoyed with, by apologize for apply to, for approve of argue with, about arrive in, at be associated with be aware of В believe in
 - blame for be blessed with be bored with, by

С be capable of care about, for be cluttered with be committed to compare to, with complain about, of be composed of be concerned about be connected to consist of be content with contribute to be convinced of be coordinated with count (up)on be covered with be crowded with

D decide (up)on be dedicated to depend (up)on be devoted to be disappointed in, with be discriminated against distinguish from be divorced from be done with dream of, about be dressed in

- E be engaged in, to be envious of be equipped with escape from excel in, at be excited about excuse for be exhausted from be exposed to
- F be faithful to be familiar with feel like fight for be filled with be finished with be fond of forget about forgive for be friendly to, with be frightened of, by be furnished with
- G be gone from be grateful to, for be guilty of
- H hide from hope for
- I be innocent of insist (up)on be interested in introduce to be involved in
- J be jealous of
- K keep from be known for
- L be limited to be located in look forward to
- M be made of, from be married to

object to be opposed to

0

Ρ

R

- participate in be patient with be pleased with be polite to pray for be prepared for prevent from prohibit from be protected from be proud of provide with
- **Q** be qualified for
 - recover from be related to be relevant to rely (up)on be remembered for rescue from respond to be responsible for
- S be satisfied with be scared of, by stare at stop from subscribe to substitute for succeed in
- T take advantage of take care of talk about, of be terrified of, by thank for think about, of be tired of, from
- U be upset with be used to
- V vote for
- W be worried about



	A ves/n	a question =	a question that	t may be answer	ed by ves or no
	A y eshi		A: Does he live		
			B: Yes, he doe	es. OR No, he do	besn't.
	An informatio				ation by using a question word
			A: Where does B: In Chicago.		
Question word	order = (Ques	tion word) + h	nelping verb + s	subject + main ve	erb
Notice that the	same subject	-verb order is	used in both ye	es/no and inform	ation questions.
(Question Word)	Helping Verb	Subject	Main Verb	(Rest of Sentence)	
(a) (b) Where	Does does	she she	live live?	there?	If the verb is in the simple present, use does (with <i>he, she, it</i>) or do (with <i>l, you,</i>
(c) (d) Where	Do do	they they	live live?	there?	<i>we, they</i>) in the question. If the verb is simple past, use <i>did</i> .
(e) (f) Where	Did did	he he	liv ive livlive?	there?	Notice: The main verb in the question is in its simple form; there is no final -s or -ed .
(g) (h) Where	ls is	he he	livliving livliving?	there?	If the verb has an auxiliary (a helping verb the same auxiliary is used in the question.
(i) (j) Where	Have	they they	lived?	there?	There is no change in the form of the main verb.
(k) (1) Where	Can can	Mary Mary	live live?	there?	If the verb has more than one auxiliary, only the first auxiliary precedes the subject, as in (m) and (n).
(m) (n) Where	Will will	he he	be living be living?	there?	
(o) Who (p) Who	Ø can	0 0	lives come?	there?	If the question word is the subject, usual question-word order is not used; <i>does</i> , <i>do</i> , and <i>did</i> are not used. The verb is in the same form in a question as it is in a statement. Statement: <i>Tom came</i> .
(q)	Are	they	Ø	there?	Question: <i>Who came?</i> Main verb be in the simple present (<i>am, is</i>
(r) Where(s)(t) Where	are Was was	they? Jim Jim?	Ø	there?	are) and simple past (was, were) precede the subject. It has the same position as a helping verb.

B-2 Question Words Question Answer When (a) When did they arrive? Yesterday. When is used to ask questions about time. When will you come? Next Monday. Where (b) Where is she? At home. Where is used to ask questions about Where can I find a pen? In that drawer. place. Because he's ill. Why is used to ask questions about reason. Why (c) Why did he leave early? Why aren't you coming with us? I'm tired How generally asks about manner. How (d) How did you come to school? By bus. How does he drive? Carefully. (e) How much money does it cost? Ten dollars. How is used with much and many. Fifteen. How many people came? (f) How old are you? Twelve. How is also used with adjectives and How cold is it? Ten below zero. adverbs. How soon can you get here? In ten minutes. How fast were you driving? 50 miles an hour. (q) How long has he been here? How long asks about length of time. Two years. How often do you write home? Every week. How often asks about frequency. 500 miles. How far is it to Miami from here? How far asks about distance. Who Who is used as the subject of a question. (h) Who can answer that question? I can. Who came to visit you? Jane and Eric. It refers to people. (i) Who is coming to dinner tonight? Ann, Bob, and Al. Who is usually followed by a singular verb Who wants to come with me? We do. even if the speaker is asking about more than one person. Whom (j) Who(m) did you see? I saw George. Whom is used as the object of a verb or Who(m) are you visiting? My relatives. preposition. In everyday spoken English, whom is rarely used; who is used instead. (k) Who(m) should I talk to? The secretary. Whom is used only in formal questions. To whom should I talk? (formal) NOTE: Whom, not who, is used if preceded by a preposition. Whose (1) Whose book did you borrow? David's. Whose asks questions about possession. Whose key is this? It's mine.

(Whose is this?)

			WARTER OF THE PARTY OF THE PART
	Question	Answer	P
What	(m) What made you angry? What went wrong?	His rudeness. Everything.	<i>What</i> is used as the subject of a question. It refers to things.
	 (n) What do you need? What did Alice buy? (o) What did he talk about? About what did he talk? (formal) 	l need a pencil. A book. His vacation.	What is also used as an object.
	(p) What kind of soup is that? What kind of shoes did he buy?	lt's bean soup. Sandals.	What kind of asks about the particular variety or type of something.
	(q) What did you do last night? What is Mary doing?	I studied. Reading a book.	What + a form of do is used to ask questions about activities.
	 (r) What countries did you visit? What time did she come? What color is his hair? 	Italy and Spain. Seven o'clock. Dark brown.	What may accompany a noun.
	(s) What is Ed like?	He's kind and friendly.	What + be like asks for a general description of qualities.
	(t) What is the weather like?	Hot and humid.	
	(u) What does Ed look like?	He's tall and has dark hair.	What + look like asks for a physical description.
	(v) What does her house look like?	It's a two-story,* red brick house.	
Which	 (w) I have two pens. Which pen do you want? Which one do you want? Which do you want? 	The blue one.	<i>Which</i> is used instead of <i>what</i> when a question concerns choosing from a definite, known quantity or group.
	(x) Which book should I buy?	That one.	
	(y) Which countries did he visit? What countries did he visit?	Peru and Chile.	In some cases, there is little difference in meaning between which and what when they accompany a pount as in (y) and (z)
	(z) Which class are you in? What class are you in?	This class.	they accompany a noun, as in (y) and (z).

*American English: a two-story house. British English: a two-storey house.



B-3 Shortened Yes / No Questions	TELTS TELTS
 (a) Going to bed now? = Are you going to bed now? (b) Finish your work? = Did you finish your work? 	Sometimes in spoken English, the auxiliary and the subject you are dropped from a <i>yes/no</i> question, as in
 (c) Want to go to the movie with us? = Do you want to go to the movie with us? 	(a), (b), and (c).

B-	4 Negative Questions	
	<i>Doesn't she live</i> in the dormitory? <i>Does she not live</i> in the dormitory? (very formal)	In a <i>yes/no</i> question in which the verb is negative, usually a contraction (e.g., <i>does</i> + <i>not</i> = <i>doesn't</i>) is used, as in (a). Example (b) is very formal and is usually not used in everyday speech. Negative questions are used to indicate the speaker's idea (i.e., what she/he believes is or is not true) or attitude (e.g., surprise, shock, annoyance, anger).
(c) (d)	class. Matt, his roommate, is there. Bob is surprised. Bob says, "What are you doing here? Aren't you supposed to be in class now?"	 In (c): Bob believes that Matt is supposed to be in class now. <i>Expected answer:</i> Yes. In (d): Alice believes that Mary's plane leaves at three. She is asking the negative question to make sure that her information is correct. <i>Expected answer:</i> Yes.
(e)	The teacher is talking to Jim about a test he failed. The teacher is surprised that Jim failed the test because he usually does very well. The teacher says, "What happened? Didn't you study?"	In (e): The teacher believes that Jim did not study. <i>Expected answer:</i> N o.
(f)	Barb and Ron are riding in a car. Ron is driving. He comes to a corner where there is a stop sign, but he does not stop the car. Barb is shocked. Barb says, "What's the matter with you? Didn't you see that stop sign?"	In (f): Barb believes that Ron did not see the stop sign. <i>Expected answer:</i> N o.

B -	5 Tag Questions	I DEL T
(a)	Jack <i>can</i> come, <i>can't</i> he? Fred <i>can't</i> come, <i>can</i> he?	A tag question is a question added at the end of a sentence. Speakers use tag questions mainly to make sure their information is correct or to seek agreement.*
	Mary <i>is</i> here, You <i>like</i> tea,	NEGATIVE TAG → AFFIRMATIVE ANSWER EXPECTED isn't she? Yes, she is. don't you? Yes, I do. t, haven't they? Yes, they have.
		•
(c)	This / That is your book, isn't it? These / Those are yours, aren't they?	The tag pronoun for <i>this / that = it</i> . The tag pronoun for <i>these / those = they</i> .
(d)	There is a meeting tonight, isn't there?	In sentences with there + be, there is used in the tag.
(e) (f)	Everything is OK, isn't it? Everyone took the test, didn't they?	Personal pronouns are used to refer to indefinite pronouns. <i>They</i> is usually used in a tag to refer to <i>everyone</i> , <i>everybody</i> , <i>someone</i> , <i>somebody</i> , <i>no one</i> , <i>nobody</i> .
(g) (h) (i)	Nothing is wrong, is it? Nobody called on the phone, did they? You've never been there, have you?	Sentences with negative words take affirmative tags.
(j) (k)	<i>I am</i> supposed to be here, <i>am I not</i> ? <i>I am</i> supposed to be here, <i>aren't I</i> ?	In (j): <i>am I not</i> ? is formal English. In (k): <i>aren't I</i> ? is common in spoken English.

*A tag question may be spoken:

(1) with a rising intonation if the speaker is truly seeking to ascertain that his/her information, idea, belief is correct (e.g., Ann lives in an apartment, doesn't she?); OR

(2) with a falling intonation if the speaker is expressing an idea with which she/he is almost certain the listener will agree (e.g., *It's a nice day today, isn't it?*).



Jim could use some help, couldn't he?



C Contractions

IN SPEAKING: In everyday spoken English, certain forms of **be** and auxiliary verbs are usually contracted with pronouns, nouns, and question words.

- IN WRITING: (1) In written English, contractions with pronouns are common in informal writing, but they're not generally acceptable in formal writing.
 - (2) Contractions with nouns and question words are, for the most part, rarely used in writing. A few of these contractions may be found in quoted dialogue in stories or in very informal writing, such as a chatty letter to a good friend, but most of them are rarely if ever written.

In the following, quotation marks indicate that the contraction is frequently spoken but rarely, if ever, written.

	With Pronouns	With Nouns	With Question Words	
am	I'm reading a book.	ø	"What'm" I supposed to do?	
is She's studying.		My " <i>book's</i> " on the table.	Where's Sally?	
It's going to rain.		<i>Mary's</i> at home.	Who's that man?	
are	You're working hard.	My " <i>books're</i> " on the table.	"What're" you doing?	
	They're waiting for us.	The " <i>teachers're</i> " at a meeting.	"Where're" they going?	
has	She's been here for a year.	My " <i>book's</i> " been stolen!	Where's Sally been living?	
	It's been cold lately.	Sally's never met him.	What's been going on?	
have	<i>I've</i> finished my work.	The " <i>books've</i> " been sold.	"Where've" they been?	
	<i>They've</i> never met you.	The " <i>students've</i> " finished the test.	"How've" you been?	
had	<i>He'd</i> been waiting for us. <i>We'd</i> forgotten about it.	The " <i>books'd</i> " been sold. " <i>Mary'd</i> " never met him before.	"Where'd" you been before that? "Who'd" been there before you?	
did	ø	Ø	"What'd" you do last night? "How'd" you do on the test?	
will	I'll come later.	The " <i>weather'll</i> " be nice tomorrow.	"Who'll" be at the meeting?	
	She'll help us.	"John'll" be coming soon.	"Where'll" you be at ten?	
would	<i>He'd</i> like to go there. <i>They'd</i> come if they could.	My " <i>friends'd</i> " come if they could. " <i>Mary'd</i> " like to go there too.	"Where'd" you like to go?	

UNIT D: Negatives



D-1 Using Not and Other Negative Words (a) AFFIRMATIVE: The earth is round. Not expresses a negative idea. (b) NEGATIVE: The earth is not flat. Not immediately follows an auxiliary verb or be. AUX + NOT + MAIN VERB (c) | will not qo there. NOTE: If there is more than one auxiliary, not comes immediately after the have gone there. 1 not first auxiliary: I will not be going there. am not there. 1 going Do or does is used with not to make a simple present verb (except be) there. was not 1 negative. there do go 1 not Did is used with not to make a simple past verb (except be) negative. He does there. not go did not go there. Contractions of auxiliary verbs with not are not = aren't* has not = hasn't was not = wasn't cannot = can'thave not = haven't were not = weren't could not = couldn't had not = hadn't will not = won't would not = wouldn't did not = didn't is not = isn'tdoes not = doesn't must not = mustn'tshould not = shouldn't do not = don't In addition to not, the following are negative adverbs: (d) I almost never go there. I have *hardly ever* gone there. never, rarely, seldom hardly (ever), scarcely (ever), barely (ever) No also expresses a negative idea. (e) There's no chalk in the drawer. COMPARE: NOT VS. NO Not is used to make a verb negative, as in (f). (f) | do not have any money. No is used as an adjective in front of a noun (e.g., money), as in (g). (g) I have no money. NOTE: Examples (f) and (g) have the same meaning.

*Sometimes in spoken English you will hear "ain't." It means "am not," "isn't," or "aren't." *Ain't* is not considered proper English although it is frequently used for humor.

D-2 Avoiding Double Negatives	
 (a) INCORRECT: I don't have no money. (b) CORRECT: I don't have any money. CORRECT: I have no money. 	Sentence (a) is an example of a "double negative," i.e., a confusing and grammatically incorrect sentence that contains two negatives in the same clause. One clause should contain only one negative.*

*Negatives in two different clauses in the same sentence cause no problems; for example:

A person who doesn't have love can't be truly happy.

I don't know why he isn't here.

D-3 Beginning a Sentence with a Negative Word

- (a) Never will I do that again!
- (b) Rarely have I eaten better food.
- (c) Hardly ever does he come to class on time.

When a negative word begins a sentence, the subject and verb are inverted (i.e., question word order is used).*

*Beginning a sentence with a negative word is relatively uncommon in everyday usage; it is used when the speaker/writer wishes to emphasize the negative element of the sentence and be expressive.

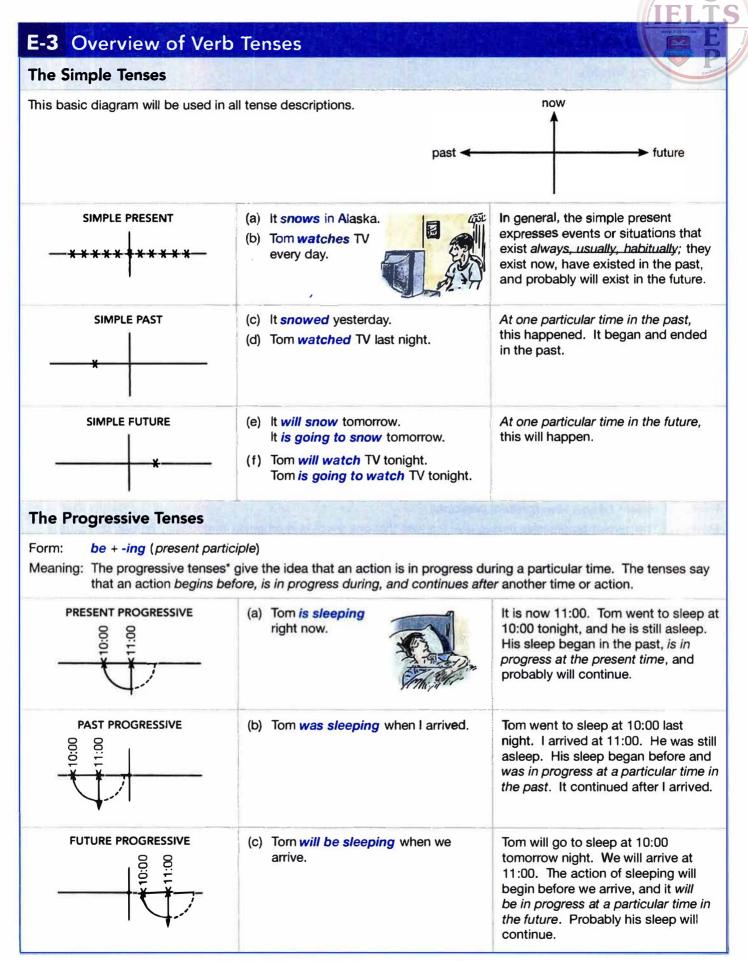
١U

JNIT E: Verbs E-1 The Verb <i>Be</i>		A CONTRACT OF A
 (a) John is a student. (be) (noun) (b) John is intelligent. (be) (adjective) (c) John was at the library. (be) (prep. phrase) 	A sentence with be as the main vert In (a): be + a noun In (b): be + an adjective In (c): be + a prepositional phras	
 (d) Mary <i>is writing</i> a letter. (e) They <i>were listening</i> to some music. (f) That letter <i>was written</i> by Alice. 	Be is also used as an auxiliary verb passive. In (d): <i>is = auxiliary; writing = main</i>	in progressive verb tenses and in the verb
Tense Forms of Be		
SIMPLE PRESENT <i>I am</i> SINGULAR you are he, she, it is	SIMPLE PAST I was you were he, she, it was	PRESENT PERFECT I have been you have been he, she, it has been
PLURAL we, you, they are	we, you, they were	we, you, they have been

(4)						
(1)	VERBS THAT END IN A CONSONANT AND -e	(a)	ho pe date injure	hoping dating injuring	ho p ed dated inju r ed	- <i>ING</i> FORM: If the word ends in - <i>e</i> , drop the - <i>e</i> and add - <i>ing</i> .* - <i>ED</i> FORM: If the word ends in a consonant
			ingare	nganng	injureu	and -e, just add -d.
(2)	VERBS THAT END		(ONE-SYLLABLE VER	RBS	
	IN A VOWEL AND A CONSONANT	(b)	stop rob	sto pp ing robbing	sto pp ed ro bb ed	1 vowel → 2 consonants**
		(C)	rain fool	raining fooling	rained fooled	2 vowels → 1 consonant
			T	WO-SYLLABLE VER	RBS	
		(d)	listen offer	listening offering	listened offered	1st syllable stressed → 1 consonant
		(e)	begin prefer	beginning prefe <mark>rr</mark> ing	(began) prefe rr ed	2nd syllable stressed → 2 consonants
(3)	VERBS THAT END IN TWO CONSONANTS	(f)	start fold	starting folding	started folded	If the word ends in two consonants, just add the ending.
			demand	demanding	demanded	add the chaing.
(4)	VERBS THAT END	(g)	enj <mark>oy</mark> pray	enjoying praying	enjoyed prayed	If -y is preceded by a vowel, keep the -y .
		(h)	study try reply	studying trying replying	studied tried replied	If -y is preceded by a consonant: - <i>ING</i> FORM: keep the -y ; add -ing . - <i>ED</i> FORM: change -y to -i ; add -ed .
(5)	VERBS THAT END	(i)	die lie	dying lying	died lied	-ING FORM: Change -ie to -y; add -ing. -ED FORM: Change -y to -i; add -ed.

*Exception: If a verb ends in -ee, the final -e is not dropped: seeing, agreeing, freeing.

**Exception: -w and -x are not doubled: $plow \rightarrow plowed$; fix \rightarrow fixed.



*The progressive tenses are also called the "continuous" tenses: present continuous, past continuous, and future continuous. *(continued)*

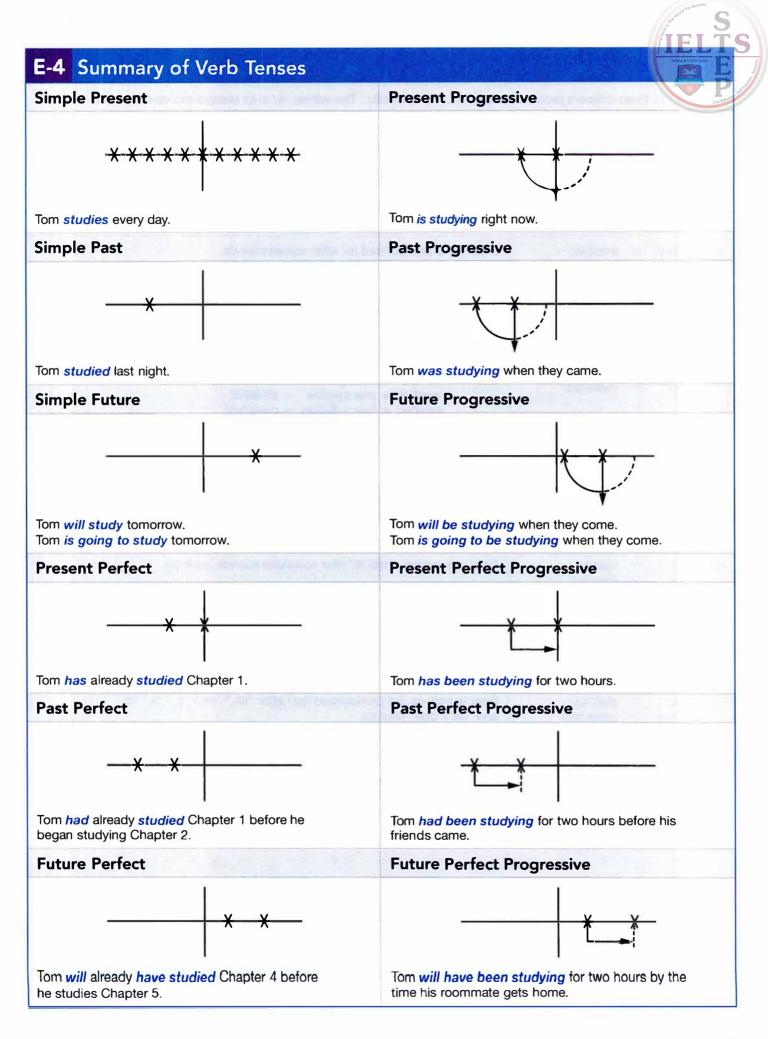
E-3 Overview of Verb Tenses (continued)

The Perfect Tenses

Form: **have** + past participle

Meaning: The perfect tenses all give the idea that one thing happens before another time or event.

PRESENT PERFECT জু ঁু (time?)	(a) Tom has already eaten.	Tom <i>finished</i> eating <i>sometime before now</i> The exact time is not important.
PAST PERFECT	(b) Tom <i>had</i> already <i>eaten</i> when his friend arrived.	First Tom finished eating. Later his friend arrived. Tom's eating was completely finished before another time in the past.
FUTURE PERFECT	(c) Tom <i>will</i> already <i>have eaten</i> when his friend arrives.	First Tom will finish eating. Later his frien will arrive. Tom's eating will be completed finished before another time in the future.
leaning: The perfect prog	ing (present participle) ressive tenses give the idea that one event is event. The tenses are used to express the dur	
leaning: The perfect prog another time or e PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE	ressive tenses give the idea that one event is	
leaning: The perfect prog another time or e PRESENT PERFECT	ressive tenses give the idea that one event is event. The tenses are used to express the dur (a) Tom <i>has been studying</i> for two	Event in progress: studying. When? Before now, up to now.
eaning: The perfect prog another time or e PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE 2 hrs.	 (a) Tom has been studying for two hours. (b) Tom had been studying for two 	Event in progress: studying. When? Before now, up to now. How long? For two hours.



E-5 Regular Verbs: Pronunciation of -ed Endings

Final -ed has three different pronunciations: /t/, /d/, and /əd/. The schwa /ə/ is an unstressed vowel sound. It is pronounced like a in alone in normal, rapid speech (e.g., She lives alone.).

(a)	clapped → missed → watched → finished →	miss/t/	 Final -ed is pronounced /t/ after voiceless sounds. Voiceless sounds are made by pushing air through your mouth; no sound comes from your throat. Examples of voiceless sounds: "k," "p," "s," "ch," "sh," "f."
(b)	saved → cleaned → robbed →	smeil/d/ save/d/ clean/d/ rob/d/ play/d/	 Final <i>-ed</i> is pronounced /d/ after voiced sounds. Voiced sounds come from your throat. If you touch your neck when you make a voiced sound, you can feel your voice box vibrate. Examples of voiced sounds: "I," "v," "n," "b," and all vowel sounds.
(c)	needed → wanted →	 decide/əd/ need/əd/ want/əd/ invite/əd/ 	Final -ed is pronounced /əd/ after "t" and "d" sounds. The sound /əd/ adds a whole syllable to a word. COMPARE: looked = one syllable → look/t/ smelled = one syllable → smell/d/ needed = two syllables → need/əd/

E-6 Pronunciation of Final -s in Verbs and Nouns

Final -s has three different pronunciations: /s/, /z/, and /əz/.

(a)	seats ropes backs	-+	seat/s/ rope/s/ back/s/	Final -s is pronounced /s/ after voiceless sounds, as in (a). "t," "p," and "k" are examples of voiceless sounds.
(b)	seeds robes bags sees	→ →	seed/z/ robe/z/ bag/z/ see/z/	Final -s is pronounced /z/ after voiced sounds, as in (b). "d," "b," "g," and "ee" are examples of voiced sounds.
(c)	dishes catches kisses mixes prizes edges	-> -> -> ->	dish/əz/ catch/əz/ kiss/əz/ mix/əz/ prize/əz/ edge/əz/	 Final -s and -es are pronounced /əz/ after "sh," "ch," "s," "x," "z," and "ge"/"dge" sounds. The /əz/ ending adds a syllable. All of the words in (c) are pronounced with two syllables. COMPARE: All of the words in (a) and (b) are pronounced with one syllable.

E-7 Linking Verbs

(a) The soup smells good. (linking verb) (adjective)	Other verbs like be that may be followed immediately by an adjective are called "linking verbs." An adjective following a linking verb describes the subject of a sentence.*
(b) This food tastes delicious.	
c) The children feel happy.	Common verbs that may be followed by an adjective: • feel, look, smell, sound, taste
(d) The weather became cold.	 appear, seem become (and get, turn, grow when they mean "become")

*COMPARE:

- (1) The man looks angry. → An adjective (angry) follows look. The adjective describes the subject (the man). Look has the meaning of "appear."
- (2) The man looked at me angrily. → An adverb (angrily) follows look at. The adverb describes the action of the verb. Look at has the meaning of "regard, watch."



Ann is at the laudromat. She looks very busy.

E-8 Troublesome Verbs: Raise / Rise, Set / Sit, Lay / Lie			
Transitive	Intransitive	<i>Raise, set,</i> and <i>lay</i> are <i>transitive</i> verbs; they are followed by an object.	
(a) <i>raise, raised, raised</i> Tom <i>raised his hand</i> .	(b) <i>rise, rose, risen</i> The sun <i>rises</i> in the east.	<i>Rise, sit,</i> and <i>lie</i> are intransitive; they are NOT followed by an object.*	
(c) set, set, set I will set the book on the desk.	(d) <i>sit, sat, sat</i> I <i>sit</i> in the front row.	In (a): <i>raised</i> is followed by the object <i>hand</i> .	
(e) <i>lay, laid, laid</i> I <i>am laying</i> the book on the desk.	(f) <i>lie,** lay, lain</i> He <i>is lying</i> on his bed.	In (b): <i>rises</i> is not followed by an obj NOTE: <i>Lay</i> and <i>lie</i> are troublesome for native speakers too and are frequent misused. <i>lay</i> = put <i>lie</i> = recline	

*See Appendix Chart A-1 for information about transitive and intransitive verbs.

** Lie is a regular verb (lie, lied) when it means "not tell the truth": He lied to me about his age.

E-9 Irregular Verbs: An Alphabetical Reference List

NOTE: Verbs followed by a bullet (•) are defined at the end of the this list.

Simple Form	Simple Past	Past Participle	Simple Form	Simple Past	Past Participle
arise	arose	arisen	forbid	forbade	forbidden
awake	awoke	awoken	forecast•	forecast	forecast
be	was, were	been	forget	forgot	forgotten
bear	bore	borne/born	forgive	forgave	forgiven
beat	beat	beaten/beat	forsake	forsook	forsaken
become	became	become	freeze	froze	frozen
begin	began	begun	get	got	gotten/got*
bend	bent	bent	give	gave	given
bet•	bet	bet	go	went	gone
bid∙	bid	bid	grind	ground	ground
bind•	bound	bound	grow	grew	grown
bite	bit	bitten	hang**	hung	hung
bleed	bled	bled	have	had	had
blow	blew	blown	hear	heard	heard
break	broke	broken	hide	hid	hidden
breed	bred	bred	hit	hit	hit
bring	brought	brought	hold	held	held
broadcast•	broadcast	broadcast	hurt	hurt	hurt
build	built	built	keep	kept	kept
burn	burned/burnt	burned/burnt	kneel	kneeled/knelt	kneeled/knelt
burst•	burst	burst	know	knew	known
buy	bought	bought	lay	laid	laid
cast•	cast	cast	lead	led	led
catch	caught	caught	lean	leaned/leant	leaned/leant
choose	chose	chosen	leap	leaped/leapt	leaped/leapt
cling•	clung	clung	learn	learned/learnt	learned/learnt
come	came	come	leave	left	left
cost	cost	cost	lend	lent	lent
creep•	crept	crept	let	let	let
cut	cut	cut	lie	lay	lain
deal•	dealt	dealt	light	lighted/lit	lighted/lit
dig	dug	dug	lose	lost	lost
do	did	done	make	made	made
draw	drew	drawn	mean	meant	meant
dream	dreamed/dreamt	dreamed/dreamt	meet	met	met
drink	drank	drunk	mislay	mislaid	mislaid
drive	drove	driven	mistake	mistook	mistaken
eat	ate	eaten	pay	paid	paid
fall	fell	fallen	prove	proved	proven/proved
feed	fed	fed	put	put	put
feel	felt	felt	quit***	quit	
fight	fought	fought	read	read	quit
find	found	found	rid	rid	read rid
fit	fit/fitted	fit/fitted	ride		
flee•	fled	fled		rode	ridden
fling•			ring	rang	rung
-	flung	flung	rise	rose	risen
fly	flew	flown			

*In British English: get-got-got. In American English: get-got-gotten/got.

** Hang is a regular verb when it means to kill someone with a rope around his/her neck.

COMPARE: I hung my clothes in the closet. They hanged the murderer by the neck until he was dead. ***Also possible in British English: quit-quitted-quitted.

Simple Form	Simple Past	Past Participle	Simple Form	Simple Past	Past Participle
run	ran	run	spring	sprang/sprung	sprung
say	said	said	stand	stood	stood
see	saw	seen	steal	stole	stolen
seek•	sought	sought	stick	stuck	stuck
sell	sold	sold	sting●	stung	stung
send	sent	sent	stink•	stank/stunk	stunk
set	set	set	strike	struck	struck/stricken
shake	shook	shaken	strive	strove/strived	striven/strived
shed•	shed	shed	string	strung	strung
shine	shone/shined	shone/shined	swear	swore	sworn
shoot	shot	shot	sweep	swept	swept
show	showed	shown/showed	swell	swelled	swelled/swollen
shrink∙	shrank/shrunk	shrunk	swim	swam	swum
shut	shut	shut	swing●	swung	swung
sing	sang	sung	take	took	taken
sink∙	sank	sunk	teach	taught	taught
sit	sat	sat	tear	tore	torn
sleep	slept	slept	tell	told	told
slide	slid	slid	think	thought	thought
slit∙	slit	slit	throw	threw	thrown
smell	smelled/smelt	smelled/smelt	thrust	thrust	thrust
sneak	sneaked/snuck	sneaked/snuck	understand	understood	understood
speak	spoke	spoken	undertake	undertook	undertaken
speed	sped/speeded	sped/speeded	upset	upset	upset
spell	spelled/spelt	spelled/spelt	wake	woke/waked	woken
spend	spent	spent	wear	wore	worn
spill	spilled/spilt	spilled/spilt	weave	wove	woven
spin●	spun	spun	weep•	wept	wept
spit	spit/spat	spit/spat	win	won	won
split●	split	split	winde	wound	wound
spoil	spoiled/spoilt	spoiled/spoilt	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
spread	spread	spread	write	wrote	written

•Definitions of some of the less frequently used irregular verbs:

bet wager; offer to pay money if one loses	forecast predict a future occurrence	spring jump or rise suddenly from a still position
bid make an offer of money,	forsake abandon or desert	sting cause pain with a sharp
usually at a public sale	grind crush, reduce to small	object (e.g., pin) or bite
bind fasten or secure	pieces	(e.g., by an insect)
breed bring animals together	seek look for	stink have a bad or foul smell
to produce young	shed drop off or get rid of	strikehit something with force
broadcast send information by	shrink become smaller	strive try hard to achieve a goal
radio waves;	sink move downward, often	swing move back and forth
announce	under water	thrust push forcibly; shove
burst explode; break suddenly	slide glide smoothly; slip or	weave form by passing pieces
cast throw	skid	of material over and
cling hold on tightly	slit cut a narrow opening	under each other (as in
creep crawl close to the ground;	spin turn rapidly around a	making baskets, cloth)
move slowly and quietly	central point	weep cry
deal distribute playing cards	split divide into two or	wind (sounds like <i>find</i>) turn
to each person; give	more parts	around and around
attention to (deal with)	spread push out in all	
flee escape; run away	directions (e.g., butter	
fling throw with force	on bread, news)	
5		



Listening Script

Chapter 1: Present and Past; Simple and Progressive

Exercise 6, p. 4.

Outdoors

- 1. Hey, look out the window! It's raining ...
- 2. We get a lot of rain here ...
- 3. Besides the rain, it also snows here a little ...
- 4. Did you hear? We can go skiing this weekend. It's snowing in the mountains ...
- 5. We go hiking a lot. We especially like to hike in the mountains ...
- 6. Our son is spending some time in the mountains ...
- 7. He works as a mountain guide ...

Exercise 18, p. 10.

Weather Report

Hello, this is Gayle Givens, your WWKK weather reporter. Well, it certainly is a beautiful day today. I am standing here at City Park and boy*, the sun sure is shining. Hundreds of people are enjoying the warmer temperatures today. There is not a cloud in the sky. We are looking at a perfect day right now, but it looks like some clouds are forming over the ocean and colder air is moving in. We are forecasting cooler temperatures for tomorrow. I think rain is unlikely, however. Stay tuned for the three-day forecast right after this message.

Exercise 25, p. 14.

- 1. Yesterday I felt ...
- 2. Last week Mr. Jones taught ...
- 3. Did you fill ...
- 4. The children drew ...
- 5. The man hid ...
- 6. One student withdrew ...
- 7. When I was cooking dinner, I burned ...
- 8. Oh, no! Did you shrink ...
- 9. The audience wept ...
- 10. The plants in the garden grew ...

Exercise 33, p. 20.

A Scary Night

I had a terrible experience last night. You won't believe what happened! A man burst into my apartment while I was asleep. There I was, just sleeping peacefully, when someone broke the glass in the sliding door! The sound woke me up. I heard the sliding door open, so I reached for the phone by the bed and called the police. My voice shook as I told the operator there was an intruder in my home.

I hid in my bedroom closet when the burglar came into my room. Soon I heard sirens as the police sped to my building. From the crack in the closet door, I saw the burglar as he ran outside with my laptop.

The police jumped out of their cars and followed him, but he managed to get away in a car that was waiting for him. The police got back in their cars and drove after him. Later I learned that they caught him a few miles from my building.

I felt really frightened by all this. It really upset me, as you can imagine. I'm staying at my sister's house for the rest of the week.

- 1. The man entered quietly.
- 2. He opened a window.
- 3. The woman spoke with the intruder.
- 4. The woman went into her closet.
- 5. The police caught the burglar in the woman's apartment.
- 6. The woman felt relaxed at the end of the story.

Chapter 2: Perfect and Progressive Tenses

Exercise 16, p. 35.

- 1. How have (How-uv) you been?
- 2. How long have (long-uv) you been here?
- 3. What has (What-uz) happened?
- 4. What have (What-uv) you done?
- 5. When have (When-uv) I said that?
- 6. Where have (Where-uv) you been?

Exercise 17, p. 35.

At Home with Roommates

- 1. Someone's phone's ringing. It's not mine.
- 2. Your girlfriend's just left a message.
- 3. Her friends've canceled, so she's free tonight.
- 4. The coffee's fresh. Have some.
- 5. It looks like your package has arrived.
- 6. Your sister's downstairs. She's borrowing some boxes for her move.
- 7. Our neighbors've planned a party for next weekend.
- 8. What've we told them? Are we going?

LISTENING SCRIPT: Chapters 1 and 2 471

Exercise 29, p. 42.

It's been a while!

- A: Good to see you! So, what have you been up to lately?
- B: Not too much. I've been taking it easy.
- A: How nice! Glad to hear you haven't been working too hard. By the way, how are your parents? I haven't seen them for a while.
- B: They're doing great. They're traveling now that they're retired.
- A: How long have they been retired?
- B: Gosh, I don't know. It's been a couple of years now.
- A: So, they've been traveling a lot?
- B: Yeah. They've been staying in warm, sunny places in the winter and spending summers here.
- A: What a great way to spend retirement! I'm glad to hear they're enjoying themselves.

Exercise 34, p. 45.

Excuses

- 1. I'm sorry I missed the appointment. I had written down the wrong date.
- 2. We knew we were running late. We had misread the bus schedule.
- 3. Sorry I wanted to come to your party, but my family had already made other plans.

Exercise 35, p. 46.

A Base Jumper

- 1. My friend Tom's a base jumper. He jumps off buildings and mountains — for fun. Last year he jumped off a skyscraper. Tom and his team had planned it for over a year.
- 2. Family and friends had told him he was crazy, but that didn't change his mind.
- 3. I wanted to watch, but I had gotten sick the day before.
- 4. Afterward, Tom said it was the most thrilling experience he had ever had.
- 5. I'd kind of like to try something like that, but I'm afraid of heights.

Exercise 36, p. 46.

- 1. a. You're a new student, aren't you? How long've you been in this country?
 - b. You left your job? How long had you been there?
- 2. a. You're looking for Jack? Jack has left. He isn't here.
 - b. We were looking for Sam, but he'd left by the time we got there.
- 3. a. Since we're teachers, we have the summers off and do a lot of traveling. We'd like to travel to Africa next.
 - b. We had wanted to travel with my parents on our last trip, but they became ill and needed to cancel.

- 4. a. Unfortunately, my phone died when we were lost. I had forgotten to recharge it.
 - b. My phone's dead, and I have forgotten to bring the charger.

Exercise 43, p. 50.

New Careers?

- 1. Kristi has learned how to design websites recently.
- 2. Her husband, who has an art background, has been learning how to design websites.
- 3. Kristi had worked as a nurse but found it too stressful.
- 4. Their son Eric has been designing websites since he left college.
- 5. Eric started his own company and has asked his parents to work for him part-time.

Chapter 3: Future Time

Exercise 4, p. 55.

- 1. You'll need to turn in all your assignments by tomorrow.
- 2. We're going to review for the final exam on Monday.
- 3. The test'll have 50 questions.
- 4. There'll be 50 questions on the exam.
- 5. You'll have the whole hour to complete the test.
- 6. It's a long exam. Sorry, but nobody'll finish early.
- 7. It's going to be a lot of work. Study hard!
- 8. The results'll be available in my office the next day.

Exercise 9, p. 58.

A Plan or an Offer to Help?

- 1. A: So, you were talking about your plans for the summer. What are you going to do?
 - B: I'm going to work at a summer resort in the mountains.
- 2. A: Can you help me out? I need to get this check in the mail by noon.
 - B: Sure. I'll drop it off on my way to work.
- 3. A: Tell me again. Why are you leaving work early? B: I'm going to attend my cousin's funeral.
- 4. A: Darn, this flashlight doesn't work.
- B: Here, give it to me. I'll fix it for you.
- 5. A: Here's the broom. What did you want it for? B: I'm going to sweep the front steps.

Exercise 11, p. 59.

They're going to move to a building twice as big as their current space. The new restaurant will include a full breakfast and lunch menu. They're going to serve fresh organic fruits and vegetables and offer more vegetarian dishes. The restaurant will have a seating area with couches and comfortable chairs, and it will have double the number of tables. This means the Costas'll need to hire several more employees. It'll be more work for the family, but they're looking forward to it.

Chapter 4: Review of Verb Tenses

Exercise 11, p. 74.

- 1. Flight 907 landed at 8:06 P.M.
- 2. It was evening, and Greg was home alone. He was lying on his couch in the living room. He had been listening to classical music for almost an hour.
- 3. This wet weather is getting very tiresome. It's been raining for days.
- 4. On the way to the theater, we got stuck in traffic, so we were late. The concert was just starting as we walked in.
- 5. Janice is interested in learning to fly a small plane. She's had two lessons so far.
- 6. There was a robbery at the bank ten minutes ago, and the police still haven't come. By the time they get here, the thief'll be far away.

Exercise 13, p. 75.

A Silly Mistake

When I got home to my apartment last night, I took out my key to open the door as usual. As always, I put it in the lock, but the door didn't open. I tried my key again and again with no luck. So I knocked on the door for my wife to let me in. Finally the door opened, but I didn't see my wife on the other side. I saw a stranger. I had been trying to get into the wrong apartment! I quickly apologized and went to my own. I felt very stupid about what I had done.

Chapter 5

Exercise 8, p. 82.

Thrill Seekers

Going over a waterfall in a kayak is not everyone's idea of a good time. But for some people, the experience of somersaulting through a curtain of water is thrilling, and they want to keep doing it. It has in part to do with adrenaline. The body releases a large amount of this hormone in response to danger. For some people, this release produces very pleasant feelings, and they seek out activities that will give them this feeling. The experience of parachuting from a mountain, for example, is exhilarating, not terrifying, for them. Researchers are studying reasons why some people enjoy this adrenaline rush and others fear it.

Exercise 17, p. 86.

At Work

- 1. Don't leave yet. There're email messages waiting for your response.
- 2. Excuse me. There's someone on the phone for you.
- 3. I need your help. Is there a place we could go to talk?
- 4. Are there chairs for us to sit down?
- 5. I think there're extra chairs in the hallway.
- 6. You look tired. Is there anything I can do to help?

- 7. Still hungry? There're some leftovers from the party in the staff lounge.
- 8. If you're thirsty, there's juice in the fridge.

Exercise 18, p. 87.

What's the difference?

1. Rain vs. Showers

Many people treat these words as having the same meaning. For people who follow the weather, however, there is a difference. Rain is steady and covers a larger area. Showers tend to be more scattered and do not last as long. There is an easy way to remember the difference: think about taking a bath vs. taking a shower. Most of us get wetter when we take a bath than when we stand in the shower.

Now, which expression do you think is correct: It's raining out or It's showering out? If you chose the first one, you are right. We use only rain, not shower, as a verb to talk about the weather.

2. Thief vs. Robber vs. Burglar

Another set of words with distinct differences is *thief*, *robber*, and *burglar*. A thief takes physical property like TVs, computers, or money, but there is no violence or force. Robbers also take property, but the robber uses force or the threat of force, as with a gun. A burglar illegally enters a structure with the intent to commit a crime.

If some of this seems confusing, you are in good company. Many native speakers of English have never learned these subtleties and don't make distinctions among these words.

Chapter 6: Nouns

Exercise 10, p. 99.

An Assistant Professor

- 1. Ted is an assistant college professor.
- 2. He worked for two colleges before he got a full-time job.
- 3. College professors have a heavy workload.
- 4. Assistant professor duties include teaching and research.
- 5. Ted also supervises the T.A., or teaching assistant program, for his department.
- 6. Teaching assistants attend his classes and then meet with students in small groups.

Exercise 31, p. 109.

Hoarding

Rebecca has a problem. She doesn't have any visitors. Her family doesn't come to see her anymore. It's not because they don't like her. It's because no one can get through her front door. There is too much stuff blocking the way. Rebecca is a hoarder.

Hoarders are unable to throw out or give away things they no longer need such as newspapers, magazines, clothes, and furniture. Some hoarders have boxes that reach the ceiling.

Hoarding has just recently come to the attention of the general public. Hoarding is more than having a messy or cluttered home. Hoarding interferes with a person's

LISTENING SCRIPT: Chapters 4-6 473

ability to function. Occasionally, hoarding can become life-threatening. In one situation, the floor of a hoarder's house collapsed. Sometimes garbage builds up in the house and health problems arise.

Scientists believe that an area in the brain affects a person's ability to make decisions to get rid of things. Researchers are working on treatments for this condition.

Exercise 39, p. 114.

With Friends

- 1. A: Do you have a few minutes? I need a little help. I'm having a few problems with my laptop.
 - B: Sure. Now is good. I have a little time before I need to leave.
- 2. A: Ben isn't happy at his new high school. He hasn't met many kids, and he has few friends.
 - B: Give it a little time. In a few months, he'll have more.
- 3. A: I have little patience with lazy co-workers. They frustrate me!
 - B: Me too. I work with a few people who do very little work but complain about how much they do!
- 4. A: I'll have a little coffee with my dessert. Do you want some?
 - B: No, thanks. I drink very little coffee. It's too bitter.
 - A: I love coffee, especially with a little sugar.
 - B: Whoa! You're using more than a little sugar. Are you drinking coffee with sugar or sugar with coffee?
 - A: But it's really good. Do you want to try a little? Maybe you'd drink more coffee this way.
 - B: Uh, I don't think so! I have very little sugar in my diet. It makes me hyper.

Chapter 7: Articles

Exercise 7, p. 125.

- 1. My boss has unreasonable expectations.
- 2. This is not an easy situation to deal with.
- 3. I feel uneasy about this situation.
- 4. This is a difficult situation.
- 5. My manager has made an unreasonable request.
- 6. The speaker presented a complicated problem.
- 7. The speaker presented complicated problems.
- 8. The presentation was uncomplicated.

Exercise 22, p. 131.

A Mishap

- A: What happened to your bike? The front wheel is bent.
- B: I ran into a parked car when I swerved to avoid a big pothole.
- A: Did you damage the car?
- B: A little.
- A: What did you do?
- B: I left a note for the owner of the car.
- A: What did you write on the note?
- B: My name and phone number. I also wrote an apology.

Exercise 26, p. 133.



Computer Bugs

When there is a problem with a computer, we often say we have a "computer bug." Of course, it's not a real insect. It refers to a technical difficulty we are having. The expression actually goes back to Thomas Edison, who was a famous inventor. When he was working on his first phonograph, he had a lot of problems. He blamed the problems on an imaginary insect that had hidden inside the machine. He was quoted in the newspaper as saying there was "a bug" in his phonograph. This was in 1889, and it is the first recorded use of the word *bug* in such a context.

Chapter 8: Pronouns

Exercise 10, p. 144.

- 1. Where's Kim?
 - A: I don't know. I haven't seen him this morning.
 - B: I think he's in the restroom.
 - C: I'm looking for him too.
 - D: Ask his assistant. He'll know.
 - E: Have you tried looking in his office? I know he's not there much, but maybe he'll surprise you.
- 2. The Nelsons are giving their daughter a motorcycle for graduation.
 - A: Hmmm. Does she like motorcycles that much?
 - B: Really? Is she a motorcycle rider?
 - C: That's an odd gift. I wonder what they were thinking.
 - D: That's what the Smiths gave their son. I think he's already had an accident.
 - E: I'm not a fan of motorcycles. Cars just don't see them in traffic.
 - F: I think it's a wonderful gift! I've had mine for years, and it's been great.

Exercise 21, p. 151.

- 1. Great photos, Jon! Did you take all of them ...
- 2. Do you like my dress? I made it ...
- 3. We were going to take a trip with our cousins, but the plans got so complicated that we finally decided to go by ...
- 4. My brother has an antique car. He restored it ...
- 5. Mr. and Mrs. Peterson are planning to sell their house. They are going to put an ad in the paper and sell it ...
- 6. My sister-in-law is an architect. She designed her office ...

Exercise 32, p. 156.

- 1. This coffee is delicious. Could I please have another cup?
- 2. The coffee isn't in this grocery bag, so I'll look in the other one.
- 3. There are supposed to be ten chairs in the room, but I count only five. Where are the others?

474 LISTENING SCRIPT: Chapters 7 and 8

- 4. No, let's not use this printer. Let's use the other one.
- 5. Bill is a short form for William. Others are Billy and Will.
- 6. The sky is clearing. It's going to be another beautiful day.

Exercise 36, p. 158.

- 1. The teacher asked the students the same question. One after another they gave the wrong answer.
- 2. Mr. and Mrs. Clark lead such busy lives that they see each other only on weekends.
- 3. Mr. Perez is doing fine. Susan spoke with him just the other day.
- 4. A: I have a secret about Danny and me.
 - B: Let me guess. You're engaged!
 - A: Yes! But it's a secret. We haven't told anyone other than you.
- 5. A: Have you sent party invitations yet?
 - B: Everyone except Jan knows about the surprise party.

Chapter 9: Modals, Part 1

Exercise 26, p. 174.

Part II

- 1. We can't come to the meeting.
- 2. Our two-year-old can count to 50.
- 3. You can take that course next term.
- 4. I can't cook complicated dishes.
- 5. Can't you come with us?
- 6. I can drive a semi-truck.

Exercise 36, p. 178.

- 1. This is a nonsmoking restaurant. Would you mind putting out your cigarette?
- 2. The music's awfully loud. Would you mind if I turned it down?
- 3. It's getting cool in here. Would you mind closing the window?
- 4. I can't talk now. Mind if I call you back?
- 5. I can't reach the pepper. Would you mind passing it to me?
- 6. I'm freezing. Mind if I borrow a sweater?

Chapter 10: Modals, Part 2

Exercise 10, p. 189.

- 1. Jack shouldn't have had more coffee.
- 2. My sister should have saved her money.
- 3. I should have gone to the doctor.
- 4. The president shouldn't have lied to us.

Exercise 30, p. 198.

What's wrong? Your parents look upset.

- 1. We should ask them.
- 2. We shouldn't ask them.
- 3. You may have upset them.
- 4. You should try to find out.

- 5. Maybe you shouldn't have stayed out so late.
- 6. You'd better have a good excuse for being late,
- 7. You could have told them what you planned to do.
- 8. You must have known your behavior would cause problems.

Exercise 49, p. 212.

- 1. Carlos was planning to come to the party, but he didn't show up. It was a great party. There was delicious food, and we danced until midnight.
- 2. I have a whole lot of material I need to review before the exam, but I just don't feel like studying this afternoon.
- 3. Tony's over an hour late for our meeting. That's not like him. I hope nothing bad has happened.
- 4. Rick was supposed to be at work early today to train his new assistant, but he woke up with a high fever. He can't even get out of bed.
- 5. The teacher called on Sonya in class yesterday, but she kept looking out the window and didn't respond.

Chapter 11: The Passive

Exercise 16, p. 223.

Early Mirrors

Mirrors are not a modern invention; they have been used since the stone age. The first mirrors were made from rocks. A special type of stone was needed: obsidian. This is a volcanic glass that is found in lava. To make the mirror, the stone was ground down on one side with another stone until the surface was flat. Then it was polished repeatedly until it became extremely shiny. At that point, the surface was highly reflective, and people were able to see themselves.

Exercise 26, p. 229.

The 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami

In 2004, several countries that border the Indian Ocean, including Indonesia, Thailand, India, Malaysia, and Somalia were hit by an earthquake and subsequent tsunami. (As you may already know, a tsunami is a giant ocean wave.) In just a few short hours, millions of lives were changed forever. The earthquake was measured at 9.3 on the Richter scale. It was the fourth largest earthquake since 1900 and the second largest that has ever been recorded on the Richter scale.

The quake was followed by four giant waves as high as 100 feet (or 30 meters). Whole villages were destroyed. Thousands of people were swept out to sea, and many others died due to lack of medical care. In total, almost 300,000 people were killed, and 1.3 million people were left homeless. Aftershocks from the earthquake continued for several days.

Tragically, the damage could have been lessened if there had been a tsunami early-warning system. Such a system already existed for the Pacific Ocean, but it didn't reach to the Indian Ocean. Since the tsunami disaster, governments have worked together to develop an early-warning system so that Southeast Asia will not experience such destruction again from a tsunami.

LISTENING SCRIPT: Chapters 9-11 475

Exercise 33, p. 235.

- 1. Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen.
- 2. I am not acquainted with Dr. William's books.
- 3. I'm finally accustomed to living here.
- 4. You're so busy. I think you're involved in too many activities.
- 5. Are you prepared for the next test?
- 6. Mr. and Mrs. Miller are devoted to each other.
- 7. I'm concerned about my grandfather's health.
- 8. Are you satisfied with your progress?

Exercise 47, p. 242.

- 1. Roller coasters frighten me.
- 2. Do you like to go on scary roller coasters?
- 3. Does a roller coaster ride excite you?
- 4. The ride was a thrilling experience.
- 5. The ride finished all too soon.
- 6. A few people weren't thrilled by the ride.

Exercise 49, p. 243.

- 1. The art museum has an exhibit that people are upset about. People who visit the museum are ...
- 2. People say that the exhibit is ...
- 3. My parents enjoy talking with my friend, Maria. They find her ...
- 4. Maria gets along well with my parents. She thinks they are ...
- 5. Not one of the students could understand Professor Steven's explanations. Whenever he explains a math problem, the students become more ...
- 6. His explanations are terribly ...

Exercise 51, p. 244.

The Early Olympic Games

The Olympic Games began more than 2,000 years ago in Olympia, a small town in Greece. The games were established for two purposes. One was to showcase the physical qualities and athletic performances of its young men. At that time, only Greek males were allowed to compete. In fact, women were not even permitted to watch the games, and the only spectators were men. The other goal was to encourage good relationships among Greek cities. People of other nationalities were not invited to participate.

The winner of each event was crowned with a wreath made of olive leaves. Additionally, his statue could be placed in Olympia for all to see. Winning athletes were treated as heroes when they returned to their cities because with their victory, they brought fame and honor to their hometowns.

Chapter 12: Noun Clauses

Exercise 38, p. 265.

- 1. I'm not going to the personnel meeting because I have to finish a report.
- 2. I can't lend Marta any money because my wallet is in my coat pocket back at home.

- 3. Someone in this room is wearing very strong perfume. It's giving me a headache.
- 4. Hi, Emma. I'll meet you at the coffee shop at 9:00. I promise not to be late.
- 5. I'm considering looking for a new job. What do you think I should do?
- 6. We are going to be late for the concert. My wife has to attend a business function after work.

Chapter 13: Adjective Clauses

Exercise 5, p. 274.

Part I

- 1. He has a friend who'll help him.
- 2. He has a friend who's helping him.
- 3. He has a friend who's helped him.
- 4. He has friends who're helping him.
- 5. He has friends who've helped him.
- 6. He has a friend who'd helped him.
- 7. He has a friend who'd like to help him.
- 8. He has a friend who's been helping him.

Part II

- 1. We know a person who'll be great for the job.
- 2. We know a person who'd like to apply for the job.
- 3. That's the man who's moving to our department.
- 4. I know of three people who've asked to transfer to another location.
- 5. I'd like to talk to the people who're asking to move.
- 6. There are two people at this company who've worked here all their adult lives.
- 7. The manager who'd been stealing from the company quit.

Exercise 22, p. 281.

- 1. I met the professor who's going to be my advisor.
- 2. I know someone who's famous in the music industry.
- 3. I talked to the man whose wife was in the car accident on Fifth Street yesterday. She's in the hospital, but she's going to be OK.
- I forget the name of the woman who's going to call you later — Mrs. Green or Mrs. White or something like that.
- 5. I need to hurry. The neighbor whose bike I borrowed is waiting for me to return it.
- 6. I got an email from a friend who's studying in Malaysia. It was really good to hear from her.
- 7. I recently heard from a friend who's overseas. He finally sent me an email.
- 8. I'm thinking about getting a pet. There's a woman at work whose dog just had puppies. I might adopt one.

Exercise 23, p. 282.

- 1. That's the person who's going to help us.
- 2. That's the person whose help we need.
- 3. I'd like to introduce you to a teacher who's spent time in Africa.
- 4. I'd like to introduce you to the teacher whose husband is from Africa.

- 5. The company is looking for a person who's bilingual.
- 6. The company is looking for a person whose native language is Arabic.
- 7. The company is looking for a person who's had a lot of experience in sales.
- 8. They want to hire a person who's familiar with their sales territory.

Exercise 32, p. 285.

- 1. The man who gave the news interview is a friend of mine.
- 2. Two people died in an accident that blocked all lanes of the highway for two hours.
- 3. The small town where I was born is now a large city.
- 4. The music teacher who gave me music lessons a long time ago became a rock star.
- 5. The phone that I got from my parents takes excellent pictures.
- 6. My neighbor often drops in for a visit about the time when we would like to sit down to dinner.

Exercise 42, p. 290.

- 1. My mother looked in the fruit basket and threw away the apples that were rotten.
- 2. My mother looked in the fruit basket and threw away the apples, which were rotten.
- 3. The students who had done well on the test were excused from class early.
- 4. The students, who had done well on the test, were excused from class early.

Exercise 54, p. 296.

- 1. The fence surrounding our house is made of wood.
- 2. The children attending that school receive a good education.
- 3. Dr. Stanton, the president of the university, will give a speech at the commencement ceremonies.
- 4. Our solar system is in a galaxy called the Milky Way.

Chapter 14: Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 1

Exercise 8, p. 306.

- 1. A: What should we do tomorrow night?
 - B: Let's watch a movie. That's what I like doing on weekends.
 - A: Same here.
- 2. A: I was really looking forward to the hike in the mountains this weekend, but I guess we're not going to get there.
 - B: It doesn't look like it. I don't think there's any hope. It's supposed to rain for the next two weeks.
- 3. A: Do you want to take a break?
 - B: No, we have to finish this report by 5:00. We don't have time for a break.

- 4. A: Let's go into the city this weekend. There's a concert at the park.
- B: That sounds like fun. Who's playing?
- 5. A: I'd really like to go out this evening, but I have all this work to do. I have three assignments, and I haven't begun to write any of them.
 - B: I know how you feel. I'm way behind in my homework too.
- 6. A: I just heard that there's an accident on the freeway and nothing's moving.
 - B: Let's stay here for another couple of hours. We can get caught up on our work.
 - A: Good idea. I have so much to do.

Exercise 21, p. 313.

- 1. Joan remembered to call her husband before she left work yesterday.
- 2. Rita remembered going to the farmers' market with her grandmother.
- 3. Roger stopped smoking when the doctor told him he had heart disease.
- 4. Mr. and Mrs. Olson stopped to eat before the movie.
- 5. I regret leaving school before I graduated.

Exercise 30, p. 319.

- 1. A: I'm sorry I'm late.
- B: No problem. We have lots of time.
- 2. A: I finished the project early.
- B: That's great you got it done so quickly.
- 3. A: I hate to do housework.
 - B: I know. I do too. It's a lot of work.
- 4. A: You were a big help. Thanks.B: Sure. I was happy to help out.
- 5. A: Your report isn't finished. What's your excuse? B: Uh, well, sorry. I don't really have one.
- 6. A: How do you like the food here?
- B: It's too spicy. I can't eat much of it.
- 7. A: How was your weekend? Did you go away for the holiday?
 - B: No. I got the flu and spent the whole weekend in bed.

Exercise 41, p. 325.

- 1. I have a terrible memory. I can't even remember my children's birthdays.
- 2. My teenage son tried to hide his report card, but I caught him.
- 3. I'm in a hurry in the mornings. I always stand at the kitchen counter and eat my breakfast.
- 4. Foreign languages are hard for me to learn.
- 5. I sat in traffic for two hours. It was a waste of time.
- 6. We sang songs on the bus trip. It was fun.
- 7. I looked all over for Tom. He was studying in the library.
- 8. There was a line to buy movie tickets. I had to wait for an hour.

Chapter 15: Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 2

Exercise 13, p. 340.

- 1. Benjamin is too old to have a driver's license.
- 2. Our daughter isn't old enough to stay home alone yet.
- 3. The test results are too good to believe.
- 4. This room seems big enough for an office.
- 5. You will have time enough to take a tour of the city.
- 6. The leftovers look too old to eat.

Exercise 17, p. 342.

An Issue in Health Care: Illiteracy

According to some estimates, well over half of the people in the world are functionally illiterate. This means that they are unable to perform everyday tasks because they can't read, understand, and respond appropriately to information. One of the problems this creates in health care is that millions of people are not able to read directions on medicine bottles or packages. Imagine being a parent with a sick child and being unable to read the directions on a medicine bottle. We all know that it is important for medical directions to be understood clearly. One solution is pictures. Many medical professionals are working today to solve this problem by using pictures to convey health-care information.

Chapter 16: Coordinating Conjunctions

Exercise 19, p. 365.

- 1. Ben will call either Mary or Bob.
- 2. Both my mother and father talked to my teacher.
- 3. Simon saw not only a whale but also a dolphin.
- 4. Our neighborhood had neither electricity nor water after the storm.
- 5. Either Mr. Anderson or Ms. Wiggins is going to teach our class today.

Exercise 21, p. 367.

Bats

What do people in your country think of bats? Are they mean and scary creatures, or are they symbols of both happiness and luck?

In Western countries, many people have an unreasoned fear of bats. According to scientist Dr. Sharon Horowitz, bats are not only harmless but also beneficial mammals. "When I was a child, I believed that a bat would attack me and tangle itself in my hair. Now I know better," said Dr. Horowitz.

Contrary to popular Western myths, bats do not attack humans. Although a few bats may have diseases, they are not major carriers of rabies or other frightening diseases. Bats help natural plant life by pollinating plants, spreading seeds, and eating insects. If you get rid of bats that eat overripe fruit, then fruit flies can flourish and destroy the fruit industry.

According to Dr. Horowitz, bats are both gentle and trainable pets. Not many people, however, own or train bats, and bats themselves prefer to avoid people.

Chapter 18: Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases

Exercise 17, p. 401.

- 1. A: I don't want to play the piano at the family gathering. I don't play well enough. People will laugh at me.
 - B: Rose, I know you're nervous, but you play beautifully. Everyone will love hearing you.
- A: Jan, are you going to tell Thomas that he needs to do more work on the project? He hasn't done his share. He's being really lazy.
 - B: Well, he'll probably get upset, but I'm going to talk with him about it this afternoon.
- 3. A: I'm so relieved that I found my wedding ring. It'd been missing for a month. The next time I take it off, I'm going to put it in a box on top of my dresser.
 - B: That sounds like a wise thing to do, Susan. It'd be terrible to lose your wedding ring again.
- 4. A: This is the first year I'm eligible to vote in the presidential election. I'm going to research all the candidates extensively.
 - B: They have very different positions, Sam. It's good to get as much information as you can.

Chapter 19: Connectives That Express Cause and Effect, Contrast, and Condition

Exercise 37, p. 421.

- 1. Because I lift heavy boxes at work, ...
- 2. I bought a new TV even though ...
- 3. Even if I'm late for work, ...
- 4. I was late for work this morning; nevertheless, ...
- 5. The air-conditioning has been broken; therefore, ...
- 6. Although I live in a noisy city, ...
- 7. I was so tired last night that ...

Exercise 39, p. 422.

Why We Yawn

Have you ever noticed that when a person near you yawns, you may start yawning too? This is called contagious yawning. *Contagious* in this sense means that the behavior spreads: in the case of yawning, when one person yawns, it can cause others to do the same thing. There are various theories about why people yawn. One popular idea is that yawning brings more oxygen into the brain so that people will wake up. Is that what you have thought?

However, in 2007, researchers at a university in New York came up with a new idea: yawning helps cool the brain. When people's brains are warm, they yawn more frequently; yawning brings cooler air into the body and, therefore, cools the brain. This is important because cooler brains work better than warmer ones.

This may also help explain why yawning is contagious. People are more awake when their brains are cooler; therefore, contagious yawning helps people be more alert. As people evolved, this was important in times of danger. If they yawned, they could have been signaling to others to stay awake.

While it can be annoying to have a person yawn when you are talking, perhaps you can tell yourself that he or she actually wants to stay awake, not go to sleep.

Chapter 20: Conditional Sentences and Wishes

Exercise 8, p. 429.

- 1. If I'm talking too fast, please tell me.
- 2. If we get married, everyone will be shocked.
- 3. If it's OK, I'll ask for some advice.
- 4. If he's planning to quit, I hope he lets us know soon.
- 5. If it's not working, we'll need to try something else.
- 6. If she works harder, I'm sure she'll succeed.
- 7. If I should get the job, I'll call you right away.

Exercise 19, p. 433.

- 1. If I had known the truth sooner, I would have acted differently.
- 2. If we hadn't believed him, we wouldn't have felt so foolish.
- 3. If you hadn't told me what a great guy Jon was, I wouldn't have believed him so easily.
- 4. If it had been another person, I wouldn't have been so shocked.
- 5. If he hadn't lied, I would have had more respect for him.

Exercise 25, p. 437.

- 1. If I had enough time, I'd go to the art museum this afternoon. I love going to art museums.
- 2. Mrs. Jones is really lucky. If she hadn't received immediate medical attention, she would have died.
- 3. If I were a carpenter, I'd build my own house. I'd really enjoy that.
- 4. So many people died unnecessarily in the earthquake. If the hotel had been built to withstand an earthquake, it wouldn't have collapsed.

Exercise 40, p. 443.

- 1. I would have called, but I left your number at home.
- 2. I couldn't have gone to college without my parents' financial help.
- 3. I ran out of time. Otherwise, I would have picked up your clothes from the cleaners.
- 4. We would have come to the party, but no one told us about it.
- 5. Without your advice, I wouldn't have known what to do.





Able to, 202, 205	The numbers following the words listed in the index refer to page
(Look on pages 202 and 205.)	numbers in the text.
Continuous tenses, 3fn. (Look at the footnote on page 3.)	The letters <i>fn</i> . mean "footnote." Footnotes appear beneath some charts and readings or at the bottom of some pages.

A

A/an, 105, 123, 125, 130, 130fn. Able to, 162, 173, 191 Accustomed to, 316 A couple of, 110 Active verbs, 216 Adjective(s), 452 after being (e.g., being foolish), 7fn. defined, 452 after get (e.g., get hungry), 238 infinitives after (e.g., happy to meet), 337 with linking verbs (e.g., taste good), 467 non-progressive passive verbs used as, 231 nouns used as (e.g., vegetable soup), 98 participial (e.g., amusinglamused), 241 possessive (my, your, etc.), 140, 145, 352 preposition combinations with, 454 used as nouns (e.g., the poor), 88, 103 Adjective clauses: defined, 273 expressions of quantity in, 292 object pronouns in (whom, which, that), 276 prepositions in, 278, 282, 284 pronouns modified by, 287 punctuation of, 288 reducing to modifying phrases, 295 subject pronouns in (who, which, that), 273, 295 with when, 284 with where, 282 with which, 273, 273fn., 276, 287fn., 293 with whose, 280

Adjective phrases, 295, 295fn. Adverb(s), 453 conjunctive (e.g., therefore), 408 defined, 453 list of, 453 midsentence, 453 with past perfect, 44 placement in future perfect, 66fn. with present perfect, 31, 37fn. Adverb clauses, 371 of cause and effect (because, etc.), 371, 378, 395, 405 of condition (if, unless, etc.), 371, 382, 383, 384, 386, 387, 388, 405, 420 as connectives, 405, 410 of contrast (although, etc.), 371, 379, 405, 416 defined, 371 of direct contrast (whereas, while), 371, 381, 418 punctuation of, 371, 410 of purpose (so that), 414 reducing to modifying phrases, 393-395, 399 of time (after, before, etc.), 60, 371, 373 words used to introduce, 371 Advise, 308fn. A few, 110, 113 Affirmatives, in tag questions, 459 Afraid, 257fn. After, 44, 373, 373fn., 394 A great deal of, 110, 117

Agreement: with paired conjunctions, 364 pronoun with noun, 145 subject-verb, 80, 84, 86, 88 Ain't, 461fn. A little, 110, 113 All (of), 110, 115 fn., 117, 117 fn. All day/morning/week, 40 A lot of, 105, 110, 117 Already, 37fn., 66fn., 226fn. Although, 379fn., 405, 416 Am/is/are being + adjective, 7fn. Am/is/are going to, 54 And, 80, 358, 359, 362 And, but, or, nor, 358 Another, 153, 157 Antecedent, 140 A number of, 84, 110 Anv. 110 Apostrophes: in contractions, 460-461 with possessive nouns, 101, 103 with possessive pronouns, 140 Appositives, 295 Articles: with definite and indefinite nouns, 123 with generic nouns, 125 guidelines for using, 130 As, 373 *A*/*some*, 123 As/so long as, 373 **As soon as**, 373 Auxiliary verbs (SEE Be; Contractions of verbs; Do/does/did; Have/has/had; Modal auxiliaries; Questions)

B

Be, 462
with modal + -ing, 201
in passive form, 216
Be able to, 173, 205, 209
Be accustomed to, 316
Because:
in adverb clauses, 371, 378, 379, 405
in adverbial phrases, 395
vs. even though, 379
Because of, 406
Before, 44, 373, 373fn., 394
Be going to:
in conditional sentences, 428
after modals, 205

summary chart of, 208
tense forms of, 54, 58fn., 63
vs. will, 56
Being + adjective, 7fn.
Be supposed to, 171, 208
Be used for, 335fn.
Be used to, 335fn.
Both ... and, 364
But, 358, 362, 405, 416, 418
vs. though, 416fn.
By:
 in passive form (the by-phrase), 216, 219, 231
 with reflexive pronouns, 147
By the time, 44, 373

С

Can. 162 in conditional sentences, 428 degree of certainty in, 192, 194 in expressions of ability, 173 in expressions of permission, 176 in expressions of possibility, 175 in polite requests, 176 after so that, 414 summary chart of, 209 Causative verbs (make, have, get), 349 Clauses, defined, 248, 273, 295 (SEE ALSO Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Dependent clauses; Independent clauses; Noun clauses; Time clauses) Collective nouns, 82, 146 Commands (SEE Imperative sentences) Commas: with adjective clauses, 288, 288fn., 410 with adjective phrases, 295 with adverb clauses, 371, 410 with conjunctions, 410 with independent clauses, 362 inverted, 260fn. in parallel structures, 359, 359fn. with prepositions, 410 in quoted speech, 260 with transitions, 408 with while-clauses, 418fn. Complex sentences (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses) Conditional sentences: basic verb forms used in, 427 expressions of real conditions in, 427, 428 expressions of unreal conditions in, 427, 430, 432



implied conditions in, 443 mixed time in, 440 omission of *if* in, 441, 443 progressive verb forms used in, 438 Conjunctions: as connectives, 405, 410 coordinating, 358, 359, 362 in expressions of cause and effect, 405, 408 in expressions of condition, 405, 420 in expressions of contrast, 405, 416, 418 independent clauses connected with, 362 paired (correlative), 364, 364fn. punctuation with, 359, 362, 410 subordinating, 371fn. Conjunctive adverbs, 408 (SEE ALSO Transitions) **Consequently**, 405, 408 Continuous tenses, 463 fn. Contractions of verbs, 460-461 with not, 461 with nouns, 54, 460 with personal names, 35 with pronouns, 31, 44, 54, 460 Contrary to fact (SEE Conditional sentences) Coordinating conjunctions, 358, 359, 362 Correlative (paired) conjunctions, 364, 364fn. Could, 162 in conditional sentences, 430, 432 degree of certainty in, 192, 194, 196, 199 in expressions of past ability, 191 in polite requests, 176 in reported speech, 264 after so that, 414 in suggestions/advice, 167 summary chart of, 209 after wish, 445, 448 Count/noncount nouns: defined, 105 expressions of quantity with, 107fn., 110, 113 list of, 107

D

Dangling modifiers, 393 Definite nouns, 123, 125 Dependent clauses, defined, 248, 371 (SEE ALSO Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses) Despite, 416 Direct speech, 260fn. (SEE ALSO Quoted speech) Do/does/did: contractions with, 460

in negatives, 461 in questions, 455 Double negatives, 461 *Due to*, 406

E

Each/every, 80, 110, 115, 115 fn. Each of, 84, 115 -Ed forms, 12, 26 in participial adjectives, 241 pronunciation of, 466 spelling of, 462 *Either* ... or, 364 -En forms, 26 **Enough**, 339 Even if, 384, 405 Even though, 379, 379 fn., 405, 416 Everyone, 115 fn. *Every one (of)*, 84, 115 vs. everyone, 115 fn. Everv time, 373 **Except**, 157 Exclamation points, 260 **Expressions:** of ability, 173, 191 of advisability, 167, 187 of cause and effect, 405, 406, 408, 412 of condition, 405, 420 of contrast, 405, 416, 418 of degree of certainty, 192, 194, 196, 199 of expectation, 171, 187 of necessity, 163, 165, 187 with other, 157 of permission, 176, 177 of place, 86, 86fn. of possibility, 175 of preference, 207 of purpose, 335, 414 of quantity, 84, 107 fn., 110, 113, 117, 292 of real conditions, 427, 428 special, followed by -ing (e.g., have fun doing), 323 of suggestions, 167, 180 of unreal conditions, 427, 430, 432

F

(A) Few/(a) little, 110, 113
For: in expressions of purpose, 335 vs. since, 29, 40
Forget/remember, 311, 311fn.
Frequency adverbs, 453
Full stop, 362fn. (SEE ALSO Periods) Future time: making wishes in, 448 present tenses to express, 62 time clauses to express, 60 (SEE ALSO **Be going to**; Verb tenses; **Will**)

G

Generic nouns, 125, 145 Gerunds: after advise, 308fn. common verbs followed by, 304, 311, 328 defined, 303 after go, 321 after need, 345 as objects of prepositions, 316, 329 passive, 340, 343 past forms of, 343 possessive adjectives and nouns modifying, 352 as subjects, 80, 325 Get: as causative verb (e.g., get them to do it), 349 passive with (e.g., get worried), 238 Go + gerund (e.g., go shopping), 321 Going to, 54, 63 vs. will, 56 Got to, 163

H

Habitual past, 185 Had better, 162, 167, 187, 208 Had to, 187, 264 Have got, 37fn. Have got to, 163, 187, 208 Have/has/had: as causative verb, 349 in conditional sentences, 441 contractions with, 31, 44, 460 as helping vs. main verb, 280fn. as main verb, use of do in negative, 10fn. in past infinitives and gerunds, 343 in present perfect, 29, 31 in reduced speech, 35, 46 Have to: in expressions of necessity, 163, 165 after modals, 205 summary chart of, 208 Help, 348 Hope, 21, 445 How, 456

However, 405, 416, 418 *How long*, 40, 456 Hyphen, 98

I

-Ics words, 88, 89fn. If: in adverb clauses of condition, 382, 383, 405, 420 in noun clauses, 253 (SEE ALSO Conditional sentences; Noun clauses) If-clauses, 382, 383, 427 implied, 443 If ... not. 387 Imperative sentences, 262 Impersonal pronouns, 151 In case, 386, 405 Indefinite nouns, 123, 125 Indefinite pronouns, 145, 287 Independent clauses, defined, 248, 362 Indirect speech, 260fn. (SEE ALSO Reported speech) Infinitives: after adjectives, 337 after be, 171 common verbs followed by, 306, 308, 311, 327 defined, 303 with get as causative verb, 349 with *it*, 325 with modal auxiliaries, 162 after need, 345 with objects, 308 passive, 340, 343, 345 past forms of, 343 of purpose (in order to), 335, 335fn. after question words, 256 as subjects, 325 with too/enough, 339 Information questions, 455 -Ing forms: in adverbial phrases, 393, 395 go + -ing, 321 modal + be + -ing, 201in participial adjectives, 241 special expressions followed by (e.g., have fun *doing*), 323 spelling of, 462 upon + -ing, 399

THE STATES

after verbs of perception (e.g., see her walking), 347 (SEE ALSO Gerunds; Present participles) In order that, 414fn. In order to, 335, 335fn., 414 In spite of, 416 Intend, 21, 306fn. Intransitive verbs, 216, 467 Inverted commas, 260fn. Inverted word order: after negatives, 461 after only if, 388 In which, 282 Irregular plural nouns, 95 Irregular verbs, 12 list of, 26-27, 468-469 It: agreement with, 146 with infinitives, 325 its vs. it's, 140 in noun clauses, 257

J Just:

meaning *immediately*, 374*fn*. with present perfect, 31, 37*fn*.

K

Know how to, 173

L

Lay/lie, 467 Let, 348 Let's, 180 Linking verbs, 467 (A) Little/(a) few, 110, 113 Lots of, 110, 117 -Ly, in adverbs, 453

M

Main clauses (SEE Independent clauses) Make, as causative verb (e.g., make them do it), 349 Many/much, 105, 117 Many of, 117 May, 162 degree of certainty in, 192, 194, 196, 199 in expressions of permission, 176 in expressions of possibility, 175 in polite requests, 176 in reported speech, 264

after so that, 414fn. summary chart of, 208 Mavbe: degree of certainty in, 192 vs. may be, 192 in suggestions/advice, 167 Midsentence adverbs, 453 Might, 162 in conditional sentences, 428 degree of certainty in, 192, 194, 196, 199 in expressions of possibility, 175 in polite requests, 176fn. in reported speech, 264 after so that, 414fn. in suggestions/advice, 167fn. summary chart of, 208 Modal auxiliaries: in conditional sentences, 428 defined, 162 list of, 162 passive form of, 225 phrasal modals after, 205 in polite requests, 176 progressive forms of, 201 in reported speech, 264 summary chart of, 208-209 Modify, defined, 452 Modifying phrases: reducing adjective phrases to, 295 reducing adverb clauses to, 393-395, 399 Most (of), 84, 110, 117 Much/many, 105, 110 Must. 162 degree of certainty in, 192, 194, 196 in expressions of necessity, 163, 165, 187 in prohibitions, 165 summary chart of, 208

N

Need: in expressions of necessity, 165fn. gerunds and infinitives after, 345 Negative questions, 252fn., 458 Negative words, 461 Negatives, double, 461 Neither ... nor, 364 Nevertheless/nonetheless, 405 No, 110, 461 Noncount nouns: defined, 105 expressions of quantity with, 107fn., 110, 113 list of, 107

None (of), 84, 117 Non-progressive (stative) verbs: defined, 7 passive, 231, 234 prepositions after, 231, 234 Nonrestrictive adjective clauses, 288 fn. Nor, 358 Not, 461 Not only ... but also, 364 Noun(s): collective, 82, 146 contractions with, 54, 460 count and noncount, 105, 107, 113 defined, 452 definite and indefinite, 123, 125 generic, 125, 145 possessive, 101, 103, 352 pronoun agreement with, 145, 146 regular and irregular plural, 95 used as adjectives (e.g., vegetable soup), 98, 103 Noun clauses, 248 defined, 248 with the fact that, 257, 406 with *it*, 257 modals in, 264 with question words, 249 in reported speech, 262, 264 subjunctive in, 267, 267 fn. with that, 257, 267 with whether/if, 253 after wish, 445 word order in, 249 Now that, 378, 405

0

Object(s): defined, 452 of prepositions, 316, 329, 453 Object pronouns, 140, 147, 147fn., 276 **Of**: in expressions of possession, 103 in expressions of quantity, 117, 292 **Once**, 373 One: with count nouns, 105, 110, 115 as impersonal pronoun, 151 One + singular noun, 115, 117One of, 115, 117 **One of** + plural noun, 84, 117Only after, 388fn. Only if, 388, 405, 421fn.

Only in, 388fn. Only when, 388fn. On the other hand, 405, 418 Or, 358 Or else, 405, 420 Or not, 253 Other: expressions with, 157 forms of, 153 Otherwise, 405, 420, 443 Ought to, 162 degree of certainty in, 199 in expressions of advisability, 167, 187 in reported speech, 264 summary chart of, 208

Р

Paired conjunctions (e.g., both ... and), 364, 364 fn. Parallel structure, 358, 359 Participial adjectives (e.g., confusing vs. confused), 241 Participial phrases (see Modifying phrases) Participles (SEE Modifying phrases; Past participle; Present participle) Particles, defined, 304 Passive (form): by-phrase in, 216, 219, 231 of causative verbs (e.g., have it done), 349 defined, 216 of gerunds (e.g., being done), 340, 343 with get (e.g., get worried), 238 of infinitives (e.g., to be done), 340, 343, 345 modals and phrasal modals in, 225 non-progressive, (e.g., the door is locked), 231, 234 participial adjectives in (e.g., amused children), 241 tense forms of, 217 Past habit, 185 Past participles, 26 as adjective (e.g., amused children), 241 irregular, 26-27 in passive, 216, 225, 238 (SEE ALSO -**Ed** forms) Past progressive verbs, 17, 21 Past time (SEE Verb tenses) Perfect/perfect progressive verbs (SEE Verb tenses) Periods: British term for, 362fn. between independent clauses, 362 in transitions, 408, 410

Personal names, contractions with, 35 Personal pronouns: agreement with nouns, 146 contractions with, 31, 44 Phrasal modals: in conditional sentences, 428 defined, 162 after modals, 205 passive form of, 225 Phrasal verbs, 304 Phrases: adjective, 295, 295fn. adverbial, 393-395, 399 defined, 248, 295 gerund, 303 prepositional, 453 **Plan**, 21 Plenty of, 110 Plural nouns, 79, 95 (SEE ALSO -S/-es) Polite requests, 54fn., 176, 176fn., 177 Possessive adjectives (my, your, etc.), 140, 145, 352 Possessive nouns (e.g., John's book), 101, 103, 352 Possessive pronouns (mine, yours, etc.), 140,280 Prefer, 312fn. Preposition(s), 453-454 in adjective clauses, 278, 282, 284 common combinations with adjectives and verbs, 454 as connectives, 405, 410 in expressions of cause and effect, 405, 406 in expressions of condition, 405 in expressions of contrast, 405, 416 in expressions of possession, 103 gerunds as objects of, 316, 329 list of, 453 after non-progressive passive verbs, 231, 234 punctuation with, 410 Prepositional phrases, 453 Present participles, 26 as adjective (e.g., amusing story), 241 irregular, 26 special expressions followed by (e.g., have fun doing), 323 spelling of -ing forms, 462 with verbs of perception (e.g., watch someone doing), 347 (SEE ALSO -Ing forms)

Present time (SEE Verb tenses) Principal parts of verbs, 26 Progressive verbs, 2, 5, 7, 201 in conditional sentences, 438 vs. non-progressive, 7 (SEE ALSO Verb tenses) Pronouns: agreement with nouns, 145, 146 contractions with, 31, 44, 54, 460 impersonal, 151 indefinite, 145, 287 object, 140, 147, 147fn., 276 personal, 31, 44, 146 possessive, 140, 280 reflexive, 147 relative (SEE Adjective clauses) subject, 140, 273, 295 **Pronunciation:** -ed. 466 going to in informal speech, 54 got to, 163 had in reduced speech, 46 have/has in reduced speech, 35 ought to in informal speech, 167 -s/-es, 79, 101, 466 of tag questions, 459fn. **Punctuation:** with adjective clauses, 288 with adjective phrases, 295 with adverb clauses, 371, 410 with conjunctions, 359, 362, 410 with independent clauses, 362 in parallel structures, 359, 359fn. in quoted speech, 260 in transitions, 408, 408fn. (SEE ALSO Apostrophes; Commas; Hyphen; Periods; Quotation marks; Semicolons)

Q

Quantity (SEE Expressions, of quantity) Questions: information, 455 negative, 252fn., 458 in quoted speech, 260 statements used as, 43fn. tag, 459, 459fn. word order in, 252fn., 455 yes/no, 455, 458 Question words: contractions with, 460 infinitives after, 256 in noun clauses, 249 with reduced *has/have*, 35 summary of, 456–457 Quotation marks, 260, 260*fn*. Quoted speech, 260 vs. reported speech, 262

R

Raise/rise, 467 Recently, 31 Reduction: of adjective clauses, 295 of adverb clauses, 393-395, 399 Reflexive pronouns, 147 **Regret**, 311 Regular plural nouns, 95 Regular verbs, 12, 26 Remember/forget, 311 Repeated action in the past (would, used to), 185 Reported speech: defined, 262 as indirect speech, 260fn. modals in, 264 vs. quoted speech, 262 verb tense in, 44, 47, 262 Restrictive adjective clauses, 288fn.

S

-S/-es, 79 and adjectives, 452 in count nouns, 105 in plural nouns, 95 in possessive nouns, 101 pronunciation of, 79, 101, 466 spelling with, 79 in subject-verb agreement, 80, 88 in verbs, 79 Say vs. tell, 262, 262fn. -Self/-selves, 147 Semicolons, 362, 408fn., 410, 410fn. Sentences: complex (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses) conditional (SEE Conditional sentences) imperative, 262 interrogative (SEE Questions) inverted word order in, 388, 461 negative, 461 simple (SEE Subjects, verbs, objects) Set/sit, 467 Several, 110, 117

Shall, 162, 180, 209 *Should*, 162 in adverb clauses, 386 in conditional sentences, 428, 441 degree of certainty in, 199 in expressions of advisability, 167, 187 in expressions of expectations, 187 in reported speech, 264 with subjunctive verbs, 267, 267fn. summary chart of, 208 Simple form of a verb, 26 with causative verbs, 349 after let and help, 348 with modal auxiliaries, 162 in subjunctive, 267 with verbs of perception, 347 Simple tenses, 2, 5, 12 (SEE ALSO Verb tenses) Since: vs. for, 29, 40 in adverb clauses, 373, 378, 405 in adverbial phrases, 394 duration of time, 29, 40, 373 meaning because, 378 Singular/plural (SEE Agreement; Count/noncount nouns; Noun, regular and irregular plural; Noun, used as adjectives; -S/-es) So, 405, 408 So long as, 373 Some, 105, 123 Some/any, 110 Some of, 84, 117 So that, 405, 414, 414fn. So ... that, 412 Spelling: -ed/-ing, 462 -s/-es, 79 Statements, used as questions, 43fn. Stative verbs (see Non-progressive verbs) Stop, 304fn., 311 Subject pronouns, 140, 273, 295 Subjects, verbs, objects, 452 Subject-verb agreement, 80 with expressions of quantity, 84 irregularities in, 88 with there + be, 86 Subjunctive, in noun clauses, 267, 267fn. Subordinate clauses (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses) Subordinating conjunctions, 371fn. Such ... that/so ... that, 412 Suggest, 304fn. Suppose, 171 Supposed to, 171, 187



T

Tag questions, 459, 459fn. Tell vs. sav. 262, 262fn. Tenses (SEE Verb tenses) **Than**, 207 That: in adjective clauses, 273, 276, 293 in noun clauses, 257, 267 in reported speech, 262 The: with definite nouns, 123, 128 with generic nouns, 125, 130fn. guidelines for using, 130 and subject-verb agreement, 88 with titles and geographic names, 134 The number of, 84 *There* + *be*, 86 Therefore, 405, 408 They, 151, 459 Think about, 21 This/that, 130, 293, 418 Though, 379fn., 405, 416, 416fn. Till, 373 Time clauses, 373 defined, 29, 60 future, tense use in, 60 as modifying adverbial phrases, 394 with since, 29, 40, 373 words used to introduce, 371, 373 Too: infinitives after, 339 after way/far, 115fn. Too/very, 339 Transitions: as connectives, 405, 410 in expressions of cause and effect, 405, 408 in expressions of condition, 405, 420 in expressions of contrast, 405, 416, 418 punctuation with, 410 Transitive/intransitive verbs: defined, 216, 452 in passive form, 216 troublesome (e.g., lay/lie), 467 *Try*, 311

U

Uncountable nouns (SEE Noncount nouns) Unless, 387, 405 Until, 373 Upon, 394fn. Upon + -ing, 399 Used to, 185, 209, 316

V

Verbals (SEE Gerunds; Infinitives, common verbs followed by) Verbs: causative, 349 defined, 452 with final -s/-es, 79 irregular, 12, 26-27, 468-469 linking, 467 non-progressive, 7 of perception, 347 phrasal, 304 progressive, 2, 5, 7, 201, 438 regular, 12, 26 subjunctive, 267 transitive and intransitive, 216, 452, 467 Verb tenses: continuous, 463fn. future perfect, 65 future perfect progressive, 65 future progressive, 63 in passive, 216, 217, 225, 231, 238 past perfect, 44 past perfect progressive, 47 past progressive, 17, 21 present perfect, 29, 31, 36, 60 present perfect progressive, 40 present progressive, 2, 5, 7, 60, 62 in reported speech, 44, 47, 262 simple future, 54 simple past, 12, 16, 26, 36 simple present, 2, 5, 62 summary of, 463-465 with wish, 445, 448 Very, 339 Very + few/little, 113 Voiced and voiceless sounds, 466

W

Was/were, 12, 430, 441 Was/were able to, 191 Was/were going to, 21, 264, 448 Way/far, after too, 115fn. What, 457 What + a form of do, 457 What kind of, 457 When, 16 in adjective clauses, 284 in adverb clauses, 373 in adverbial phrases, 394 meaning upon, 394fn. in questions, 456

Whenever, 373 Where: in adjective clauses, 282 in questions, 456 Whereas, 381fn. Whether, 253 Whether or not, 384, 405 Which: in adjective clauses, 273, 273fn., 276, 287fn., 293 in questions, 457 While: in adverb clauses, 373, 381, 405, 418, 418fn. in adverbial phrases, 394, 395 vs. whereas, 381fn. Whose, 280, 456 Who/whom: in adjective clauses, 273, 276 in questions, 456 vs. whose, 280 Why, 456 Why don't, 180 Will, 162 vs. be going to, 56 in conditional sentences, 427 contractions with, 460 degree of certainty in, 199 future, 54, 63 negative, 54 in polite requests, 54fn., 176 after so that, 414 summary chart of, 208

Wish, 445, 448 Word order: in adjective phrases, 295fn. after negatives, 461 in noun clauses, 249 after only if, 388 in questions, 252fn., 455 Would, 162 in conditional sentences, 427, 430, 432 contractions with, 460 to express repeated action in past, 185 in polite requests, 176 in reported speech, 264 after so that, 414 in suggestions/advice, 167fn. summary chart of, 209 with wish, 448 Would have, 427, 432fn., 445fn. Would rather, 207 Would you mind, 177, 177fn.

Y

- Y, final, spelling: with -ed, -ing, 462 with -s/-es, 79 Yes/no questions, 455, 458 Yet, 37 fn., 405, 416 You: as impersonal pronoun, 151 vs. your, 320fn.



Photo Credits

Page 1: Cameraman/Fotolia; 4: Nerthuz/Fotolia; 6: James Thew/Fotolia; 8 (bottom): George Dolgikh/Fotolia; 8 (top): Wavebreak Media Micro/Fotolia; 9 (left): Pieropoma/Fotolia; 9 (rights): Danilo Rizzuti/Fotolia; 11: Warner Brothers/Everett Collection; 13: Patryk Kosmider/Fotolia; 14: Adam121/Fotolia; 15: REX/ Shutterstock; 17: Herrerojorcas/Fotolia; 19: ParisPhoto/Fotolia; 25: Catgrig/Fotolia; 30: Scott Prokop/Fotolia; 33 (bottom): Canadian in Exile/Fotolia; 33 (top): Vpardi/Fotolia; 34: lpstudio/Fotolia; 35: Mariusz Blach/ Fotolia; 37: Jiri Foltyn/Fotolia; 41: Contrastwerkstatt/Fotolia; 43: Marcel Mooij/Fotolia; 46: Xof711/Fotolia; 51: Igor Mojzes/Fotolia; 53: Freesurf/Fotolia; 57: Olesia Bilkei/Fotolia; 59 (left): Thomas Perkins/Fotolia; 59 (right): Jstaley4011/Fotolia; 61: Sergey Nivens/Fotolia; 63: Aleksandar Todorovic/Fotolia; 65: Robert Kneschke/Fotolia; 70: Ra2 studio/Fotolia; 72: Rtimages/Fotolia; 73: Mauro Rodrigues/Fotolia; 75: Janis Smits/ Fotolia; 78: Wlablack/Fotolia; 79 (left): GVS/Fotolia; 79 (right): Nicholas Piccillo/Fotolia; 81 (bottom): Siro46/ Fotolia; 81 (top): Piotr Wawrzyniuk/Fotolia; 82: Galyna Andrushko/Fotolia; 83: Monkey Business/Fotolia; 84: Goodluz/Fotolia; 85: Dreaming Andy/Fotolia; 86: Scvos/Fotolia; 91: Anton Sokolov/Fotolia; 92: Nerthuz/ Fotolia; 94: Viperagp/Fotolia; 96 (bottom): Bettys4240/Fotolia; 96 (top): Hinata815/Fotolia; 97: Beawolf/ Fotolia; 98: Cutimage/Fotolia; 100 (bottom): Kellis/Shutterstock; 100 (top): Andyh12/Fotolia; 106 (bottom): Real PhotoItaly/Fotolia; 106 (top): Lorelyn Medina/Fotolia; 109: Mantinov/Fotolia; 112: Dashadima/Fotolia; 113: Sborisov/Fotolia; 116 (bottom): 12ee12/Fotolia; 116 (top): Monkey Business/Fotolia; 117: Chagin/Fotolia; 119: Marilyn Barbone/Fotolia; 122: Baibaz/Fotolia; 125: Sommai/Fotolia; 126 (bottom): Daylight Photo/ Fotolia; 126 (top): Maxcam/Fotolia; 128 (left): Antonin Spacek/Fotolia; 128 (right): FrankU/Fotolia; 129: Cameramanhamiltn/Fotolia; 130: Alexskopje/Fotolia; 131 (bottom, left): Nikita Kuzmenkov/Fotolia; 131 (bottom, right): Danr13/Fotolia; 131 (center): Chrispo/Fotolia; 131 (top): Hansenn/Fotolia; 132 (bottom): Jörg Hackemann/Fotolia; 132 (top): Andrea Izzotti/Fotolia; 133: NoraDoa/Fotolia; 135 (bottom, left): Tushar Koley/Fotolia; 135 (bottom, right): JFL Photography/Fotolia; 135 (top): Srongkrod/Fotolia; 136: Federico Rostagno/Fotolia; 139: Ksena32/Fotolia; 142: Barbara Helgason/Fotolia; 143: Maridav/Fotolia; 144: Megan Lorenz/Fotolia; 147: Africa Studio/Fotolia; 149: Lightwavemedia/Fotolia; 154: Alexander Kolosov/Fotolia; 158: Nemez210769/Fotolia; 160: Auremar/Fotolia; 161: Auremar/Fotolia; 164: Debbie Torkelson/Fotolia; 166: Pathdoc/Fotolia; 168 (bottom): Robert Wilson/Fotolia; 168 (top): Africa Studio/Fotolia; 169: Acidsulfurik/ Fotolia; 172 (center, left): Lisa F. Young/Fotolia; 172 (center, right): Kurhan/Fotolia; 172 (left): Olly/Fotolia; 172 (right): 135pixels/Fotolia; 174 (bottom): Innovated Captures/Fotolia; 174 (top): Kasto/Fotolia; 175: Andriigorulko/Fotolia; 178: Samo Trebizan/Fotolia; 182: Andrey Popov/Fotolia; 183: Alexbrylovhk/Fotolia; 184: Nadezhda1906/Fotolia; 186 (bottom): Johnkepchar/Fotolia; 186 (top): Dfikar/Fotolia; 188: Natalia Bratslavsky/Fotolia; 190: Rebius/Fotolia; 191: Davehanlon/Fotolia; 202 (bottom, left): Dmitry Vereshchagin/ Fotolia; 202 (bottom, right): Marc Xavier/Fotolia; 202 (top, center): WavebreakmediaMicro/Fotolia; 202 (top, left): WavebreakmediaMicro/Fotolia; 202 (top, right): Twin Design/Shutterstock; 206: Slasnyi/Fotolia; 211: Malinkaphoto/Fotolia; 213: Nikolai Sorokin/Fotolia; 216: James Steidl/Fotolia; 217: Jackie DeBusk/Fotolia; 218: Dade72/Fotolia; 219: Sergey Andrianov/Fotolia; 220: Freesurf/Fotolia; 221: Monkey Business/Fotolia; 222: Rawpixel/Fotolia; 223 (left): Vvoe/Fotolia; 223 (right): Laks/Fotolia; 225: Jodie777/Fotolia; 228 (left): Photobank/Fotolia; 228 (right): Kingan/Fotolia; 229 (top, left): Victor Zastol'skiy/Fotolia; 229 (bottom): NoraDoa/Fotolia; 229 (top, right): Victor Zastol'skiy/Fotolia; 231: BillionPhotos/Fotolia; 232 (bottom): Luciano Mortula/Fotolia; 232 (center): Ilya Akinshin/Fotolia; 232 (top): Rido/Fotolia; 233: Kenishirotie/Fotolia;

234: Uros Petrovic/Fotolia; 235: Kilala/Fotolia; 236: Mny Ihee/Fotolia; 237: Haveseen/Fotolia; 239: Tiero/ Fotolia; 240: Nejron Photo/Fotolia; 242: Matt Magnone/Fotolia; 243: Annatronova/Fotolia; 244: Gmoulart/ Fotolia; 245: Sapgreen/Fotolia; 246: Iprachenko/Fotolia; 247: Wabkmiami/Fotolia; 250: Flairimages/Fotolia; 253: Romolo Tavani/Fotolia; 255 (bottom): Fotopak/Fotolia; 255 (top): Jim Parkin/Fotolia; 259: Tonyv3112/ Fotolia; 263: Jolopes/Fotolia; 266: Dampoint/Fotolia; 268: WavebreakMediaMicro/Fotolia; 269: Andrey Kuzmin/ Fotolia; 270: Nerthuz/Fotolia; 272: Time House/Alamy Stock Photo; 275 (bottom): Photographee.eu/Fotolia; 275 (top): Xerox123/Fotolia; 277: Elena Suvorova/Fotolia; 280: Burlingham/Fotolia; 282 (bottom): Alswart/ Fotolia; 282 (top): Michael Shake/Fotolia; 283: Pavel Kirichenko/Fotolia; 286: Mariephotos/Fotolia; 291: Mayboro/Fotolia; 292: Yiucheung/Fotolia; 294 (bottom): Iriana Shiyan/Fotolia; 294 (top): Lightpoet/ Fotolia; 296: PackShot/Fotolia; 297: Den Belitsky/Fotolia; 299 (bottom): Takawildcats/Fotolia; 299 (center): Kampanel/Fotolia; 299 (top): Ingusk/Fotolia; 301: Vitanovski/Fotolia; 302: 103tnn/Fotolia; 306: WavebreakMediaMicro/Fotolia; 307: Nyul/Fotolia; 308: Phanuwatnandee/Fotolia; 310: Scherbinator/ Fotolia; 314: Timothy Masters/Fotolia; 315: Syda Productions/Fotolia; 316: Scott Leman/Fotolia; 317: Konstantin Yuganov/Fotolia; 318: BlueSkyImages/Fotolia; 320 (bottom, right): Pixelrobot/Fotolia; 320 (center): Staras/Fotolia; 320 (top, left): Jk1991/Fotolia; 320 (top, right): Kontur Vid/Fotolia; 321: Freefly/ Fotolia; 322: Brian Lasenby/Fotolia; 323: Yommy/Fotolia; 324: Bastos/Fotolia; 326: Yanlev/Fotolia; 334: Halfpoint/Fotolia; 335: WavebreakMediaMicro/Fotolia; 336: Jenifoto/Fotolia; 337 (bottom): Videoeditor4u/ Fotolia; 337 (top): Gamelover/Fotolia; 338: Africa Studio/Fotolia; 341 (bottom): Aleutie/Fotolia; 341 (top): Monkey Business/Fotolia; 342 (bottom): VIPDesign/Fotolia; 342 (top): Jjava/Fotolia; 345 (bottom): Harris Shiffman/Fotolia; 345 (top): Lucian Milasan/Fotolia; 346: Antonioguillem/Fotolia; 348: Piotr Marcinski/Fotolia; 349: Richard Griffin/Fotolia; 350: Strauchburg.de/Fotolia; 351: Paul Maguire/Fotolia; 352: Thinglass/Fotolia; 355: Amyinlondon/Fotolia; 357: Tiero/Fotolia; 359: Alinamd/Fotolia; 360: Destina/Fotolia; 361: Kjersti/Fotolia; 362 (bottom): Mat Hayward/Fotolia; 362 (top): Romolo Tavani/Fotolia; 363: Brocreative/Fotolia; 364: Syda Productions/Fotolia; 366: Dmitry Vereshchagin/Fotolia; 368 (left): Sommai/Fotolia; 368 (right): Jose Ignacio Soto/Fotolia; 370: Sakuraco/Fotolia; 372 (bottom): Michaeljung/Fotolia; 372 (center): Ljupco Smokovski/ Fotolia; 372 (top): Shariff Che'Lah/Fotolia; 375: Photographee.eu/Fotolia; 376: Alexzeer/Fotolia; 377 (bottom, right): Sergey Nivens/Fotolia; 377 (top, left): Rido/Fotolia; 377 (top, right): Creativa Images/Fotolia; 378 (bottom): Suna/Fotolia; 378 (top): Maksym Yemelyanov/Fotolia; 380: Casey E Martin/Fotolia; 385 (bottom): Tomasz Zajda/Fotolia; 385 (top): Ana Blazic Pavlovic/Fotolia; 386: ET1972/Fotolia; 389 (bottom): Mayatnik/ Fotolia; 389 (center, left): Radnatt/Fotolia; 389 (top, right): Mesquitafms/Fotolia; 390: Xavier/Fotolia; 392: Theartofphoto/Fotolia; 394: Therina Groenewald/Fotolia; 395: Kyslynskyy/Fotolia; 396: Sebastian Studio/ Fotolia; 398: Aiisha/Fotolia; 400: Lirtlon/Fotolia; 401 (bottom): Juulijs/Fotolia; 401 (top): Maksym Yemelyanov/ Fotolia; 402 (bottom): Trezvuy/Fotolia; 402 (top): Giuseppe Porzani/Fotolia; 404: Giorgio Pulcini/Fotolia; 405: George Spade/Fotolia; 407 (bottom): 135pixels/Fotolia; 407 (top): Muta/Fotolia; 408 (bottom): Ugrum1/ Fotolia; 408 (top): Hiphoto39/Fotolia; 409 (bottom): Byheaven/Fotolia; 409 (top): Cj2a/Fotolia; 411 (bottom): Steheap/Fotolia; 411 (top): Mariia Pazhyna/Fotolia; 413 (bottom): Mates/Fotolia; 413 (top): Fotomaximum/ Fotolia; 415: Elisabetta Figus/Fotolia; 416: Saharrr/Fotolia; 418: Harvepino/Fotolia; 419 (left): Iordani/Fotolia; 419 (right): Sergey Peterman/Fotolia; 420: Focus Pocus LTD/Fotolia; 422 (bottom): Master1305/Fotolia; 422 (top): Kevron2001/Fotolia; 424: Arkela/Fotolia; 426: Daniele80/Fotolia; 427: Pishkott/Fotolia; 428: Morenovel/Fotolia; 429: Dimakp/Fotolia; 430 (center): Dina777/Fotolia; 430 (left): Ljupco Smokovski/ Fotolia; 430 (right): Esthermm/Fotolia; 432 (bottom): Anatoly Tiplyashin/Fotolia; 432 (top): ksena32/Fotolia; 436: Shotsstudio/Fotolia; 437: Aleciccotelli/Fotolia; 438: Victor zastol'skiy/Fotolia; 439: Osterland/Fotolia; 441 (bottom): Cn0ra/Fotolia; 441 (top): Elenarts/Fotolia; 443: Jeff.b/Fotolia; 444: Vichie81/Fotolia; 446: Pellinni/Fotolia; 449 (bottom): Andy Dean/Fotolia; 449 (top): DragonImages/Fotolia; 450: Dmitry Naumov/Fotolia.

Illustrations: Don Martinetti, pages 7, 16, 20, 28, 44, 58, 66, 73, 99, 105, 118, 133, 150, 153, 159, 178, 193, 199, 241, 260, 289, 312, 463, 464, 459, 467; Chris Pavely, pages 3, 12, 36, 39, 55, 89, 109, 186, 210, 215, 256, 259, 264, 309, 351, 367; Kris Wiltse, page 16irLanguage.com









UNDERSTANDING AND USING English Grammar FIFTH EDITION

Betty S. Azar Stacy A. Hagen

Understanding and Using English Grammar is a classic developmental skills text for intermediate to advanced English learners. It combines a grammar-based approach with carefully sequenced practice to promote the development of all language skills.

Building on the success of the previous editions, the fifth edition continues to focus on form and meaning while engaging students in meaningful communication about real actions, real things, and their own lives in classroom context.

FEATURES OF THE NEW EDITION INCLUDE:

- A pre-test at the start of each chapter that enables learners to check what they already know
- Updated grammar charts to reflect current usage and highlight differences between written and spoken English
- More incremental practice to help learners better grasp concepts
- A new chapter on article usage
- Thematic exercises and integrated tasks for more contextualized language use
- A variety of high interest readings including reviews, articles on current topics, and an engaging series of blogs that focus on student success
- Step-by-step writing activities supported by writing tips and pre-writing and editing tasks

Understanding and Using English Grammar, FIFTH EDITION, INCLUDES:

STUDENT BOOK

Full Edition with Essential Online Resources: 978-0-13-426882-8 Full Edition with MyEnglishLab: 978-0-13-399459-9 Volume A with Essential Online Resources: 978-0-13-426887-3 Volume B with Essential Online Resources: 978-0-13-427523-9

WORKBOOK, consisting of self-study exercises for independent work Full Edition: 978-0-13-427544-4 Volume A: 978-0-13-427625-0 Volume B: 978-0-13-427627-4

TEACHER'S GUIDE with teaching suggestions, grammar notes, expansion activities, and answer key: 978-0-13-427545-1

TEST BANK, consisting of quizzes, tests, and mid-term and final exams: 978-0-13-427546-8

CHARTBOOK, a reference text consisting of only the grammar charts: 978-0-13-427628-1

MyEnglishLab Access Code Card: 978-0-13-427542-0



AzarGrammar.com a teacher-support website You Tube www.youtube.com/EnglishwithStacy

Find us on **f** www.facebook.com/azargrammar

www.pearsonelt.com/azar